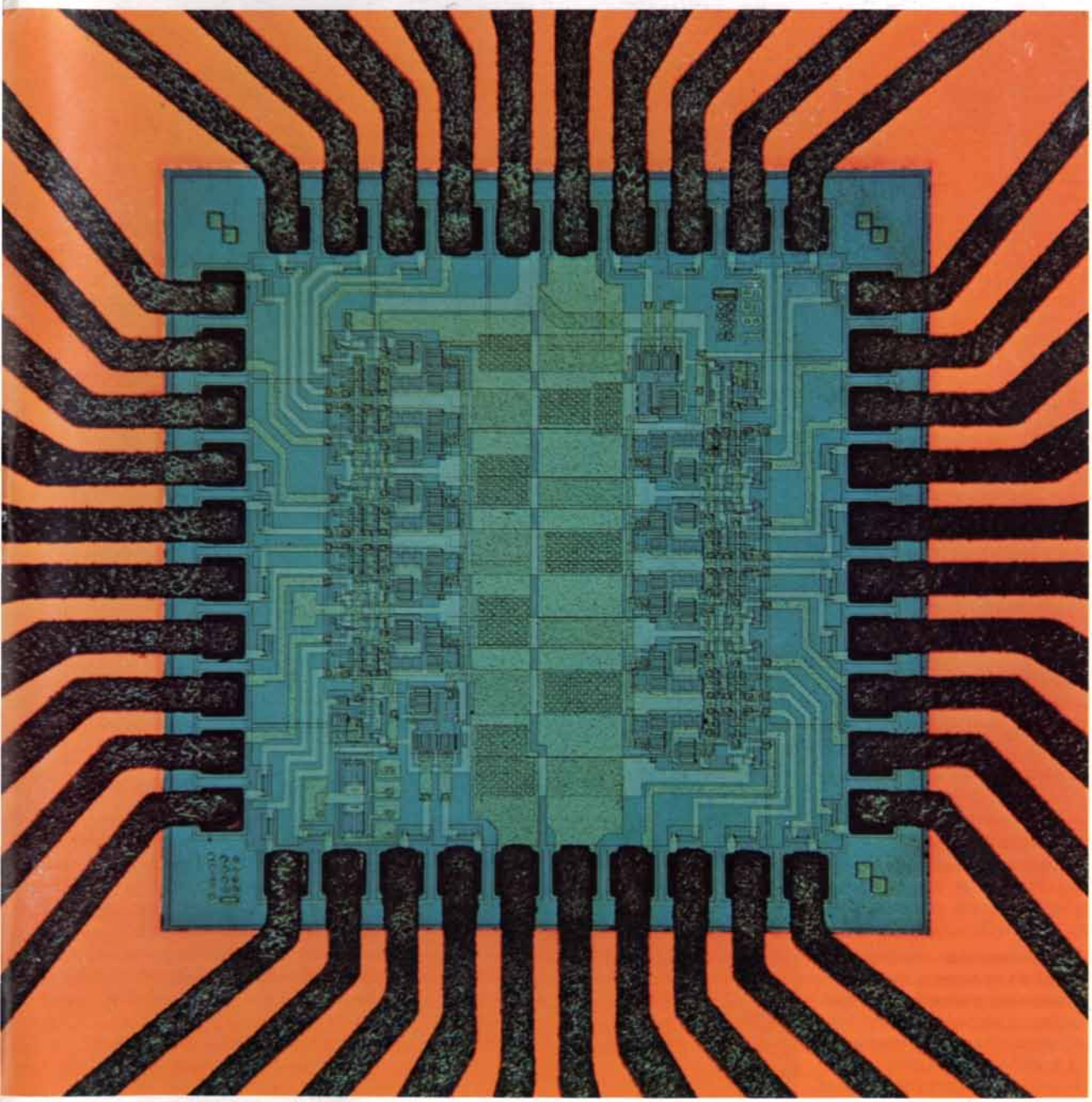
SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN



MICROELECTRONICS

$2.00

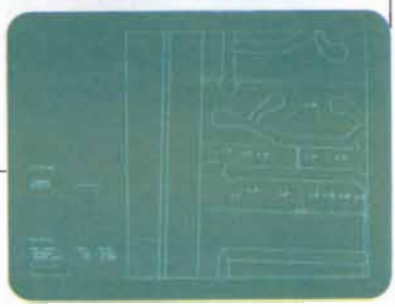
September 1977

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

"We've simplified urban planning by using computer graphics and a geographic data base shared by city, county, state, and federal governments."

John Porter, Planning Director
City of Eugene, Lane County,* Oregon

Above, the impact of a zoning change request received from a developer is explored on a TEKTRONIX 4081 Interactive Graphics Terminal by Planning Director John Porter, right, and Planner Jim Farah. "What we're able to do with graphics," Porter points out, "is pose queries and really begin to think through a series of questions. We would have to have several times the staff we have to do the work manually . . . it just wouldn't be economically possible." For example (right), the development status of Bethel, an area on the growing edge of the city, can be explored graphically without leaving the office.



Two tough problems associated with urban growth, says Urban Planner John Porter, are, first, finding economical ways to quickly gather and compare lots of current data. Secondly, presenting recommendations in a format that encourages quick perception of the problems involved. The pictorial capability of computer graphics and a regional geographical data system shared by city, county, state, and federal governments are providing new solutions in Lane County, Oregon.

Now when a developer, for instance, wants to put an apartment building in an area originally planned for single-family houses, a planner on John Porter's staff can sit down at an interactive graphics terminal and—using the terminal in conjunction with components of the geographic data base—begin to ask questions. How many lots in the area have been built on? What has been the sequence of development? What are the ages of structures in the area? How many residential units are in the area?

"It takes maybe two weeks out in the field to get that volume of information. I can get it from the terminal in an hour," Porter says. "We don't have to go out there repeatedly, or manually draw maps. And we've found that it makes all the difference in the world to be able to give people data in pictorial form . . . so they can see what the impact would be. Graphics communicates ideas rapidly and clarifies tables of numbers." Whenever needed, a hard copy unit near the graphic terminal produces permanent records of any picture that shows on the terminal's screen.

Some 20 public agencies feed information into a common geographic data system. Robert Swank, Director of Research, Lane Council of Governments, whose responsibility is coordinating data collection, data storage and use of the system, says, "With data coming in from many sources, we have to be sure it 'fits.' One simple way is by using computer graphics to draw maps. A misfit shows up on the map and helps the operator figure out where the problem is."

John Porter originally gained support from all levels of government for the use of computer graphics by demonstrating that his department could deal with complex, live issues faster and

*Eugene was recently rated by the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency as the most liveable city in the U.S. with a population under 250,000. Lane County is almost the size of Connecticut.

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

Secretary Christine Ward quickly digitizes Lane Regional Air Pollution Authority (LRAPA) data from an analog chart, using a TEKTRONIX Graphic Tablet. In this case, the curve she's tracing with the electronic stylus represents hydrocarbon levels at one of several recording stations in the county. The digitized version simultaneously appears on the TEKTRONIX Graphic Terminal screen, enabling her to tell at a glance whether both curves agree. The digitized data is then transmitted to the State Department of Environmental Quality's computer, eliminating the old, error-prone method of manual transcription of data to forms by LRAPA, keypunching by DEQ, followed by printout verification by LRAPA. Computer models will soon be used to draw maps that visually show the effects of air pollution at various levels — such as carbon monoxide along highways and emissions from industrial plants — depending upon variables such as time of day and wind. This will enable LRAPA to predict the impact of proposed new sources of air pollution.

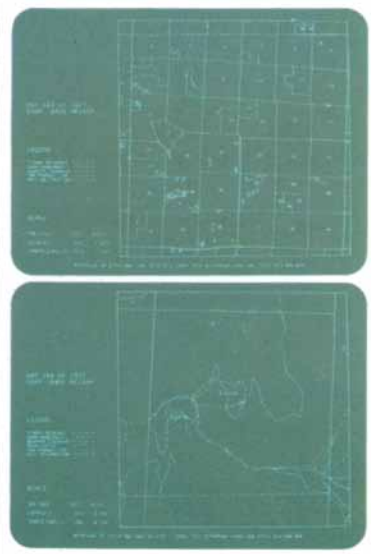
explore more variables for less money than with comparable manual studies. "The best information at the wrong time doesn't do any good at all," Porter says.

"Now we've got groups coming to us after they've analyzed their neighborhoods with data we've supplied, and we sit down and explore what's happening in their environments. What computer graphics enables us to show them is the big picture. Not just what effect a given variable will have on one neighborhood, but on the entire city. And we're working with ways to develop growth scenarios for farther and farther out into the future."

Land-use planning is only the beginning. In the future, computer graphics may be used in Lane County to design sewer networks, select sites for fire houses and social services, map crime patterns, and analyze traffic accidents.

These are just a few ways computer graphics and the regional geographical data system help Lane County local government officials make better-based political, economic, and social decisions — while saving tax dollars over the cost of manual manipulation of data.

Across town, at the U.S. Department of Interior's Bureau of Land Management office, computer graphics is being developed and tested for timberland management. A forester can call up a map display of a selected kind of timber, identify which is marketable, and overlay that with the road system to determine accessibility. Then, to assess environmental impact, he can overlay soil type and wildlife habitat. Below, these typical displays of what a forester sees on a graphic terminal screen show the solution to a problem posed by a BLM botanist. He wanted to study specific vegetation associated with old-growth Douglas-fir forests on gentle north-facing slopes. First the BLM staff searched the data related to 650 square miles. Three areas were identified for further analysis, but the scale was too small. So (top) they used the Tektronix 4014 Graphic Display Terminal to "window in" on 36 square miles. Then (bottom) they windowed in on one square mile that showed two of the areas in detail, and the roads to get there.



Over $460 million in sales. Tektronix' diversified products are used in many industries worldwide.

Progressive managers are using TEKTRONIX computer graphics to solve problems in areas as diverse as international monetary exchange to the mapping of subterranean oil and coal deposits. Almost everywhere computers are found, TEKTRONIX portable oscilloscopes and other service instruments help to maintain them. Quantity buyers and suppliers of integrated circuits use TEKTRONIX IC Test Systems to help develop, select, and maintain quality control of "chips" for their products.

Foundries save energy and man-hours with TEKTRONIX digital ultrasonic testing systems. Almost every R & D lab uses TEKTRONIX high-performance oscilloscopes to test, measure, and interpret electrical phenomena. TV engineers maintain the quality of color signals along the complex route from camera to home receiver with devices like the TEKTRONIX automatic video corrector and GRASS VALLEY GROUP switchers. Hospitals improve patient care with TEKTRONIX physiological monitors.

And now in microelectronics, TEKTRONIX logic analyzers and Microprocessor Labs give engineers an edge in designing new products that promise to revolutionize our business and personal lives.

These are just a few of the more than 800 Tektronix products that serve the test, measurement, and information display needs of thousands of customers, worldwide.

We'll gladly send you more detailed information about computer graphics, uses of our other products, or a copy of our annual report. Write to the Marketing Communications Department, 76-260, Tektronix, Inc., P.O. Box 500, Beaverton, Oregon 97077.

By phone—call 503-644-0161.

Tektronix
COMMITTED TO EXCELLENCE

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

While you've been working your way up
for all these years, we've been quietly
waiting for you to arrive.

Seagram's V.O.
Bottled in Canada. Preferred throughout the world.

CANADIAN WHISKY. A BLEND OF CANADA'S FINEST WHISKIES. 6 YEARS OLD. 86.8 PROOF. SEAGRAM DISTILLERS CO., N.Y.C.

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

Established 1845 **SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN** September 1977 Volume 237 Number 3

ARTICLES

62 **MICROELECTRONICS, by Robert N. Noyce**
Introducing an issue on the technology of emplacing electronic circuits on tiny silicon "chips."

70 **MICROELECTRONIC CIRCUIT ELEMENTS, by James D. Meindl**
The principal element is the transistor, thousands of which can be created on a single chip.

82 **THE LARGE-SCALE INTEGRATION OF MICROELECTRONIC CIRCUITS, by William C. Holton** The elements on a chip are not wired together but are emplaced as a unit.

110 **THE FABRICATION OF MICROELECTRONIC CIRCUITS, by William G. Oldham**
The patterns on a chip are first created in the large. They are then laid down photographically.

130 **MICROELECTRONIC MEMORIES, by David A. Hodges**
Memory chips based on transistors are now able to store more than 16,000 bits (binary digits).

146 **MICROPROCESSORS, by Hoo-Min D. Toong**
A microprocessor is essentially the entire central processing unit of a computer on a single chip.

162 **THE ROLE OF MICROELECTRONICS IN DATA PROCESSING, by Lewis M. Terman** Modern computers could not exist without a variety of microelectronic components.

180 **THE ROLE OF MICROELECTRONICS IN INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL, by Bernard M. Oliver** Microprocessors make measuring instruments and machines "smart."

192 **THE ROLE OF MICROELECTRONICS IN COMMUNICATION, by John S. Mayo**
The high reliability and low cost of microelectronic devices make them ideal for the purpose.

210 **MICROELECTRONICS AND COMPUTER SCIENCE, by Ivan E. Sutherland and Carver A. Mead** Microelectronics makes it possible to reconsider the design of computers.

230 **MICROELECTRONICS AND THE PERSONAL COMPUTER, by Alan C. Kay**
In the 1980's many people will possess a small computer with the capacity of a large one of today.

DEPARTMENTS

8 LETTERS
13 50 AND 100 YEARS AGO
14 THE AUTHORS
24 MATHEMATICAL GAMES
46 BOOKS
96 SCIENCE AND THE CITIZEN
246 THE AMATEUR SCIENTIST
258 BIBLIOGRAPHY

BOARD OF EDITORS Gerard Piel (Publisher), Dennis Flanagan (Editor), Francis Bello (Associate Editor), Philip Morrison (Book Editor), Trudy E. Bell, Brian P. Hayes, Jonathan B. Piel, John Purcell, James T. Rogers, Armand Schwab, Jr., Jonathan B. Tucker, Joseph Wisnovsky

ART DEPARTMENT Samuel L. Howard (Art Director), Ilil Arbel, Edward Bell

PRODUCTION DEPARTMENT Richard Sasso (Production Manager), Carol Hansen, Michelle Lynn and Leo J. Petruzzi (Assistant Production Managers), Susan Caputo, Annette Rosa, Julio E. Xavier

COPY DEPARTMENT Sally Porter Jenks (Copy Chief), Barbara Cowley-Durst, Judith Friedman, Dorothy Patterson, Linda Sternberg

GENERAL MANAGER Donald H. Miller, Jr.

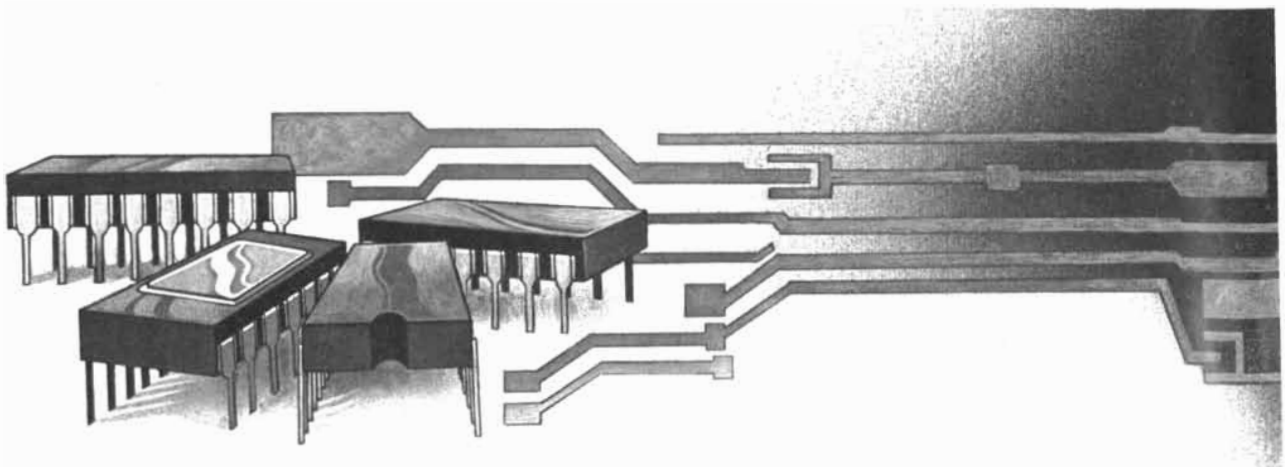
ADVERTISING DIRECTOR C. John Kirby

ASSISTANT TO THE PUBLISHER George S. Conn

CIRCULATION MANAGER William H. Yokel

PUBLISHED MONTHLY BY SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC., 415 MADISON AVENUE, NEW YORK, N.Y. 10017. COPYRIGHT © 1977 BY SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED. PRINTED IN THE U.S.A. NO PART OF THIS ISSUE MAY BE REPRODUCED BY ANY MECHANICAL, PHOTOGRAPHIC OR ELECTRONIC PROCESS, OR IN THE FORM OF A PHONOGRAPHIC RECORDING, NOR MAY IT BE STORED IN A RETRIEVAL SYSTEM, TRANSMITTED OR OTHERWISE COPIED FOR PUBLIC OR PRIVATE USE WITHOUT WRITTEN PERMISSION OF THE PUBLISHER. SECOND-CLASS POSTAGE PAID AT NEW YORK, N.Y., AND AT ADDITIONAL MAILING OFFICES. AUTHORIZED AS SECOND-CLASS MAIL BY THE POST OFFICE DEPARTMENT, OTTAWA, CANADA, AND FOR PAYMENT OF POSTAGE IN CASH. SUBSCRIPTION RATE: $18 PER YEAR, U.S., ITS POSSESSIONS AND CANADA; $22 PER YEAR, ALL OTHER COUNTRIES

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC



"Science Fiction, my electronic eye," great-grandfather said. "Half the time it's not fiction at all, just premature fact."

Looking Back On Tomorrow

by Boni Peluso

"Well, Bobby, how about a story before bedtime?" great-grandfather asked as he tucked me snugly into my weightless bubble.

"Oh, yes tell me some more about the old days and what they were like."

He smiled and squeezed my arm. "OK son, I know just the thing. Long ago, back in 1999, I was being transferred from a unit control center in the New City to Space Station Zenith 1. While packing I found an old, old copy of *Scientific American*. It was yellow and rumpled and dated—imagine this—September 1977! At that time periodicals were printed on sheets of wood pulp."

"Wow! No playback cards?"

"Nope, just paper. Anyhow, that issue of the magazine was special, all about *microelectronics*. Know what that is?"

My eyes grew big and I shook my head.

"Don't fret son," he said, "you'll be programmed with Alpha waves soon enough. Anyway, I guess I kept that magazine because at the time I was working for Fairchild Camera and Instrument." Thinking back, he glowed with pride. "You know, I bet we were about the best microelectronics company in the whole world." Misty-eyed, great-grandfather paused, then went on.

"Bobby, when I was about your age, something happened which changed the destiny of mankind. Scientists and engineers created the first electronic computer; called it Eniac. 30 tons of wires, metal, electrodes, technology and spit. What an impact it made, boy. But believe me, it was only the beginning."

"What happened next, great-grandfather?" I asked excitedly.

He rubbed his gray wrinkled face and smiled down at me. "Let's see . . . well, the next innovation was the transistor, back in . . . oh, 1948. Then in 1961, Fairchild invented—listen close, boy—the monolithic integrated circuit, which was thousands of transistors miniaturized on a single chip."

"Wow, no foolin', huh?"

"But even that got too big, so in the '70s, Fairchild miniaturized thousands of integrated circuits and put *them* on one chip. So think how small a transistor had to be then."

"How could they make stuff so small?" I squeaked.

"Ya see, son, Fairchild was the first to use MEBES."

"MEBES?"

"Yep, an electron beam mask making machine for VLSI circuit production. It cut the time to create the circuit masks from 6 to 8 weeks to only a few days. So, Bobby, mass production of miniatures became possible thanks to MEBES."

"Oh...tell me some more, great-grandfather."

"OK, let's go back a little bit. By the time my *Scientific American* came out, Fairchild had a dandy little microprocessor called the F8 that had the same memory and computing power of the 3000-cubic-foot Eniac. Except—get this Bobby—the F8 fit in the palm of your hand!"

"What?" I stopped sucking on my nutrient tube. "It fit in your hand?"

Great-grandfather chuckled. "Some people used it to play tic-tac-toe on their television sets."

I guess I must have looked puzzled, because he explained, "I forgot you've never seen a TV. Television was a very simple form of our Video-Com units. Very primitive, really; they were just receivers. All you could get on them were sports, entertainment programs, scheduled news and such—no regular interplanetary relays like today. And the owner had no control over what was broadcast except to change the channel."

"Wow."

"But, fortunately son, technology advanced enough so that by the 1980s TV became a central terminal for personal communications. More practicality and less frou-frou, know what I mean, boy?"

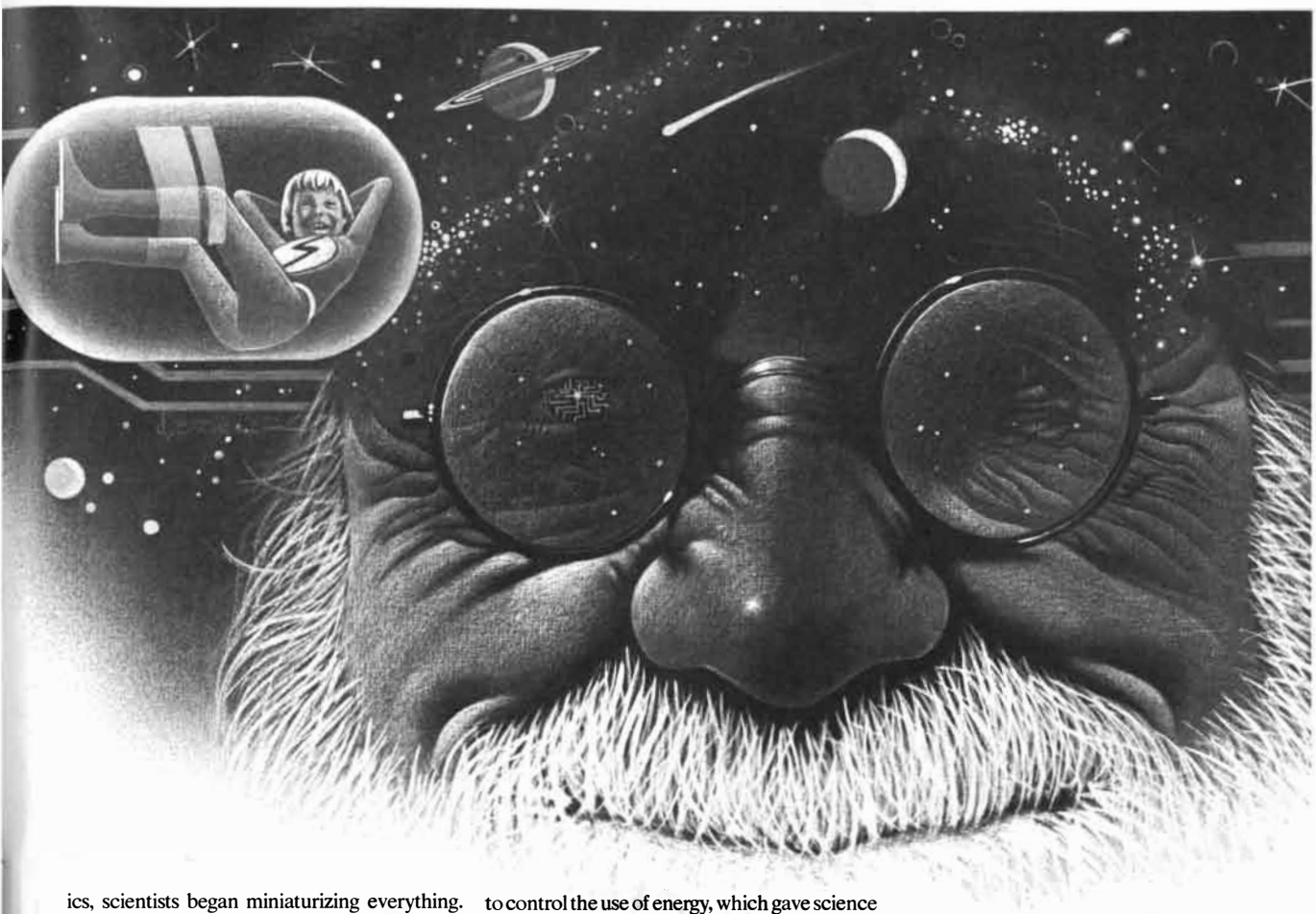
I nodded upside down, as the weightless controls had begun activating in my bubble.

He chuckled and continued, "Well, next there was picture-on-picture. Imagine, you could watch two different games of SpaceBall. One full screen, the other a few square inches in the corner of the set. Then, thanks to Teletext, people could dial in daily news on their sets whenever they wanted it. Later, a device was added so you could call up the Yellow Pages, you know, that book I showed you in the World Communications Museum. So, by this time, TV came with all kinds of built-in video games. But better than that, the same mechanism led the way to programmed learning on changeable cartridges." Great-grandfather winked, "That's how come I'm so smart today."

"Gee, I wish I could have seen all that. What else happened?"

"Well, with the knowledge of microelectron-

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC



ics, scientists began miniaturizing everything. They had computers no bigger than my thumb, little TV communicators the size of a wallet and rocket guidance systems no bigger than an alarm clock."

"No kidding!" I dropped my body regulator in amazement.

"Really. Then, finally, some smart cookie of a scientist combined the TV, telephone and computer—shoved them into an old cigar box, stuck a holoscope on top and voila! The first VideoCom unit. You couldn't run them with brain waves or anything," great-grandfather sniffed, "but it *was* another step in scientific advancement."

He grew quiet suddenly and a faraway look came over him. "Gosh, all this talk about TV reminds me of a program I used to watch during my Fairchild days. It was about this man who had been in a terrible accident, but was miraculously rebuilt, mostly from electronic parts. I thought it was just science fiction, until a decade later the very same technology restored my eyes and most of my other vital organs. Science fiction, my electronic eye! Half the time it's not fiction at all, just premature fact!"

Afraid great-grandfather was about to shut down for the night, I said, "Tell me some more about energy and computers and stuff."

"Oh, all right," he laughed. "You know that energy controller in your mother's room? It was first developed in 1985. Back in those days, people were still using natural gas and Type I electricity for power, but resources were running out fast. Not to mention the environment. So your home minicomputer was developed to control the use of energy, which gave science enough time to get the Nucleosolar System operational. The first home computer couldn't even fit in a breadbox. Now it's about the size of a half-dollar.

"Let me see, what else...oh, yeah. About the same time, people used to travel 30 to 40 miles to work just to sit at a desk. But electronics made it possible for them to receive the office at home on their VideoCom units, which, by then, were collecting business and personal data of all types. Isn't it great, Bobby, what microelectronics have done for us?"

I floated and smiled in agreement. I could tell great-grandfather was proud of the tremendous contribution he and Fairchild had made to electronics. Well . . . it *seemed* like pride. Deep down I thought androids couldn't really feel emotion, but this one great-grandfather had programmed with his own memory bank. It was just like having him with me.

We discussed a few more inventions, then looking at his antique Fairchild LCD watch, he jumped and gasped in mock surprise. "My boy, it seems that it's way past your bedtime."

"But what about microelectronics stories?" I asked.

He smiled at me. "Well, how about if I take you to the Electronics Pavilion tomorrow?"

"Oh, boy! Really?"

He nodded and, as he dimmed the lights, I settled down for sleep, thinking of all the ancient electronic miracles I would see—like the Fairchild F8 Microprocessor.

Gee. I wonder if they'd let me hold it in my hand?

FAIRCHILD

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN

Offprints

Each article in each issue of SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN is available in a separate Offprint starting January 1977

Offprints will be ready for delivery by the end of the month following the month of issue. In addition, over 1,000 selected articles from earlier issues are available in Offprints and are listed in catalogue (see form below).

Individual and Corporate Orders
Offprints may be ordered in any quantity and combination. Price: $.35 each; $5.00 minimum; payment with order. Coupon below suggests form of order.

School and College Orders
Offprints adopted for classroom use may be ordered direct or through campus bookstore. Price: $.35 each. Student sets of 10 or more Offprints are collated by publisher and delivered as sets to bookstore. Offprint Readers, pre-selected course-oriented sets of Offprints, are accompanied by selector's commentary relating the articles to one another and to formal course work. Write for catalogue.

W. H. Freeman and Company
660 Market Street, San Francisco, Cal 94104

Please send me Offprints:

Title of Article	*Quantity*

Total _____
Multiply by $ .35
Payment Enclosed $.

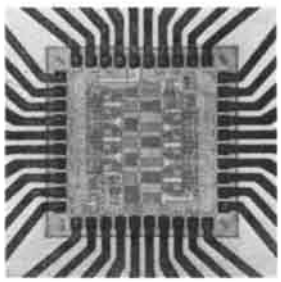
Minimum order $5.00, payment with order
California residents add sales tax

☐ Please send free Offprint catalogue

Name

Address

City and State *Zip*



THE COVER

The photograph on the cover symbolizes the theme of this issue of SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN: microelectronics, the art of putting complex electronic circuits on "chips" of silicon roughly a quarter of an inch square. The blue area in the center of the photograph is a single chip, a high-speed current-mode logic integrated circuit made by Texas Instruments Incorporated for a Honeywell Information Systems computer. Arrayed around the chip are 40 leads that connect it with its external environment. The leads are made of tin-plated copper. They are connected by an automatic process in which they are bonded by heat and compression to gold bumps plated at edge of the chip. The photograph was made by Fritz Goro in the Laboratory for Applied Microscopy of E. Leitz, Inc.

THE ILLUSTRATIONS

Cover photograph by Fritz Goro

Page	Source
62–63	Jon Brenneis
64	Fritz Goro (*left*), Fairchild Semiconductor (*right*)
65	Fritz Goro
66	Ben Rose
71	Fritz Goro
72–81	Gabor Kiss
83	Texas Instruments Incorporated
84–93	Gabor Kiss
104	Guenter Albrecht-Buehler (*top*)
110–111	Ben Rose
112	George V. Kelvin
113–119	Jon Brenneis
120	Jon Brenneis (*top*), William Roth (*middle*), Zilog Inc. (*bottom*)
121	George V. Kelvin (*top*), William Roth (*bottom*)
122	George V. Kelvin
123	Mostek Corporation
124	George V. Kelvin
126–128	Jon Brenneis
131	Mostek Corporation
135–136	Allen Beechel
138	David A. Hodges (*top*), Allen Beechel (*bottom*)
139	Allen Beechel
140	Fairchild Semiconductor (*top*), Texas Instruments Incorporated (*bottom*)
142	Allen Beechel
144	International Business Machines Corporation (*top*), Allen Beechel (*bottom*)
147	Intel Corporation
151	Adolph E. Brotman
153	James Bell
156–160	Adolph E. Brotman
162	James Bell
170	Ralph Morse
171	Ralph Morse (*top*)
172	Ralph Morse
174	International Business Machines Corporation (*top*)
176	Digital Equipment Corporation
181	James Bell
183	Allen Beechel
184	Ralph Morse
186	James Bell (*top*), Allen Beechel (*bottom*)
187	Ralph Morse
188	The Foxboro Company
190	Allen Beechel
193	James Bell
196	James Bell (*top*), Fritz Goro (*bottom*)
197	James Bell (*top*), Fritz Goro (*bottom*)
198–200	Ben Rose
202	James Bell (*top*)
205	Ben Rose
211–212	Fritz Goro
214	Alan D. Iselin
216	Ralph Morse (*top*), TRW Inc. (*bottom*)
217	James Bell (*top*), Ben Rose (*bottom*)
218	Digital Equipment Corporation (*top*)
219–226	Alan D. Iselin
230	Evans & Sutherland Computer Corporation
232	James P. Mayer
234–244	Jon Brenneis
248–252	Michael Goodman

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

ONLY PIONEER COULD INTRODUCE A QUARTZ PHASE LOCKED LOOP TURNTABLE AND CALL IT A BARGAIN.

Today, there's nothing more accurate than a quartz phase locked loop turntable.

It's the kind of turntable they use at radio stations and recording studios. Where people are more interested in getting a great sound than getting a great price.

Well, Pioneer has just introduced the same kind of quartz turntable. Except ours was designed for people who *do* care about price.

It's called the PL570.

And like the professional quartz turntables you'll find in all those radio stations and recording studios across the country, it features a direct-drive motor that's quieter than ordinary motors.

Plus an electronic strobe circuit that lets you adjust the PL570 far more accurately than conventional strobes.

And the same kind of quartz phase locked loop technology that automatically corrects the turntable speed to account for things like the weight of the record and even the amount of stylus pressure. So your records can always sound perfect, because they're always spinning perfectly.

But where the average quartz phase locked loop turntable offers you all this accuracy for around $800, our new PL570 does it for under $400.* Which, you'll have to agree, is quite a bargain. (And that's even before you find out that the PL570 is one of the few fully-automatic quartz-lock turntables available today at *any* price.)

Of course, if you're looking for something a little less sophisticated than our PL570, there's still no need to look any further than Pioneer.

In all, we make eight high quality turntables. And while they may not all offer the same kind of features as our PL570, you can bank on at least one thing.

They all feature the same kind of value.

High Fidelity Components

PIONEER®

WE BRING IT BACK ALIVE.

©1977 U.S. Pioneer Electronics, 85 Oxford Drive, Moonachie, New Jersey 07074

*The value shown in this ad is for informational purposes only. Actual resale prices will be set by the individual Pioneer dealer at his option.

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

START YOUR MEMBERSHIP

International Software Clearinghouse
A one-stop source for programmable calculator information. Provides access to the best software written, RPN or AOS.

You Get **Applications Programs** 4 Books, 80 Programs a year. Practical value in fields such as engineering and science. Originality and quality provide interdisciplinary exposure to great ideas. From authors worldwide.

You Get **Calculator International**. 2 Issues a year. An insider's newsletter reporting significant trends and discoveries in software and hardware. Access to specialized programs. Software wanted by companies and individuals.

Earn Consulting Fees. The **Clearinghouse** connects software buyers with sellers.
You Can Be Published Too. Publication open to entire programmable calculator community. Annual $500 award for most outstanding program. Write for–"Guide for Contributors."

Special Membership Offer. Start your membership now. Receive a $10 gift copy of **Applications Programs.**

Annual Membership $45. Moneyback guarantee. Master Charge/VISA accepted. International add $7. **To Join Right Now**–send check or charge number and expiration date. Detailed information about **Applications Programs** and **Calculator International**, including back volumes, upon request.
By phone–call 503-631-2214.

INTERNATIONAL SOFTWARE CLEARINGHOUSE
Route 2, Box 965A
Estacada, Oregon 97023

Harpsichord & Fortepiano Kits

For brochures:
FRANK HUBBARD
HARPSICHORDS, INC.
185A-S Lyman Street
Waltham, Mass. 02154

LETTERS

Sirs:

In Margaret M. Byard's intriguing article "Poetic Responses to the Copernican Revolution" [SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, June] a painting by Tintoretto, *The Origin of the Milky Way,* is used to illustrate a mythical explanation of that starry track. It is not Venus, as stated in the article, but Hera whose milk flows out to form the Milky Way. Pausanias (IX, 25, 2), Eratosthenes, the Greek astronomer (*Katasterismoi* 44), and Hyginus (*Poeticon Astronomicon,* Book IV), among others, tell the story: Zeus brought one of his many out-of-wedlock sons, Heracles, to be suckled by his wife, Hera. The infant strongman sucked with such force that a great quantity of the milk was spilled across the heavens. Hera is identified in the painting by the presence of her peacocks, and Zeus by his eagle and thunderbolt.

The impact of the new science on baroque painters went beyond that of a generally increased feeling for spatial effects. As an example, the painter Lodovico Cigoli (1559–1613) corresponded with Galileo for four years (1609–1613). Cigoli also wrote a treatise on painting, *Trattato di prospettiva pratica,* which may have helped to transform the language of science into a body of theory for his fellow painters.

SUSAN E. WEGNER

Bryn Mawr College
Bryn Mawr, Pa.

Sirs:

In her excellent article Margaret M. Byard says that Milton has sometimes been described as a "reluctant Copernican." This description is strongly suggested by the following passage (not included in Dr. Byard's article) from *Paradise Lost,* Book VIII, lines 70 to 84:

This to attain, whether Heaven move or Earth
Imports not, if thou reckon right; the rest
From Man or Angel the great Architect
Did wisely to conceal, and not divulge
His secrets, to be scanned by them who ought
Rather admire. Or if they list to try
Conjecture, he his fabric of the Heavens
Hath left to their disputes—perhaps to move
His laughter at their quaint opinions wide
Hereafter, when they come to model heaven,
And calculate the stars; how they will wield
The mighty frame; how build, unbuild, contrive
To save appearances; how gird the Sphere
With Centric and Eccentric scribbled o'er,
Cycle and Epicycle, Orb in Orb. . . .

There is also an obvious foreshadowing of the relativistic world view; in fact, Sir Arthur Eddington placed part of this passage on the page opposite the preface of his *Space, Time and Gravitation* (1923).

ALEXANDER V. BUSHKOVITCH

Professor of Physics, Emeritus
St. Louis University
St. Louis, Mo.

Sirs:

In reviewing *Famine and Human Development: The Dutch Hunger Winter of 1944/45* [SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, July] Philip Morrison states that the anti-Semitic chant "hep-hep" is of obscure origin. The term is derived from the initials of the phrase *Hierusalem est perdita* ("Jerusalem is lost"), which was chanted by Roman soldiers escorting Jewish prisoners during the Judeo-Roman wars.

M. A. TYBER, M.D.

Toronto, Ont.

Scientific American, September, 1977; Vol. 237, No. 3. Published monthly by Scientific American, Inc., 415 Madison Avenue, New York, N.Y. 10017; Gerard Piel, president; Dennis Flanagan, vice-president; Donald H. Miller, Jr., vice-president and secretary; George S. Conn, treasurer; Arlene Wright, assistant treasurer.

Editorial correspondence should be addressed to The Editors, SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, 415 Madison Avenue, New York, N.Y. 10017. Manuscripts are submitted at the author's risk and will not be returned unless accompanied by postage.

Advertising correspondence should be addressed to C. John Kirby, Advertising Director, SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, 415 Madison Avenue, New York, N.Y. 10017.

Offprint correspondence and orders should be addressed to W. H. Freeman and Company, 660 Market Street, San Francisco, Calif. 94104. For each offprint ordered please enclose 35 cents.

Subscription correspondence should be addressed to Subscription Manager, SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, 415 Madison Avenue, New York, N.Y. 10017. For change of address, notify us at least four weeks in advance. Send both old and new addresses and enclose an address imprint from a recent issue. (Date of last issue on your subscription is shown at upper right-hand corner of each month's mailing label.)

Name

New Address

Old Address

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

Advertisement

DP Dialogue

Notes and observations from IBM that may prove of interest to the engineering community.

This welder at Ingalls Shipbuilding, has access to an IBM computer to verify that his construction drawings are up to date. Workers and engineers throughout the huge shipyard access a wide range of computer applications through nearby terminals.

Computer Helps Shipbuilders Communicate at Ingalls

In the sprawling 800 acres of one of the largest shipyards in the United States, a welder about to start on a critical assembly may be a mile from the engineering offices. To verify that he is working from the latest drawing, he has access to a nearby computer terminal where he can receive a prompt response from an online System/370 Model 158.

Says Richard Shields, manager of technical and engineering applications for Ingalls Shipbuilding division of Litton Industries in Pascagoula, Mississippi: "The system can help our skilled workers become much more productive."

Litton provides direct access to the computer by means of Time Sharing Option (TSO). This IBM subsystem enables workers in many phases of the shipbuilding process to activate an application through simple terminal procedures.

During the design phase, naval architects and engineers can observe progress and interact directly with the computer to make corrections as they work.

During manufacturing, the computer produces a tape which guides a numerically controlled flame cutter in turning out pieces of flat steel plate. It also helps design the bending templates or fixtures on which the plates are formed into curved sections of hull.

"We make wide use of numerical control," Shields says, "and through TSO we have a quick and accurate way to define required parts. The parts programmer enters data at a terminal and the computer error-checks it, line by line. Parts programs run correctly the first time, and plate cutters and welders can get revised tapes earlier.

"TSO brings the responsiveness of interactive computing to design and manufacturing. It helps get vital data from the engineers out to the production workers where it's needed, when it's needed."

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

Advertisement

Computer Model Throws Light on Solar Energy

Converting the sun's radiant energy directly into electricity could contribute significantly to the world's supply of energy. But the associated technical problems are complicated enormously by the fact that the sun's direct radiation is not the only important energy source.

A very significant portion of the energy of the sun is reduced in strength before it can reach the surface of the earth. This visible and invisible light is absorbed and scattered by the atmosphere — its water droplets, dust particles and gases — and the scattered radiation arrives at a solar cell along a nearly infinite number of indirect paths.

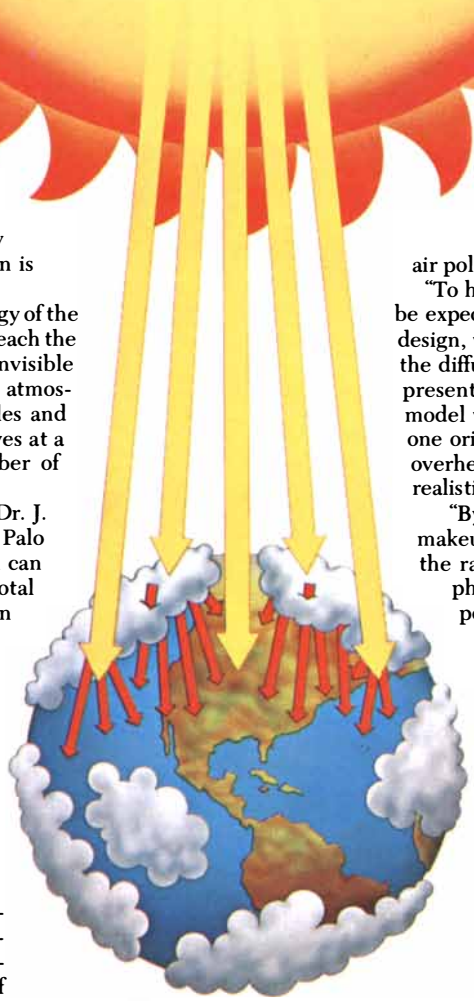
At the surface of the earth, explains Dr. J. V. Dave of the IBM Scientific Center in Palo Alto, California, such indirect radiation can range as high as 40 percent of the total energy on sunny days, and 100 percent on mildly overcast days. A system utilizing all available radiation, he points out, can lead to a more efficient harvesting of solar energy under average conditions as encountered at various feasible locations.

Using the computer, Dr. Dave is experimenting with a solar energy model to get a better picture of the total radiation energy arriving at the earth's surface.

"We live at the bottom of a very complex atmospheric soup," he notes, "a mixture of gases, water droplets and suspended particles. The effect of each of these is different for each wavelength of solar radiation. And the geographical location of the solar cell panel, its altitude and orientation, time of day, season, weather and natural as well as man-made air pollution exert an influence.

"To help estimate the energy output that can be expected from a proposed solar energy system design, we hope to construct a computer model of the diffuse solar radiation in the atmosphere. At present we have completed an experimental model with one simplification: it considers only one orientation of the solar cell—aimed directly overhead, at the zenith. It uses a simplified but realistic representation of the atmosphere.

"By varying the time of day, atmospheric makeup, and other parameters, we have solved the radiative transfer equation for our atmospheric models for several thousands of data points. Taking our simplifying assumption about the orientation of the solar cell into account, these results indicate that the diffuse radiation plays a very significant role in determining the performance of a terrestrial solar cell. We are now planning for the radiation modeling for an arbitrarily oriented solar cell which requires several million data points."



Important amounts of solar energy reach the earth's surface indirectly, after dispersion in the atmosphere.

Keeping Projects on Target with the Computer

As experienced project managers know, it is one thing to plan—and another to carry out—a big multi-faceted project, such as the development of a space vehicle or the construction of a major new process plant.

Riding herd on an ongoing program means coping with the unexpected: technical problems, loss of key people, tasks which overrun the budgeted money or time.

It is vital to catch such problems early. But even so, many times it is impossible to work out intuitively a solution that keeps everything on track. There are too many variables: precedence relationships, time, cost, and manpower calculations.

IBM offers two computer programs, either of which can be an important aid to project managers: Project Management System IV (PMS IV) and Project Analysis and Control System (PROJACS).

Far beyond the precedence and "i-j" (point-to-point) diagrams which it can generate, each program incorporates proven tools for managing a project in its totality—helping optimize resource allocations and calculating detailed work schedules on the basis of user-supplied constraints. And each assists in continuously monitoring progress against the schedule, budget, and resource requirements.

Each program produces a basic set of reports, in formats whose usefulness has been proven in hundreds of actual projects. These can be used intact, or they can easily be modified to meet unique reporting needs. Accurate, detailed and timely, the reports reveal incipient problems before they become crises.

Both PMS IV and PROJACS suit a wide variety of engineering and other projects—development of an information or programming system, for example, or installation of a manufacturing facility. The manager of any large-scale phased project, facing a constant stream of difficult problems, will find either IBM program to be a powerful aid in marshaling the decision-making information he needs.

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

Advertisement

A Cracking Good Sample Tracker

"The online system helps meet our goal of moving all samples through the lab within three to eight days. Manually, it took as long as 20 to 30 days. And we respond promptly to 1,500 phone inquiries a month, retrieving test data on the screen of a terminal while the caller is on the line."

John Brent is manager of the Analytical Control Laboratory in the Davison Chemical Division of W. R. Grace & Company. The computer system he is describing tracks 50,000 samples—over 350,000 analytical determinations—each year. All told, over a six-year period, Brent projects tangible savings attributable to the system of $100,000.

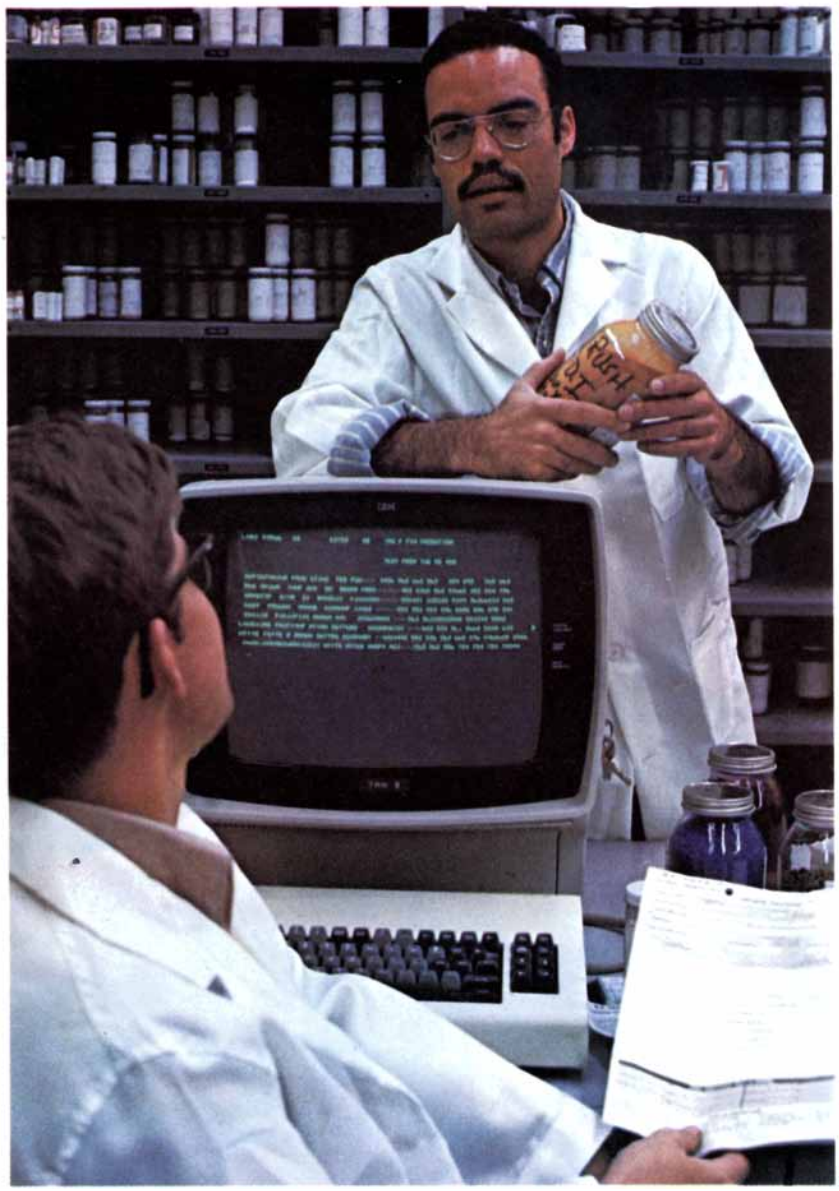
The laboratory, part of the division's Curtis Bay Works, serves Davison's petroleum refinery customers, who need periodic analyses of catalysts from their cracking units. It also helps perform quality control for chemical production at Davison and supports research activities within the division.

As each sample arrives, a description of tests to be performed is entered through a terminal into the division's IBM System/370 Model 135, 10 miles away in downtown Baltimore.

After a test is completed, results are keyed into a terminal and the computer adds them to the record. The program automatically detects test values outside the expected range and notifies the analyst through the terminal display.

Brent adds: "With the data in the computer, it was simple to program regular reports of the status of work in the laboratory. We get a list of incompleted samples every morning, a breakdown of the lab workload, tables of analysis standards, and a list of samples which have been in the laboratory more than three days.

"Since we installed the system our volume of work in the lab has increased by 24 percent, with no increase in staff."



Analysts at Davison Chemical's Analytical Control Laboratory enter a list of the tests to be performed through a terminal in the sample room.

IBM Software Products

These program products are implemented in the user-oriented APL programming language. Each is designed to be operated interactively, through a terminal.

1. APL Statistical Library A set of routines for performing functions widely used in statistical analysis and linear programming.

2. APL General Purpose Simulation System (APL GPSS) Models any system comprising a series of discrete stages or transaction nodes.

3. GRAPHPAK Generates linear or logarithmic data plots, and fits curves to defined data. A descriptive geometry component scales, translates and displays a projection of three-dimensional objects.

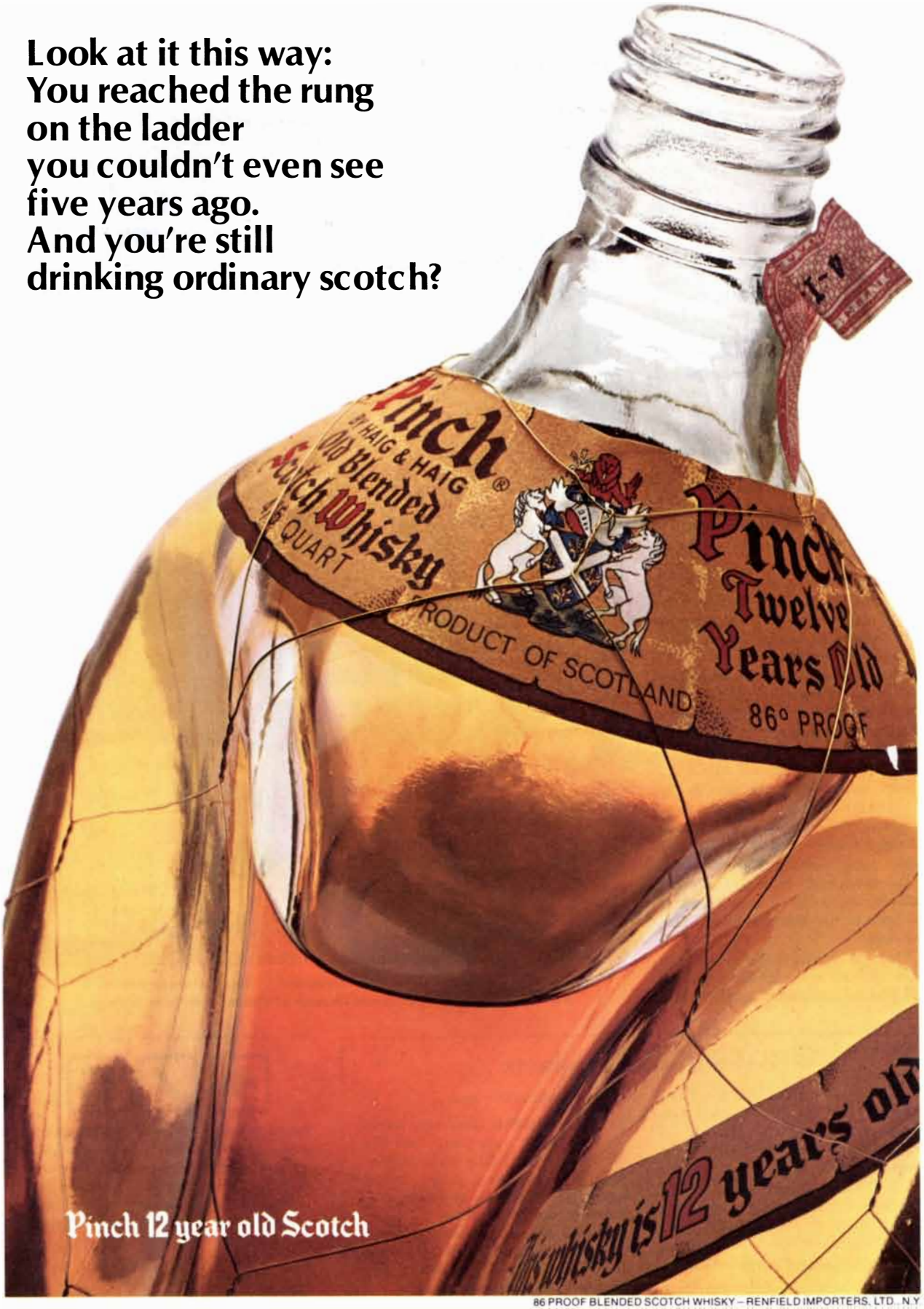
For more information on these Software Products, contact your local IBM branch or write: Editor of DP Dialogue, IBM Data Processing Division, White Plains, N.Y. 10604.

In the previous edition of DP Dialogue in this magazine, a statement used to illustrate the APL programming language contained an extraneous character. The correct APL command for accepting, summing and printing a series of numbers is +/□.

IBM®
Data Processing Division

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

**Look at it this way:
You reached the rung
on the ladder
you couldn't even see
five years ago.
And you're still
drinking ordinary scotch?**



86 PROOF BLENDED SCOTCH WHISKY – RENFIELD IMPORTERS, LTD., N.Y.

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

50 AND 100 YEARS AGO

SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN

SEPTEMBER, 1927: "Two weeks after Captain Lindbergh landed in France a monoplane of Bellanca design, named *Columbia,* soared into the air at six o'clock on the morning of June 4 and left Long Island bound for Europe. It carried Clarence D. Chamberlin and Charles A. Levine as a passenger. Shortly after three o'clock the next afternoon the plane circled the S.S. *Mauritania,* 340 miles from Land's End, England. Soon it was reported over Normandy and then over Germany, where the fuel ran low and forced a landing at Eisleben, about 110 miles southwest of Berlin. The plane had been in the air 42½ hours and had flown 3,911 miles."

"Each of the three recent flights to Europe has its own special distinction. That of Lindbergh stands out preeminently because he went absolutely alone and squarely hit his objective, Paris. Chamberlin will be remembered as the first man to carry a passenger to Europe and at the same time break the long-distance record. As for the third flight, Commander Byrd believes he reached Paris, but so thick was the weather that he had no sight of the powerful searchlights or of the rockets that were sent up from Le Bourget field to aid him. At this point, with the young Norwegian flyer Balchen at the wheel, Byrd decided to return to the coast and take the risk of landing on the water. This he did near the little village of Ver-sur-Mer, where, guided by the flash of the lighthouse, Balchen brought the ship down. The landing gear was stripped as it struck the water 200 feet from the beach, but the four aviators, Byrd, Noville, Acosta and Balchen, reached shore by inflating an emergency raft and sustained no more serious injuries than shock, bruises and, in the case of Acosta, a fractured shoulder blade. It is safe to say that in spite of this mishap, of the three planes that have made the trans-Atlantic trip the big three-engine Fokker monoplane Byrd used most nearly approached the type that will be developed in the future for trans-Atlantic flying."

"Although an airplane flight from San Francisco to Honolulu does not compare in either distance or difficulty with a flight from New York to Paris, the recent exploit of two Army officers, Lieutenants Maitland and Hegenberger, is a highly meritorious performance. The distance covered was 2,300 miles as against about 3,600 miles to Paris, and the weather was certainly more propitious than that encountered by the trans-Atlantic flyers. The plane was a tri-motored Fokker monoplane, practically identical with the one used by Commander Byrd. There was one respect, however, in which these Army flyers were confronted with a far more perilous and perplexing task than that of flying the Atlantic. We refer to the fact that the Hawaiian Islands cover so little space in a north and south direction, or at right angles to the line of flight, that on the map they look not much larger than the head of a pin. Hence whereas the Atlantic flyers had a 1,000-mile stretch of continent to aim at, the trans-Pacific flyers had to hit a target a few miles across or, missing the islands, fly fruitlessly into the unknown wastes of the Pacific. As it turned out the navigation was magnificent, and the flyers struck the Hawaiian Islands 'squarely on the nose.'"

SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN

SEPTEMBER, 1877: "Professor Asaph Hall of the Naval Observatory recently announced the interesting discovery of two satellites attendant on the planet Mars. At about 11 o'clock on the night of August 16 Professor Hall, with the aid of the great 26-inch refractor telescope, noticed a very small star following Mars by a few seconds. Three hours later he looked again and to his surprise found that the distance between the planet and the star had not increased, although the former was moving at the rate of 15 seconds per hour. On the morning of August 17 another satellite appeared, and its identity was quickly recognized. The distance of the first satellite from the planet is between 15,000 and 16,000 miles, which is less than that of any other known satellite from its primary. It was exceedingly small, having a diameter of not more than 100 miles. The second satellite is believed to be still closer to the planet and to have a period of less than eight hours. The discovery is a triumph both for Professor Hall and for Mr. Alvan Clark, the maker of the great telescope. It shows what may be expected of the still more colossal instrument that at no very distant day we hope to see established in the Lick Observatory."

"Muscular contraction, it is known, is always accompanied by electric phenomena; the difference in electric potential between two points on a muscle undergoes a diminution that, according to Bernstein, precedes by about a hundredth of a second the contraction of the muscle. This electric variation has been observed on various muscles, in particular on the heart (by Du Bois-Reymond and Kühne), and recently M. Marey has represented it graphically by photographing the indications of a Lippmann capillary electrometer. The *Journal de Physique* states that M. De la Roche has tried the experiment on the heart of a living man. Two points on the epidermis of the chest were connected with the poles of a capillary electrometer by means of electrodes, each electrode formed of a bar of amalgamated zinc, with a plug of muslin at its lower end saturated with sulphate of zinc. Held with insulating handles, the bars were applied, one with its plug opposite the point of the heart, under the left nipple, and the other to another point on the chest. The mercurial column was then seen to execute a series of very distinct periodical pulsations synchronous with the pulse; each pulsation even marked the double movement of the heart (of the auricles and ventricles)."

"At the recent meeting of the British Association, Mr. Francis Galton discussed the ideal criminal, in whom he detects three peculiarities of character: his conscience is almost deficient, his instincts are vicious and his power of self control is very weak. Through the examination of many thousands of photographs of criminals Galton was able, by examining their physiognomic characteristics, to divide them into three well-marked groups, respectively perpetrators of murder, manslaughter and burglaries; perpetrators of felonies and forgeries, and perpetrators of sexual crimes. In this way he was able to examine how far the peculiarities mentioned above may be correlated with physical features."

"From the statistical tables given in Poor's 'Manual of the Railroads of the United States for 1877–8' it appears that while the gross earnings of the roads have fallen off by nearly six million dollars the net earnings have increased by nearly a million dollars, and this is ascribed chiefly to the great economies practiced in conducting the operations of the lines. In furtherance of this system of economy there have been, as our readers are aware, reductions in the wages paid railroad employees. These reductions have been in many cases claimed by the persons affected to render the returns for their labor inadequate for a living support, and accordingly the strike, the usual coercive measure adopted by employees under such circumstances, was resorted to. It may be said that in dealing with so large a class of employees the laws of demand and supply, inexorable as they are, should only be considered, and that philanthropy has no place. We think otherwise. The life of a railway employee has its duties and dangers that cannot, morally at least, find compensation in the market rate of wages."

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

A revolutionary plan that can save capitalism.

Runaway inflation... high unemployment... boom-or-bust cycles... government bail-outs of large corporations... threatened insolvency of the Social Security system.

The American economy is taking a severe and potentially fatal beating.

But our capitalistic system can be made to work—for everyone. *A Piece of the Action* shows how every family could eventually own stock worth $100,000—and, at the same time, our economy could get the mass purchasing power it so desperately needs.

Stuart M. Speiser argues persuasively for a form of capitalism that has intrigued conservatives and liberals alike. His plan shows how corporate credit power and capital expenditures could be used to provide every family with an economic grubstake in the American future.

This is no pie-in-the-sky pipedream. It is a workable way to spread wealth without taking it away from anyone—and, at the same time, save the American system.

Speiser's Universal Capitalism is an economic idea whose time has come. It will, in fact, soon be the subject of Congressional hearings.

Read *A Piece of the Action* now. Form your own opinions—because you, too, have a stake in the future of American capitalism.

Stuart M. Speiser,
the senior partner in a New York-Washington international law firm, has dealt with the economies of many nations as a result of his litigation work arising out of airline disasters. He has written many works on legal subjects that have been cited as authority by the U.S. Supreme Court. It was his pioneering work with econometrics to determine the legal valuation of human life that led to his conclusion that the American economy can be salvaged—and that Universal Capitalism is the answer.

$14.95 at booksellers or mail coupon below

VNR **10-DAY FREE EXAMINATION**

VAN NOSTRAND REINHOLD
7625 Empire Drive, Florence, Kentucky 41042

Please send me *A Piece of the Action* for 10 days' free examination. At the end of that time I will remit $14.95 plus small handling/delivery cost or return the book without obligation. (Offer good in U.S.A. only. Subject to credit department approval. Payment must accompany order with P.O. box address.)

(Please print)

Name_____

Address_____

City_____

State_____ Zip_____

☐ SAVE! Remit with order—we pay shipping/handling. Same return-refund guaranteed. Local sales tax must be included.

27010-0 S 7001

THE AUTHORS

ROBERT N. NOYCE ("Microelectronics") is chairman of the Intel Corporation. He attended Grinnell College and the Massachusetts Institute of Technology, receiving his Ph.D. in physical electronics from M.I.T. in 1953. Thereafter he worked first on the research staff of the Philco Corporation and then at the Shockley Semiconductor Laboratory, where he took part in the design and development of silicon transistors. In 1957 he helped to found the Fairchild Semiconductor Corporation, where during the next 10 years he served as research director, vice-president and general manager. He left Fairchild in 1968 to cofound Intel, a company "devoted to making the large-scale integration of microelectronic circuits a reality."

JAMES D. MEINDL ("Microelectronic Circuit Elements") is professor of electrical engineering at Stanford University and director of the Stanford Electronics Laboratories. He was educated at Carnegie-Mellon University, receiving his Ph.D. in electrical engineering in 1958. After two years with the Westinghouse Electric Corporation he joined the Army Electronics Laboratory, serving from 1959 to 1967 in several capacities, including as director of the Integrated Electronics Division. In 1967 he went to Stanford as associate professor of electrical engineering. Meindl's current research is focused on the medical applications of integrated-circuit technology, specifically the development of ultrasonic medical diagnostic instruments.

WILLIAM C. HOLTON ("The Large-Scale Integration of Microelectronic Circuits") is director of the Advanced Components Laboratory of Texas Instruments Incorporated. He attended the University of North Carolina, where he was graduated in 1952 with a B.S. in physics. After two and a half years in the Navy he took up graduate work in physics at the University of Illinois, obtaining his Ph.D. in 1960. That year he joined Texas Instruments as a member of the technical staff. In 1967 he was named manager of the Quantum Electronics branch, where he conducted research and development on lasers and integrated optics. He was appointed to his present position in 1973. Holton is currently responsible for directing research and development work on large-scale integrated circuits, electron-beam and X-ray lithography, microwave devices and displays. He still finds time, however, to crew on the racing yacht *Business Machine.*

WILLIAM G. OLDHAM ("The Fabrication of Microelectronic Circuits") is professor of electrical engineering at the University of California at Berkeley. He was educated at Carnegie-Mellon University, receiving his Ph.D. in 1963. After a year on the research staff of the Siemens Corporation in Germany he joined the Berkeley faculty. In 1969 he spent a sabbatical year at the Technische Universität in Munich, and in 1974 he went on leave to the Intel Corporation, where he managed the development of a microelectronic computer memory with a storage capacity of 16,000 bits. Oldham's current research interests focus on techniques for fabricating microelectronic devices of submicrometer dimensions. Outside the laboratory he spends much of his time adding to his extensive collection of working mechanical antiques, such as music boxes and player pianos.

DAVID A. HODGES ("Microelectronic Memories") is professor of electrical engineering and computer sciences at the University of California at Berkeley. He received his bachelor's degree in electrical engineering at Cornell University and his Ph.D. in electrical engineering from Berkeley in 1966. After graduation he worked at the Bell Laboratories, first in the components area at Murray Hill, N.J., and then as head of the Systems Elements Research Department at Holmdel, N.J. He joined the Berkeley faculty in 1970 and has since served as a consultant in the semiconductor and communications-equipment industries.

HOO-MIN D. TOONG ("Microprocessors") is assistant professor of computer science and engineering at the Massachusetts Institute of Technology and also assistant professor of management science at M.I.T.'s Sloan School of Management. He was educated at M.I.T., where he received his electrical engineering and master's degrees in 1969 and his Ph.D. in 1974. Thereafter he joined the M.I.T. faculty. In addition to teaching undergraduate courses in computer science he has been giving lectures on microprocessors throughout the U.S., Europe and the Far East. Toong is in charge of the Digital Systems Laboratory at M.I.T., where his research has been concentrated on software and hardware problems of multiprocessor and distributed-computing systems. He is also applying microprocessor technology to methods for conserving energy and controlling its utilization.

LEWIS M. TERMAN ("The Role of Microelectronics in Data Processing") is a member of the research staff at the Thomas J. Watson Research Center of

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

Get Ready

There are hundreds of new micro-electronic products about to enter the consumer market. Here is how readers of Scientific American can discover them.

If you thought the pocket calculator started a revolution in 1971, just wait.

In the next twelve months more micro-electronic products will be introduced to the consumer than in any other phase of the micro-electronic revolution. Many of these products will 1) come from companies you've never heard of, 2) represent breakthroughs in micro-electronic technology, and 3) provide more conveniences and benefits than ever dreamed possible.

JS&A has been the company most sought after to introduce these new products. Our national advertising campaigns and our system of selling directly to the consumer give high technology companies the opportunity to introduce new products to the market place in the most economical, quickest and most efficient manner.

This article, written for readers of this special issue on micro-electronics, will tell you how we select products at JS&A. It will give you tips on how you can evaluate a new product, and it will give you an insight into how you can keep abreast of all the new and important product developments.

AN INDUSTRY LEADER

Our role in micro-electronic marketing is a matter of record. We introduced the first pocket calculator, literally creating a new industry. We were the first company to nationally introduce the LCD digital watch, and we are at the forefront of every major new product introduction, including a few you will see in this issue.

To achieve these results we have concentrated our efforts on doing only one thing and doing it well—selling micro-electronic products directly to consumers through full-page advertisements in national magazines and newspapers.

HOW WE SELECT A PRODUCT

We have a comprehensive checklist that we go through for each product we select. The questions we ask ourselves include:

1) Does the product use an integrated circuit? This has been the primary area in which we have concentrated.

2) Is the product a major breakthrough or a new application of existing technology? (Both are acceptable criteria.)

3) Is the manufacturer a solid, honest company providing honest value?

4) Is the new technology in a product different enough to require the detail we supply in one of our advertisements? If it is not, then our pioneering efforts are not required and the product may not be that innovative.

5) Does the product have advantages over the conventional version? Does it do its job more efficiently, faster and for less money? "Less money" is the most important key.

6) Can the consumer figure out how to operate it without reading the instructions? If not, how badly is the consumer willing to read the instructions?

7) Is the warranty and back-up service well thought out in advance?

8) Is the product at least one year ahead of all other similar products currently on the market?

9) Is the product a gimmick or an honest contribution of useful new technology?

10) Can our company sell enough of the product to make a decent profit? If the product appeals to too narrow a population segment, then we cannot sell enough of a product to keep our margins low enough to provide good value.

DISCOVER OUR PRODUCTS

How do you find out about these products? Until now, to follow our company and its product introductions you had to be a reader of Scientific American or any of 50 national publications we advertise in or be one of our existing customers.

JS&A will produce its first major catalog listing the newest consumer micro-electronic products that we feel represent the best contributions to micro-electronic technology.

If you are a JS&A customer, you will automatically receive one. If you are not, we will be happy to send you our first issue. It is called "products that think"—a collection of the most advanced micro-electronic consumer products.

In this issue of Scientific American are also a few of the products we are proud to introduce for the first time—products that we feel represent the quality, value and the innovation associated with our company.

Finally, we owe a debt of gratitude to our customers and to micro-electronics—the very science featured in this special issue. We are proud of our position in this field and we hope our contribution has helped both further this new technology and made possible the many conveniences now available to consumers.

JS&A® NATIONAL SALES GROUP

products that think®

To send for your catalog, mail your name and address to: Catalog Department, JS&A National Sales Group, One JS&A Plaza, Northbrook, Illinois 60062.

"products that think" is a registered trademark of the JS&A National Sales Group.

©JS&A Group, Inc.,1977

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

TEACHING DEVICE · ARCADE GAME · MUSICAL INSTRUMENT · HOME COMPUTER

Home Library Computer

The handsome and highly styled Bally Library Computer is made of high impact clear plastic and imitation walnut with gold trim. It measures 5" x 11" x 15" and weighs five pounds.

The new Bally Library Computer provides more entertainment and services than man has ever dreamed possible from a single consumer product.

This is the story of an incredible product. So incredible that we know of no future consumer product that will have such a far-reaching technological impact on society.

The Bally Library Computer is a small console unit that resembles a programmable TV game but whose computing capabilities resemble that of the IBM 5100 currently selling for $10,000. This calculating power and its present and future programs will provide more convenience and benefits than any other recent electronic product.

ELECTRONIC PRINTING CALCULATOR

Imagine the computer as a printing calculator with ten separate memories. You enter the data on the unit's keyboard, but instead of a paper tape, you use your TV screen to scroll out the answers similar to the credits on a movie screen. You can balance your checkbook and then double check your calculations by scrolling back to your first entry. By comparison, an electronic calculator with ten memories alone would cost what this entire computer costs—but there's much more.

A CHALLENGING TEACHING TOOL

Your child inserts a cartridge in the Bally console. Three random math table problems are then flashed on your TV screen. Depending on the speed and accuracy with which those problems are answered, the Bally automatically programs the computer with your child's math level. Problems in addition, subtraction, multiplication and division are then flashed on the screen for the next three minutes, and the computer continually adjusts to a level slightly better than the math level indicated by the previous three answers. The math tables, therefore, remain a challenge no matter how good your child becomes. Psychologists, who were consulted by Bally, helped design the cassette. They stated that the cassette should stimulate math learning and improve grades.

On the same math cartridge is a two player game called Math Bingo. It adjusts to each player's ability so a parent can play against a child or two children can compete against each other at their own math levels—both with an equal opportunity to win. You first answer a math table problem similar to the first exercise, and with a pistol-grip pointer you move a square on your TV screen to the correct answer position on your TV bingo card. The game involves both math skill and dexterity. Each game is totally different since the bingo cards have a million different possibilities. Scoring is constantly displayed, and a typical game lasts approximately three minutes. You can play as many consecutive games as you wish. However, to start the score over, you press the reset button.

FUN AND ACTION ARCADE GAMES

Picture nine baseball players running out on your TV screen to the sounds of "Take Me Out to the Ball Game" as you step up to bat. That's the scene with Baseball, the arcade cartridge that plays two teams against each other with play so real that you hear all the music, sound effects and see all the action. There are walks, balls, and such realism that the pitcher covers first base when a ball is hit to right field—just like the real game. There are double plays, walks and errors—all part of nine innings of Baseball. On the same cartridge are several paddle ball games but with a new twist. Players can move the paddle, not only up or down like most TV games, but sideways and diagonally.

The Bally circuit board contains 34 integrated circuits including a Z80 microprocessor. This package represents more computing power in the hands of the consumer than was thought possible this early in the history of micro electronics. The mass production of these components and circuit board has made possible a quantum leap in lowering the cost of what normally would be a very expensive system.

Other popular arcade games include, Sea Wolf, Red Barron, Tank and dozens of games only previously available at arcades. These same games cost arcade owners up to two thousand dollars each.

MORE VALUE PER FEATURE

Let's quickly review the features—an electronic printing calculator with ten memories, a teaching machine that adjusts to your child's math level and an arcade center that replaces about $10,000 worth of electronic arcade games with just a few cartridges. Use any one of these features and you could justify buying this unit—but there's plenty more.

With all its sophistication, the Bally Library Computer was designed to keep current with advancing computer technology no matter how sophisticated the development. Bally has provisions in its present system for expansion modules. These devices will permit you to: 1) draw directly on your TV screen with an electronic wand in 32 different colors and eight shades of each color, 2) compose, record and playback music on an electronic synthesizer, 3) record your personal belongings and their value for security purposes and add or delete items while keeping the list in tact, 4) record all your phone numbers and then use the system to dial those numbers on your telephone, 5) play chess on the phone with another player and be able to see all the moves on your TV screen.

EXCELLENT BUSINESS TOOL

With these expansion modules, businessmen will be able to do all their bookkeeping functions, payroll, inventory control and billing. There will be printers, telephone modems and a variety of peripheral computer equipment that will turn your Bally Library Computer into a significant business tool. And, when used in your business, your Bally unit is depreciable like all your other capital equipment. Even large corporations can use the Bally for specific applications to avoid tying up their larger computer systems.

The Bally Library Computer will turn these incredible add-on features into reality in a planned program starting now. Each month, a new cartridge or accessory expanding the unit's capability will be announced. If you purchase your system from JS&A, you will be alerted to these new accessories by mail on a regular basis in advance of their availability and before any national announcement. You may then order the accessories directly.

Each new cartridge or accessory will offer you a new way to use your system—a way that would justify, by itself, the purchase of the entire system.

NOT JUST A TV GAME

Don't confuse the Bally Library Computer with the many inexpensive programmable TV games. The Bally computer is a powerful system using the Z80 microprocessor whose cost per byte (the measure of computer memory power) is even lower than a home computer. Yet it has 12,000 bytes of computer power in its most basic system and you are not just limited to teaching, music, entertainment or business applications. The Bally computer can be programmed to do anything any mini-computer can do. A programmable TV game at any price is (and will always be) just a programmable TV game. It cannot be expanded. The Bally Library Computer is actually a computer with a variety of expansion capabilities.

A COMPUTER IN EVERY HOME

This is the first time a full-scale computer has been offered to the consumer. The home hobbyist with his home computer started the revolution a few years ago. With the specific programs, software and accessories available

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

from Bally, the age of affordable consumer computer ownership is here now.

INTERNAL TASK LIBRARY

The computer you buy now has within its 34 integrated circuits an internal library of over forty tasks that it performs. With such an extensive internal library, your computing power is already in the unit you buy. This also means that the Bally unit is a smart computer. (There are such things as dumb computers.) A smart computer can complete a function faster and more efficiently because it depends less on the data it gets and more on what it can already do.

SAFE FOR YOUR TV

The task library includes a built-in electronic timer which determines the end of a game or program by either score or elapsed time. It also times the arcade games and automatically turns off your unit and blanks out your screen if it is left on too long. Most TV set manufacturers have excluded sets that use TV games from warranty coverage because of the possible lines that appear on the screen from sets left on too long with the same picture. This is impossible with the Bally.

If you get a phone call in the middle of a game, you press the pause control which lets you freeze the action right in the middle of a play and blanks out the screen so you won't damage your picture tube.

The library has sound effects so that each arcade game is complete—from the sound of a baseball bat to that of a torpedo hitting a submarine. It has a math program capable of turning your unit into a scientific, statistical or engineering calculator with the addition of the appropriate cartridge. The library contains the capability of creating patterns on your TV screen, playing music, and accepting typewriter entries. It even has an index that displays everything in your library.

The cassette cartridges add between eight to thirty-two thousand additional bytes of computer power to the basic 12,000 byte system. The pistol grip arcade accessory can be used to play all the arcade games.

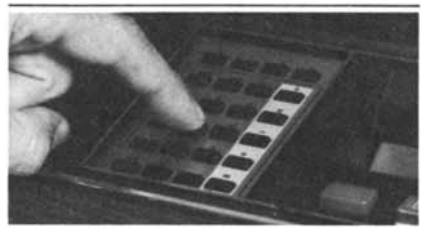
THE MAJOR BREAKTHROUGH IN BALLY'S COMPUTER

Its extensive internal library and the tremendous power in the computer are the big breakthroughs in the Bally unit. The internal computer has over 12,000 bytes with a minimum of 8,000 bytes in its cartridges. This puts more computer power in the hands of the consumer than six typical programmable TV games or an average hobbyist home computer. It has the computational capabilities of one $10,000 IBM 5100 computer, and each time you add a cassette cartridge you increase that capability.

Good resolution on your TV screen is one of the end effects of so much computer power. By comparison, the best programmable TV game image is projected on a screen composed of 64 dots wide by 64 dots deep or 4,096 total dots. The Bally unit is 160 by 100 or 16,000 dots—four times more—so the Bally image is sharper and has finer detail, better resolution, smoother motion, and clearer letters for math or text applications.

SIGNIFICANT EXPANSION MODULES

The most significant expansion accessory will be the $300 dual magnetic tape decks with an alpha numeric (typewriter) keyboard. With this accessory package, which will be introduced by JS&A in approximately six months, you can record data and software programs and do everything you can do on any mainframe computer system within the data storage capacity of the Bally unit.



The Bally console keyboard is used to select specific programs from each cassette.

The implications of this add-on module are mind-boggling. First, it adds an additional 16,000 bytes of memory to the powerful 12,000 already in the basic system. Secondly, it provides not only more power and features than are presently available in any home computer, but it contains peripherals that would normally cost thousands of dollars extra and are considered accessories on all other mini-computer systems. Thirdly, it uses the computer basic language which is easy to understand. And finally, each cassette tape in the system will contain an additional one quarter million bytes of storage capability. With the tape decks and keyboard, the consumer will now own the equivalent of an entire computer system complete with peripherals, storage and memory.

HIGH SPEED PRINTER

A high-speed 2200 characters per second printer will also be available next year. This will give you written records from your storage tapes. Store your most frequently called phone numbers, your income tax figures, your savings account deposits, the value of your stocks and bonds or a net worth statement. Then, when you need the information, press a button for a printed record.

DIAL-A-BARGAIN® ORDERING SYSTEM

Our technicians have programmed JS&A's main computer so you can use the Bally to access our computer directly when Bally's dual tape decks become available. With a special module and cassette, you will be able to 1) call our computer on our toll-free number, 2) place an order, and 3) find out when it will be shipped. Since you communicate directly with our computer, your order is processed immediately and can be shipped within a few hours after receipt. To do this, JS&A engineers developed a $100 hardware ordering package that will be sent free to those customers who order the basic unit this year.

THE BIG DIFFERENCE

When you order the Bally computer today, you are making an investment in the future. The basic unit you receive, without a single accessory, will provide more benefits than any other product of its kind in history.

When you buy an expensive product, you must be absolutely satisified that you get the service and a solid company standing behind your purchase for many years to come. The Bally Library Computer is backed by a substantial company, Bally—in business since 1931 and now the world's largest manufacturer of coin-operated amusement games. JS&A is America's largest single source of space-age consumer products and also a substantial company—further assurance that your investment is well protected.

A FRANK DISCUSSION OF SERVICE

The Bally unit is a solid-state computer with its electronics condensed on 34 integrated circuits—all hermetically sealed and all pre-tested for a lifetime of service. The Bally Computer is also self-diagnostic. We have developed a cartridge that lets the unit itself check every integrated circuit and every solid-state component and which displays any malfunction on your TV screen. Then all you do is send the circuit board or your entire unit to Bally's service-by-mail center for prompt replacement. The cartridge will be sent free-of-charge only to JS&A customers shortly after you receive your unit.

Please don't think service requirements are common. They're not. But we wanted to assure you that service was such an important consideration in the Bally design that the unit practically repairs itself.

COMPLETE AS IT ARRIVES

Each unit comes complete with four pistol grips for use with the arcade and teaching games, an AC adapter (batteries are not required), three free arcade games, the calculator program, its internal library of tasks, complete easy-to-understand instructions and a one year parts and 90 day labor limited warranty—all for only $299.95.

The arcade games include 1) Gun Fight, in which two cowboys shoot at each other around cactus, covered wagons and other obstacles, 2) Checkmate, a one to four player game in which you build walls around your opponent to win and, 3) Scribble, a one to four player game that utilizes the pistol grip to droodle different designs on your TV screen (in color, if you own a color set).

A keyboard lets you use your printing memory calculator and a special scroll button lets you scan your entries up or down to review or check your calculations. You may also order with your unit the Baseball and Paddle Games cartridge for $24.95 or the Math Table/Math Bingo cartridge for $19.95. A bulletin will accompany your unit listing all the other cartridges and accessories that are available or will be available in the near future.

We feel so positive about this product that we will 1) not charge you anything for postage and handling and 2) give you a 30 day extended trial period to prove that the Bally is everything you expected after reading this article. When you receive your unit, reconcile your checkbook with the calculator, let your child practice with the math programs or have your entire family play the arcade games. After you have used the system under your own conditions and have personally experienced its fun and benefits, then decide if you want to keep it. If not, return it within our 30 day extended trial period for a prompt and courteous refund. You can't lose.

Bally and JS&A have joined forces to mass market a product that will not only greatly influence the future of the computer industry, but will dramatically add consumer conveniences never before dreamed possible. Order your Bally Library Computer, at no obligation, today.

Unit pending FCC approval—allow 4 weeks delivery.

Dial-A-Bargain is a registered trade mark of the JS&A National Sales Group.

JS&A® NATIONAL SALES GROUP

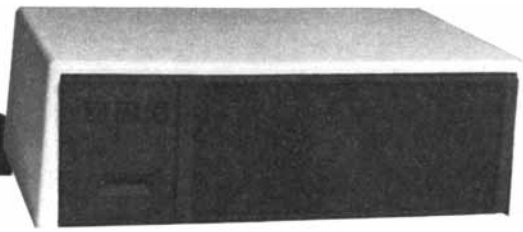
Dept. SA One JS&A Plaza
Northbrook, Ill. 60062 (312) 564-9000

CALL TOLL-FREE.... 800 323-6400
In Illinois call ..... (312) 498-6900

©JS&A Group, Inc.,1977

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

Burglar Alarm Breakthrough



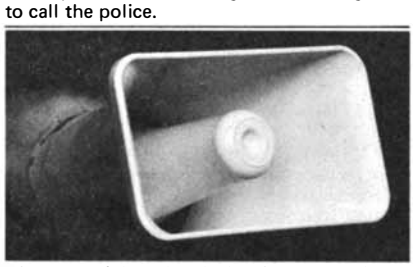
The Midex security computer looks like a handsome stereo system component and measures only 4" x 10½" x 7".

A new computerized burglar alarm requires no installation and protects your home or business like a thousand dollar professional system.

It's a security system computer. You can now protect everything—windows, doors, walls, ceilings and floors with a near fail-safe system so advanced that it doesn't require installation.

The Midex 55 is a new motion-sensing computer. Switch it on and you place a harmless invisible energy beam through more than 5,000 cubic feet in your home. Whenever this beam detects motion it sends a signal to the computer which interprets the cause of the motion and triggers an extremely loud alarm.

The system's alarm is so loud that it can cause pain—loud enough to drive an intruder out of your home before anything is stolen or destroyed and loud enough to alert neighbors to call the police.



The powerful optional blast horns can also be placed outside your home or office to warn your neighbors.

Unlike the complex and expensive commercial alarms that require sensors wired into every door or window, the Midex requires no sensors nor any other additional equipment other than your stereo speakers or an optional pair of blast horns. Its beam actually penetrates walls to set up an electronic barrier against intrusion.

NO MORE FALSE ALARMS

The Midex is not triggered by noise or sound, temperature or humidity—just motion, and since a computer interprets the nature of the motion, the chances of a false alarm are very remote.

An experienced burglar can disarm an expensive security system or break into a home or office through a wall. Using a Midex system there is no way a burglar can penetrate the protection beam without triggering the loud alarm. Even if the burglar cuts off your power, the four-hour rechargeable battery pack will keep your unit triggered, ready to sense motion and sound an alarm.

DEFENSE AGAINST PEEPING TOMS

By pointing your unit towards the outdoors from your bedroom and installing an outside speaker, light, or alarm, your unit can sense a peeping tom, and frighten him off. Pets are no problem for the Midex. Simply put them in one section of the house and concentrate the beam in another.

When the Midex senses an intruder, it remains silent for 20 seconds. It then sounds the alarm until the burglar leaves. One minute after the burglar leaves, the alarm shuts off and resets, once again ready to do its job. This shut-off feature, not found on many expensive systems, means that your alarm won't go wailing all night long while you're away. When your neighbors hear it, they'll know positively that there's trouble.

PROFESSIONAL SYSTEM

Midex is portable so it can be placed anywhere in your home. You simply connect it to your stereo speakers or attach the two optional blast horns.

Operating the Midex is as easy as its installation. To arm the unit, you remove a specially coded key. You now have 30 seconds to leave your premises. When you return, you enter and insert your key to disarm the unit. You have 20 seconds to do that. Each key is registered with Midex and that number is kept in their vault should you ever need a duplicate. Three keys are supplied with each unit.

As an extra security measure, you can leave your unit on at night and place an optional panic button by your bed. But with all its optional features, the Midex system is complete, designed to protect you, your home and property just as it arrives in its well-protected carton.

The Midex 55 system is the latest electronic breakthrough by Solfan Systems, Inc.—a company that specializes in sophisticated professional security systems for banks and high security areas. JS&A first became acquainted with Midex after we were burglarized. At the time we owned an excellent security system but the burglars went through a wall that could not have been protected by sensors. We then installed over $5,000 worth of the Midex commercial equipment in our warehouse. When Solfan Systems announced their intentions to market their units to consumers, we immediately offered our services.

COMPARED AGAINST OTHERS

In a recent issue of the leading consumer publication there was a complete article written on the tests given security devices which were purchased in New York. The Midex 55 is not available in New York stores but had it been compared it would have been rated tops in space protection and protection against false alarms—two of the top criteria used to evaluate these systems. Don't be confused. There is no system under $1,000 that provides you with the same protection.

YOU JUDGE THE QUALITY

Will the Midex system ever fail? No product is perfect but judge for yourself. All components used in the Midex system are of aerospace quality and of such high reliability that they pass the military standard 883 for thermal shock and burn-in. In short, they go through the same rugged tests and controls used on components in manned spaceships.

Each component is first tested at extreme tolerances and then retested after assembly. The entire system is then put under full electrical loads at 150 degrees Fahrenheit for a full week. If there is a defect, these tests will cause it to surface.

PEOPLE LIKE THE SYSTEM

Wally Schirra, a former astronaut and scientist, says this about the Midex 55, "I know of no system that is as easy to use and provides such solid protection to the home owner as the Midex. I would strongly recommend it to anyone. I am more than pleased with my unit."

Many more people can attest to the quality of this system but the true test is how it performs in your home or office. That is why we provide a one month trial period. We give you the opportunity to personally see how fail-safe and easy the Midex system is to operate and how thoroughly it protects you and your loved ones.

Use the Midex for protection while you sleep, to protect your home while you're away or on vacation. Then after 30 days, if you're not convinced that the Midex is nearly fail-safe, easy to use, and can provide you with a security system that you can trust, return your unit and we'll be happy to send you a prompt and courteous refund. There is absolutely no obligation. JS&A has been serving the consumer for over a decade—further assurance that your investment is well protected.

To order your system, simply send your check in the amount of $199.95 (Illinois residents add 5% sales tax) to the address shown below. Credit card buyers may call our toll-free number below. There are no postage and handling charges. By return mail you will receive your system complete with all connections, easy to understand instructions and one year limited warranty. If you do not have stereo speakers, you may order the optional blast horns at $39.95 each and we recommend the purchase of two.

With the Midex 55, JS&A brings you: 1) A system built with such high quality that it complies with the same strict government standards used in the space program, 2) A system so advanced that it uses a computer to determine unauthorized entry, and 3) A way to buy the system, in complete confidence, without even being penalized for postage and handling charges if it's not exactly what you want. We couldn't provide you with a better opportunity to own a security system than right now.

Space-age technology has produced the ultimate personal security system. Order your Midex 55 security computer at no obligation, today.

JS&A® NATIONAL SALES GROUP

Dept. SA One JS&A Plaza
Northbrook, Ill. 60062 (312) 564-9000

CALL TOLL-FREE.... 800 323-6400
In Illinois call ..... (312) 498-6900

©JS&A Group, Inc.,1977

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

the International Business Machines Corporation. He was educated at Stanford University, receiving his Ph.D. in 1961. He then joined the Watson Research Center, where he worked on computer logic design and in 1963 was made manager of a group working on magnetic-memory technology. Two years later he became interested in the use of microelectronic devices for computer memories and was one of its earliest advocates. He is currently interested in the application of charge-coupled devices to memories and in the implications of large-scale integration for systems design. An amateur trumpet player, Terman is a devotee of jazz and has a collection of more than 2,000 jazz records. He is the grandson of Lewis M. Terman, the well-known Stanford psychologist.

BERNARD M. OLIVER ("The Role of Microelectronics in Instrumentation and Control") is vice-president for research and development of the Hewlett-Packard Company and a member of the company's board of directors. He was educated at Stanford University and the California Institute of Technology, where he received his M.S. in 1936. Following a year of study in Germany under an exchange scholarship, he returned to Cal Tech and obtained his Ph.D., magna cum laude, in 1940. He then went to work at Bell Laboratories and over the next 12 years participated in the development of automatic tracking radar, television transmission, information theory and coding systems. In 1952 he joined Hewlett-Packard as director of research; he was appointed to his present position in 1957. Oliver holds more than 50 patents in the field of electronics, and he has served as a member of the President's Commission on the Patent System. In 1966 he was elected to the National Academy of Engineering and in 1973 to the National Academy of Sciences.

JOHN S. MAYO ("The Role of Microelectronics in Communication") is vice-president of electronics technology at Bell Laboratories. Born in North Carolina, he was educated at North Carolina State University, where he received his Ph.D. in electrical engineering in 1955. He then went to Bell Laboratories, initially doing research on transistorized digital computers and on the use of computers in defense systems. He also developed the method of transmitting information in digital form known as pulse-code modulation. Later he applied the technique to the design of the command decoder and switching unit of the Telstar communications satellite and to the development of the Picturephone system. Mayo went to his present job in 1975. He is responsible for directing the development of electronic components, energy sources, power supplies

LEICHTUNG INC.

FINE WOODWORKING TOOLS

For yourself or someone else special at Christmas

8 PIECE CHIP CARVING SET

Get into a fun hobby! These fine German carver's tools will let you make just about any cut you could want. Comfortable hardwood handles are about 6" long. Special knife alloy steel takes and holds a razor edge..... **$18.95**

6 PIECE CABINETMAKER'S CHISEL SET

These shapes and this quality have been used by Europe's master craftsmen for two centuries! Hand-forged, ground and honed Tungsten-Vanadium steel. Marvelously comfortable ribbed-ash handles with nickelled double-reinforcing hoops. From 10½"-12" long; set includes ¼", ⅜", ½", ¾", 1" and 1¼" widths..... **$34.95**

NAIL/BRAD PLIERS

Don't let your fingers do the holding!. . . . you'll probably need them later for other things! Seven gripping surfaces and an offset head let you get into tight corners, stay flush with the surface and yet be accurate and ouchless. 8" long; vinyl covered handles.....**$8.95**

5 PIECE CABINETMAKER'S SCREWDRIVER SET

Tools of this design were used by the 18th century masters Heppelwhite, Sheraton and Phyfe. Turned oval beech handles are just "fist-right". Put a wrench to the flattened area below the ferrule for your most stubborn screws. Lengths (ferrule to tip) 3", 4", 5", 6" and 8".....**$15.95**

7 PIECE BRAD POINT WOOD BIT SET

Made just for wood not metal. Brad point leads right to razor sharp flutes so that you drill the hole exactly where **you** want it . . . perfectly straight and cleanly round. Excellent chip ejection, so no binding. Fit any ⅜" portable drill or drill press. Set includes ⅛", 3/16", ¼", 5/16", ⅜", 7/16" and ½" sizes. Made by German pro's for pro's . . . and "wood-be" pro's..... **$11.95**

PHONE ORDERS IN TO ASSURE CHRISTMAS DELIVERY (216) 461-4677

Yes Ric Leichtung,

□ Please send me: (Leichtung pays all postage!)

___ 8 pc. Chip Carving Sets @ $18.95..... ____

___ 6 pc. Cabinetmaker's Chisel Sets @ $34.95..... ____

___ 7 pc. Brad Point Bit Sets @ $11.95..... ____

___ 5 pc. Cabinetmaker's Screwdriver Sets @ $15.95 ____

___ Nail/Brad Pliers @ $8.95..... ____

Ohio Residents add 5½% Tax ____

TOTAL COST ____

Method of Payment

□ Check □ Bank Americard □ Master Charge

Card # _____ Good thru _____

(For MC) Enter 4 digits below # _____

□ Enclosed is $1.00. Please send me your 36 page 1978 Catalog of Fine Tools **PLUS** all catalogs, brochures and new tool bulletins **FOR THE NEXT TWO YEARS!**

□ Enclosed is my order for Woodworking Tools. As my **BONUS**, please send your 36 page 1978 Catalog of Fine Tools etc. for the next two years **FREE!**

Name _____ Address _____

City _____ State _____ Zip _____

Mail to: LEICHTUNG, INC. **701 Beta Drive #977SA Cleveland, Ohio 44143**

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

BANG & OLUFSEN. BEOMASTER 4400.
What makes it an alternative?

Conceived to satisfy the most critical listener and with power to handle the most difficult musical passages. Ambiophonic circuitry to recreate the richness of the original performance and with the use of a Bessel filter, the elimination of transient intermodulation distortion. All this combined with an ease of operation that is more and more appreciated with use.

Your Bang & Olufsen dealer will show and demonstrate the Beomaster 4400 as a logical alternative. A dealer list and brochure are available by writing us. If you prefer, enclose one dollar and our full color product portfolio and dealer list will be sent by return 1st class mail.

Bang & Olufsen of America, Inc., Dept. 13D, 515 Busse Rd., Elk Grove Village, IL 60007

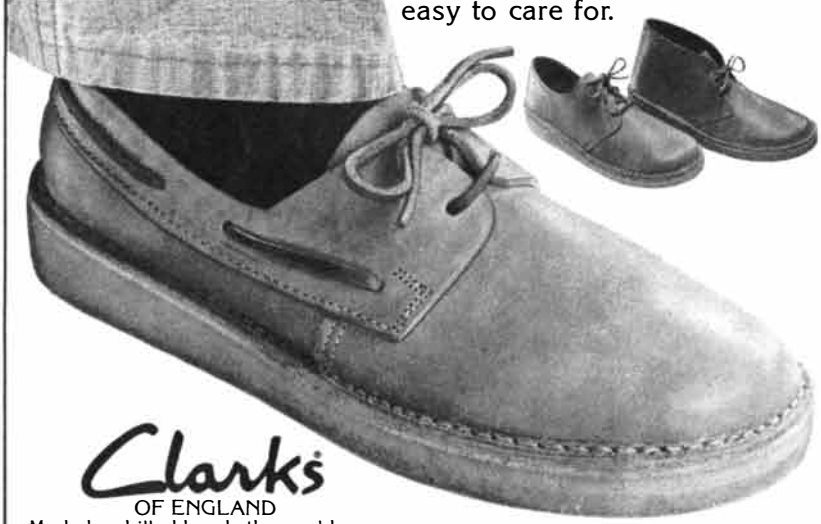
Name:_____

Address:_____

City:_____ State:_____ Zip:_____

CLARKS BULL HIDES

Handsome but rugged shoes for people who like their shoes to be tough. Made of genuine bull hide leather for strength and comfort. With the kind of quality and craftsmanship you get only from Clarks of England. Available in several styles for men and women in a natural waxy tone finish that's easy to care for.



Clarks
OF ENGLAND
Made by skilled hands the world over.

Clarks shoes priced from $20.00 to $50.00. For the store nearest you write Clarks, Box 92, Belden Station, Norwalk, Ct. 06852—Dept. 9 SA B H

and building-environment designs for the operating telephone companies in the Bell System.

IVAN E. SUTHERLAND and CARVER A. MEAD ("Microelectronics and Computer Science") are respectively director of the computer-science department and professor of computer science at the California Institute of Technology. Sutherland was educated at the Carnegie Institute of Technology, Cal Tech and M.I.T., receiving his Ph.D. in electrical engineering from M.I.T. in 1963. He then entered the Army Signal Corps and was stationed at the National Security Agency, where he designed a new line of computer-display equipment. In 1964 Sutherland was made director for information-processing techniques at the Advanced Research Projects Agency (ARPA) of the Department of Defense, staying in that position after his discharge from the Army. He left ARPA in 1966 to become associate professor of electrical engineering at Harvard University. Two years later he moved to Salt Lake City to become president of the Evans & Sutherland Computer Corporation, of which he was cofounder. At the same time he continued his research at the University of Utah, where he helped to design a computer-graphics system that could create color images with lifelike shading and perspective. He joined the Cal Tech faculty in 1976, but he still is a consultant for Evans & Sutherland and serves on the Defense Science Board. Mead was educated at Cal Tech, where he received his Ph.D. in electrical engineering in 1959. His research began in the area of solid-state-device physics, with a brief foray into the biophysics of nerve membranes. It was during his calculation of the physical limitations on how small a transistor could be and still operate that he became absorbed in the problems of managing the complexity of large-scale integrated systems. Mead escapes occasionally from the world of high technology to raise hazelnuts on his 70-acre ranch in Oregon.

ALAN C. KAY ("Microelectronics and the Personal Computer") is a principal scientist and head of the Learning Research Group at the Xerox Palo Alto Research Center. He received his B.A. in mathematics from the University of Colorado at Boulder and, after a short career as a professional jazz guitarist, studied computer science at the University of Utah, obtaining his Ph.D. in 1969. He then became a research associate and lecturer at the Stanford University Artificial Intelligence Project. He moved to Xerox in 1971. "I have always been equally attracted to the arts and the sciences," he writes. "Eventually I discovered that the world of computers provides a satisfying environment for my blend of interests."

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

HOW TO BE WELL-READ EVEN IF YOU AREN'T WELL-HEELED.

If you don't judge a book by its cover, why pay for the cover? Join QPB. Get great books by great writers in full-size, softcover editions at far less than hardcover prices.

QPB is a book club for people who love to read and collect important works of fiction and non-fiction, but are stunned by current bookstore prices.

104. Passages. Gail Sheehy. In hardcover: $10.95. QPB: $5.95. Same text, type size and number of pages. And only $1 if it's part of your 3-book membership choice.

The QPB alternative gives you the titles you want in full-size, softcover editions. These are books printed on fine paper, as permanent and durably bound as most hardcover editions.

You'll get at least one bonus point for each book or set you buy and when you've accumulated six bonus points, you will be able to pick another book or set free.

And with QPB's carefully selected list, numbering in the hundreds (many available in softcover *only* through QPB), no serious reader will have a problem finding books he or she has wanted to own.

222. The Americans. Daniel J. Boorstin. (3 Vols.) Hardcover: $47.50 **QPB: $14.85**

228. The Life And Work Of Sigmund Freud. Ernest Jones. **The Letters Of Sigmund Freud.** Edited by Ernst L. Freud. (2 Vols.) Hardcover: $27.95 **QPB: $11.90**

253. The Adventures Of Sherlock Holmes and **The Memoirs Of Sherlock Holmes.** A. Conan Doyle (2 Vols.) Illus. **QPB: $7.90**

260. The New Catalogue Of Catalogues: The Complete Guide to World-Wide Shopping by Mail. Maria Elena De La Iglesia. (Photos) **QPB: $7.95**

375. The Mediterranean And The Mediterranean World In The Age Of Philip II. Volumes I and II. Fernand Braudel. Translated by Siân Reynolds (Illus.) Hardcover: $35 **QPB: $13.90**

378. Other Homes And Garbage Designs for Self-Sufficient Living. Jim Leckie, Gil Masters, Harry Whitehouse and Lily Young. **QPB: $9.95**

430. House Plants: How to Keep 'Em Fat & Happy. Linda Finkle-Strauss Illustrated by Pam Carroll. Hardcover: $12.95 **QPB: $6.95**

431. Colonies In Space. T.A. Heppenheimer. Produced by Richard C. Mesce. (Photos & Illus.) Hardcover: $12.95 **QPB Ed: $6.95**

399. The Crash Of '79. Paul E. Erdman Hardcover: $8.95 **QPB Ed: $4.95**

427. A Civil Tongue. Edwin Newman Hardcover: $8.95 **QPB Ed: $4.95**

428. Take Care Of Yourself: A Consumer's Guide to Medical Care. Donald M. Vickery, M.D., and James F. Fries, M.D. Hardcover: $9.95 **QPB: $5.95**

429. The Tao Of Physics: An Exploration of the Parallels Between Modern Physics and Eastern Mysticism. Fritjof Capra. (Illus.) Hardcover: $12.50 **QPB: $5.95**

432. Putting It All Together: A Consumer's Guide to Home Furnishings. Peggie Varney Collins and Shirley Wright Collins. Illustrations by Philip F. Farrell, Jr. Hardcover: $10 **QPB: $6.95**

434. The Discovery Of The Tomb Of Tutankhamen. Howard Carter and A.C. Mace. New introduction by Jon Manchip White. (Photos) **QPB: $4**

188. Lovers And Tyrants. Francine du Plessix Gray. Hardcover: $8.95 **QPB Ed: $4.95**

Join now. Pick any 3 books or sets for $1 each—with no obligation to buy another book.

397. The Unabridged Mark Twain Opening Remarks by Kurt Vonnegut, Jr. Edited by Lawrence Teacher **QPB: $8.95**

111. The Foundation Trilogy: Three Classics of Science Fiction. Isaac Asimov Hardcover: $17.85 **QPB: $4.95**

132. Cat's Cradle, Slaughterhouse-Five and **Breakfast Of Champions** Kurt Vonnegut. (3 Vols.) Hardcover: $23.85 **QPB: $8.35**

151. The Lord Of The Rings J.R.R. Tolkien. (3 Vols., Boxed) Hardcover: $25 **QPB: $8.95**

198. The Best Of Life. (Photos) Hardcover: $19.95 **QPB: $8.95**

210. The World Of The Past. Edited by Jacquetta Hawkes. (2 Vols.) Maps and Photos. Hardcover: $20 **QPB: $11.90**

433. The Cracker Factory. Joyce Rebeta-Burditt. Hardcover: $8.95 **QPB: $4.95**

207. Starring Miss Marple. Agatha Christie. Hardcover: $10.95 **QPB Ed: $5.95**

Let's try each other for 6 months.

Quality Paperback Book Club, Inc., Middletown, Pa. 17057.

Please enroll me in QPB and send the 3 choices I've listed below. Bill me $3 plus shipping charges. I understand that I am not required to buy another book. You will send me *QPB Review* (if my account is in good standing) for 6 months. If I have not bought and paid for at least 1 book in every six-month period, you may cancel my membership.

Indicate by number the 3 books or sets you want ☐ ☐ ☐

Name _____ 7-QB170-9
(Please print plainly)

Address _____ Apt. _____ 16

City _____ State _____ Zip _____

How membership works

1. You receive **QPB Review** 15 times each year (about every 3½ weeks). Each issue reviews a *new* Main Selection, plus scores of Alternates. All Main Selections with established publisher's list prices are offered at at least 20% discount off that list price.
2. If you want the **Main Selection** do nothing. It will be shipped to you automatically. If you want one or more Alternate books—or no book at all—indicate your decision on the reply form always enclosed and return it by the date specified.
3. **Free books.** For each book or set you take (except the first 3 you get for $1 each) you earn Bonus Points which entitle you to free books. You pay only shipping charges.
4. **Return privilege.** If *QPB Review* is delayed and you receive the Main Selection without having had 10 days to notify us, you may return it at our expense.
5. **Cancellations.** You may cancel membership at any time by notifying QPB. We may cancel your membership if you elect not to buy and pay for at least one book in every six-month period.

QPB

The first book club for smart people who aren't rich.

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

Distinguished for the quality of service it provides and distinctively marked by the engine that sweeps cleanly through the tail, our DC-10 is the crowning achievement of 40 years of continuous airliner production.

So widely used, and useable, it now flies to more places, more often, than any other wide-cabin jet.

Airlines like the remarkable reliability and unmatched fuel efficiency of the DC-10. Passengers—more than 100,000 each day—appreciate its smooth flight, wide seats, big windows, high ceilings, attractive lighting and the uncommon quiet of the cabin.

DC-10s serve 150 cities on six continents. Take one on your next trip. You'll be pleased—and so will we.

Building jetliners and spacecraft and fighter planes occupies much of our time, but it also creates a healthy climate for creativity that can yield surprising results. For example, the space age technology that insulated and contained liquid hydrogen on Saturn moon rockets is now being applied in an improved method for ocean shipment of super-cold liquid natural gas (LNG). The insulation being produced by our Astronautics Company provides added safety for shipment of the fuel, offers increased cargo loads for existing ship designs, or permits greater capacity in new small ships. We can't do it alone. Our insulation material must be joined with a metal barrier designed by Gaz-Transport of France, and of course, a ship to carry it. But if you have tankers, or build them, ask us about insulation. We'll know what you mean.

Our engineers, once concerned with the health of astronauts, were encouraged to turn their wits to broader problems of health care. The result—an automatic system for identifying infectious organisms in patient samples, such as urine. The system also identifies, for attending physicians, the antibiotics most likely to counter the malady.

This AutoMicrobic™ System, designed and built by McDonnell Douglas and marketed by Fisher Scientific, eliminates

You'd expect McDonnell Douglas to build the reliable and popular DC-10...

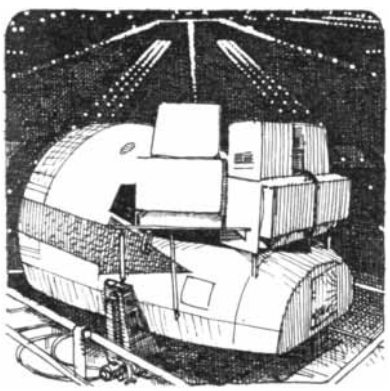
...but would you expect us to keep natural gas super-cold, help train pilots and make electricity from the sun?

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

many repetitive tasks now performed manually, freeing technicians for more useful work.

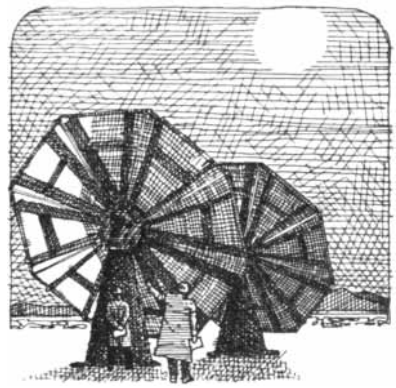
The disposable test kits that receive the patient samples for analysis are filled with growth-stimulating nutrients. Growth in these kits is automatically monitored and results are displayed to hospital personnel and printed out as reports. Now being sold for organism identification, the system is awaiting FDA approval of its antibiotic mode.

Fuel conservation is becoming a necessity to airlines with soaring fuel costs. Our Electronics division uses digital computers to create scenes through the windshield for pilot training simulators. They're so realistic that Federal regulators



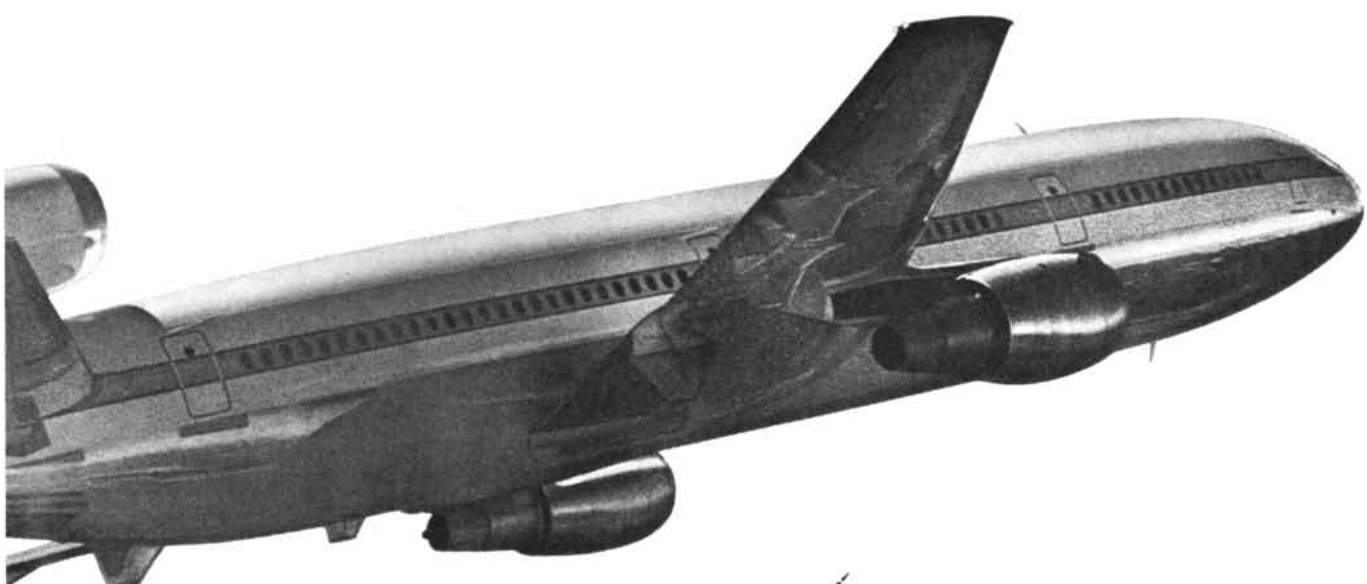
now permit ground training for a dozen pilot training maneuvers that once required costly training flights. One airline, using several of our VITAL systems, claims fuel savings of 4 million gallons a year. Systems are now being introduced for military pilots to let them train for formation flying, carrier landings, air refuelling, even for combat, all without leaving the ground. Money is saved, time is saved, and safety is enhanced. Early units permitted night training only. Daylight systems are now being demonstrated. For those who are pilots, or who train pilots, it's amazing. For the rest of us, the fuel saved is a godsend.

Speaking of godsends, we call your attention to a government agency really immersed in the energy problem. The Energy Research and Development Agency has us developing mirrors that track the sun, focusing rays onto a tower-mounted boiler to produce super-heated steam. The steam passes through a conventional turbine – presto – electricity. In another ERDA study, we focus



solar rays on a field of liquid-metal filled pipes to generate heat. We're working hard on this, but as one engineering wag observes, "In this job, work stops at sunset."

We would not quarrel if you think of McDonnell Douglas as an aerospace company. But, far be it from us to turn away from invention simply because it does not fly. To discuss the technologies mentioned, jot your interest on your letterhead and send it to us. We'll be in touch. Write: McDonnell Douglas, Box 14526, St. Louis, MO 63178.



MCDONNELL DOUGLAS

EQUAL OPPORTUNITY IN PROFESSIONAL CAREERS. SEND RESUME: BOX 14526, ST. LOUIS, MO. 63178

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

MATHEMATICAL GAMES

On conic sections, ruled surfaces and other manifestations of the hyperbola

by Martin Gardner

Lewis Carroll once wrote (in *The Dynamics of a Parti-cle*): "What mathematician has ever pondered over an hyperbola, mangling the unfortunate curve with lines of intersection here and there, in his efforts to prove some property that perhaps after all is a mere calumny, who has not fancied at last that the ill-used locus was spreading out its asymptotes as a silent rebuke, or winking one focus at him in contemptuous pity?"

Put a large sphere, say a basketball, on a light-colored tabletop in a darkened room. Shine a flashlight directly down on the ball as is shown at *a* in the illustration on this page. The ball's shadow is, of course, a circle. Its center is the point where the ball touches the surface of the table.

Move the flashlight toward the east as at *b* in the illustration. The shadow stretches to an ellipse. The center of the circle has now split into two points that are the foci of the ellipse. The sphere rests on the focus closer to the light source. As you move the light farther east, the other focus moves west, increasing the eccentricity of the ellipse.

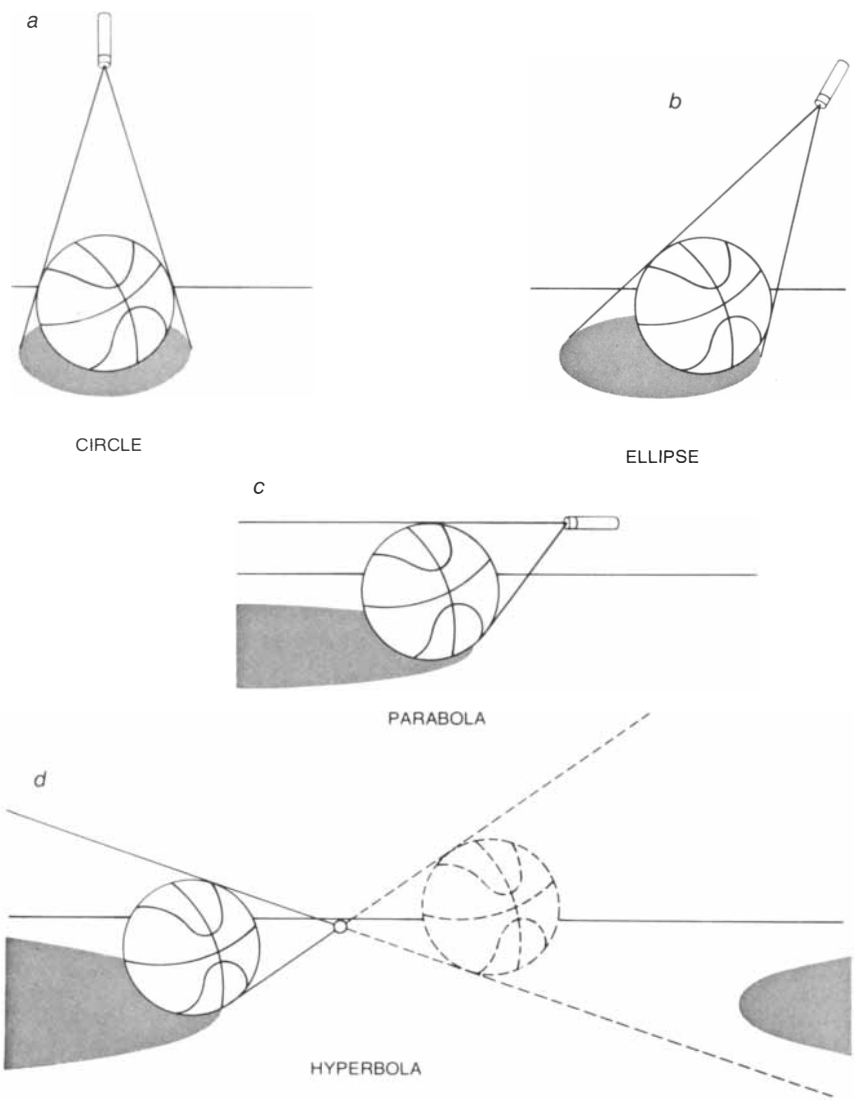
Lower the light source until it is level with the top of the ball [*c*]. The ball still rests on the eastern focus, but now the western focus has traveled to infinity. The outline of the shadow is a parabola.

Move the light until it is below the top of the ball [*d*]. The curve of the shadow becomes a hyperbola. The sphere still touches the table at the focus of the hyperbola but now something delightful has happened to the missing focus.

Imagine that in all four pictures there is a counterball, identical with the sphere on the table but placed on the other side of the light source the same distance away. The counterball is shown with a broken line in the last picture [*d*]. Note that it casts a shadow cone identical with the one produced by the ball on the table but turned the other way. The apexes of the cones meet at the light.

In the first three pictures the counterball's shadow lies above the plane of the tabletop. When the light source moves below the top of the ball, however, the countershadow falls on the plane to form a countercurve that is the eastern branch of the hyperbola under the ball. The missing focus has, so to speak, traveled around infinity to return on the other side! Since the two ends of infinity are one and the same point, they are comparable to the extremities of a ring that has been cut and opened out into a straight line. This infinite, unmutilated ring is the geometric metaphor behind Henry Vaughan's famous couplet "I saw Eternity the other night / Like a great *Ring* of pure and endless light."

Imagine the counterball in the last picture moving away from the light source but continuously expanding so that it always touches the sides of the countercone. When the counterball is large enough to touch the tabletop, it will rest on the focus of the counterbranch of the hyperbola. These two spheres of unequal size, nested in the cones and touching the cutting plane at the foci of the hyperbola, provide an old, elegant proof that the curves are indeed branches of a hyperbola. The proof is clearly explained on pages eight and nine of *Geometry and the Imagination,* by David Hilbert and S. Cohn-Vossen (Chelsea Publishing Company, 1952). If both spheres are placed in the same cone, a similar proof can be used



Shadow experiment displays four conic-section curves

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

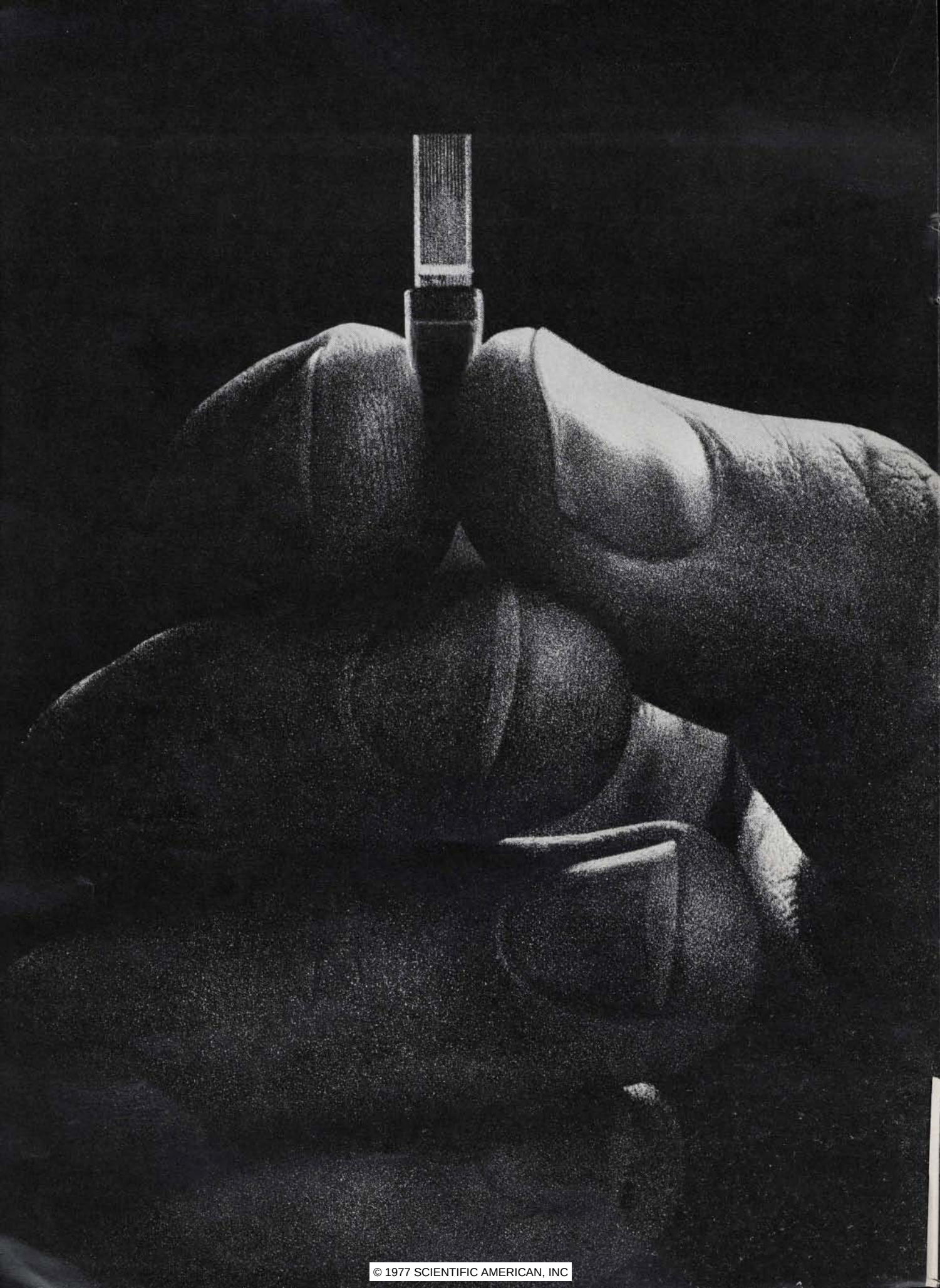
You can tell a lot about an individual by what he pours into his glass.

Bushmills.
The world's oldest whiskey.
What individuals have poured into their glass since 1608.

The "Fisherman" glass created for the Bushmills Collection by Henry Halem

A blend of 100% Irish Whiskies. 86 Proof. Bottled in Ireland. The Jos. Garneau Co., New York, N.Y. © 1974

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC



© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

The Chicago Connection.

With it, the phone system of tomorrow is in Chicago today.

A while ago, we told you lightwave communications was just around the corner. Today, it's in the streets of Chicago.

For the first time, the human voice, business data and even video signals are being carried by lightwaves traveling over hair-thin glass fibers. Instead of electric current traveling over copper wire.

But without that little link you see on the opposite page, lightwave communications for such a wide range of services might still be an experiment in a lab. And without Western Electric technology, the link might still be a design on a blueprint.

The link is an outgrowth of an idea from the people at Bell Labs. While they were putting the major components of the lightwave system together, they had to find a way to splice the glass fibers and get the light across the splice.

A Simple Idea

The idea they came up with was deceptively simple. A coupling device made up of tiny grooved chips, smaller than the tip of your finger, that would guide the ends of the hair-thin fibers and butt them up in perfect alignment.

There was only one hitch. Making one chip was easy. But there was no machinery that could mass produce all the identical chips that would be needed for a lightwave system like the one in Chicago.

Making Ideas Reality

That's where Western Electric comes in. Turning ideas into technological innovations is nothing new at Western Electric.

Over the years, Western Electric has piled up an impressive list of innovations that have become manufacturing standards.

It was the first company in the world to manufacture the transistor.

It was the first to put the laser to work as a useful production tool.

And it is the company that went beyond conventional machining techniques to make the chips for Chicago's lightwave system.

Each chip is pure silicon crystal. Its internal structure (a criss-cross arrangement of intersecting planes) provides a built-in blueprint for regularly spaced grooves. And because the crystal's diagonal planes etch faster than its perpendicular planes, uniform grooves can be chemically cut into the chip.

By combining the science of chemistry and the art of lithography, Western Electric's Engineering Research Center developed a way to etch 12 ultra-precise, perfectly shaped, identical V-grooves on each chip. With each groove no wider than a hair and separated only by a hair's breadth from its neighbors.

And, more importantly, they were able to reproduce these chips so that each one was a perfect double of the other.

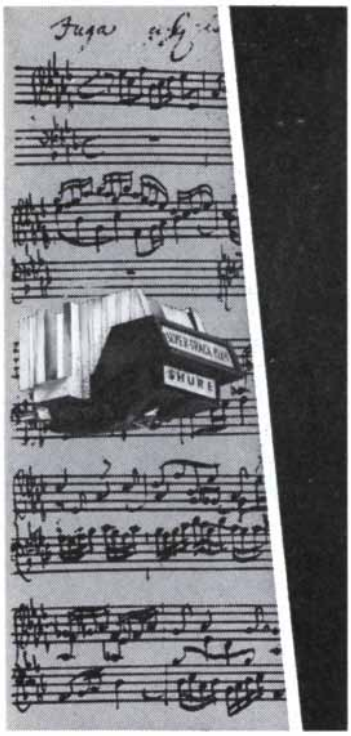
Teamwork is the Key

The telecommunications revolution beginning in Chicago is another good example of how Western Electric and Bell Labs help put new technology into practical use for the Bell telephone companies, quickly and economically.

Their close relationship is an important reason why your telephone system is the most efficient and reliable communications system in the world. And it's a basic reason why innovations in technology are a common occurrence in the Bell System.

Western Electric

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC



The original manuscript by J. S. Bach shown is reproduced by kind permission of The British Library.

The Test of Time.

Critics were most generous in their praise when the Shure V-15 Type III phono cartridge was first introduced. The ultimate test, however, has been time. The engineering innovations, the uniform quality and superb performance of the V-15 Type III have made it the audiophile's choice as the source of sound for the finest music systems both here and abroad.

Consider making the relatively modest investment of a new cartridge to upgrade the performance of your entire hi-fi system. It will make a difference you can hear!

Shure Brothers Inc.
222 Hartrey Ave., Evanston, IL 60204
In Canada:
A. C. Simmonds & Sons Limited

SHURE®

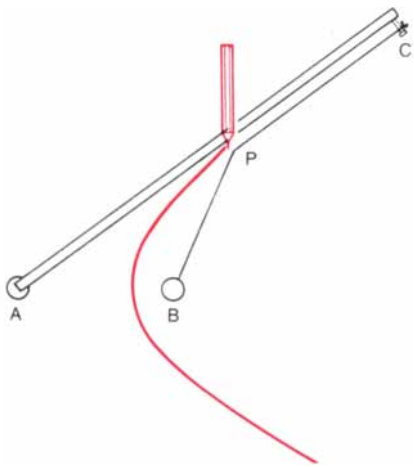
MANUFACTURERS OF HIGH FIDELITY COMPONENTS, MICROPHONES, SOUND SYSTEMS AND RELATED CIRCUITRY

(see Chapter 15 of my *New Mathematical Diversions from Scientific American*) to show that a curve is an ellipse.

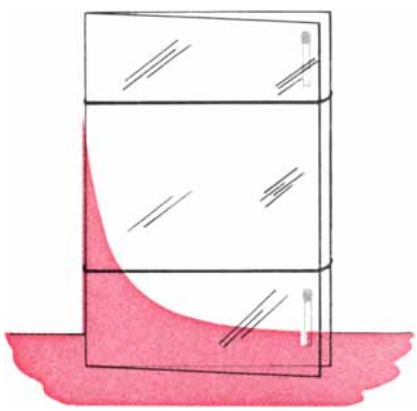
The shadow experiment I have been describing is a way of displaying the four curves as conic sections. The plane of the tabletop is the plane that cuts the cones. It is apparent that the circle is a limiting case of the ellipse. The parabola is a limit of both ellipse and hyperbola. Like the circle, it has only one shape, although the shape can be enlarged or diminished. Both the ellipse and the hyperbola, however, are infinite families of different shapes.

Astronomers often find it difficult to decide whether a comet or a meteor is traveling an elliptical, parabolic or hyperbolic path. It is easy to see why. Vary the parabola ever so slightly one way and it becomes an ellipse. Vary it ever so slightly the other way and it becomes a hyperbola. Comets in permanent orbit around the sun move on ellipses. Those that enter the inner solar system and then leave, never to return, move on parabolas or hyperbolas.

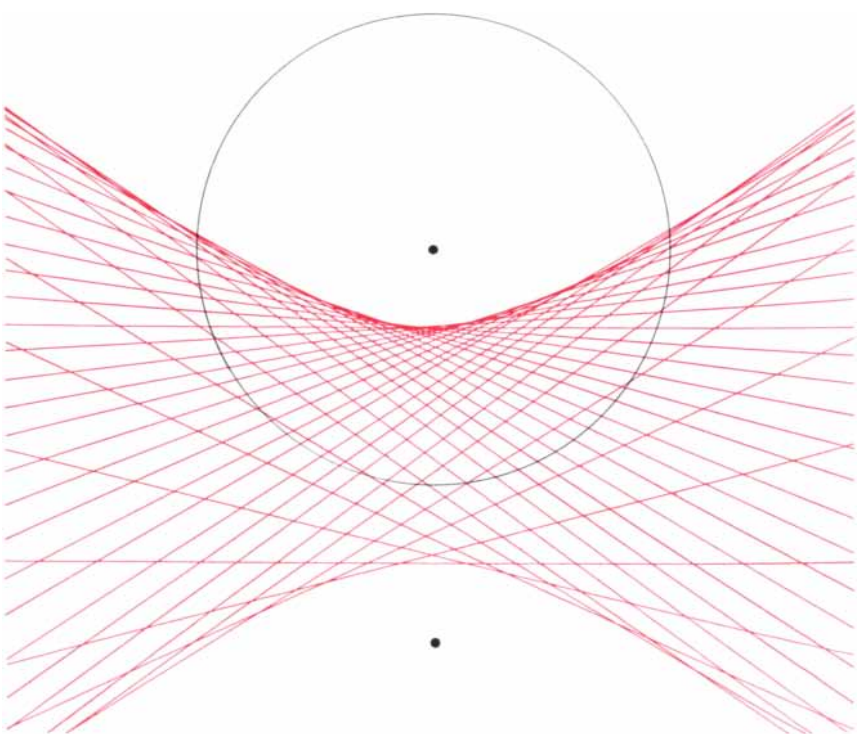
Since the hyperbola is a kind of ellipse split in half by infinity, it is not surprising that the two curves are related to each other in many inverse ways. An ellipse is the locus of all points whose distances from two fixed points have a constant sum. The two fixed points are



String method of drawing a hyperbola



Hyperbola produced by capillary action



Folding a hyperbola

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

called the foci of the curve. This is the basis for the ancient method of drawing an ellipse with a pencil and a loop of string that goes around two pins.

The hyperbola is the locus of all points whose distances from two fixed points have a constant difference. The illustration at the upper left on the opposite page shows a string device for drawing one branch of a hyperbola. The pencil at P keeps the string taut and pressed against the rod as the rod rotates around its fixed end at focus A. The string is attached to focus B and to the rod's free end, C. $BP + PC$ is constant, therefore $AP - BP$ must also be constant. Since AP and BP are the distances of P from the two foci, we have proved that the curve must be a hyperbola.

Ellipses and hyperbolas are also easily produced by a paper-folding method that points up the inverse kinship of the curves. Draw a circle on a sheet of translucent paper such as waxed paper or tracing paper. Mark a spot anywhere inside the circle. Fold the paper in a variety of ways each of which brings the spot onto the circumference of the circle. Each fold line is tangent to an ellipse. When enough folds have been made, the ellipse will take shape as the "envelope" of the tangents. The spot and the center of the circle are the two foci of the ellipse. To fold a hyperbola follow the same procedure with a spot anywhere outside rather than inside the circle. Both branches of the hyperbola appear in the lower illustration. Again the spot and the center of the circle are the two foci of the curve.

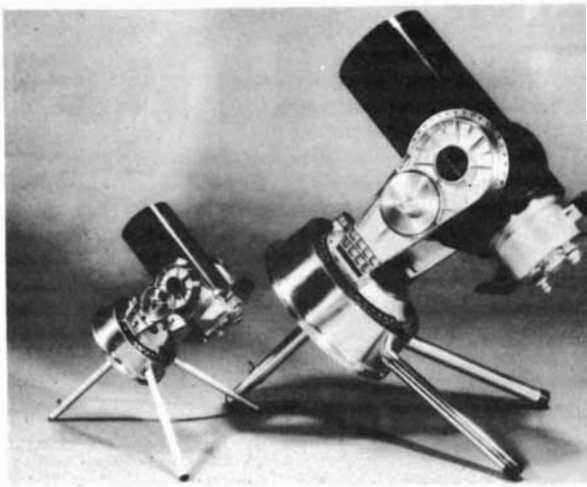
Will a spot on the circumference of the circle give rise to a parabola? Unfortunately it will not. We can blame this perversity on the parabola's lost focus. Each fold line goes through the center of the circle and is therefore tangent to a circle that has shrunk to a point. To get a parabola we need a circle expanded to infinity so that its circumference is a straight line. Rule a line on the paper and pick a point off the line; now the same folding technique will produce a splendid parabola. The missing focus is the "center" of the infinite circle.

Of the four conic curves the hyperbola is the curve least often observed in everyday life. Circles and ellipses are everywhere. We see parabolas whenever we water a lawn with a hose or watch the flight of a baseball. One of the few times we see a complete hyperbola is when a lamp with a cylindrical or conical shade, open at both ends, throws shadows on a nearby wall. Our forebears saw a branch of a hyperbola on a wall when they held near the wall a candle burning in a candlestick with a circular base.

Scientists and mathematicians are constantly seeing hyperbolas as the graphs of various second-degree equa-

FOR THE LOVER OF FINE INSTRUMENTS . . .

The Questar family of telescopes



© Questar Corporation, 1977

Because Questar's inventor loved fine instruments, he designed Questar for himself. He had begun dreaming about the kind of telescope he someday wanted to own, long before such a thing was considered a possibility.

To begin with, of course, there was to be a set of optics so fine that no amount of money, time, or human effort could improve upon it. Second, since he believed that the use of a telescope should not be a difficult physical chore, the size was extremely important: it should be easily portable. Preferably it would be small enough to be used on a table, where a person could sit in a relaxed position to observe and be able to have a writing surface at hand. And since he planned to carry it in his travels, it would be packaged handsomely in a piece of leather luggage.

Third, the accessories which were necessary for the enjoyment of a telescope were to be built in and should have fingertip controls within easy reach.

Fourth, the mechanical design must incorporate a means of putting the telescope into its polar equatorial position at a moment's notice and without the need of a separate tripod.

Fifth, the versatility that he visualized would make this instrument equally suitable for nature studies in the field. It also should be able to focus on close objects, which no other telescope in the world could do.

Sixth, the design must be photovisual so that he could record on film whatever these superior optics would present to the eye.

And finally, the instrument must be of rugged construction and vibrationless, without the aggravating oscillations of long-tubed conventional telescopes.

* * *

As we have said, this was the dream, but one lacking the possibility of fulfillment within the state of the art at that time. However, in the 1940's an important discovery in optics occurred. When Maksutov published, in the *Journal of the Optical Society of America,* a paper on his mixed lens-mirror, or catadioptric, system, it was immediately apparent to Questar's designer, Lawrence Braymer, that this break-through in optics would make possible a miniaturized version of the astronomical telescope which he had for so long wanted to build.

The Questar telescope reached the market in 1954: 3.5 inches of aperture with a 7-foot focal length in a sealed tube only 8 inches long, and with all the built-in conveniences that he had planned. These included a wide-field finder, power changes without changing eyepieces, smooth manual controls in altitude and azimuth, safety clutches, setting circles, a sidereal clock, and synchronous motor drive. Moreover, a totally safe solar filter had become an additional feature created for the solar observer.

Included, also, were legs for a tabletop polar equatorial position; and as the design had progressed it had come to include two other conveniences: a map of the moon anodized on the barrel and a chart of the stars anodized on an aluminum sleeve to slip over the barrel. The chart revolves for monthly star settings and slides forward to serve as a dewcap. Both charts make other maps unnecessary during observing sessions.

Most remarkable of all were the optics —this was a system so fine that it has consistently delivered resolution surpassing its theoretical limits. Throughout its subsequent history, the care and precision with which every set of optics has been made and star tested has earned for the Questar telescope its reputation as the finest in the world.

* * *

Other Questars have followed over the years—the Seven, which is twice the size of its world-famous predecessor, has twice the resolving power and four times the light grasp; and more recently, the Questar 700. The latter is an f/8 telephoto lens for the photographer, and *Modern Photography* has simply called it "the best." The 700 guarantees perfection and flatness of field from edge to edge; also, precise focusing from infinity to 10 feet with a single turn of the focusing ring.

We always say that when you buy a Questar telescope you get the whole observatory. The instrument in its fitted case contains all that you need to enjoy the earth or skies, day or night. Your Questar need never be idle, and you can carry it with you wherever you go. In a recent letter a Questar owner called it "an enchanting companion."

Our new booklet, described below, contains a remarkable collection of photographs by Questar owners, including a portfolio of our favorite pictures published over the years. Be sure to send for a copy.

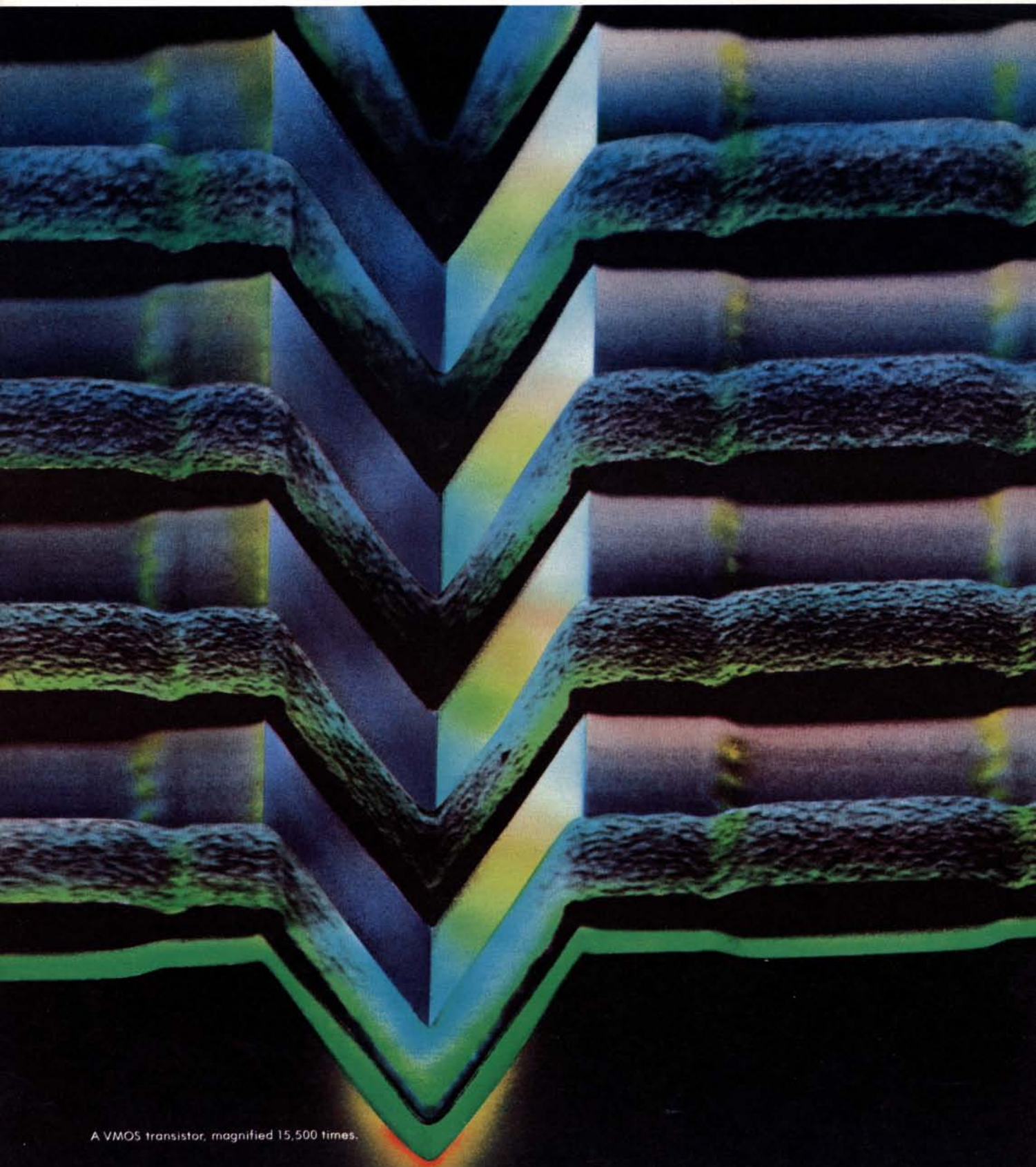
QUESTAR, THE WORLD'S FINEST, MOST VERSATILE TELESCOPE, PRICED FROM $925, IS DESCRIBED IN OUR NEW 1977 BOOKLET. SEND $1 TO COVER MAILING COSTS ON THIS CONTINENT. BY AIR TO SOUTH AMERICA, $3; EUROPE AND NORTH AFRICA, $3.50; ELSEWHERE $4. INQUIRE ABOUT OUR EXTENDED PAYMENT PLAN.

QUESTAR

Box 20-LF, New Hope, PA 18938
Phone (215) 862-5277

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

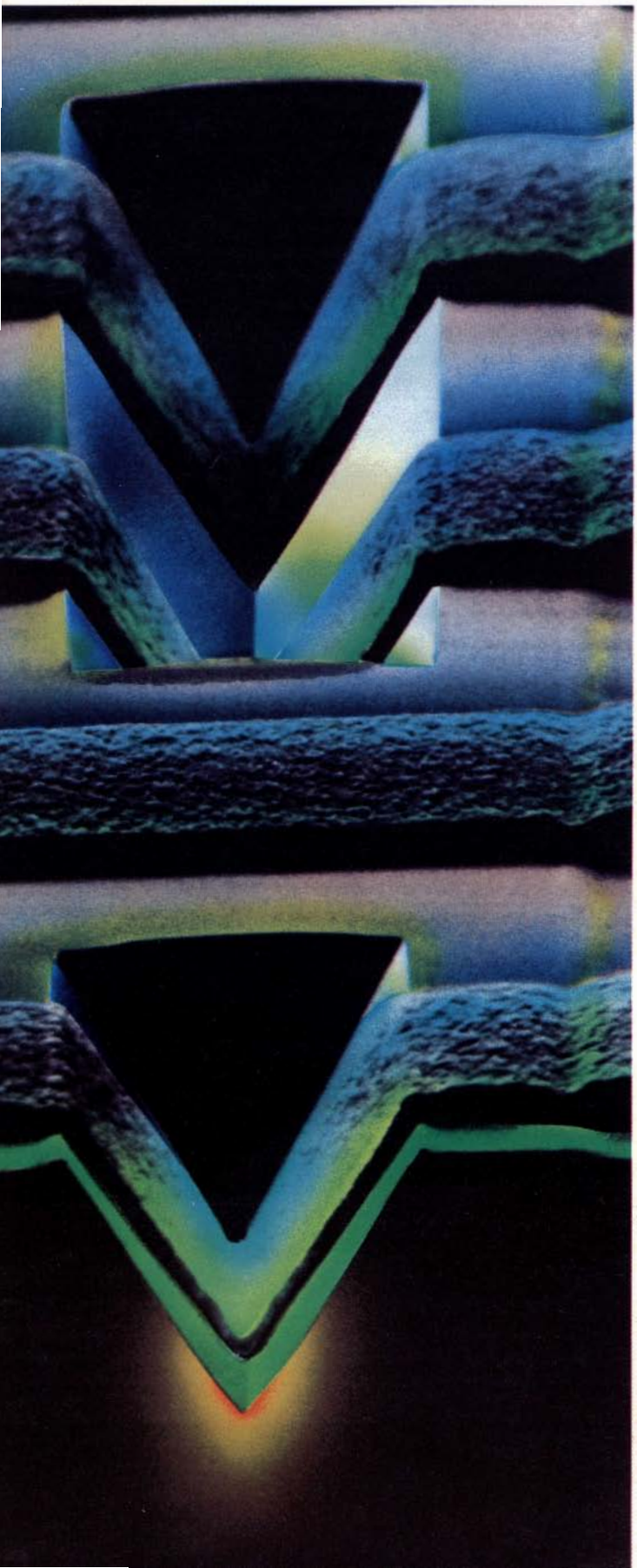
The MOS world



A VMOS transistor, magnified 15,500 times.

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

is no longer flat.



AMI creates VMOS. This revolutionary idea revolves around a three-dimensional transistor, etched into the silicon substrate.

The result? A circuit that's extremely fast, dense and inexpensive.

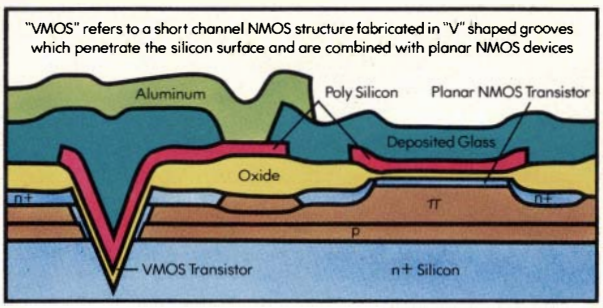
It isn't blue-sky theory. The first VMOS RAM, the 1K S4015-3, is in volume production now. And a reputable second source has committed to manufacture VMOS RAMs in 1978.

Our 35 nanosecond (typical, 45 nanosecond maximum) 1K static memory is pin compatible with the fast 1K NMOS and bipolar RAMs, and leads the way for the large family of VMOS products arriving soon. These will include:

NEW VMOS PRODUCTS AND TYPICAL ACCESS TIMES

4K fully static RAM	(1K x 4)	80 ns
4K fully static RAM	(4K x 1)	80 ns
4K fully static low power RAM	(4K x 1)	45 ns
8K fully static RAM	(1K x 8)	125 ns
16K ROM	(2K x 8)	100 ns
64K ROM	(8K x 8)	250 ns
16K EPROM	(2K x 8)	200 ns

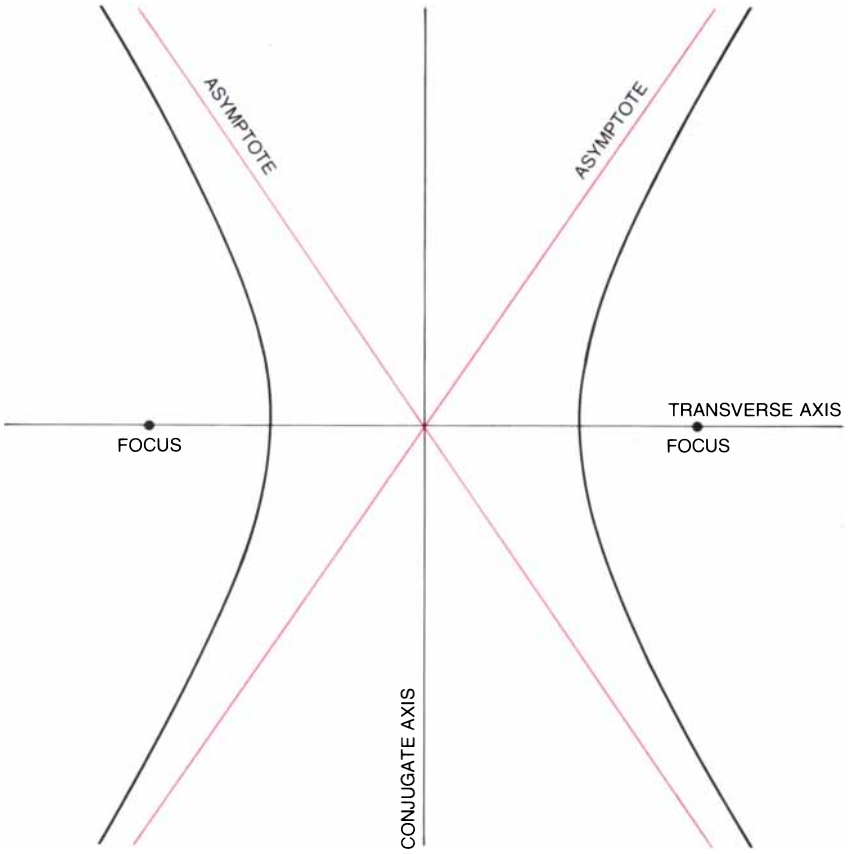
The density permitted by vertical short-channel FETs produces VMOS circuits that are much smaller than competitive chips, increasing the speed and lowering the cost. For example, the latest bipolar 1K size is 61% larger, and the new fast NMOS 1K is 87% larger than AMI's S4015-3. And VMOS densities are achieved without stretching feature dimensions at the sacrifice of yields, as is necessary with bipolar and NMOS technologies.



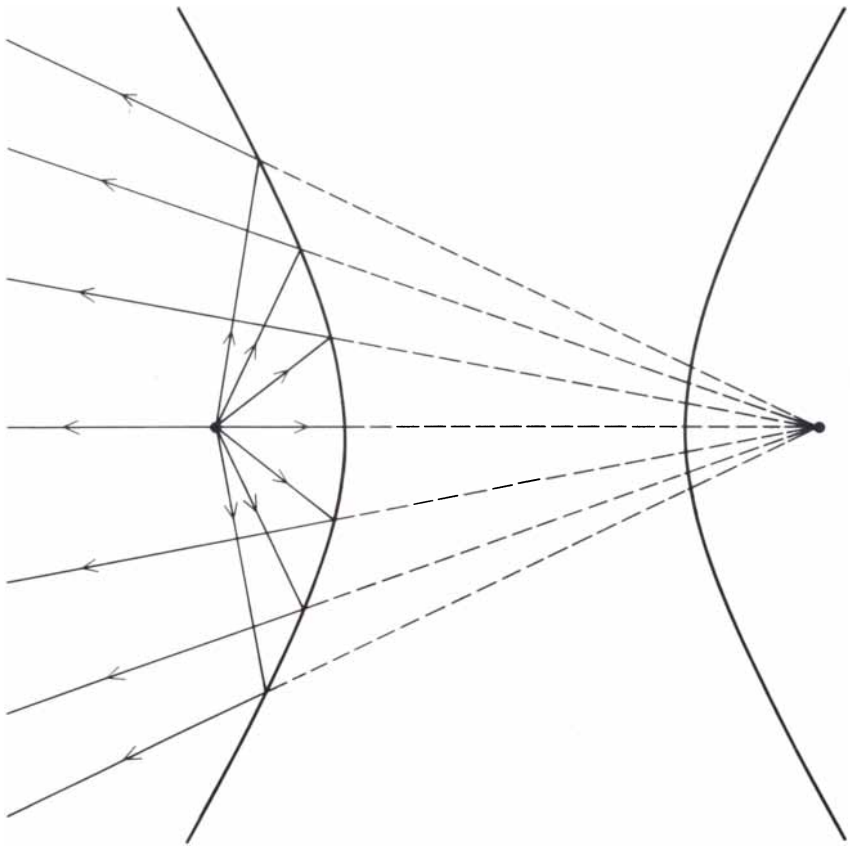
In short, VMOS presents the best of all possible worlds. If you want to stay up to speed at a down-to-earth price, call your nearest AMI distributor or sales office. Or write to AMI Marketing, 3800 Homestead Road, Santa Clara CA 95051. You'll be entering the MOS world of the future.

VMOS: the new technology from AMI

AMERICAN MICROSYSTEMS, INC.



A typical hyperbola



Reflected rays from light at one focus of a hyperbola find the other focus

tions. Even the simple equation $ab = c$, where c is a constant, graphs as a hyperbola. It is the equation of hundreds of physical laws (Boyle's law and Ohm's law, to mention two) and also the equation of many economic functions. A simple experiment to display $ab = c$ can be made with two rectangular sheets of glass. Place them together at one pair of edges and separate the opposite edges by a tiny distance with a short strip of cardboard or a pair of matches. Rubber bands will keep the plates fixed in this position. Stand the device in colored water. Capillary action will make the hyperbola shown in the illustration at the upper right on page 28.

A typical hyperbola is shown in the top illustration at the left. The two color lines are the curve's asymptotes: the unreachable limits the curve's branches approach as they are extended. If the asymptotes are perpendicular to each other (they are not here), the hyperbola is called equiangular or rectangular.

The arms of a parabola quickly become almost indistinguishable from parallel lines. In contrast, the arms of a hyperbola rapidly widen on their way to infinity, although they are forever confined within the angle of their asymptotes. It is this beautiful property that has inspired many poetic and theological metaphors. Miguel de Unamuno, the Spanish philosopher, called the hyperbola a tragic curve. "I believe that if the geometrician were to be conscious of this hopeless and desperate striving of the hyperbola to unite with its asymptotes," Unamuno wrote, "he would represent the hyperbola to us as a living being and a tragic one!"

In his essay "The Immortality of the Soul," however, Joseph Addison regarded the metaphor with optimism. After death the soul moves ever closer to God without ever becoming God. "We know not yet what we shall be, nor will it ever enter into the heart of man to conceive the glory that will be always in reserve for him. The soul, considered with its Creator, is like one of those mathematical lines that may draw nearer to another for all eternity without a possibility of touching it."

Hyperbolas have a dramatic application in range-finding. To understand how this works consider a person A who fires a rifle at a distant gong B. Assuming that the ground is flat, where must one stand to hear the sound of the gun and the sound of the gong simultaneously?

Let x be the distance sound travels in the length of time it takes the bullet to travel from the gun to the gong. A and B are the foci of countless hyperbolas. The person who hears the sounds simultaneously must stand on a branch of a hyperbola (the one nearest the target) that is the locus of all points the difference of whose distances from A and B is x.

A distant sound can be located by two pairs of listening posts: A and B, C and

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

Microelectronics.

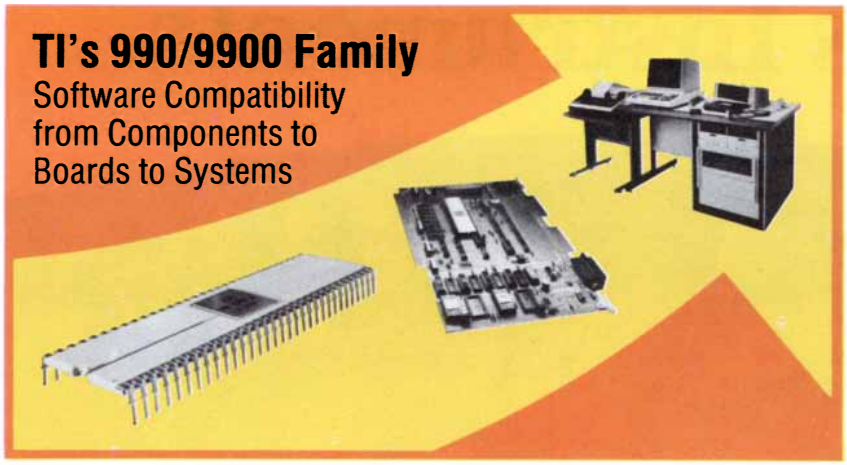
The basis for continuing innovation.

From the leader...

Texas Instruments.

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

TI's 990/9900 First Family.
Most cost-effective means of using microelectronics. To improve. To change. To innovate for today and tomorrow.



Not quite twenty years ago, the integrated circuit was born at Texas Instruments. And sparked a pervasive revolution that's impacting all our lives.

It launched the thrust toward today's incredible circuit complexities. Causing product sizes to shrink as performance increases. And as prices decline.

The Kilby integrated circuit was the catalyst for today's "computer on a chip." TV games. Intelligent terminals. Distributed processing. Digital watches. The multi-function personal calculators now becoming as ubiquitous as transistor radios.

Throughout this swift progression, Texas Instruments was—and remains—in the forefront of leadership. With a continuous succession of new technologies in materials and methods. Advances in circuit architecture. In processing and imaging techniques. In software. And in packaging.

All making technology readily affordable. Giving you the means to employ microelectronics for change. For innovation. For creating new and better designs.

The latest, most challenging and potentially most advantageous development in microelectronics from TI: the unique 990/9900 First Family.

Broad compatible choice

TI's 990/9900 family offers the broadest available selection of software-supported microprocessors, microcomputers, minicomputers and systems.

All are software compatible. From components up through the minicomputers. And as technology advances, new members of the 990/9900 family will evolve to keep you up to date.

Thus, the programs and training you develop not only apply today. But also in the years ahead. Your design and software investments are protected. As you adapt. Innovate. Move from application to application.

Already, 9900 microprocessors are finding widespread use. To name a few areas: Test instruments. Process controls. Data terminals. Cars. Distributed processing networks. Programmable calculators. Telecommunications.

First Family microcomputer modules suit many of these applications. Particularly where production runs are small and economics do not warrant developing a custom circuit board.

The 990 mini/microcomputers are proving indispensable in a variety of data processing systems. Such as room and car reservations. Retail/wholesale order entry and inventory control. Automated manufacturing.

Five microprocessor options

First Family microprocessors utilize an advanced memory-to-memory architecture. That locates general-purpose register files in memory. To give you the combination of cost and performance best suited to your application.

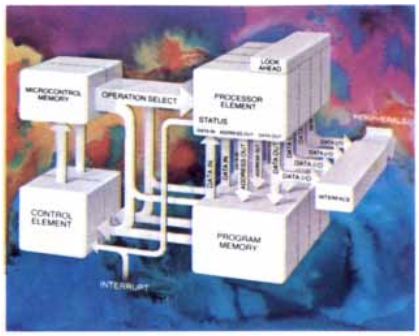
- TMS 9900—Single-chip N-channel Metal Oxide Semiconductor (NMOS) 16-bit microprocessor with full minicomputer capability.
- SBP 9900—Single-chip 16-bit Integrated Injection Logic (I^2L) twin to the TMS 9900 for severe operating environments.
- TMS 9980—Single-chip 16-bit NMOS microprocessor incorporating 8-bit oriented memory.
- TMS 9940—single-chip 16-bit NMOS microcomputer incorporating memory and input/output (available soon).
- S481 Chip Set—Transistor Transistor Logic (TTL) modularly expandable, microprogrammable building blocks.

Peripheral circuits in plenty

A wide choice of peripheral circuits supports these microprocessors. Included are parallel and serial communication devices plus dedicated input/out-

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

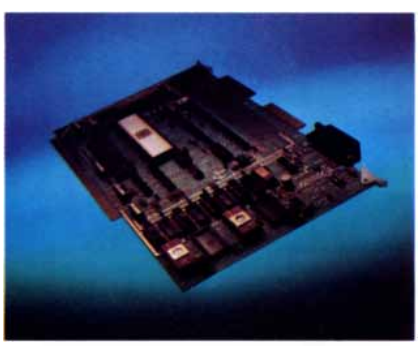
put components. Coming: Large-scale controllers for high speed data transfers, floppy discs and cathode ray tubes.



Microcomputer chip set

When your design calls for the performance of a customized microcomputer, the logical choice is the First Family's S481 microcomputer chip set.

The S481 offers extremely fast throughput. And complete microprogrammability. Emulates 9900 instructions as well as other instruction sets.



Economical microcomputer modules

Another way the First Family helps you meet time and cost goals effectively is through its series of ready-to-use microcomputer modules.

The TM 990 microcomputer modules consist of single circuit boards containing a TMS 9900 or TMS 9980 microprocessor, memory, input/output and other circuitry. Preassembled. Pretested. And expandable.

They're ideal for evaluating 9900 microprocessors. For implementing a microprocessor-based design where time-to-market is short. And, in quantity, affordable for production runs.

The First Family's 990/4 microcomputer is an off-the-shelf answer to many production problems. It also comes in a choice of low-cost chassis. And with power supplies, operator's front panel, interfaces and peripherals to make it a complete microcomputer system.

Affordable minicomputer

The 990/10 general purpose minicomputer is the First Family's most powerful member. Providing the high performance speeds demanded by many applications. Built to give maximum processing power. And backed by high-level software languages – FORTRAN IV, COBOL and multi-use BASIC – as well as a large selection of peripherals.

Applications support systems

A variety of software and hardware development aids support the 990/9900 spectrum. For example, dedicated software and firmware development support is provided by the new FS 990/4 and AMPL* systems.

The FS 990/4 combines the high performance of the 990/4 microcomputer with the low-cost flexibility of a floppy disc. With a video display terminal, interactive development and maintenance software, and FORTRAN IV – an optional higher-level language. All the features and components required to develop and execute a wide range of programs.

Capitalizing on the power of the FS 990/4 is the AMPL Advanced Microprocessor Prototyping Lab. A dedicated design lab where 990/9900-based systems can be developed in an integrated software/hardware design and debug sequence.

AMPL features TMS 9900 microprocessor emulation. The interactive process allows simulation/test and emulation/test. With minimum delay between identifying and implementing a needed design change. Result: Substantial savings in design time and cost.

The First Family is further supported by nationwide time-share and cross-support – transportable assemblers and simulators – for in-house computers.

TI's original integrated circuit changed the entire character of electronics. Judging from that impact, the effect of today's microelectronics will probably be far beyond anything we can forecast now.

The 990/9900 First Family – broad, compatible and growing – is designed to give you the sound, secure basis for entering the microelectronics era today. And for remaining abreast of future developments. With minimum redesign. Minimum relearning. And minimum software reinvestment.

Investigate the First Family's benefits and advantages. Call your nearest TI field sales office or TI distributor.

*Trademark of Texas Instruments

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

TI leadership in memories: New CCD memory. New bubble memory.

Progress in memories at Texas Instruments parallels developments in microprocessors. Two significant memory innovations from TI offer greater performance. Greater capacity. And eliminate several serious design bottlenecks.

New 65K CCD memory

TI's new TMS 3064 is the first 65K charge-coupled device (CCD) memory on the market. A low-cost, high-performance memory that plugs the gap between high-speed Random Access Memories (RAMs) and low-speed, serial-access magnetic memories.

It utilizes a unique CCD structure developed by TI to achieve the highest density of any semiconductor memory.

New 92K bubble memory

Non-volatile, TI's new TIB 0103 is one-up on other memories. It remembers when the power is off.

Having a capacity of 92,304 bits, it's the first commercially available magnetic bubble memory. A natural for applications where portability is desired in programmable calculators. Data loggers. Voice storage. Measurement and test equipment.

It's ideal for data terminals (see below). Word processing. Controllers. As an alternative to disc and drum storage. With its microprocessor-compatible interface family, the TIB 0103 can also handle the microprocessor mass memory function.

For more information on these new memories, call your TI field sales office.

Distributed processing: Putting computing power closer to the problem.

Distributed logic and memory locates data bases and processing at the points of greatest use. And promises vast potential for increasing productivity.

Bubble memory terminals

A major step forward is TI's new *Silent 700** Model 765 Portable Memory and Model 763 Memory Send-Receive Terminals.

*Trademark of Texas Instruments

Their TIB 0103 bubble memory permits data to be entered and stored all day long. Then, when phone rates are lowest, the data can be transmitted to the computer at high speeds.

These new memory data terminals have 20K bytes of bubble-memory storage expandable to 80K bytes—the equivalent of 16 to 20 fully typed pages. And virtually silent, non-impact printing means high performance and reliability.

Intelligent terminals

The new Model 770 Intelligent Terminals remove a burden from host computers by preprocessing data on the spot. Errors are reduced and speed and accuracy are increased in source data entry applications.

Additional savings result from transmitting batched data when line rates are lowest.

Both the bubble memory and the intelligent terminals use the TMS 9900 microprocessor for control of logic functions.

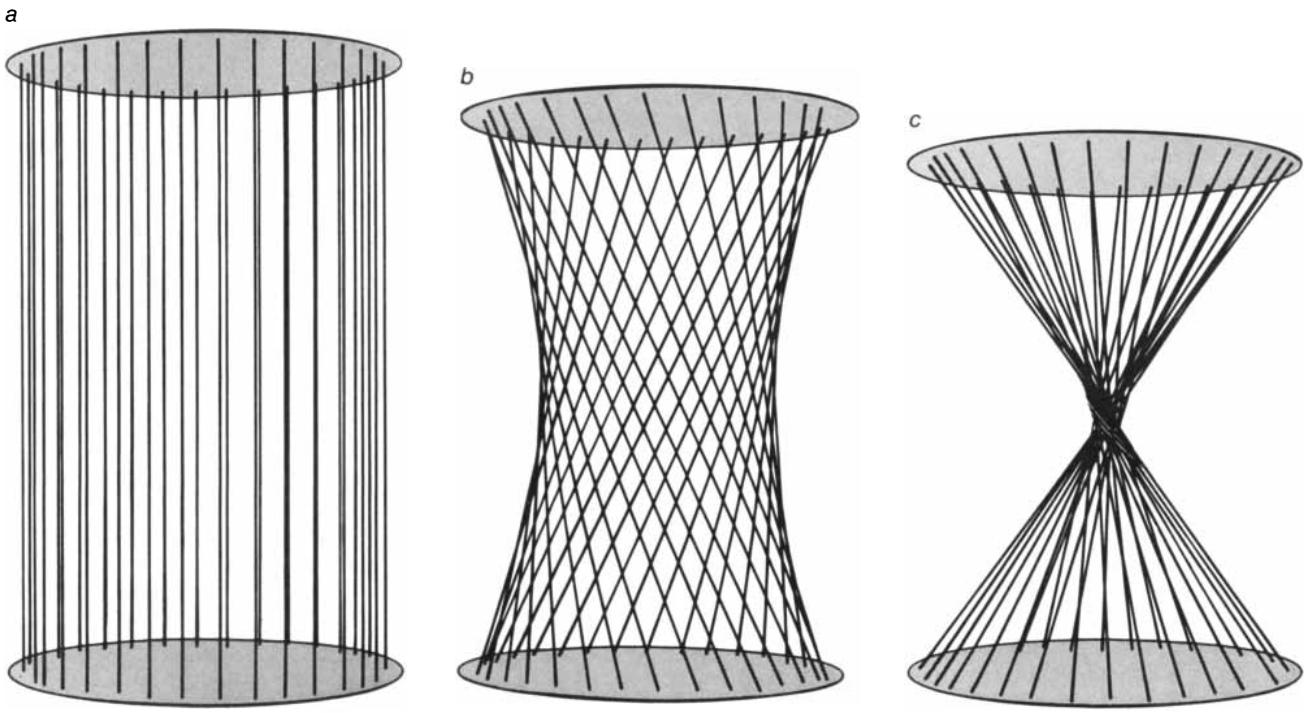
For more information on these terminals, call your TI sales office or write Texas Instruments Incorporated, P. O. Box 1444, M/S 784, Houston, Texas 77001.

TEXAS INSTRUMENTS
INCORPORATED

©1977 Texas Instruments Incorporated

93183

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC



Cylindrical string model **(left)** *twists into a hyperboloid* **(middle)** *and a double cone* **(right)**

D. Listeners at *A* and *B* record the time they hear the sound. Their clocks are synchronized so that they can obtain a precise difference between the two times. Call the difference *x*. The sound must come from a branch of a hyperbola (the one nearest the sound) that is the locus of all points the difference of whose distances from *A* and *B* is *x*. This curve is drawn on a map. Listeners at *C* and *D* do the same thing and plot a branch of another hyperbola on the same map. The spot where the two curves intersect, nearer the sound's origin, gives the "fix" of the origin.

Hyperbolic navigation systems such as loran, which was developed during World War II, operate by a reverse procedure. Somewhere on the shore a pair of stations *A* and *B*—one is called the master station, the other the slave station—send out simultaneous radio signals. Another pair of master and slave stations, *C* and *D*, do the same thing from another shore position. A ship or an airplane at sea, using the time differences in receiving the signals from both pairs of stations, can plot two hyperbolas that intersect on the map to fix its location.

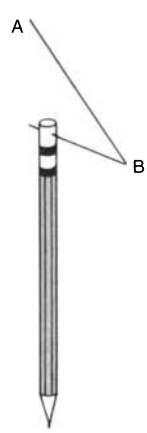
Mirrors with a hyperbolic cross section are found (usually with other kinds of mirrors) in some reflecting telescopes and special-purpose cameras and behind the light sources of flashlights and searchlights. If a light source is at one focus of an elliptical mirror, all the reflected rays converge on the other focus. If the light source is at the focus of a parabola, the reflected rays are parallel as they seek the lost focus at infinity. A hyperbolic mirror causes the reflected rays to diverge as is shown in the bottom illustration on page 32. If, however, we extend these diverging rays backward as is shown by the broken lines, they obligingly converge on the other focus. In a sense they have traversed the infinite and found the lost focus at a point just behind their origin.

A lovely hyperbolic surface with many remarkable properties is the "hyperboloid of one sheet," first described by Archimedes. A string model of this surface is shown in the middle of the illustration above. Vertical cross sections of the surface are hyperbolas and horizontal cross sections are ellipses. If the horizontal sections are circles, it is a "hyperboloid of revolution of one sheet," so called because it is generated by spinning a hyperbola around its conjugate axis. (If a hyperbola is rotated around its transverse axis, it generates a hyperboloid of rotation of two sheets: a pair of domelike structures separated by a finite distance.)

In 1669 Christopher Wren, the architect who designed St. Paul's Cathedral, reported an extraordinary discovery about the hyperboloid of one sheet. He showed that the hyperboloid of one sheet is what mathematicians now call a ruled surface, a surface consisting of an uncountable infinity of perfectly straight lines!

A cylinder, for example, is a ruled surface of parallel straight lines. A cone is a ruled surface of straight lines that meet at the apex of the cone. The hyperboloid is a ruled surface of two distinct families of straight lines. In the middle of the illustration above you see some members of one set all slanting the same way with no two lines intersecting. The other family (which is not shown) is a mirror-image set, slanting the other way. Each line of one set intersects each line of the other. A straight line from each set passes through every point on the hyperboloid. The pair of lines through a point defines the plane tangent to the surface at that point.

It is easy to see from the string model that a hyperboloid of one sheet is generated by the rotation around an axis of a straight line segment that is skew to the axis; that is, the line incorporating the segment does not intersect the axis. (If the rotating line segment is parallel to



How to spin a hyperboloid

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

The Volvo 265 station wagon was designed with the knowledge that in addition to carrying your possessions, a station wagon also carries you.

And you shouldn't have to put up with a station wagon that's a bore to drive.

So in addition to 75 cubic feet of cargo space in the back (rear seat folded), the Volvo 265 comes with 2.7 liters of fuel-injected V-6 engine up front.

In high-speed passing, the Volvo 265—with its 4-speed transmission—surpasses a BMW 320i sports sedan.

You also get power disc brakes on all four wheels. Hit them, and the Volvo 265 (even with maximum load) stops in about the same number of feet as a BMW 320i.

The Volvo 265 comes with rack and pinion steering for precise, responsive handling. And an advanced sway-bar suspension system that keeps the wagon steady and level even when you're whipping through hairpin turns.

A STATION WAGON THAT REALLY MOVES.

Even parking the Volvo 265 is a pleasure. Despite the room inside, it's no bigger outside than a Volvo sedan. And when it comes to turning circle, it has the inside track on cars like BMW, Corvette and the Datsun 280Z.

You can also take comfort from the fact that the Volvo 265 is perhaps the most comfortable station wagon on the road. Air conditioning is standard equipment. As are Volvo's famous orthopedically-designed bucket seats. You also get power-assisted steering, and your choice of automatic transmission or 4-speed manual with overdrive ...all at no extra cost.

So if you're looking for a luxurious station wagon that performs like a sports sedan, come in and take a look at the Volvo 265.

It's the kind of station wagon you'll appreciate. Even when the only thing it's moving from one place to another is you.

© 1977 VOLVO OF AMERICA CORPORATION. LEASING AVAILABLE. ROOF RACK OPTIONAL.

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

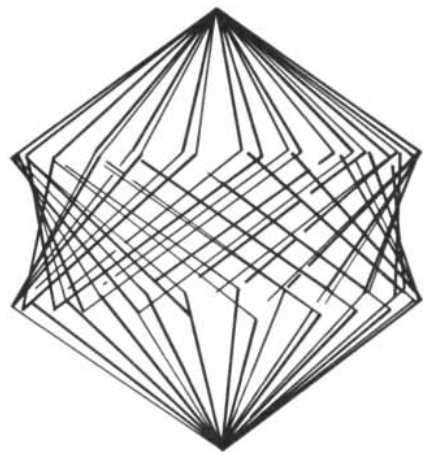
the axis, it generates a cylinder; if its extension intersects the axis, it generates part of a cone.) This suggests a simple experiment with a pencil and a paper clip. Open the paper clip to form an acute angle and then push one end through the eraser of the pencil, as is shown in the bottom illustration on page 37. Turn the wire so that *AB,* the upright part, is skew to the vertical axis of the pencil. Place the pencil between your palms and spin it by sliding your hands rapidly back and forth. With the right lighting the rotating skew line will form a transparent hyperboloid.

If a cube is spun on one corner, its six skew lines generate a similar surface. With a little practice you can snap a die between your finger and your thumb and make it spin on a corner. Lower your head to view the spinning cube from the side. You will see in profile a hyperboloid between two cones, as is shown in the top illustration on this page.

Making the string model shown in the top illustration on page 37 is not difficult. Simply thread a string back and forth through holes evenly spaced around the rim of two cardboard or plywood disks. Spots of glue placed over the holes will keep the cord from sliding. When the disks are held apart to stretch the cord vertically, as they are at the left in the illustration, they model a cylinder. Twist one of the disks 180 degrees clockwise and the strings model two cones as is shown at the right. Between these two limits twists produce an infinite family of hyperboloids such as the one shown in the middle of the illustration, ruled with straight strings that slant one way. Twist the disk counterclockwise and you can run through the mirror-image set of hyperboloids, ruled by strings slanting the other way.

A much more difficult model to make, built of rigid wires instead of strings, is described in *Geometry and the Imagination,* pages 16 and 17. The pair of wires at each intersection are joined by a universal joint that allows rotation but not sliding. You would expect such a structure to be rigid. Instead it is flexible in a curious way. If the model is compressed in one direction, the elliptical cross section degenerates into a straight line and the rods fold up into a vertical plane on which they form the envelope of a hyperbola. If the model is collapsed the other way, the rods fold down into a horizontal plane on which they form the envelope of an ellipse. The bottom illustration on this page, based on a photograph in *Geometry and the Imagination,* shows how two hyperboloids of revolution can provide a gear transmission between two skew axes. The cogs of each gear are one of its sets of generating straight lines.

A striking architectural use of a hyperboloid of revolution of one sheet is provided by the McDonnell Planetarium at Forest Park in St. Louis [*see illustration on page 42*]. The designer, Gyo Obata, chose the surface because the hyperbolic paths of certain comets suggest, as he put it, "the drama and excitement of space exploration." Note the straight line of the shadow thrown by the circular roof as sunshine slants down on the planetarium. Is this shadow line one of the generating straight lines of the surface, or is it a space curve that appears straight only when it is viewed from the angle shown? I shall give the answer next month.



Hyperboloid between cones from spinning cube

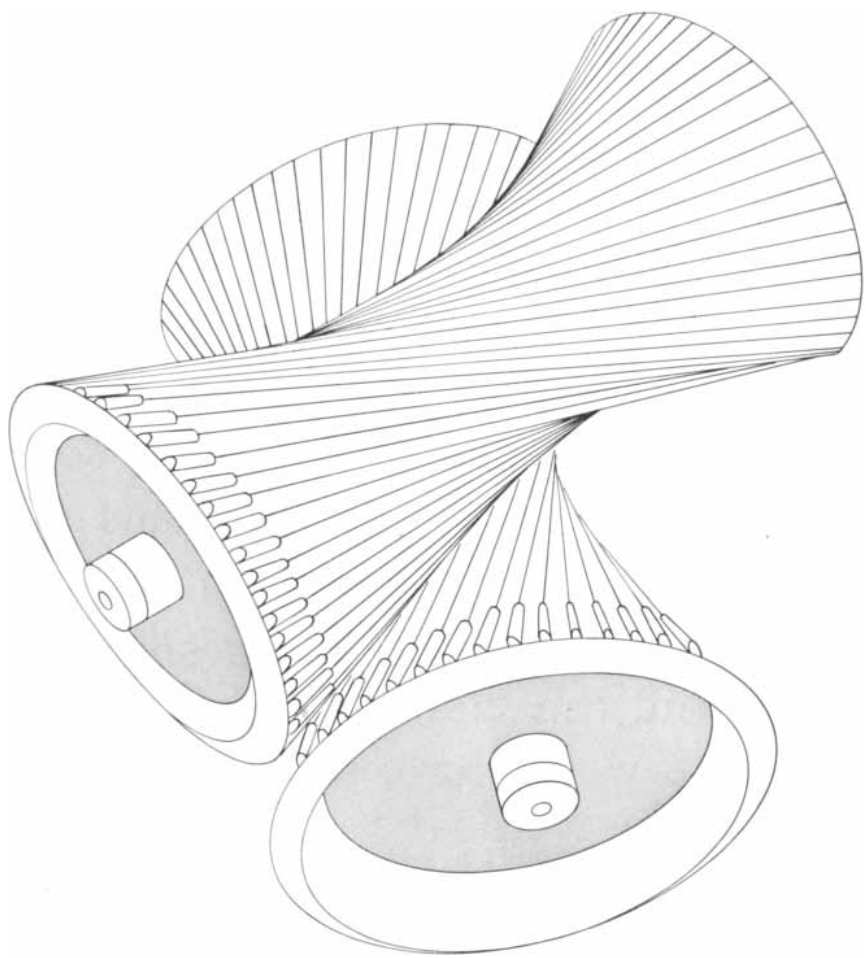
The ciphertext given last month—the one Edgar Allan Poe could not solve—has the following plaintext:

"Mr. Alexander,

How is it that the messenger arrives here at the same time with the Saturday courier and other Saturday papers when according to the date it is published three days previous? Is the fault with you or the postmasters?"

The cipher is a polyalphabetic substitution cipher working with 12 alphabets keyed by the words "United States." Each letter indicates the degree of shift for a Caesar cipher. Thus the alphabet key for M, the first letter of the plaintext, is A = U, B = V, C = W and so on. For R, the second letter of the plaintext, the key is A = N, B = O, C = P and so on.

There were 16 errors in the published cryptogram: first, J was given as the third letter instead of I, and second, the fifth letter in the message was omitted. If



Hyperboloidal gears transmit motion to a skew shaft

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

THE SHIP THAT BROUGHT AMERICA ITS TASTE FOR SCOTCH.

December 5, 1933 was a noteworthy day for Scotch drinkers. For it was the first time in 13 years that drinking it was legal. Prohibition was repealed.

Perhaps even more noteworthy: it was the day Cutty Sark landed in America. A Scots Whisky already legendary in other civilised parts of the world.

Scotch had been imported into this country before, but had also been largely ignored. Cutty Sark, however, with its particular smoothness, soon captured a large and loyal following of Americans with good taste.

Today, wherever you go in America, you will find the bottle with the famous ship "Cutty Sark" on the label. And the distinctive Scots Whisky inside.

Who would have thought back in 1933 that someday people would be able to cross the United States without changing ships?

"CUTTY SARK." "CUTTY." THE CUTTY SARK LABEL AND THE CLIPPER SHIP DEVICE ARE REGISTERED TRADEMARKS OF BERRY BROS. & RUDD LTD., LONDON, ENGLAND. 86 PROOF BLENDED SCOTCH WHISKY DISTILLED AND BOTTLED IN SCOTLAND. IMPORTED BY THE BUCKINGHAM CORPORATION, NEW YORK, N.Y.

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

TTY SA

BLENDED

OTS WHISK

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

the second mistake had not been made, Poe might have guessed the opening to be "Mr. Alexander" and the solution would have followed easily. The next issue of *Cryptologia* [see "Mathematical Games," SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, August] will explain how ciphers of this type can be broken by modern methods.

In May this department offered the following paradoxical game. Each of an infinite set of cards bears a pair of consecutive integers. There are 10^n duplicates of every card, where n is the card's lower number and $n = 1, 2, 3, 4, \ldots$. An umpire randomly selects a card, then writes one of the numbers on the forehead of one player, *A*, and the other number on the forehead of the other player, *B*. The players agree that the one with the lower number, k, must pay k dollars to the other. *A*, seeing m on his opponent's forehead, reasons: My number is $m + 1$ or $m - 1$. Since there are 10 times as many cards with m and $m + 1$ as there are cards with m and $m - 1$, my chances of winning are 10 times greater than my chances of losing. *B*, of course, reasons the same way. How can the game favor both players?

More than 50 readers were quick to point out that the paradox arises from the false assumption that numbers can be randomly selected from the infinite set of positive integers in such a way that all numbers are equally likely. There are many ways to demonstrate the absurdity of such a procedure. Choose any number k. The probability is 0 that a "randomly" selected positive integer is equal to or less than k, and the probability is 1 that it is greater than k. In other words, the chances are zero of selecting a number small enough to be written on any finite surface with symbols of finite size, no matter how small.

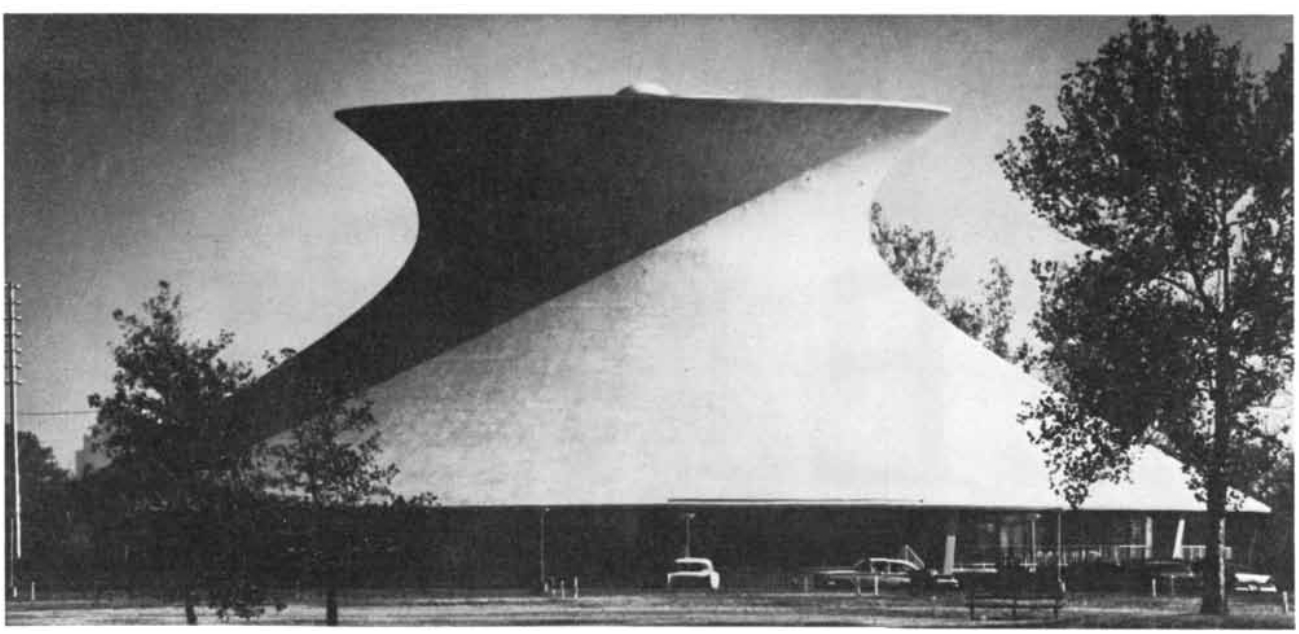
George Peter Wacktell made the point this way. You cannot shuffle an infinite deck of cards bearing all positive integers because if you could, the following contradictory theorem would hold: For any two cards taken from such a shuffled deck it is infinitely probable that each card bears a higher number than the other. In brief, the game in question cannot be played. Steven J. Brams, Elkan Halpern and Thomas Louis, Roger B. Lazarus, Frederick Mosteller and Herbert Robbins are among those who sent particularly detailed or interesting analyses of the problem.

Assume that the deck of cards is finite, so that an umpire can indeed randomize them and pick a pair of consecutive numbers small enough to be written. The upper bound of the pairs is not known. At least one player will always refuse to play. I. Martin Isaacs, a mathematician at the University of Wisconsin, amplified and corrected my earlier remarks about this game as follows:

"If the cards are numbered (1,2), (2,3), (3,4),... (possibly with some cards missing and others repeated, even allowing infinitely many cards and a method of random selection with a nonuniform probability distribution), then any player seeing an even number on his opponent should refuse to play. If he sees an odd number, he need not veto even (surprisingly) if the odd number he sees is known to be the highest number in the deck. This contradicts your analysis, which requires a person seeing the higher number to cast his veto even if the number is odd. He may agree to play, having confidence in the rationality of the other participant, who, seeing an even number, will not allow the payoff to occur.

"To prove my assertion, note that a player seeing 1 can only win and so need not veto. Thus it is rational play to veto on all numbers greater than 1 and play on seeing 1. (Of course, this is not the only rational way to play.) Each player, being rational, needs to protect himself against all possible rational strategies of his opponent. Thus if a player sees 2, he must veto to defend against the rational play of 'yes on 1, no on everything else' that his opponent might use. It now follows that 'yes on 3, no on everything else' is rational, since if a player sees 3, he knows he is safe if he has 2 because his opponent must veto when he sees 2. As a protection against the 'yes on 3 only' strategy, a rational player must veto on seeing 4, and this makes 'yes on 5 only' a rational plan. Continuing in this way, my assertion follows by induction.

"There is something very curious here: If the card (1,2) is missing from the deck, the above analysis remains unchanged. However, if the umpire announces that (1,2) is missing, then the game is equivalent to the preceding situation except now one must veto on odd numbers. On the other hand, if each player secretly looks through the deck and discovers that (1,2) is missing but does not know that his opponent also has this information, then rationality still demands vetoing evens (except for 2). It is again a question about whether '*A* knows that *B* knows. . . .' Throughout I am assuming that each player casts his veto by a secret ballot."



The McDonnell Planetarium in St. Louis, Mo.

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

Businessmen love Qantas.

Here's why you're better off flying our 747B instead of their 747SP:

Qantas 747B's clip more than an hour off the SP's best time.

Our 747B is a bigger, more comfortable airplane.

And the Qantas Australian Express operates three times a week. Every Wednesday, Friday and Sunday.

We fly from San Francisco to Honolulu.

Then we fly non-stop all the way to Sydney, with a convenient connection to Melbourne.

Or you can fly our regular 747B service which calls at Honolulu and Nadi, Fiji. Every Monday, Thursday and Saturday.

Face it, a business trip to Australia can be a bear. We're out to make it bearable.

Ask your Transportation Manager or Travel Agent.

QANTAS The Australian Airline.

Because Qantas is fastest to Australia.

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

How

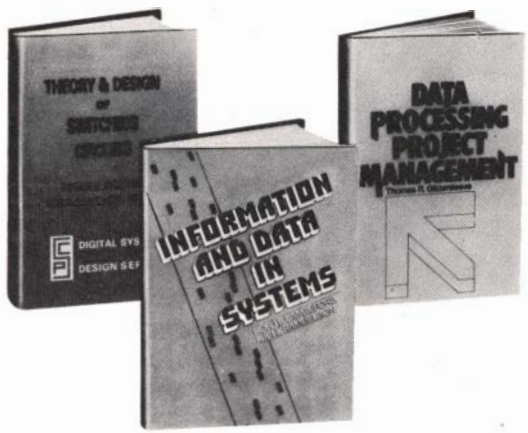
to keep up with what's new in computer techniques and management easily– and inexpensively...

The Library of Computer and Information Sciences

Take any 3 books all for only $3.95

(values as high as $60.00)

if you will join now for a trial period and agree to take only three more books, at member discount prices, over the next 12 months.



(Publishers' Prices shown)

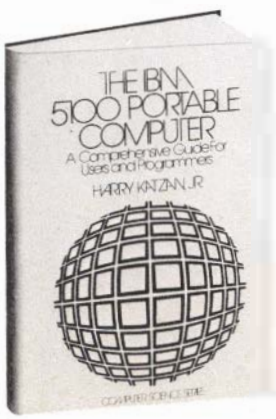
44900. ENCYCLOPEDIA OF COMPUTER SCIENCE. *Edited by Anthony Ralston and Chester L. Meek.* Contains 470 articles, 1550 pages of the latest accurate information on hardware, software, systems, theory, economic, social, and professional issues, by 208 leading experts. *Counts as 3 of your 3 books.* **$60.00**

82560. TECHNIQUES OF PROGRAM STRUCTURE AND DESIGN. *Edward Yourdon.* Over 300 illustrative problems, 90 valuable references, and four demonstration projects. **$16.95**

30820. ABEND DEBUGGING FOR COBOL PROGRAMMERS. *Bernard H. Boar.* Examines three major abends: problem programs, data management, and supervisor. **$12.95**

54450. THE IBM 5100 PORTABLE COMPUTER: A Comprehensive Guide for Users and Programmers. *Harry Katzan, Jr.* Includes sample BASIC and APL programs for payroll and inventory control applications. **$19.95**

35450. AUTOMATIC DATA PROCESSING HANDBOOK. *The Diebold Group.* Line practitioners report on the latest technology: auxiliary memory, peripherals, systems design, consultant services, software packages. *Counts as 2 of your 3 books.* **$29.50**



84385. TOP-DOWN STRUCTURED PROGRAMMING TECHNIQUES. *Clement McGowan and John R. Kelly.* Practical solutions in actual code serve to introduce the revolutionary new concept of structured programming. **$14.95**

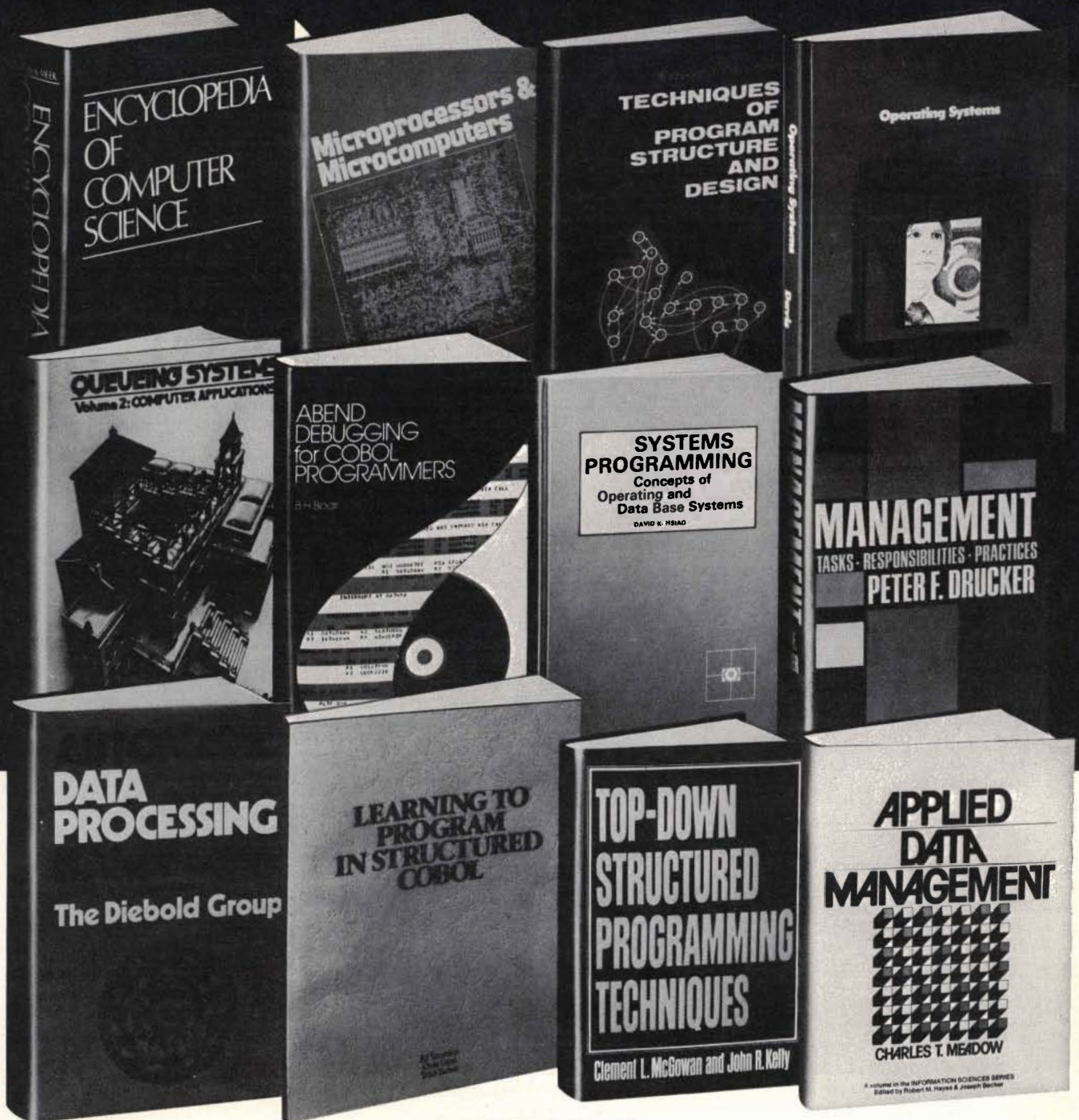
73191. QUEUEING SYSTEMS. Volume II. Computer Applications. *Leonard Kleinrock.* Takes informational processing theories and demonstrates how they can be used to solve real-world problems. *Counts as 2 of your 3 books.* **$25.00**

41665. DATA PROCESSING PROJECT MANAGEMENT. *Thomas R. Gildersleeve.* A step-by-step guide to the development of a data processing system. **$14.95**

83400. THEORY AND DESIGN OF SWITCHING CIRCUITS. *Arthur D. Friedman and Premachandran R. Menon.* Covers practical solutions to optimization problems for large-scale systems, plus flip-flop memory elements, mathematical models. **$19.95**

66010. OPERATING SYSTEMS: A Systematic View. *William S. Davis.* Covers everything from cpu's to number systems, with specifics on multiprogramming, job control, and specialized systems for particular applications. **$15.95**

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC



82180. SYSTEMS PROGRAMMING: Concepts of Operating and Data Base Systems. *David K. Hsiao.* Covers assembly systems, input/output operations, batch processing operating systems, data base managers, more. **$16.95**

70110. PRINCIPLES OF DATA-BASE MANAGEMENT. *James Martin.* Covers data structures, security, file storage, real-time vs. non-real-time, more. **$18.50**

39970. COMPUTER ARCHITECTURE. *Caxton C. Foster.* Covers microprogramming, switching circuitry, memory speed increases in mainframes, tessellated computers, much more. **$16.95**

59920. MANAGEMENT: Tasks, Responsibilities, Practices. *Peter F. Drucker.* A brilliant task-focused handbook of the skills, techniques and tools a good executive needs to stay effective in modern management. **$17.50**

62640. MICROPROCESSORS AND MICROCOMPUTERS. *Branko Souček.* Offers a thorough account of the general programming and interfacing techniques common to all microcomputers *and* a complete rundown of all major microprocessor families. *Counts as 2 of your 3 books.* **$23.00**

62620. MICROCOMPUTER HANDBOOK. *Charles J. Sippl.* Detailed reference to the technology and applications of microprocessors. Covers software to the effect of micro technology on mainframe users. **$19.95**

58805. LOGICAL DESIGN OF DIGITAL SYSTEMS. *Arthur D. Friedman.* Basic reference to gate level logic design, combinational circuits, sequential circuits, register transfer languages, more. **$16.95**

34150. APPLIED DATA MANAGEMENT. *Charles T. Meadow.* A practical approach to data bases. Covers data structures, communication, organization, design and management, and more. **$17.95**

55 15. INFORMATION AND DATA IN SYSTEMS. *Borje Langefors and Kjell Samuelson.* Covers basic retrieval functions, processing techniques, design methodology, more. **$14.95**

58085. LEARNING TO PROGRAM IN STRUCTURED COBOL. *Edward Yourdon.* Treats COBOL as a foreign language, and offers several dramatic, easy techniques to help you learn the basics of structured programming—process, decision, loop, CASE. **$17.95**

If the reply card has been removed, please write to
The Library of Computer and Information Sciences
Dept. 7-2AM, Riverside, N.J. 08075
to obtain membership information and an application.

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

BOOKS

Scripts, tongues, the opening three minutes of the universe, Roman roads and chimaeras

by Philip Morrison

CORPUS OF MAYA HIEROGLYPHIC INSCRIPTIONS, VOLUME 1: INTRODUCTION TO THE CORPUS, by Ian Graham. Peabody Museum of Archaeology and Ethnology, Harvard University ($7.50). CORPUS OF MAYA HIEROGLYPHIC INSCRIPTIONS, VOLUME 2: PART 1, by Ian Graham and Eric von Euw. Peabody Museum of Archaeology and Ethnology, Harvard University ($7.50). THE BOOK OF A THOUSAND TONGUES, second edition, edited by Eugene A. Nida. United Bible Societies, distributed by Landmark Book Co., New York ($16.95). The momentum of the old Enlightenment and the romance of the new Greek Revival moved the Academy of Sciences in Berlin to commission a noted classicist to form and to publish a definitive collection of all surviving inscriptions of Hellas. In 1828 August Böckh brought out the first volume of his great *Corpus Inscriptionum Graecarum*. Volumes of that series in direct descent continue to appear to this day, a monument of classical epigraphy. But the world learned something of the inscriptions of a very different culture, the Maya, only recently; all Maya epigraphy is more recent than Böckh's classical volumes.

There are two good reasons for recalling the old *Corpus*. Growing scholarship and new tools—the computer—have sounded a note of optimism for current efforts to decipher Maya glyphs. More than that, the scattered sites of the Maya have for more than a decade been the prey of organized airborne plunderers, who make their way to the lonely places and break up and remove anything attractive and portable. The work of the Maya is attacked with saws, rock drills, fire—even explosives. Much sculpture has been forever destroyed by "looters completely devoid of expertise trying to 'thin' stelae for easy removal." They are tough men, and they have even physically attacked the occasional lone watchman. Pirates! They are only the first link in a golden chain that connects "respectable" dealers from Zurich to Los Angeles, and through them greedy collectors and insensitive museums (antimuseums, perhaps?).

Ian Graham has for a decade of study, promotion and arduous work, both in the field and among the foundations, set himself the task of finding, describing and preserving the Maya texts on paper. The work is still in active progress. These first parts were published in 1975, and this year several more will appear. The plan calls for the introduction and five comprehensive volumes, each in three parts, recording geographical area by geographical area every known Maya text, save those on pottery or paper: "jade, shell, bone, wood, stucco and painted walls." Stone carvings of course form the bulk of what we have; whenever hieroglyphics and representational art are together, the complete design will be recorded. The work is spare, even dry: carefully scaled photographs (some stereographic), meticulous line drawings and site maps, without much commentary.

Graham's colleague von Euw joined the project in 1971 to begin his "initiation into the twin mysteries of hieroglyphics and the management of mules." These tropical texts are not in museums or on the Acropolis; for the most part they lie barely accessible in swamp and forest. Take the 18-kilometer loggers' road to Naranjo on the border between Guatemala and Belize. "With some labor this road can usually be made passable for vehicles with four-wheel drive in the dry season." The big pages of these inexpensive 60-page books present their stelae at a scale of one to 10. Not many readers will want the entire corpus, but a good many should enjoy owning a favorite site or two as the right volumes appear.

We pass from a scholar's museum of texts in one enigmatic tongue to a remarkable field guide of language at work. Here, with a modest but expert apparatus of historical and linguistic comment, we are presented with the evidence of Babel. *The Book of a Thousand Tongues* sets before the reader about 1,400 samples, language by language, mainly of the same text, from the Gospel according to St. Mark. One citation will identify that text, readable by most English-speaking people, taken from the disciplined and expressive tongue of the Gulf of Guinea, here called Pidgin English of Cameroun but also known as Wescos and Krio (No. 1,051 of the 1,399 tongues listed): "1. Di fos tok fo di gud nyus fo Jesus Christ God yi Pikin. 2. I bi sem as i di tok fo di buk fo Isaiah." The volume reports as of 1970 the status of that extraordinary evangelical enterprise, which continues the work begun among the Jewish community of Alexandria, whose members during the third century B.C. caused their Hebrew Testament to be rendered into good Hellenistic Greek. In the ninth century A.D. St. Cyril devised his alphabet to turn the Bible text into the Russian language, as before him Mesrop had done for the Armenians and Wulfila for the Visigoths. One can view here the verses from Mark in Cyrillic (old and new versions), in Armenian (an ancient version and two modern versions, one for the dialect of the Armenian S.S.R., the other for that of the Diaspora) and even in old Wulfila's alphabet (quite unrelated to the black-letter type we call Gothic).

Chinese? To be sure, in a couple of dozen versions: old characters and new; Romanizations; phonetics in Chinese built, like the Japanese syllabary, out of fragments of characters; dialects for many provinces, and a number of the languages of non-Han minorities in China. Dakota, Quechua, Kiswahili, Romany, Manchu and the Pitjantjatjara of the hunters in the desert of western Australia might serve to mark the continents. There are the great languages, such as Arabic, in a dozen varieties, and the little ones. Take that of the Sirionó, once the "nomads of the long bow" in the headwaters of the Amazon, some 500 strong, now settled on plantations, or Suki, the language of a Papuan people, "notorious headhunters until the 1940's." There are examples of general linguistic phenomena: the *lingua franca,* such as Police Motu (Port Moresby) and Kituba (Lower Congo); the old tongues grown sacred, such as Latin and Sanskrit (in the 1961 Indian census "about 2,500 people named Sanskrit as their mother tongue"); the invented languages, such as Esperanto and Volapük (its Germanic counterpart).

In the mountains of southwestern China and over the border in Laos, Thailand and Vietnam there are scattered a couple of million people known for a long time now (in Chinese) as the Black, White, Blue, Red or Flowered Miao. It is not their skin colors that prompt the distinction but their characteristic costumes; the women of the Miao are world-famous for their textile artistry. Their texts are in Pollard script, a syllabary made by the mission there in Edwardian times. In Canada a good century ago another emulator of St. Cyril made heroic steps toward a printed Cree gospel. James Evans' work is a legend: he had no paper, ink, type or press. He carved out of wood the sym-

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

There's a good way to be sure employees are getting the most out of a Savings-Investment Plan.

Talk with Metropolitan.

At Metropolitan, we have a quiet but unshakable belief that we're better than anybody in setting up tax-qualified Employee Savings-Investment plans (and profit sharing plans), and in managing the funds involved.

It's not just the dependability of a Metropolitan contract—such as a guaranteed rate of return, or the guarantee of principal for each participant, or the guaranteed participation in any excess earnings.

Nor is it just those advantages *plus* the flexibility features you get with a Metropolitan Life contract, such as our annuity options (with Federal estate tax advantages available). Or the clear-cut cancellation options.

When you factor in Metropolitan's dual-investment expertise—in both fixed income and equity investment performance—and top it off with our administrative capability and pluses like ERISA assistance, even then it's not the whole story.

The big reason we think Metropolitan will do a better job for you is that we are really committed to leadership in this field. So we have to outperform the other people.

All we ask is a chance to show you what we can do to give employees a better, more flexible Savings-Investment plan.

If you wish, we'll gladly furnish you detailed information on available contracts, applicable interest rates and Metropolitan's financial statements for the past two years. Just write to James B. Weil, Metropolitan, One Madison Avenue, New York, N.Y. 10010.

Metropolitan. If you haven't seen our proposal, maybe you've missed the best one.

Metropolitan

Where the future is now

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

"Okay. But which kind?"

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

A genial, balanced guide to microprocessor selection from Advanced Micro Devices. We are not without an axe to grind. We just happen to make both kinds of axes.

Microprocessing is a way of doing something. Simple or very, very complex.

Let's say you want to control traffic. You're going to build a traffic light at Third & Main to keep the Third people and the Main people from banging into one another. You need, "Stop. Go. Wait." Period.

You want fixed-instruction-set microprocessors. You should use them whenever the task and the design will permit. They're simple and inexpensive.

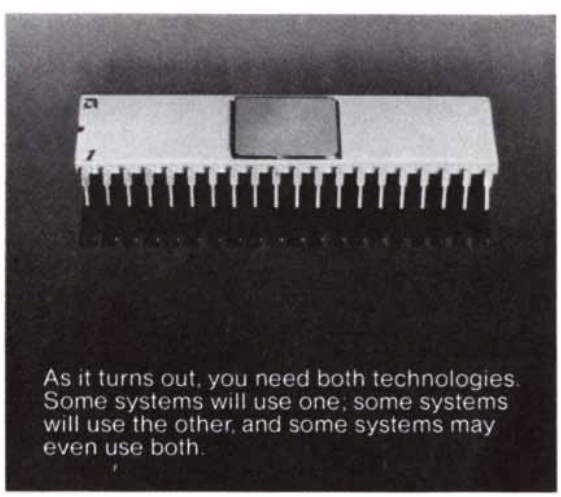
Fixed-Instruction-Set Microprocessors

We tell them how. You tell them what. They do it.

Now you have a new assignment, a new traffic control problem. It's a major United States airport. Five planes a minute, 1440 minutes a day. Three dimensional traffic plus speed and weather and priority and radar and memory to make the problem more interesting.

You want a microprogrammable microprocessor. It's faster, much more complex; much, much more versatile and—honesty compels us to note—more expensive.

"Microprogrammable" means you design the instruction set, the architecture and the mix of components for only one purpose, to solve only one problem: yours.



As it turns out, you need both technologies. Some systems will use one; some systems will use the other, and some systems may even use both.

Microprogrammable Microprocessors

You tell them how. You tell them what. They do it.

Why are we telling you this? What's in it for Advanced Micro Devices?

Two things: A nice, warm feeling and untold riches. As previously disclosed, we make both kinds of microprocessors. We are the inventors, producers and marketers of the world's leading family of microprogrammable bipolar microprocessors: the Am2900 series. We are the leading alternate source for 8080A-type fixed-instruction-set MOS microprocessors. We also make all the critical peripheral and support devices—memories, buffers, control logic, communication devices and so on.

Our present good fortune is more than a happy accident. We designed our destiny.

We are a young, publicly held, leading-edge technology company. (Every part we sell—commercial or military—is processed to the higher, military standard at no cost to the customer.)

Our principal products are the hard to make, easy to use, large-scale integrated circuits for the computation, communication and instrumentation markets.

So, tomorrow or the next day, when you're talking about microprocessors and how to do something, and someone says, "Okay. But which kind?" You say: "That's easy. Advanced Micro Devices."

Advanced Micro Devices

901 Thompson Place, Sunnyvale, California 94086
Telephone (408) 732-2400

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

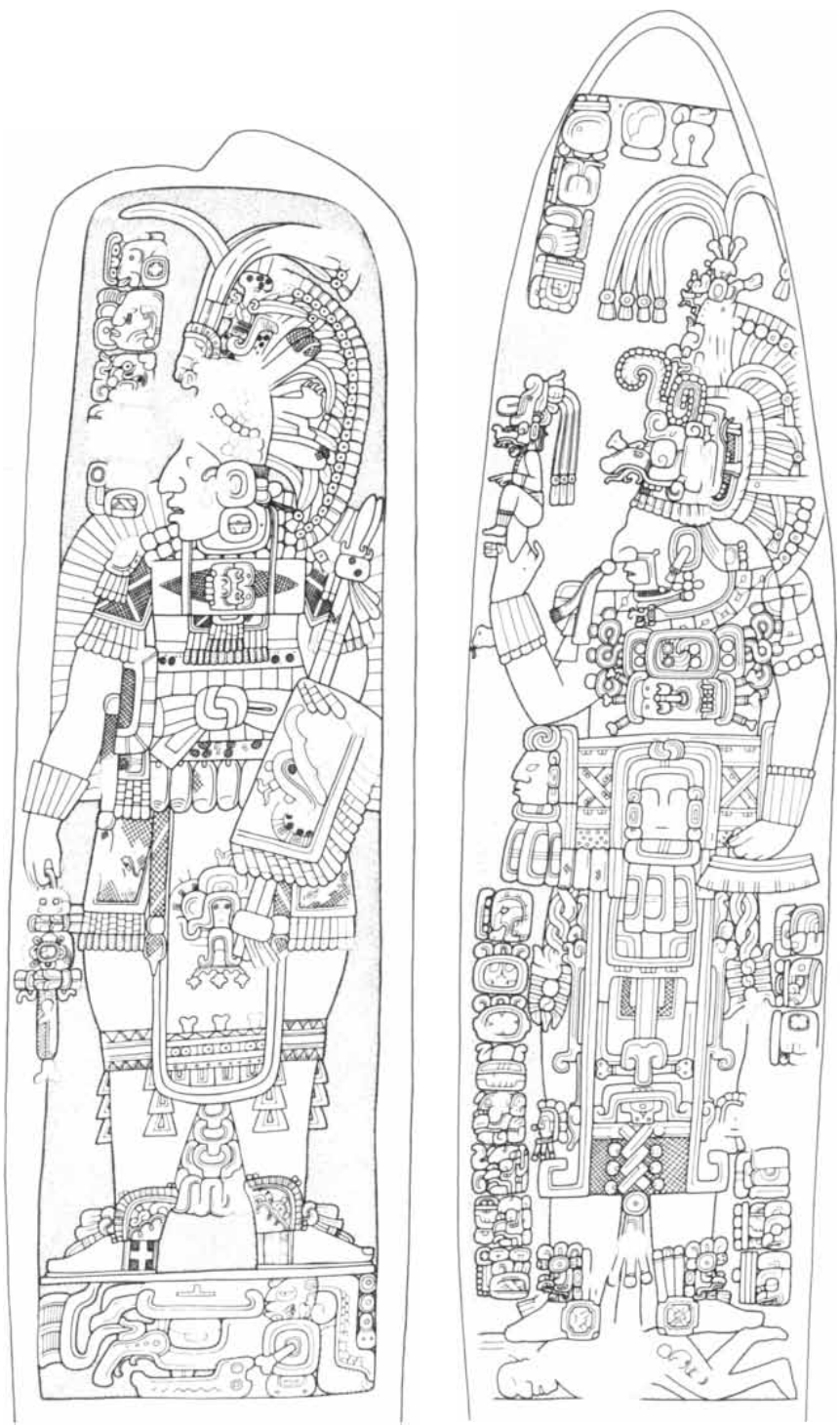
bols he invented, stamping clay molds with his wood punches. Into those molds he poured molten lead from the lining of tea chests; his printing press was a fur press, his ink was fish oil and lamp soot, his paper was birch bark. The book was sewn with leather thong and bound with deerskin.

This set of examples of language is a serious working collection; each text aims at living readers, so that the difficult distinction between languages and dialects is faced more or less operationally. Fewer than a tenth of the listings seem of doubtful individuality; most of them are the texts in more than 60 dialects of the chief European tongues that were prepared in about 1860 for Prince Louis Lucien Bonaparte, Napoleon's nephew. They are more antiquarian than utilitarian. One such famous text reads, in the dialect of the miners of Tyneside: "How! Zion's dowters, a' turn oot! King Solomon is here! Leuk at his bonny goolden croon."

The devoted work of the missionaries has by now put part of the Bible into the native tongue of about 97 percent of the world's people. The task is one of printing as well as of translation. The goal is cheap dissemination. The missionaries do not see the work as being complete. There are at least 1,000 languages to go, and "even now there are translators at work in more than 500 of these languages." The diminishing return of new readers is of course visible. In 1968, 25 additional languages were given their portion of the Bible, but none of them had more speakers than does KiZaramo, a Bantu tongue of Tanzania, with a million, and most of them were much smaller local languages, such as those of the polyglot New Guinea highlands or of the remote mountains of Oaxaca.

Four periods can be traced. The early Christians translated into the dominant languages on the marches of the ancient world: Coptic, Syriac, Ethiopic, Georgian and the like. The Reformation saw the rise of the national tongues of Europe. Then came the classical missionaries, who spread with empire to all the world, to the Indians of America, to Persia and Bengal, to China and Japan. Now there is a fourth wave, drawing more clearly on trained nationals than on foreigners of evangelical zeal. The first Bible translation into a major African language "carried out by local Christians" was the Yoruba Bible completed under Samuel Ajayi Crowther, Bishop of Niger, in the 1850's. Crowther had been sold into slavery as a boy, but the slaver was intercepted by British naval patrols and Crowther was returned to Freetown in Sierra Leone, where he formed the "dream that he would return to and evangelize his own people."

An astonishing 70 distinct scripts appear in this book, plus about 75 more languages that use the roman script with a considerable number of special characters added. There is a good deal of irony in this chronicle of zeal. Here is a facsimile text, the letters rather broken, printed in 1685 at the press of Samuel Green, the former president of Harvard College. It bears the passage from Mark in the translation of John Eliot of Roxbury, who worked 15 years to learn the language of the Massachusetts. "I have had a longing desire, if it be the will of God, that our Indian language might be sanctified by the translation of the Holy Scriptures into it." He persevered, and in 1663 the first edition of his work became the first Bible printed in North America. The Massachusetts had the good news at last, but by then smallpox, the axe and the gun had brought them



Drawings of two Maya stelae, from **Corpus of Maya Inscriptions**

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

they're here!

H8
8-Bit Computer
$375

H11
16-Bit Computer
$1295

H9
Video Terminal
$530

H10
Paper Tape Reader/Punch
$350

THE NEW HEATHKIT® PERSONAL COMPUTING SYSTEMS

The new VALUE-STANDARD in personal computing systems! Play exciting and challenging computer games, exercise your imagination and ingenuity with do-it-yourself creative programming, store and retrieve personal records like taxes and budgets, solve complex mathematics and scientific problems almost instantly, control your home appliances for best energy savings and efficiency — literally thousands of fascinating, exciting and practical applicatons. The Heathkit computer systems are low-priced, versatile and reliable — they're the ones to have for REAL power and performance!

These Heathkit computer products are "total system" designs with powerful system software already included in the purchase price. They're the ones you need to get up and running fast. And they're backed by superior documentation and service support from the Heath Company, the world's largest manufacturer of electronic kits.

NEW H8 8-Bit Digital Computer. This 8-bit computer based on the famous 8080A microprocessor features a Heathkit exclusive "intelligent" front panel with octal data entry and control, 9-digit readout, a built-in bootstrap for one-button program loading, and a heavy-duty power supply with power enough for plenty of memory and interface expansion capability. It's easier and faster to use than other personal computers and it's priced low enough for any budget. With assembler, editor, BASIC and debug software.

NEW H11 16-bit Digital Computer. The most sophisticated and versatile personal computer available today — brought to you by Heath Company and Digital Equipment Corporation, the world leader in minicomputer systems. Powerful features include DEC's 16-bit LSI-11 CPU, 4096 x 16 read/write MOS memory expandable to 20K, priority interrupt, DMA operation and more. DEC PDP-11 software is included.

NEW H9 Video Terminal. A full ASCII terminal featuring a bright 12" CRT, long and short-form display, full 80-character lines, all standard serial interfacing, plus a fully wired and tested control board. Has autoscrolling, cursor with full positioning controls, full-page or line-erase modes, a transmit page function and a plot mode for simple curves and graphs.

NEW H10 Paper Tape Reader/Punch. Complete mass storage peripheral uses low-cost paper tape. Features solid-state reader with stepper motor drive, totally independent punch and reader modes and a copy mode for fast, easy tape duplication. Reads up to 50 characters per second, punches up to 10 characters per second.

Other Heathkit computer products include a cassette recorder/player and tape for mass storage, the LA36 DEC writer II, serial and parallel interfaces, software, memory expansion and I/O cards, and a complete library of the latest computer books — everything you need to make Heath your personal computing headquarters!

FREE!

Heathkit Catalog

Read all about our exciting computer systems and nearly 400 other fun-to-build, money-saving electronic products in kit form.

Prices are mail-order FOB, Benton Harbor, Michigan.
Prices and specifications subject to change without notice.

HEATH
Schlumberger

Heath Company, Dept. 036-331
Benton Harbor, Michigan 49022

Please send me my FREE Heathkit Catalog.
I am not on your mailing list.

Name_____

Address_____

City_____ State_____

CP-129 Zip_____

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

news of quite another kind. Few are they who read the word in the Massachusetts tongue today.

THE FIRST THREE MINUTES: A MODERN VIEW OF THE ORIGIN OF THE UNIVERSE, by Steven Weinberg. Basic Books, Inc., Publishers ($8.95). THE RED LIMIT: THE SEARCH FOR THE EDGE OF THE UNIVERSE, by Timothy Ferris. William Morrow and Company, Inc. ($10). The cow Audhumla licked the forms of the first humans out of the primordial ice. It is the Norse cosmology of the *Younger Edda* that informs the first paragraphs of Professor Weinberg's compact, lucid book, a strong distillate of the "standard big bang" of today's cosmology. In eight brief chapters, aimed at a reader who is "a smart old attorney who does not speak my language, but ... expects ... to hear some convincing arguments," Weinberg rapidly sketches the expansion of the universe of galaxies, gives an account of the discovery of the uniform microwave background, and on that builds, with a few graphs and numbers but without equations, a detailed story of the hot big bang. He runs a film in words before our eyes, six frames not equally spaced in time but rather in temperature, each frame showing a universe cooler by a factor of three.

The film opens—that would be somewhat after the start of matter and time—on a hot expanding universal soup of electrons and positrons, photons and neutrinos, and the sprinkling of nucleons that makes the matter of the present world. In the second frame, a tenth of a second later, things are still cooling and little has changed. In the third frame the neutrinos fly free of matter; matter has become too thin to catch them. In the next frame, not yet 15 seconds into the story, the electrons and positrons are recombining into radiation, and deuterons are being formed out of colliding protons and neutrons. It is still too hot for deuterons to persist. In the fifth frame only photons and the free neutrinos are left, the neutrons are beginning to decay, and shortly after this frame, at a temperature some tens of times that in the center of our present sun, the deuterons can hold together. Deuterons that collide with protons or neutrons, or with one another, build up rapidly to helium nuclei, in one or two steps. The remaining neutrons are thus swiftly cooked into helium, but no heavier nucleus can form; helium cannot pick up neutrons or protons to make a stable nucleus, and two helium nuclei cannot bind together. The synthesis of matter stops at helium until, long afterward, in the dense and lasting center of certain stars three helium nuclei can sometimes find one another. Carbon is so born and, long afterward, life.

On the standard model—to be sure, the numbers are uncertain—three minutes 46 seconds have passed since the first frame. Why we might believe this tale, stranger than Audhumla's, and where it might go wrong (there are certain troubles relating to isotropy that still puzzle us) is the topic of the rest of the book. Professor Weinberg is one of the most productive theorists in American physics today; he has managed to convey that curiously palatable flavor of specific, coherent calculation that delights the theorist. The theory might be wrong, but it is rich enough to be definite. There are greater doubts about the earlier times; the first hundredth of a second is discussed in the light of hopeful speculations out of emerging particle physics. The profound symmetry of the particles, now broken and obscure, may have been whole then. The universal heat might have caused all the four forces of nature to take on the same effective strength. In those times the "physical phenomena directly exhibited the essential simplicity of nature. But no one was there to see it." What is yet to come—dilution forever, or a return to the fiery furnace—is still unclear.

To this small book there is added a glossary of terms, a careful bibliography at several levels of technicality and a dozen pages of a mathematical supplement, so that those who want the algebraically simple if deep formulas on which the arguments depend can see the basis of cosmology.

The Red Limit is not by a theorist but by a reflective and penetrating science journalist. It leans toward the personal side of modern cosmology as much as Weinberg inclines to the logical and quantitative, although the two authors unite in telling of the accidents and personalities that surround the key discovery of the universal microwave background radiation, as tangled a tale as any to be found in science of lost opportunity, overlooked predictions, painstaking experiment and in the end unshaken and grand conclusions. Ferris writes with real grace, and he has interviewed nearly a score of the men and women of telescope, amplifier and equation who represent the entire spread of contemporary cosmology in this country. It is a pleasure and a revelation to read of Maarten Schmidt and Jesse Greenstein on the day in February, 1963, when Schmidt walked down the corridor to Greenstein's office at Cal Tech to explain that the enigmatic quasar spectra they had both puzzled over for a year simply showed unprecedented red shifts. Schmidt's solution triggered Greenstein to immediate concurrence: somewhere in his mind he had already reached the right conclusion without consciously knowing it, and at once he spoke out the analogous shift, correct to two places, for his particular example, before they checked that plate in the files. Here is Halton Arp, cosmological skeptic, who chooses his objects for the 200-inch telescope "with an artist's eye." Where Allan Sandage—"a man of absolute integrity," the devoted continuator of Hubble's grand program—seeks constancy among the galaxies, Arp is always after novelty.

There are no graphs and very few numbers in the Ferris book; it sets out the foundations of the modern view over a wide historical range, from Friedmann and Hubble to Wheeler and Hoyle. The intimacy of its reportage and the thoughtful framework in which the author sets the issues mark this book as exceptional, particularly for readers far from the physical sciences. These two very different books, by two men of very different background and personality, end on a concordant note, with an echo of Pascal. For Weinberg the effort to understand the universe gives our human life "some of the grace of tragedy." For Ferris, a little less melancholy, the comprehensibility of nature is an assertion of faith. He quotes A. S. Eddington: "There is nothing wrong in that. After all, we are part of the universe.... That faith is part of the universe too."

ROMAN ROADS, by Raymond Chevallier. Translated by N. H. Field. University of California Press ($25). "All roads lead to Rome," they say. Indeed, there is no clear source for that wise dictum; maybe Cicero? This learned and yet lighthearted text by a Tours professor of Latin studies makes admirable reading because of its liveliness and variety, not unlike the trip along the Appian Way to Brindisi that Horace describes, full of cheerful stopovers, occasional quarrels, little disappointments and a great deal to learn.

There were 54,000 miles of main roads: "Roman power has given the world unity," wrote Pliny the Elder proudly. The roads were a chief instrument of that unity, political and military in the first instance. Chevallier calls the Roman fortified zone that covers southern Algeria, 60 to 80 kilometers deep and 300 wide, linked roads and abandoned fortlets by the thousand, a scheme "grander than either the Great Wall of China or the Maginot Line." Its study and analysis owe much to the military expertise of Colonel Baradez, who investigated it, as Father Poidebard (also a reserve officer), the pioneer of aerial photography in archaeology, investigated the similar network in the Syrian desert.

These studies near the *limites* tell much of the Roman system. Roman roads are typically straight, built not on ridge lines but just below them, at the "military crest," where troops can

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

As a dramatic introduction to membership in the BOOK-OF-THE-MONTH CLUB®

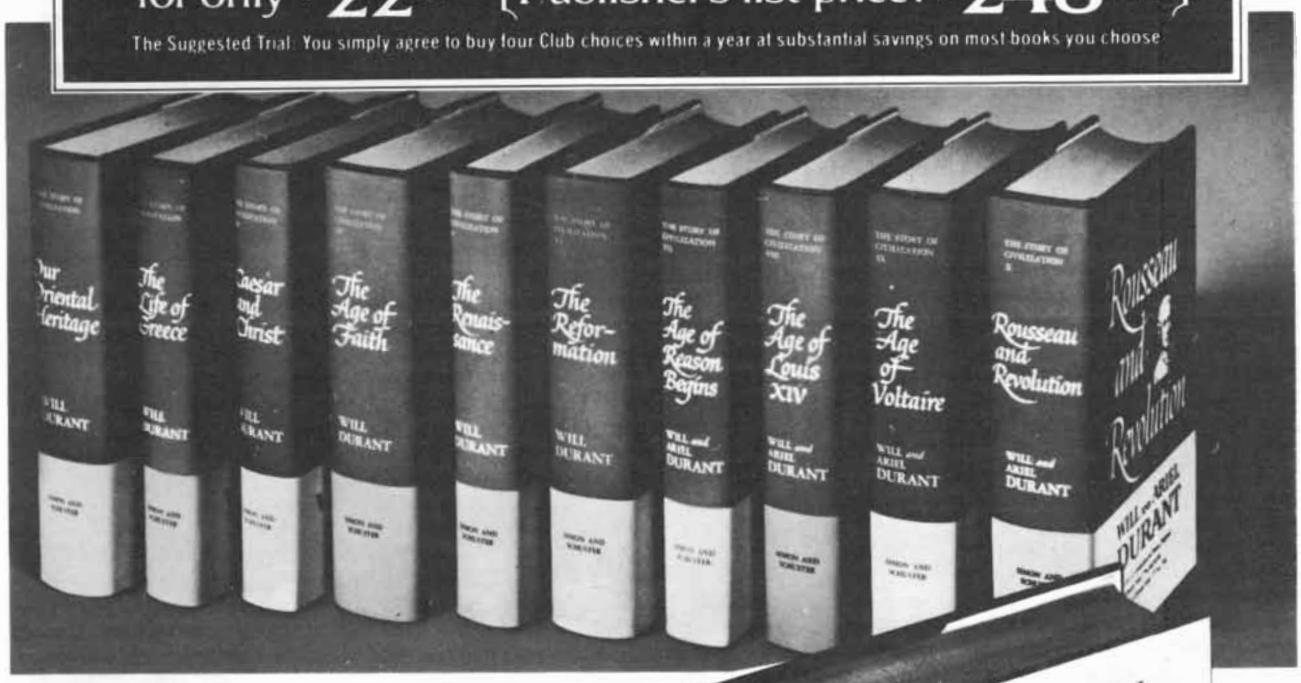
in a short trial membership you can obtain WILL and ARIEL DURANT'S

MONUMENTAL ELEVEN-VOLUME HISTORY

The Story of Civilization

for only $22.50 [Publisher's list price: $248.55]

The Suggested Trial: You simply agree to buy four Club choices within a year at substantial savings on most books you choose



EVER SINCE THE FIRST VOLUME of this remarkable magnum opus appeared forty-one years ago, it has been hailed as a literary achievement as well as an epic history of civilization. As such it certainly deserves a place in every library, especially in homes where there are young people of school age. Each volume, including the recently published *Age of Napoleon*, has been given not only extraordinary critical acclaim but wide general readership throughout the world.

"Our century has produced no more successful attempt to narrate the whole common story of mankind"—CLIFTON FADIMAN

I. Our Oriental Heritage. Ancient Egypt and the Near East. The Far East, early to modern times.

II. The Life of Greece. Explores all facets of Greek life from prehistoric times to the Roman conquest.

III. Caesar and Christ. The rise of Rome and Christianity and the collapse of classic civilization.

IV. The Age of Faith. Christian, Islamic and Judaic civilizations, 325 to 1300, including the Crusades.

V. The Renaissance. Italy's golden age, 1304 to 1576. A turbulent world of intrigue and great art.

VI. The Reformation. Europe's religious conflicts, from two centuries before Luther to Calvin.

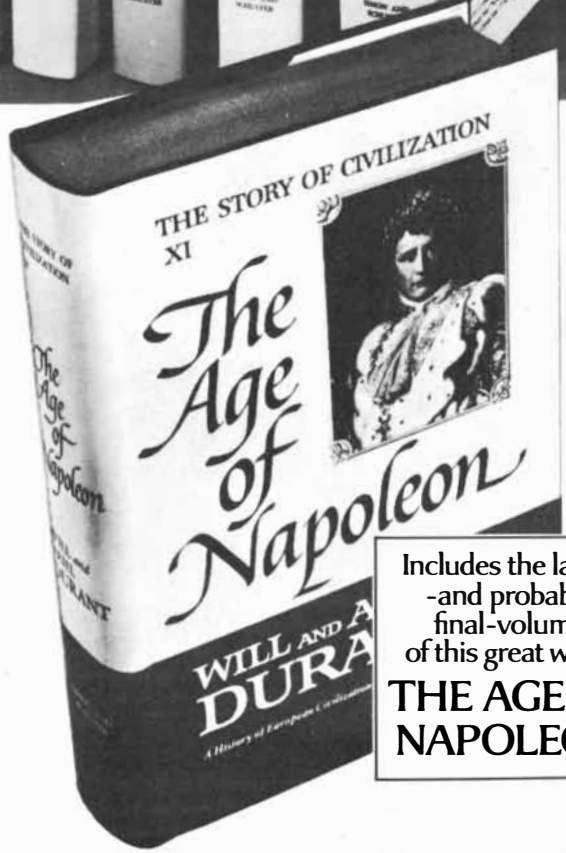
VII. The Age of Reason Begins. Europe, 1558 to 1646. The age of Shakespeare, Rembrandt, Galileo.

VIII. The Age of Louis XIV. The brilliant era of the "Sun King," Milton, Cromwell, Peter the Great.

IX. The Age of Voltaire. Europe from 1715 to 1756. The world of Frederick the Great, Wesley, Bach.

X. Rousseau and Revolution. Europe from the Seven Years' War to the storming of the Bastille.

XI. The Age of Napoleon. France's domination of European history, from the fevers of the French Revolution to the time of Napoleon's ignominious defeat at Waterloo. A history of European civilization from 1789 to 1815.



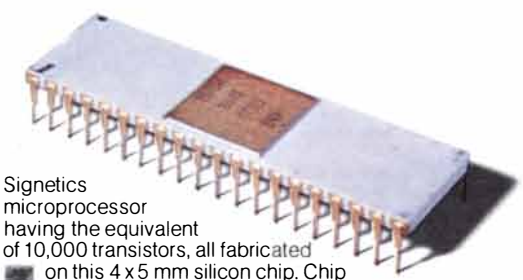
Includes the latest -and probably final-volume of this great work:

THE AGE OF NAPOLEON

BOOK-OF-THE-MONTH CLUB, INC., Camp Hill, Pennsylvania 17012

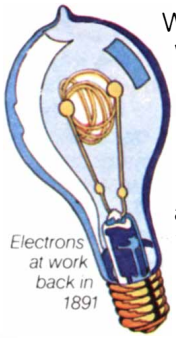
© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

In the new world of integrated circuits ours is the oldest name



Signetics microprocessor having the equivalent of 10,000 transistors, all fabricated on this 4 x 5 mm silicon chip. Chip background shows 60x magnification.

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC



Electrons at work back in 1891

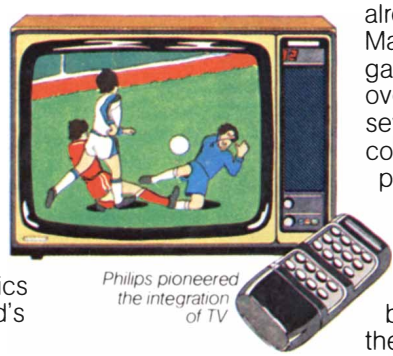
When electrons first went to work in sources of light so did we: in 1891.

Now Philips is active in virtually every aspect and every area of electronics: from components to complete, multi-million dollar projects; from consumer areas like audio and television through to avionics and medical electronics.

Our products are found in many homes and our systems are installed world-wide. Look inside them and you'll find many of our own components hard at work, including today's advanced Large Scale Integration (LSI) ICs.

The widest range in the world.

In 1975 one of the leaders in IC technology, the Signetics Corporation, became part of the U.S. Philips Trust. The combined forces of Philips and Signetics now offer the world's largest IC choice.



Philips pioneered the integration of TV

In digital technologies we have a comprehensive range of microprocessors and memories, in both MOS and bipolar, all the popular logic families plus LOCMOS, our own high-performance CMOS range. In analog we have an unmatched range of ICs for both professional and consumer applications: one that includes many proprietary types. With television receivers, for example, Philips has pioneered the development and use of ICs, which has led to dramatic reductions in cost and improvements in color fidelity, picture stability and receiver reliability.

Applications unlimited

Modern electronics and in particular LSI microelectronics offer a range of applications limited only by man's imagination. For example the microprocessor shown opposite contains the equivalent of 10,000 transistors, all fabricated on a 4 x 5 mm chip. It markets for around $ 10, will last a lifetime and consumes just 350 milliwatts of energy. Twenty years ago the equivalent computing power would have cost around $ 1 million and consumed many kilowatts.

Microprocessors are just one example of the powerful performance that LSI can provide in a single, low-cost, ultra-reliable package. This technology has given us new products such as the digital watch and hand-held calculator that we already take for granted. Many homes have TV games, microwave ovens, cameras and even sewing machines, all controlled by microcomputers. Cars now have ICs to control their energy-saving fuel injection systems. But this is only the beginning, the tip of the LSI iceberg.

Designs for the control of many more automotive functions are on the drawing board. And with vehicle radar sensing, automatic accident prevention can become a reality. In the home microelectronics will take over more of the tedious chores, will open up exciting new areas of information and education and eventually reshape our entire concept of the individual environment.

Microelectronics eliminate tedious household chores

ICs for energy saving and accident prevention

Facing the challenge

We see the challenge in two ways. The first is to realise the full potential of what is already available. The second is to keep on pushing the technology barriers and reach the next generation of mind bending chip densities.

For today's applications Signetics and Philips offer a complete product range, in all technologies, in order to ensure that our ICs match market needs exactly. We also offer them with world-wide manufacturing and the biggest network of sales and support organisations in the old, new and third worlds.

For tomorrow we shall continue to do what we did in the past, invest massively in research and development and never stop trying to improve on what might seem to be perfection. After all, before Thomas Edison, people couldn't see beyond the gas lamp, which is where Philips and the light bulb started over 80 years ago.

World-wide sales and support

signetics

Philips and Signetics give you the best of the old and new worlds

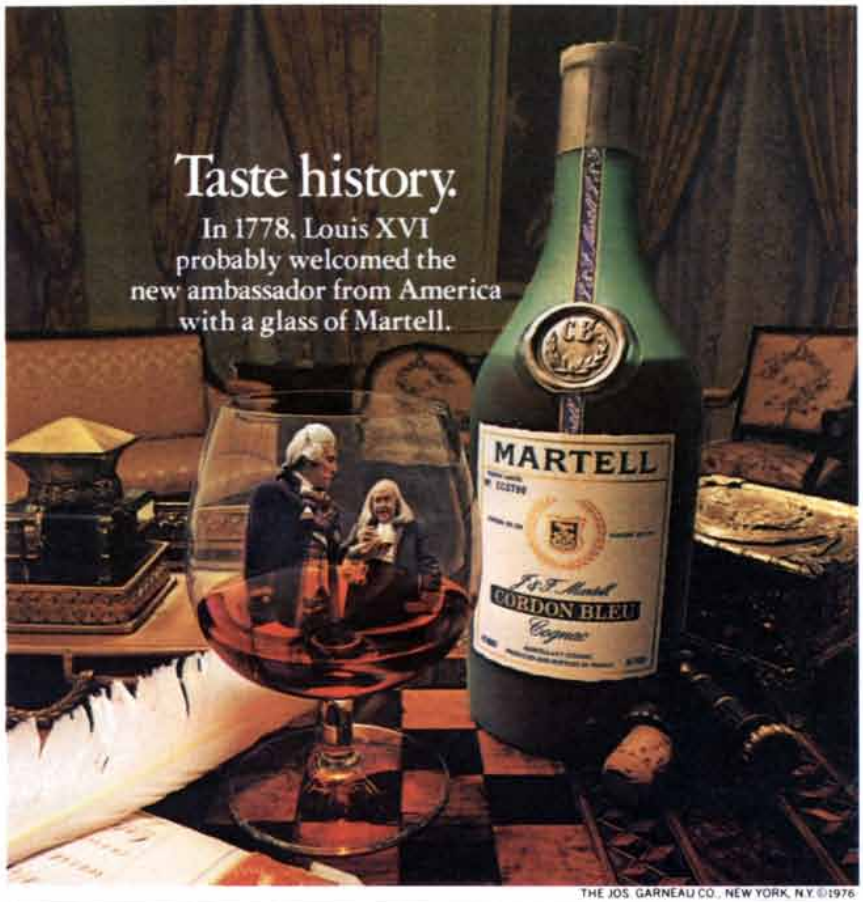
Signetics Corporation
811 East Arques Avenue
Sunnyvale, California 94086

Philips Industries
Electronic Components and Materials Division
Eindhoven, The Netherlands

PHILIPS Electronic Components and Materials

PHILIPS

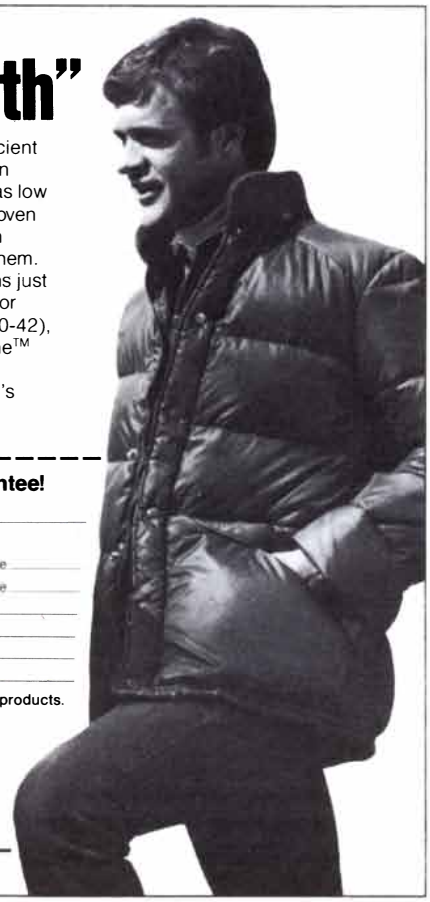
© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC



THE JOS. GARNEAU CO., NEW YORK, N.Y. ©1976

"natural warmth"

Stay warm outdoors in nature's most efficient insulation. This extraordinary goose down jacket keeps you warm at temperatures as low as −15°. Fabric is long wearing, tightly woven Rip-Stop Nylon. Pockets are goose down insulated. Tunnelled drawstring at lower hem. Elasticized cuffs. 2-way full zipper. Weighs just 30 ozs. **Colors:** Green, Wine, Navy Blue or Sailing Blue. **Sizes:** Men's S(36-38), M(40-42), L(44-46), XL(48). # **0241** Men's Snowline™ Jacket **$59.00** postpaid. **Sizes:** Women's S(8-10), M(12-14), L(16). # **0242** Women's Snowline™ Jacket **$59.00** postpaid.



Order Today! Money Back Guarantee!

Enclosed is my check or money order for $ _____
(Add sales tax where applicable.)

☐ # 0241 Men's Snowline. Color _____ Size _____

☐ # 0242 Women's Snowline. Color _____ Size _____

Name _____

Address _____

City _____

State _____ Zip _____

☐ Send me FREE your color catalog of unique outdoor products.

Eddie Bauer

Dept. BSC, Third & Virginia, Seattle, WA 98124

march without being seen yet can see well enough over the ridge. Down main roads hurried or dawdled the travelers and the commerce of the Empire, on horseback, in comfortable litters borne by men or mules, in gigs or coaches, on heavy wagons drawn by many teams or on foot. The legions tramped 10,000 paces a day, 15 kilometers, on regular march, twice that when they were on *magnum iter*. (A soldier got one day in four for rest.) With heavy baggage—the "artillery"—the troops were slowed down. The imperial post carried officials and their messages in horse-drawn chaises, changed at prepared relays, at a speed of some 75 kilometers per day. There were bronze diplomatic credit cards, and forgeries too.

The heart of this book is the nature of evidence. All kinds of it exist. There are the writings of the poets and diarists, the legislation, the histories (which are often not much help because of their political emphasis). Then there are inscriptions on the uniform stone milestones. We have some 4,000 milestones inscribed in Latin, more than half of them in Africa. Few are in place; they have had to be searched out in the villages, where over the centuries they made fine rollers or hones for axes or, a little hollowed out, stoups for holy water. It is no easy task to match the marked stones with the several itineraries and maps we have from Rome, some in medieval copies, a few inscribed on silver goblets or enameled cups. Place-names and pilgrims' tales, a few road signs (authenticity uncertain) and the lives of saints preserve the old roads on paper.

The ground is of course the surest source, but it is not an easy one. The city roads and bridges give hints, town gates are junctions, field boundaries preserve alignments long after the road itself is gone. The fields of Gaul declare the old roads, even on maps and in recent deeds and boundaries. Aerial photography is of course a powerful tool. It is clear that the roads generally followed a straight line but not blindly so; they show a rational engineering practice, "respecting the lie of the ground" so that the line is bent in places. The construction was not the simple buried wall dear to the textbooks. The roads were always carefully based and drained, built up in many layers and not always paved. The builders paid great attention to local conditions, particularly to sources of materials and to wetlands. They often resorted to causeways. Where there are streams to cross one finds fords, stations for the rafts of professional ferrymen and, on the biggest roads, bridges.

Aerial photographs of the landscape of Europe often brilliantly display the roads of Rome. There are pitfalls, however. A disused narrow-gauge railway can simulate a Roman road; it had to solve the same problems. The track

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

Why do so many astute business leaders pay $20 a year for the American Express® Card?

It's worth a great deal more!

The American Express Card is tougher to get and costs more than most cards. $20 a year. But for astute businessmen and women the bottom line is—"it gives you more." More convenience. More security. More emergency protection than other cards—or even cash!

Take it along on your next trip. It's recognized at leading restaurants, hotels, motels and fine stores. It's welcomed by all the world's major airlines and car rental agencies. You can buy gifts with it. Send flowers. Cable money abroad. Even host dinners when you can't be there to pick up the check.

But, there's much more to the American Express Card. For example:

Instant Travelers Cheques.

At the last minute or in an emergency, you can now obtain up to $500 in American Express Travelers Cheques. The secret is a network of automated Travelers Cheque Dispensers in selected major U.S. airports, exclusively for Cardmembers. It works in a minute, 24 hours a day, every day of the year.

Emergency check cashing, worldwide.

You can cash your personal check of up to $50 at any participating hotel or motel where you're a registered guest. Just by showing the Card.

You can also write a personal check and get $50 in cash and as much as $450 in Travelers Cheques, at most offices of the American Express Company, its subsidiaries and Representatives.

Your home away from home.

When you're away from home, you can turn to American Express for help. American Express Company, its subsidiaries and Representatives have more than 600 Travel Service offices all around the world.

You can use them for all sorts of things. To hold your mail. Plan or change your travel arrangements. Charge travel, theater or tour tickets.

No preset spending limit.

The American Express Card doesn't set a limit in advance for the amount you can charge. As a result, you set the pattern on spending limits with the Card as you use it.

Some other cards limit you to as little as $500. This can be trouble on a trip if you find you've exceeded the set limit.

The special Membership Brochure you receive when the Card is issued describes many additional benefits. They're all yours for just $20 a year.

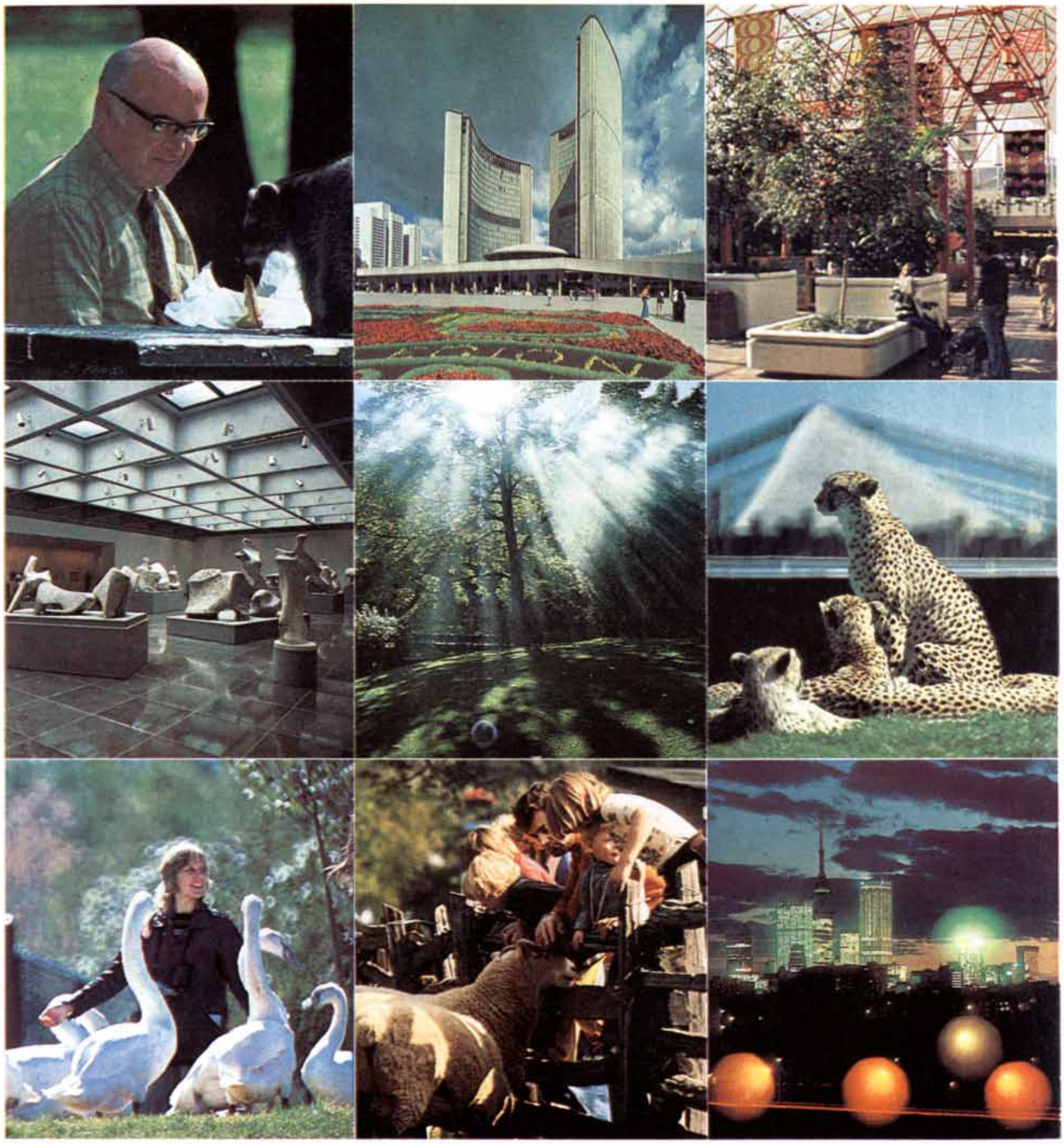
To apply for the American Express Card, just fill out and mail the attached application. If someone has been here before and the application isn't attached, just jot down this toll-free number—800-528-8000. We'll send you an application without delay.

AMERICAN EXPRESS

The American Express Card. Don't leave home without it.SM

©American ExpressCompany, 1977

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC



A great big park with a city in it.

Eleven square miles of the ravines and parklands and island playgrounds, the green space Toronto grew up around grows on to this day. But you know it's a city – Opera and Ballet, the best of Broadway and much more, art galleries, a brand new zoo, our Science Centre, the Cinesphere (nifty flicks six stories tall), City Hall, cosmopolitan shopping and nightlife, five thousand ways to savour the flavours of our fifty cultures (one of them 1000 feet up), some truly grand world class hotels and yes, we love Visitors.
To find out more about the urban pleasures of your next-door neighbours up north, call COLLECT (416) 965-4008, or write: Ontario Travel, Dept. G.B., Queen's Park, Toronto M7A 2E5.
We'll send you our Traveller's Encyclopaedia.

Ontario Canada

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

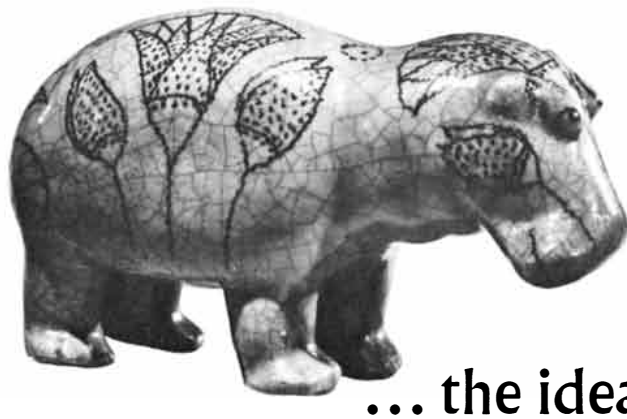
seeks a straight course, makes good use of embankments, avoids little settlements and runs beside a major road of today. Only the wide curve it must make on slopes betrays it to the photointerpreter: "There is nothing more like a Roman road in lay-out, color, width and general appearance."

This is not so much a reference book as a rich and discursive account by a man in love with the problem; its carefully classified bibliography should be a help to anyone who wants more. The general reader will enjoy the trip. The illustrations are fresh and cogent, although the road maps of the regions of the Empire are rather small.

MAMMALIAN CHIMAERAS, by Anne McLaren, F.R.S. Cambridge University Press ($19.95). REGENERATION, by Priscilla Mattson. The Bobbs-Merrill Company, Inc. ($4.95). A father and a mother contribute equally to the many inborn properties of every one of us. We develop from a single egg, that cell newly endowed with a father's packet of chromosomes. We grow by a dynamic and intricate pageant of fission and near-fusion through 40 stages of cell division to a developed adult organism; "every mammal is an organized patchwork of different kinds of cell." If human skin is cut or bone is broken, the process begins again locally, and new skin or bone grows into a near-original state. Let a little newt lose even an entire leg and two months later another leg is back in place, either quite normal or somewhat small.

Experimental intervention into this process is of long standing; it goes back to old Lazzaro Spallanzani and remains vigorous as a research specialty worldwide; it is particularly strong in the U.S.S.R. In regeneration the track of development is essentially reentered a second time. Even more remarkable, the entire track can be begun in an unexpected way. The chimaera is a composite animal, normal in size and shape, a patchwork of two (or more) distinct populations of cells, each set typically having ultimately two parents of its own. The phenomenon is experimentally some 15 years old; it has attracted a few dozen specialized investigators who have been steadily fascinated by the "questions that one never dreamt existed in the days when an individual had two parents only."

In the great museum in Florence the visitor can see a fine chimaera with signs of unusual regeneration. It is a lion with a serpent for a tail and a goat's neck and head arising from its back, the work of an unknown Etruscan artist in bronze (with expert repair by Cellini). In *Mammalian Chimaeras,* a fast-paced but highly technical monograph (with a comprehensive bibliography) by a British leader in the work, the reader can see plenty



... the ideal way to buy your presents from The Metropolitan Museum

Every three months—four times a year—the Museum will announce by mail remarkable new objects—exact copies of Museum originals: sculpture, decorative art, tableware, and ornaments.

The variety will be extraordinary: ancient jewelry in gold and silver; Oriental and European porcelain; early American glass in crystal and rare colors; bronze from Egypt, Greece, China, and the medieval world; silver, pewter, brass, and pottery from Colonial America.

These copies, often produced by the same techniques used for the originals, are made by artist-craftsmen working under the Museum's direct supervision. The care taken in production frequently limits the quantity, and the majority of reproductions can be bought only by mail or at the Museum. (Above: Hippopotamus, bright blue faience decorated with lotus flowers. Length 8", $19.75 plus $1.25 shipping.)

To receive all of the advance announcements to be issued during the next year, send the coupon below with one dollar to cover mailing.

You will receive immediately the 116-page Christmas Catalogue. The brilliant array of new presents includes an Egyptian jasmine flower necklace; a golden Buddha; a medieval silver bowl; stained glass; jade and bronze horses from ancient China; an 18th-century porcelain dinner service; new needlework kits from the *Unicorn Tapestries;* snowflakes, stars, and bells in gold and silver; and an unparalleled selection of Christmas cards. An additional 24-page full-color catalogue introduces the Museum's Costume Institute "originals"—line-for-line recreations of designs from the past which bring unusual flair to contemporary fashion. Among these is the first copy ever made of the fabulous Imperial Russian "100,000 gold ruble" shawl. This outstanding reproduction in fine wool challis, with its bold stripes and intricate floral patterns retains the more than 50 colors of the original. It measures 21" x 96"; the price is $35.00.

THE METROPOLITAN MUSEUM OF ART

255 Gracie Station, New York 10028

Please send me all advance catalogues of new objects to be issued by the Museum during the next year. $1.00 to cover mailing is enclosed.

NAME _____

ADDRESS _____

_____ ZIP _____

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

The five dumbest products in America.

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

There they sit.

Five products with no intelligence whatever.

And you can't blame the people who made them. Because until now, nobody had the technology to make these products actually think.

So we've had cars that can only respond to their drivers' commands, while they charge inefficiently on.

Homes that know only if it's too hot or too cold, while all hell breaks loose in the front yard.

TV sets that can only reproduce what the station tells them to reproduce.

Telephones that can only send your voice from point A to point B.

And toasters that can't tell the difference between an English muffin and a split bagel.

The fact is, these products haven't really changed in more than 20 years.

But what if there were a miniature computer that could make them think? A little brain that could make them sense a situation, make a decision, and do something about it?

Hidden in the air cleaner of your car, this computer could adjust your car's engine mixture to compensate for changes in temperature, humidity, air pressure and fuel volatility. To give you optimum gas mileage and minimum pollution anywhere, anytime.

Recessed in a wall of your home, it could do the obvious things like control temperature, humidity, and air purity. But it could also water the lawn, warn of fire, scare intruders, turn off the lights, and figure the family budget.

Inside your TV set, it could turn on your favorite programs automatically, serenade you with music when the commercials come on, read bedtime stories to the kids, and do your income tax.

Concealed in your telephone, it could turn your kitchen into a voting booth, call the fire department automatically, time your calls, inventory your food, start the coffee, mix your drinks.

And in your toaster, it could create the impossible: a perfect piece of toast.

What if?

Well, it's not a "what if," it's here now.

In a miniature computer no bigger than a pack of cigarettes.

It's called a microprocessor, and we're the first company to sell one for as little as $5.00.

It's already been ordered by hundreds of manufacturers.

Including people who make appliances, automotive equipment, and TV sets.

So it looks like some of the products on this page won't be dumb for long.

And if you'll write 2900 Semiconductor Drive, Santa Clara, CA 95051, for our free booklet—maybe we can make your product disappear from this ad.

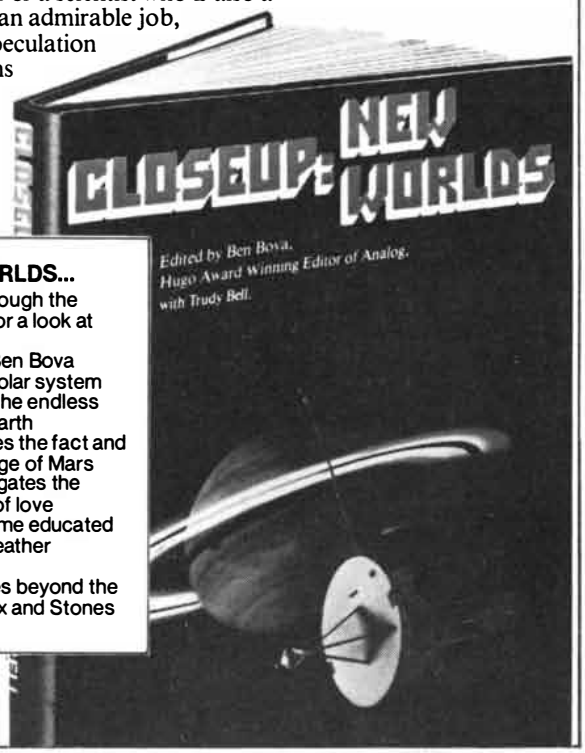
National Semiconductor

Makers of the 8080A, SC/MP and PACE microprocessors.

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

The latest discoveries and mysteries of the solar system

"Each chapter is the work of a scientist who is also a fine sf writer; each does an admirable job, and indulges in a little speculation about future explorations and uses of the planets.
— *Library Journal*"
A Literary Guild Alternate Selection
222 pp. illus. $15.00



In CLOSEUP: NEW WORLDS...
- Joe Haldeman peers through the best equipment available for a look at Mercury's blinding surface
- Richard Hoagland and Ben Bova examine the origin of the solar system
- G. Harry Stine explores the endless mysteries of Tellus, a.k.a. Earth
- Jerry Pournelle discusses the fact and fiction behind our knowledge of Mars
- Gregory Benford investigates the irony of Venus as a planet of love
- Hal Clement hazards some educated guesses about Jupiter's weather conditions
- George Harper star-gazes beyond the planets in his chapter, "Styx and Stones & Maybe Charon Too."

St. Martin's Press
175 Fifth Avenue
New York, New York 10010

Plant a THINK TANK anywhere and watch the minds grow!

home-office-school-park-club-churches-laboratory

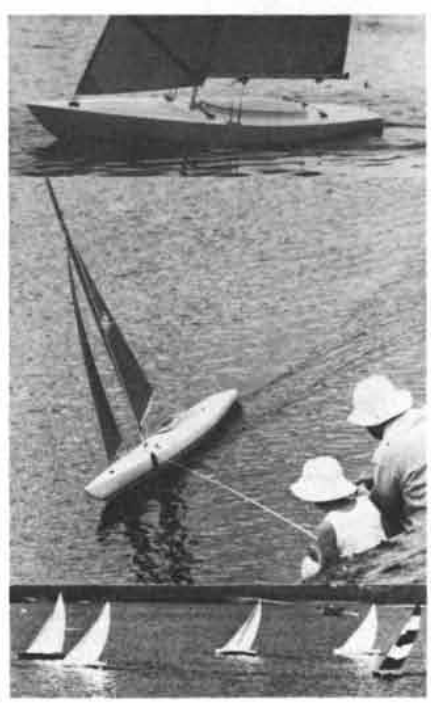
Unique instructional games designed by university professors to make learning fun through brain-to-brain action. Beginning games can be mastered by young children— final games will challenge intelligent adults. These are the famous GAMES FOR THINKERS from WFF 'N PROOF Publishers.

WFF 'N PROOF (logic)	13.00*
QUERIES 'N THEORIES (science)	13.00*
EQUATIONS (mathematics)	10.00*
ON-SETS (set theory)	10.00*
PROPAGANDA (social studies)	11.00*
ON-WORDS (word structures)	10.00*
CONFIGURATIONS (geometry)	6.75*
TRI-NIM (problem solving)	5.75*
REAL NUMBERS (arithmetic)	2.25*
WFF (beginner's logic)	2.25*
QWIK-SANE (puzzle)	2.25*
TAC-TICKLE (pure strategy)	1.75*
Teachers Manual	1.25*
THINKERS Bookends	16.00*
12-Kit THINK TANK & Teachers Manual With THINKERS Bookends (save $10.75)	94.50*
Without Bookends (save $4.75)	84.50*

*postage & handling included
Order from. **WFF 'N PROOF**
1490-HF, South Boulevard, Ann Arbor, Mi. 48104

Gifts that are a COMPLIMENT to receive!

Model Sailboat



We make model sailboat kits for radio control. Send $1.00 for information to:

Vortex Model Engineering
Department SA
210 East Ortega Street
Santa Barbara, CA 93101

VORTEX MODEL ENGINEERING

of chimaeras in flesh and blood, mouse and man alike. In *Regeneration,* a well-informed but simple and popular little book by a young research worker at Case Western Reserve, we see a strange supernumerary newt limb, among a variety of regenerated structures from half flatworms to deer antlers. Growing tissue turns out to be about as plastic as bronze once the craft is learned. The two books in their distinct styles are engrossing, and both make it quite clear that we do not know much more about how it all works than the skillful Etruscan knew of the phase diagrams of copper and its alloys.

If you would induce in a salamander a limb not specified in the blueprint, the way is clear. Cut up a region of chest muscle, causing tissue damage about like that left behind in the stump of a severed limb. Lead to this area a few major limb nerves, their ends cut free and allowed to lie against the torn muscles. In "forty days a small, but otherwise perfect, extra limb complete with well-formed skeleton and musculature was well established." Even some mammals—newborn opossums—can be induced to regenerate hind limbs by an implant of nervous tissue at the site of amputation. Some substance released by nerve cells (we know a few things it is not) is essential to regeneration. To jump to a very different lineage, a single cell from the root hair of a carrot, in no way embryonic, was a dozen years ago nurtured into a full-grown flowering carrot plant, the cell dedifferentiated by culturing it in a medium containing the embryo-related substance coconut milk. Asparagus and tobacco have now been found to display the same capability, and a fully known synthetic medium can be used. The obvious extrapolation to any single cell of any organism (each bears the complete tape of the organism's DNA) is far from proved, but who would forecast its impossibility?

The four-parent mouse is a more recent biologist's tour de force. The standard technique is done in mice by extracting the earliest embryos, each a microscopic mass consisting of perhaps eight cells. Two such cell masses (it works even up to the 32-cell stage) are treated with an enzyme that removes a thin protective membrane. Pushed gently together, the two embryos aggregate into one mass. After a day or two of culture in vitro the growing mass is delicately transferred to the uterus of a mouse foster-mother. In due course a mouse is born; with a high rate of success it matures into an adult mouse of normal size and shape. That mouse, however, is curiously double in its constitution: there are two genetically distinct cell populations in one pelt (sometimes rather stripy). Rats, rabbits and sheep have also been employed, with varying success. No rat-mouse or other

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

Introducing the new generation of programmable calculators...with revolutionary *Solid State Software*™ ...from Texas Instruments.

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

The world's most advanced programmables. Performance. Capability. Quality. *Value.*

5,000 program steps in a tiny, plug-in module. The TI Programmable 58 and TI Programmable 59 introduce a major technological advance in handheld programmable calculators – Solid State Software™. Each prerecorded program library contains up to 5,000 steps, providing significant additional program memory capability and programming flexibility.

The TI Programmable 58 and TI Programmable 59 offer the most advanced features available. Anywhere. Use interchangeable Solid State Software™ modules, or enter programs you develop right from the keyboard. (The TI Programmable 59 also has magnetic card read/write capability.)

Both programmables feature computer-like power and versatility with subroutines, looping, flexible addressing, editing capabilities – and much more. And both can be quickly converted to powerful alphanumeric printers with TI's optional PC-100A (see back page).

The Master Library software module, included with the TI Programmable 58 and 59, provides 25 prewritten programs in math, statistics, finance, and other application areas. Additional libraries are available from a selection of optional Solid State Software™ modules.

The TI Programmable 58.

The advanced key programmable calculator with plug-in Solid State Software™ libraries.

$124.95*

The TI Programmable 59.

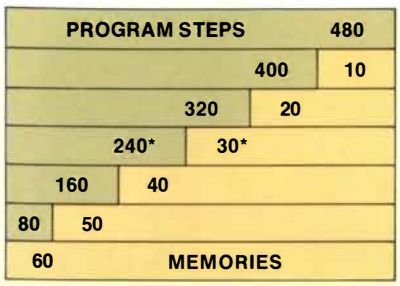
The super-powerful card programmable with Solid State Software™ libraries *and* magnetic cards.

$299.95*

© 1977 Texas Instruments Incorporated

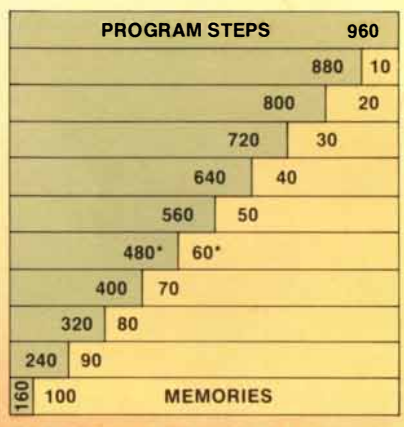
© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

The TI Programmable 58 and TI Programmable 59 present a significant new flexibility in program step/memory allocation. Flexible storage lets you vary the allocation between program steps and memory. The TI Programmable 58 provides up to 480 program steps or up to 60 memory registers:



*Calculator in this configuration when turned on. May be changed from the keyboard or in a program.

The TI Programmable 59 provides up to 960 program steps or up to 100 memory registers:

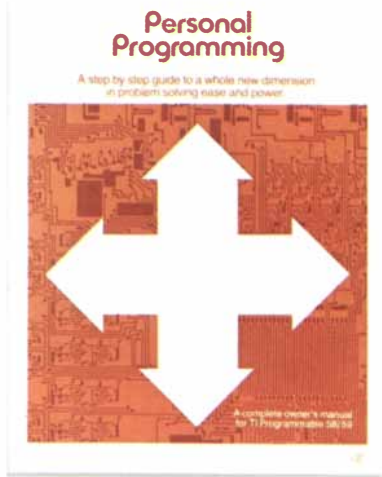


*Calculator in this configuration when turned on. May be changed from the keyboard or in a program.

These partitioning features allow you to tailor program step/memory resources to meet your requirements.

Plus, features to help you easily handle complex math problems. Both calculators utilize TI's AOS™ algebraic operating system, providing easy, straightforward problem entry. Powerful slide rule functions include logs, trig, and advanced statistics.

*U.S. suggested retail price; may vary elsewhere.



Step-by-step learning guide shows you how to get the most out of your TI Programmable 58 or 59.

Personal Programming replaces the traditional owner's manual and allows you to put your TI Programmable 58 or TI Programmable 59 to work more quickly. In a critical review by Ron Snyder of *The Washington Star*, it was described as a "new standard in writing owner's manuals....You are swept away into what previously seemed to be a totally forbidden world and find yourself enjoying and understanding every moment of the trip."

In step-by-step fashion, *Personal Programming* takes you through a self-paced course, from simple techniques to advanced programming details. You'll learn how to put the programs in your Master Library Module to work immediately. How to teach the calculator to remember and execute your programs. And, how to use its power when programs aren't needed. A comprehensive selection of examples allows you to apply the power of programming to your particular personal or professional interests.

Prove to yourself how easy and effective programming can be with this easy to understand learning guide.

AOS™. Texas Instruments unique algebraic operating system makes the calculator part of the solution, not part of the problem.

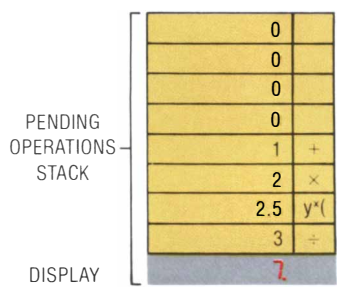
What is AOS?

AOS is more than just algebraic entry. It's a *full* mathematical hierarchy coupled with multiple levels of parentheses. This means more pending operations, as well as easy left-to-right entry of expressions – both numbers and functions.

Mathematical hierarchy.

This is the universally recognized order of performing calculations. Functions first. Powers and roots. Multiplication or division. Then addition or subtraction. AOS performs calculations in this order automatically. But, you have the option to change the order whenever you wish by using the parentheses keys.

AOS *remembers* the numbers *and* functions in its pending operation stack. And processes them according to mathematical hierarchy. As more operations become pending, the stack fills up. As operations are completed, the stack empties into the display.



The case for AOS is strong.

That's why TI chose it. We think you'll prefer AOS. Because you begin using it immediately. There's no new language to learn. And, even if you are already conditioned to some other form of entry system, the added value and power of TI's programmable calculators with unique AOS is well worth the easy transition.

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

Compare the power and features of the TI Programmable 58 and 59 with any other programmable calculators available today.

	TI-58	TI-59
MEMORIES		
Program memory		
Maximum number of steps	480	960
Expandable	•	•
Merging – fully merged		
semi merged*	•	•
Solid-state software	•	•
Number of steps	5,000	5,000
Program download into RAM	•	•
Useable as subroutine to expand program memory size	•	•
Useable as separate program	•	•
Data memory		
Maximum number of registers	60	100
Expandable	•	•
Addressing – absolute	•	•
– indirect	•	•
– max. no. of index registers	60	100
– short form	•	•
– EXCH	•	•
– increment/decrement registers	•	•
PROGRAMMING		
Program edit – SST/BST, pause	•	•
Program edit – insert/delete	•	•
PROGRAM CONTROL		
Conditional branching		
Numeric comparisons		
x=t, x≠t, x≥t, x<t, x=0		
x≠0, x≥0, x<0 (t register ≥ 0)	•	•
Independent comparison (t register)	•	•
Flags (Boolean comparison)		
Number of flags	10	10
Set/reset flag, test flag	•	•
Test on error (if error/if not error)	•	•
Loop control		
Increment/decrement (branch on zero)	•	•
Increment/decrement (branch on not zero)	•	•
No. of index registers (direct address)	10	10
No. of index registers (indirect address)	60 max.	100 max.
Unconditional – No. of levels of subroutine	6	6

	TI-58	TI-59
Branch addressing types		
Absolute	•	•
Relative		
Indirect	•	•
Label	•	•
Short form	•	•
Label addressing		
User defined keys	10	10
No. possible labels	72	72
User control keys		
NOP	•	•
Clear Program	•	•
Clear t register	•	•
RST	•	•
Program step/data memory repartition	•	•
MAGNETIC I/O		
Capacity per card – steps		480
– registers		60
Read/write program/data		•
Autoload with override		•
PRINTING		
Print alpha, plot, list labels	•**	•**
Print numerics, list, trace	•**	•**
OPERATING SYSTEM		
Entry system	AOS	AOS
No. of pending operations	8	8
No. of sets of parentheses	9	9
No. of stack registers	9	9
FUNCTIONS		
Scientific, trig, DRG, pol/rect, DMS	•	•
Integer, fraction, absolute value	•	•
Linear regression, trend line, correlation coefficient	•	•
DISPLAY FORMAT		
VLED Characters	8+2, 10	8+2, 10
Scientific notation	•	•
Engineering notation	•	•
OPERATING CHARACTERISTICS		
Internal digits	13	13

*Memory address, second functions and other key sequences.

**With optional printer.

FREE-Leisure Library.

When you buy a TI Programmable 58 or 59.

A $35 value if you act now.

Leisure Library includes plug-in Solid State Software module, library manual, quick-reference guide, label cards, and library wallet. 19 fun programs: Football Predictor. Bowling Scorekeeper. Golf Handicapper. Bridge. Chess Rankings. Codebreaker. Black Jack. Acey Ducey. Craps. Mars Lander. Jive Turkey. Nim. Sea Battle. Quarterback. Photo I and II. For use in conjunction with the PC-100A there's Hangman, Memo Pad, Biorhythm, Computer Art.

Offer good from August 15 to October 31, 1977.

Fill out this coupon. Return it to TI with your serialized Customer Information Card (packed in the box), along with a copy of a dated proof of purchase showing the serial number. **IMPORTANT** Your envelope must be postmarked no later than October 31, 1977.

Texas Instruments Leisure Library Offer
P. O. Box 53, Lubbock, Texas 79408

Name

Address

City

State Zip

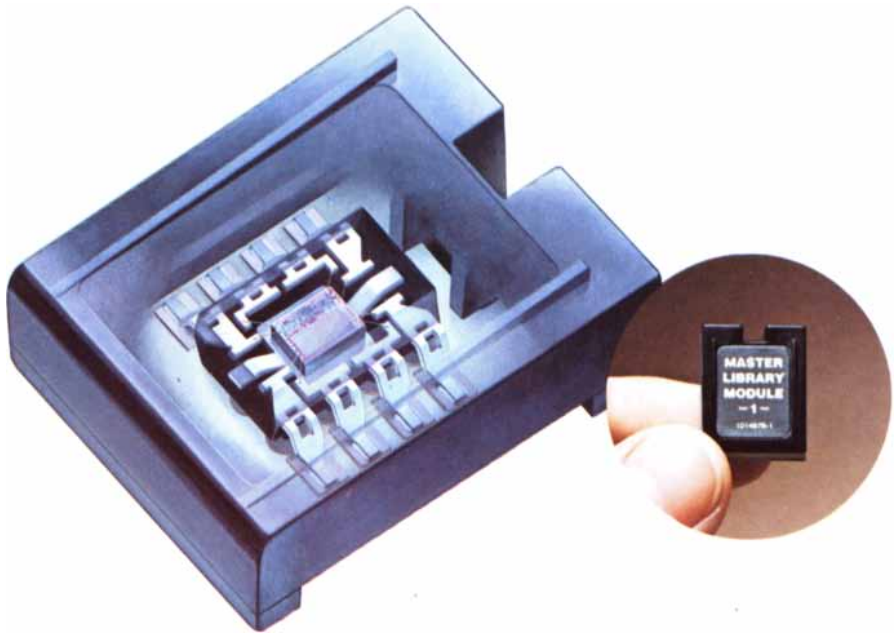
Texas Instruments reserves the right to substitute software libraries of equal value based on availability. Please allow 30 days for delivery. Offer good in United States and Canada only. Offer void where prohibited by law.

SA9

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

Solid State Software™

Plug-in library modules give you up to 5,000 additional program steps!



A new dimension in micro-memory technology.
TI's state-of-the-art Solid State Software™ libraries combine the advantages of prewritten programs with the convenience of compact, easy-to-use, plug-in modules. Information that once required up to 25 magnetic cards can be contained in one small module. Simply insert the desired module and access a program in seconds, with just a few keystrokes. They bring the power of programming within easy reach, even if you have never programmed before. Use the 5,000-step module by itself. Or, use it as a base and call subroutines from your magnetic card or keyed-in program. You can also use your program as a base and call subroutines from the module. And much more.

Master Library.
The Master Library Solid State Software™ module is included with the TI Programmable 58 and TI Programmable 59. A selection of 25 prewritten programs in mathematics, statistics, finance, and other application areas, it provides the professional with a "tool kit" of preprogrammed solutions to a wide variety of problems.

Optional libraries.
Optional Solid State Software™ plug-in libraries let you customize your TI Programmable 58 or TI Programmable 59 into a specialized problem solver. Choose from Statistics, Real Estate and Investment, Surveying, Aviation, Marine Navigation.

PPX-59 lets you share programs.

TI's Professional Program Exchange (PPX) makes hundreds of programs available to you. Programs developed, tested, and submitted by your professional peers. And, you can submit programs you develop for possible inclusion. Your yearly PPX-59 membership provides you with a source catalog, 3 free programs of your choice, a bi-monthly newsletter, and a member's guide and program submission forms.

FREE Solid State Software™ offer. See details inside.

Send for free 16-page brochure.

Want to know more? This 16-page color brochure is packed with information on TI's new handheld programmables. Contains detailed descriptions and specifications on these exciting calculators. For your free copy write to: Brochure Offer, Texas Instruments, P. O. Box 53, Lubbock, TX 79408.

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

Print alphanumerics. Plot data.

The PC-100A turns your TI Programmable 58 or 59 into a quiet, high-speed printing/plotting calculator.

$199.95*

Simplifies program editing.

The PC-100A prints fast. Over 60 characters/second with its quiet thermal printer. So you get listings fast. Just push the LIST key for a printout of the entire program memory.

```
037  76 LBL
038  14  D
039  53  (
040  35 1/X
041  65  X
042  61 GTO
043  15  E
044  76 LBL
045  11  A
046  58 FIX
047  09  09
048  68 DMS
049  42 STO
050  01  01
051  92 RTN
052  00  0
```

See each program step executed.

Push the TRACE key. Now every calculation that's performed in your program is printed. The full number and the operation.

Program headings.

Printed headings for your programs provide easy reference and identification. You can even annotate data on printouts.

```
PORTFOLIO ANALYSIS

      48.75    COST
    3200.      SHRS
      85.      MRGN
```

User prompting.

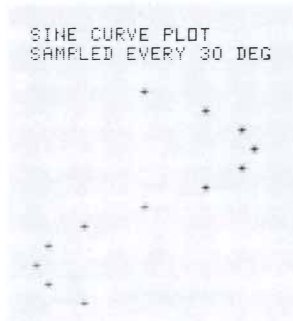
Use the alpha printing capability of the TI Programmable 58/59/PC-100A combination to enter prompting messages right in your program.

```
ENTER TEMPERATURE
        76.3
ENTER PRESSURE
       749.4
```

Data plotting.

The PC-100A allows you to input data from your TI Programmable 58 or 59 and plot curves and histograms. You can make a plot of data directly from the calculator keyboard or automatically from a program.

```
SINE CURVE PLOT
SAMPLED EVERY 30 DEG
```

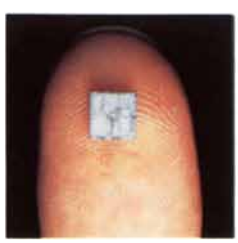


```
*****              JAN
***************    FEB
**********         MAR
```

And other features.

List registers. Program labels. There's even a handy, built-in battery charger for your calculator's battery pack. Whether for school, technology, or business and finance, the uses for the PC-100A are limited only by your imagination.

*U.S. suggested retail price, may vary elsewhere.
All tape printouts shown approximately 60% of actual size.



Continuing revolutionary advances from Texas Instruments ...the leader in electronic technology.

When you judge the value of a high-technology product, it pays to look closely at the company behind the product. TI invented the original integrated circuit and the "calculator-on-a-chip" that ignited the calculator revolution.

As the world's leading producer of integrated circuits, TI holds the basic patent on the miniature calculator itself... and is a world leader in the production of electronic calculators. Performance. Capability. Quality. Value. TI.

TEXAS INSTRUMENTS
INCORPORATED

Printed in U.S.A

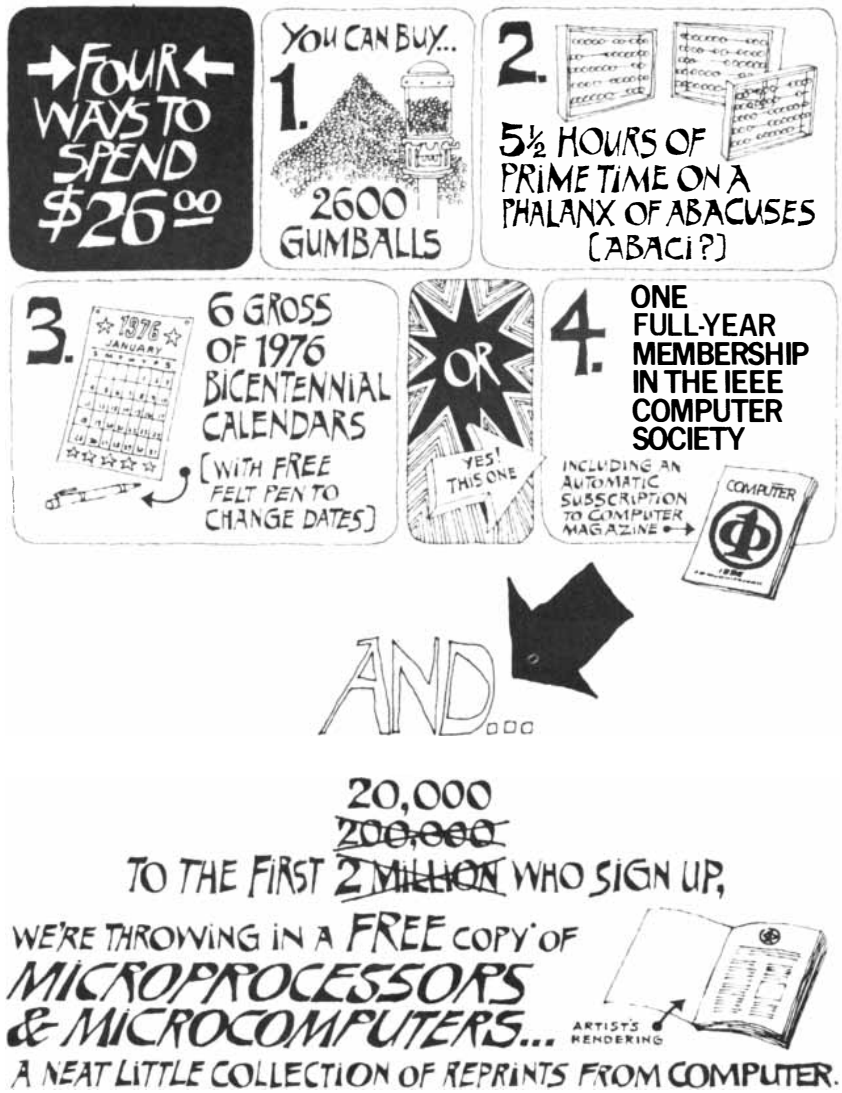
45523

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

interspecies aggregation has survived beyond birth. Spontaneous chimaeras are known in human beings; a double genetic legacy from at least one parent has been demonstrated. A number of mechanisms are possible, the most plausible being the fertilization by a second spermatozoon of the normally discarded smaller polar body formed along with the egg, and a later aggregation of the two lines to form one embryo.

Clearly the chimaera offers a sharp tool for research. That work is coming fast; the task is to use the distinct intermingled cell populations to reveal the mechanisms of development. Markers of the cells are needed; they can be visible pigment, sex-determination chromosomes, antigens, tumor-inducing genes or gene patterns that are usually not expressed but that can be "rescued" by the activity of the unexpressed genes' partners. Mouse chimaeras that carry different coat-color genes show a coat pattern of transverse dark and light bands, each rather neatly occupying one or the other half of the back of the animal, to the left or right of the spinal column. The initial suggestion that one sees here the primitive decisions made by one or another individual cell's becoming the color-determiner by cloning for an entire segmental portion of the animal seems oversimplified. The lateral division suggests the possibility that the coat-cell clones were fixed before the neural folds of the embryo had fused: at that time no cells could pass the center line. The number and the distribution of the stripes appear too complex to bear out the simplest model.

The spermatozoa of chimaeras resemble those of one component strain or the other, without intermediate forms. The retinas of pigment chimaeras, however, show a patchwork of pigmented and nonpigmented cells; the size and the distribution of the retinal patches seem to require cell adhesion, lots of random mingling and some cell division during development. Alternate periods of cell mingling and cell proliferation are quite general; step by step "sampling events" then allocate cell groups to new organs and tissues. If mingling precedes clonal growth, all patches will be pure, with a pigment marker, dark or light; if clonal growth precedes mingling, we expect both pure and brindled patches. The hope lies in finding lots of markers for intermediate stages and special structures, not in powerful statistical means of analyzing the wide variety of patterns one sees. In mammals cells are not fully independent, and they both proliferate and migrate; in the fruit fly, by way of contrast, cells initiate clones to build up tissues and organs, and their progeny tend to remain in place. A fly is a group of long-settled, stable mountain villages; a mammal is a mobile, interacting and shifting metropolitan population.



Organized and introduced by our technical editor, this volume carries a balanced selection of everything we've published in *COMPUTER* about micros over the past two years.

Fill out and mail the form below.
Find out why membership in the IEEE Computer Society is one of the best investments you'll ever make.

***Offer Expires December 31, 1977**

Quick—send me everything I need to know about joining the IEEE Computer Society. You can send me my free copy of **"Microprocessors and Microcomputers"** when I join.

Name _____

Address _____

_____

Note: Offer expires December 31, 1977.
☐ Please send a copy of the Computer Society Publications Catalog.

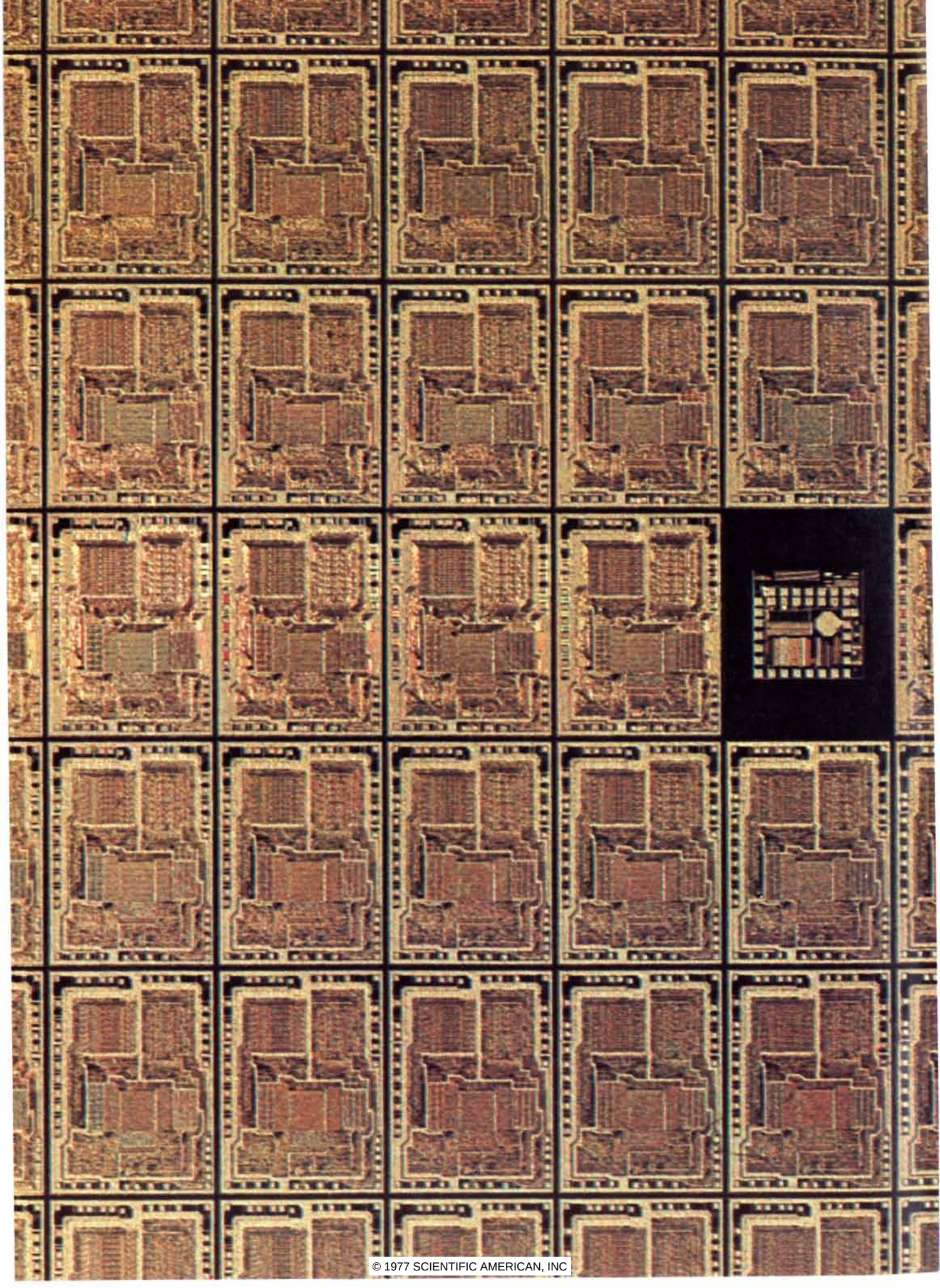
MAIL THIS FORM TO:
IEEE Computer Society 5855 Naples Plaza Long Beach, California 90803

sa

IEEE COMPUTER SOCIETY

INSTITUTE OF ELECTRICAL AND ELECTRONICS ENGINEERS

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC



© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

Established 1845 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN September 1977 Volume 237 Number 3

Microelectronics

Introducing an issue on the microelectronic revolution, in which putting large numbers of electronic elements on silicon "chips" has profoundly increased the capabilities of electronic devices

by Robert N. Noyce

The evolution of electronic technology over the past decade has been so rapid that it is sometimes called a revolution. Is this large claim justified? I believe the answer is yes. It is true that what we have seen has been to some extent a steady quantitative evolution: smaller and smaller electronic components performing increasingly complex electronic functions at ever higher speeds and at ever lower cost. And yet there has also been a true revolution: a qualitative change in technology, the integrated microelectronic circuit, has given rise to a qualitative change in human capabilities.

It is not an exaggeration to say that most of the technological achievements of the past decade have depended on microelectronics. Small and reliable sensing and control devices are the essential elements in the complex systems that have landed men on the moon and explored Mars, not to speak of their similar role in the intercontinental weapons that dominate world politics. Microelectronic devices are also the essence of new products ranging from communications satellites to hand-held calculators and digital watches. Somewhat subtler, but perhaps eventually more significant, is the effect of microelectronics on the computer. The capacity of the computer for storing, processing and displaying information has been greatly enhanced. Moreover, for many purposes the computer is being dispersed to the sites where it is operated or where its output is applied: to the "smart" typewriter or instrument or industrial control device.

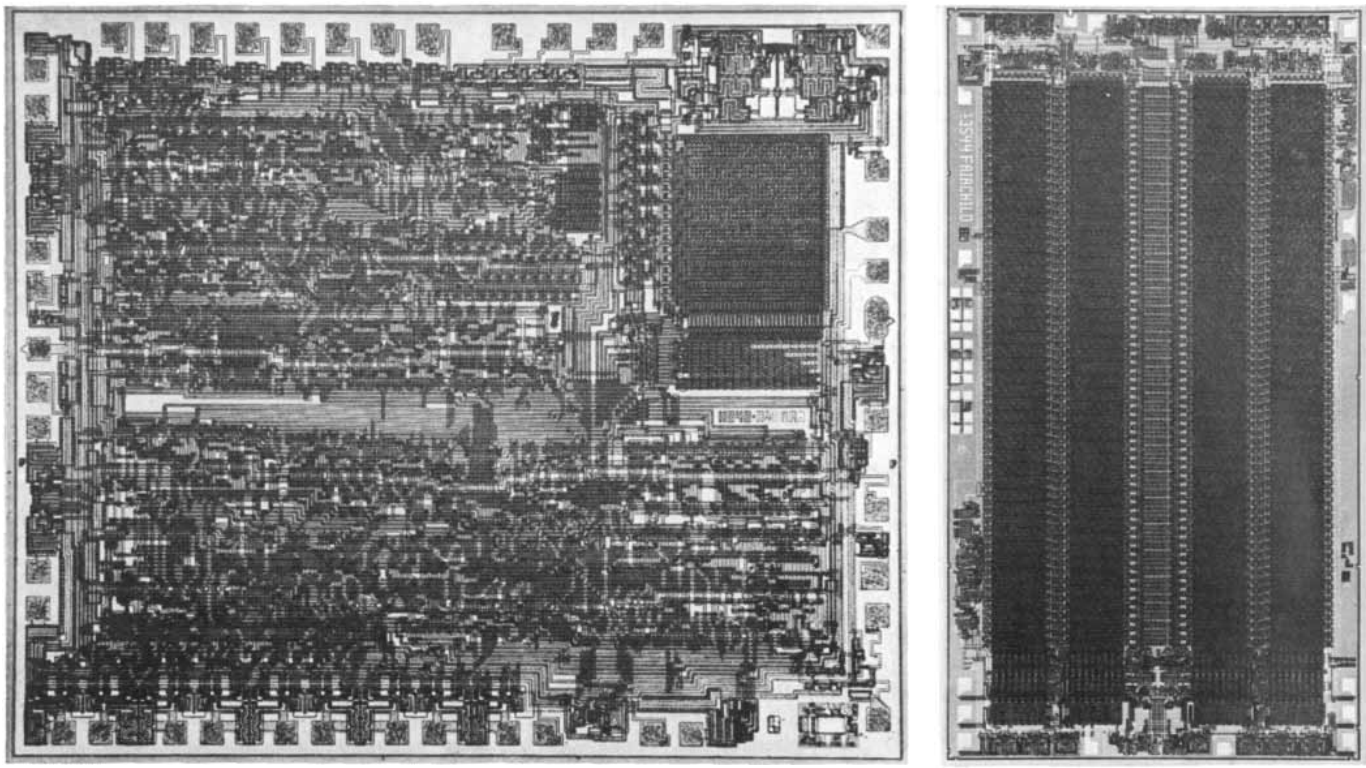
The microelectronics revolution is far from having run its course. We are still learning how to exploit the potential of the integrated circuit by developing new theories and designing new circuits whose performance may yet be improved by another order of magnitude. And we are only slowly perceiving the intellectual and social implications of the personal computer, which will give the individual access to vast stores of information and the ability to learn from it, add to it and communicate with others concerning it.

This issue of *Scientific American* devoted to microelectronics explores the nature of microelectronic circuit elements, the design and fabrication of large-scale integrated circuits, a broad range of their applications and some of their implications for the future. Here I want primarily to show how the evolution of microelectronics illustrates the constant interaction of technology and economics. The small size of microelectronic devices has been important in many applications, but the major impact of this new technology has been to make electronic functions more reproducible, more reliable and much less expensive. With each technical development costs have decreased, and the ever lower costs have promoted a widening range of applications; the quest for technical advances has been required by economic competition and compensated by economic reward.

MICROELECTRONIC DEVICES arrayed on the opposite page are microprocessors, each the equivalent of the central processing unit of a small computer. The photograph shows a portion of a "wafer," a thin slice of silicon on which the devices have been fabricated, enlarged 10 diameters. An individual device, or chip, is shown at its actual size (.164 inch by .222 inch) above this caption. After the devices have been fabricated on the wafer and tested they are separated, fitted with leads and packaged. This microprocessor is the Intel Corporation's 8085, a general-purpose device that has 6,200 transistors and can execute 770,000 instructions per second. Smaller chip at the far right is used for testing wafer at various stages of its manufacture.

It all began with the development 30 years ago of the transistor: a small, low-power amplifier that replaced the large, power-hungry vacuum tube. The advent almost simultaneously of the stored-program digital computer provided a large potential market for the transistor. The synergy between a new component and a new application generated an explosive growth of both. The computer was the ideal market for the transistor and for the solid-state integrated circuits the transistor spawned, a much larger market than could have been provided by the traditional applications of electronics in communications. The reason is that digital systems require very large numbers of active circuits compared with systems having analogue amplification, such as radios. In digital electronics a given element is either on or off, depending on the input. Even when a large number of elements are connected, their output will still be simply on or off; the gain of the individual stage is unity, so that even cascading several stages leaves the gain still unity. Analogue circuits, on the other hand, typically require amplification of the input. Since the gain of each amplifier may typically be 10, only a few stages can be cascaded before the practical limit of voltage levels for microelectronic elements is reached. An analogue system therefore cannot handle large numbers of microcircuits, whereas a digital system requires them; a pocket calculator contains 100 times as many

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC



FOUR DIVERSE CHIPS suggest the wide range of purposes served by microelectronic devices and the patterns characteristic of those purposes. At the left is a large-scale integrated circuit: a microprocessor made by the Rockwell International Corporation. In addition to the logic elements of a central processing unit it incorporates input-output circuitry and a read-only memory (*regular area at upper right*). Second from the left is another large-scale integrated circuit: a semiconductor memory made by Fairchild Semiconductor. Its reg-

transistors as a radio or a television receiver.

In spite of the inherent compatibility of microelectronics and the computer, the historical fact is that early efforts to miniaturize electronic components were not motivated by computer engineers. Indeed, the tremendous potential of the digital computer was not quickly appreciated; even the developers of the first computer felt that four computers, more or less, would satisfy the world's computation needs! Various missile and satellite programs, however, called for complex electronic systems to be installed in equipment in which size, weight and power requirements were severely constrained, and so the effort to miniaturize was promoted by military and space agencies.

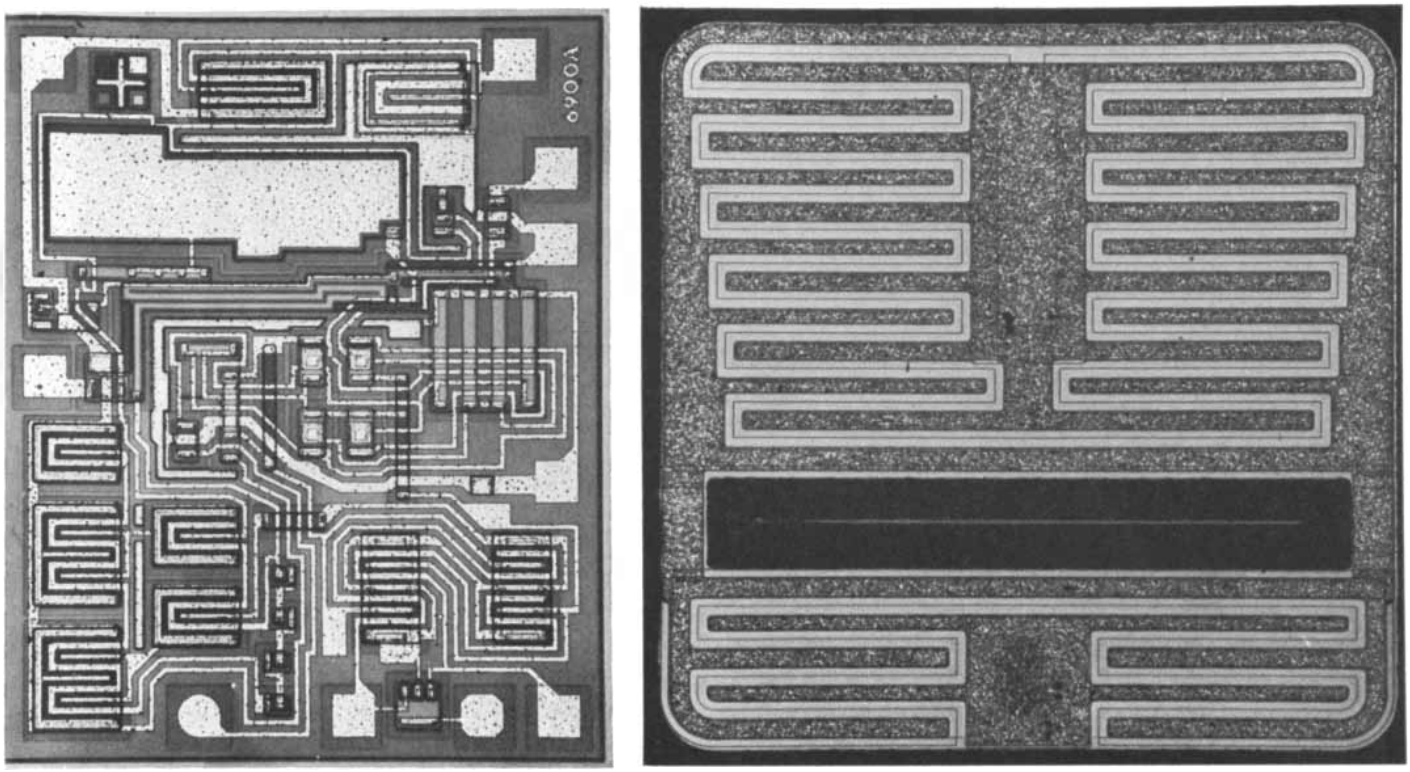
The initial approach was an attempt to miniaturize conventional components. One program was "Project Tinkertoy" of the National Bureau of Standards, whose object was to package the various electronic components in a standard shape: a rectangular form that could be closely packed rather than the traditional cylindrical form. Another approach was "molecular engineering." The example of the transistor as a substitute for the vacuum tube suggested that similar substitutes could be devised: that new materials could be discovered or developed that would by their solid-state nature allow electronic functions other than amplification to be performed within a monolithic solid. These attempts were largely unsuccessful, but they publicized the demand for miniaturization and the potential rewards for the successful development of some form of microelectronics. A large segment of the technical community was on the lookout for a solution of the problem because it was clear that a ready market awaited the successful inventor.

What ultimately provided the solution was the semiconductor integrated circuit, the concept of which had begun to take shape only a few years after the invention of the transistor. Several investigators saw that one might further exploit the characteristics of semiconductors such as germanium and silicon that had been exploited to make the transistor. The body resistance of the semiconductor itself and the capacitance of the junctions between the positive (p) and negative (n) regions that could be created in it could be combined with transistors in the same material to realize a complete circuit of resistors, capacitors and amplifiers [see "Microelectronic Circuit Elements," by James D. Meindl, page 70]. In 1953 Harwick Johnson of the Radio Corporation of America applied for a patent on a phase-shift oscillator fashioned in a single piece of germanium by such a technique. The concept was extended by G. W. A. Dummer of the Royal Radar Establishment in England, Jack S. Kilby of Texas Instruments Incorporated and Jay W. Lathrop of the Diamond Ordnance Fuze Laboratories.

Several key developments were required, however, before the exciting potential of integrated circuits could be realized. In the mid-1950's engineers learned how to define the surface configuration of transistors by means of photolithography and developed the method of solid-state diffusion for introducing the impurities that create p and n regions. Batch processing of many transistors on a thin "wafer" sliced from a large crystal of germanium or silicon began to displace the earlier technique of processing individual transistors. The hundreds or thousands of precisely registered transistors that could be fabricated on a single wafer still had to be separated physically, assembled individually with tiny wires inside a protective housing and subsequently assembled into electronic circuits.

The integrated circuit, as we conceived and developed it at Fairchild Semiconductor in 1959, accomplishes

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC



ular pattern is characteristic of memory devices. Third from the left is a small-scale integrated circuit: an "op amp," or operational amplifier, made by the RCA Corporation. It is a variable amplifier whose output is linked to its input so that it can serve as an adaptable building block in various feedback applications. At the far right is a power device: a high-gain "Darlington transistor" made by Motorola Semiconductor Products Inc. In it two transistors provide enough power to drive the horizontal-deflection circuitry of a television receiver.

the separation and interconnection of transistors and other circuit elements electrically rather than physically. The separation is accomplished by introducing *pn* diodes, or rectifiers, which allow current to flow in only one direction. The technique was patented by Kurt Lehovec at the Sprague Electric Company. The circuit elements are interconnected by a conducting film of evaporated metal that is photoengraved to leave the appropriate pattern of connections. An insulating layer is required to separate the underlying semiconductor from the metal film except where contact is desired. The process that accomplishes this insulation had been developed by Jean Hoerni at Fairchild in 1958, when he invented the planar transistor: a thin layer of silicon dioxide, one of the best insulators known, is formed on the surface of the wafer after the wafer has been processed and before the conducting metal is evaporated onto it.

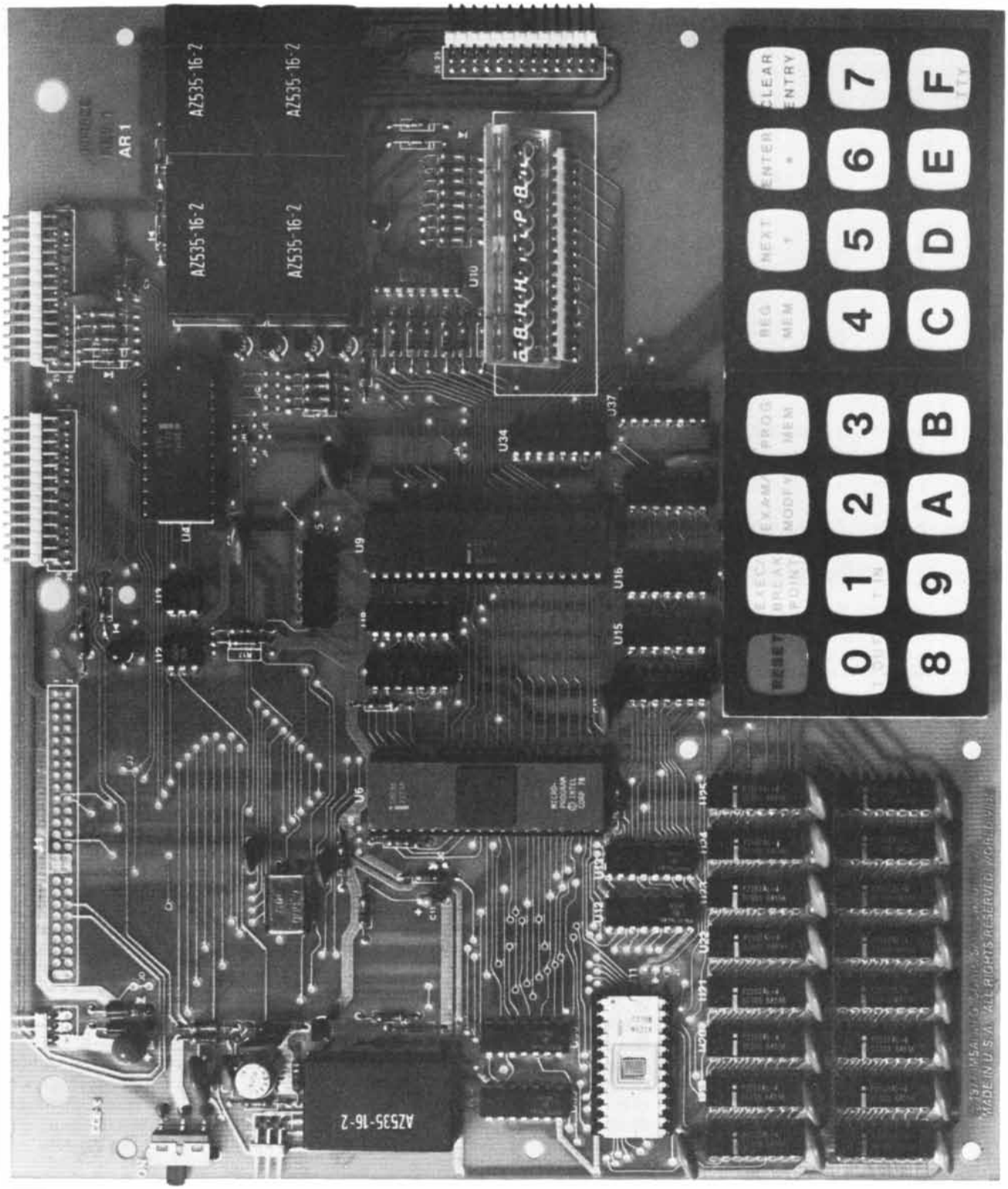
Since then additional techniques have been devised that give the designer of integrated circuits more flexibility, but the basic methods were available by 1960, and the era of the integrated circuit was inaugurated. Progress since then has been astonishing, even to those of us who have been intimately engaged in the evolving technology. An individual integrated circuit on a chip perhaps a quarter of an inch square now can embrace more electronic elements than the most complex piece of electronic equipment that could be built in 1950. Today's microcomputer, at a cost of perhaps $300, has more computing capacity than the first large electronic computer, ENIAC. It is 20 times faster, has a larger memory, is thousands of times more reliable, consumes the power of a light bulb rather than that of a locomotive, occupies 1/30,000 the volume and costs 1/10,000 as much. It is available by mail order or at your local hobby shop.

In 1964, noting that since the production of the planar transistor in 1959 the number of elements in advanced integrated circuits had been doubling every year, Gordon E. Moore, who was then director of research at Fairchild, was the first to predict the future progress of the integrated circuit. He suggested that its complexity would continue to double every year. Today, with circuits containing 2^{18} (262,144) elements available, we have not yet seen any significant departure from Moore's law. Nor are there any signs that the process is slowing down, although a deviation from exponential growth is ultimately inevitable. The technology is still far from the fundamental limits imposed by the laws of physics; further miniaturization is less likely to be limited by the laws of physics than by the laws of economics.

The growth of the microelectronics industry illustrates the extent to which investment in research can create entrepreneurial opportunity, jobs and a major export market for the U.S. After the introduction of the integrated circuit in the early 1960's the total world consumption of integrated circuits rose rapidly, reaching a value of nearly $1 billion in 1970. By 1976 world consumption had more than tripled, to $3.5 billion. Of this total U.S.-based companies produced more than $2.5 billion, or some 70 percent, about $1 billion of which was exported to foreign customers. The impact on the electronics industry is far greater than is implied by these figures. In electronic equipment less than 10 percent of the value is in the integrated circuits themselves; a $10,000 minicomputer contains less than $1,000 worth of integrated circuits, and a $300 television set contains less than $30 worth. Today most of the world's $80 billion electronics industry depends in some way on integrated circuits.

The substitution of microelectronic devices for discrete components reduces costs not only because the devices themselves are cheaper but for a variety of

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

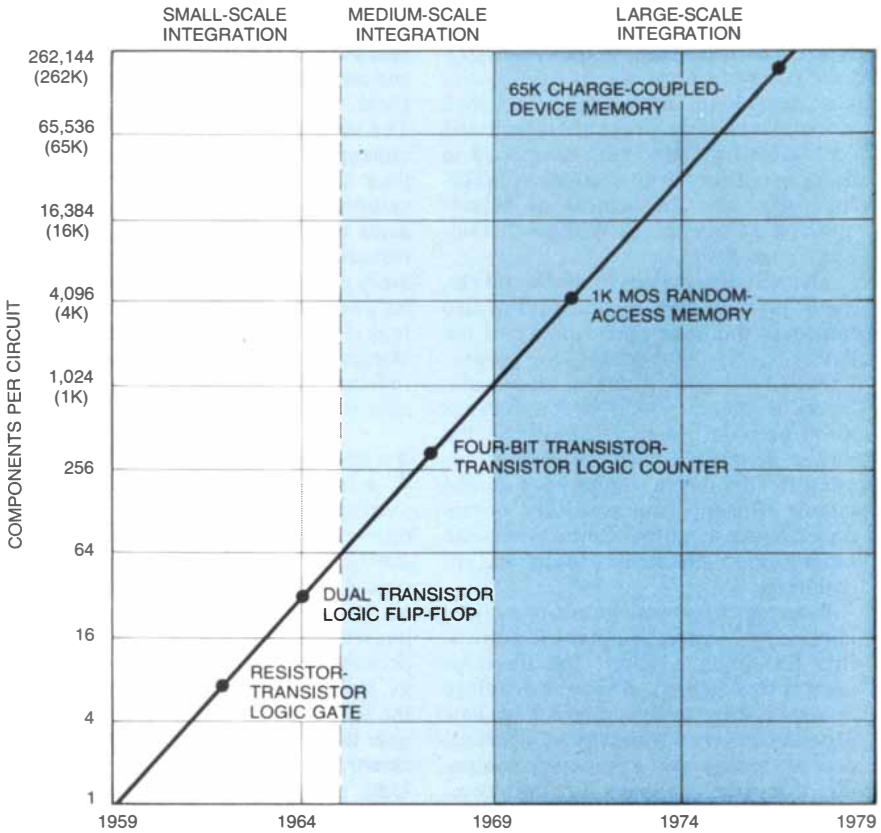


MICROCOMPUTER, THE IMSAI 8048, is made by the IMSAI Manufacturing Corporation, which assembles integrated circuits with other devices on an eight-by-10-inch board. The microprocessor is the square chip in the center of the light gray package about a third of the way from the bottom. The 16 packages at bottom right constitute a 2K-byte (16,384-bit, or binary-digit) random-access memory; the light-colored package next to them provides programmable 2K-byte read-only memory in addition to the 1K-byte program memory in the microprocessor. Nine light-emitting diodes (*to left of the keyboard*) provide an alphanumeric display. This is a control computer that can, for example, monitor an operation and throw switches in order to control it by means of high-current relays (*large black boxes*).

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

other reasons. First, the integrated circuit contains many of the interconnections that were previously required, and that saves labor and materials. The interconnections of the integrated circuit are much more reliable than solder joints or connectors, which makes for savings in maintenance. Since integrated circuits are much smaller and consume much less power than the components they have displaced, they make savings possible in such support structures as cabinets and racks as well as in power transformers and cooling fans. Less intermediate testing is needed in the course of production because the correct functioning of the complex integrated circuits has already been ensured. Finally, the end user needs to provide less floor space, less operating power and less air conditioning for the equipment. All of this is by way of saying that even if integrated circuits were only equivalent in cost to the components they have displaced, other savings would motivate the use of fewer, more complex integrated circuits as they became available.

The most striking characteristic of the microelectronics industry has been a persistent and rapid decline in the cost of a given electronic function. The hand-held calculator provides a dramatic example. Its cost has declined by a factor of 100 in the past decade. A portion of the rapid decline in cost can be accounted for in terms of a "learning curve": the more experience an industry has, the more efficient it becomes. Most industries reduce their costs (in constant dollars) by 20 to 30 percent each time their cumulative output doubles. Examining data for the semiconductor industry, we find that integrated-circuit costs have declined 28 percent with each doubling of the industry's experience. Because of the rapid growth of this young industry these cost reductions have come at a much more rapid pace than in mature industries; the electronics industry's experience has been doubling nearly every year. The cost of a given electronic function has been declining even more rapidly than the cost of integrated circuits, since the complexity of the circuits has been increasing as their price has decreased. For example, the cost per bit (binary digit) of random-access memory has declined an average of 35 percent per year since 1970, when the major growth in the adoption of semiconductor memory elements got under way. These cost declines were accomplished not only by the traditional learning process but also by the integration of more bits into each integrated circuit: in 1970 a change was made from 256 bits to 1,024 bits per circuit and now the number of bits is in the process of jumping from 4,096 per circuit to 16,384.



NUMBER OF COMPONENTS per circuit in the most advanced integrated circuits has doubled every year since 1959, when the planar transistor was developed. Gordon E. Moore, then at Fairchild Semiconductor, noted the trend in 1964 and predicted that it would continue.

The hundredfold decline in prices for electronic components since the development of the integrated circuit is unique because, although other industries have shown similar experience curves, the integrated-circuit industry has been unique in its annual doubling of output over an extended number of years. Rather than serving a market that grows only in pace with the gross national product or the population, the industry has served a proliferating market of ever broadening applications. As each new application consumes more microelectronic devices more experience has been gained, leading to further cost reductions, which in turn have opened up even wider markets for the devices. In 1960, before any production of integrated circuits, about 500 million transistors were made. Assuming that each transistor represents one circuit function, which can be equated to a logic "gate" or to one bit of memory in an integrated circuit, annual usage has increased by 2,000 times, or has doubled 11 times, in the past 17 years. This stunning increase promotes continual cost reductions.

The primary means of cost reduction has been the development of increasingly complex circuits that lower the cost per function for both the circuit producer and the equipment manufacturer. The main technical barrier to achieving more functions per circuit is production yield. More complex circuits result in larger devices and a growing probability of defects, so that a higher percentage of the total number of devices must be scrapped. When the cost of scrapping exceeds the cost saving in subsequent assembly and test operations, the cost per function increases rather than decreases. The most cost-efficient design is a compromise between high assembly costs (which are incurred at low levels of integration) and high scrapping costs (which are incurred at high levels of integration).

Technological developments have concentrated primarily on increasing the production "yield," either by reducing the density of defects or by reducing dimensions. Meticulous attention to process control and cleanliness has been necessary to reduce defect density. A dust particle in any critical process is enough to make a device worthless, so that most operations must be carried out in "clean rooms." Reduction of the dimensions of the basic circuit elements, which enables one to crowd more complex circuits within a given area, has been accomplished by improving the resolution of the photoengraving proc-

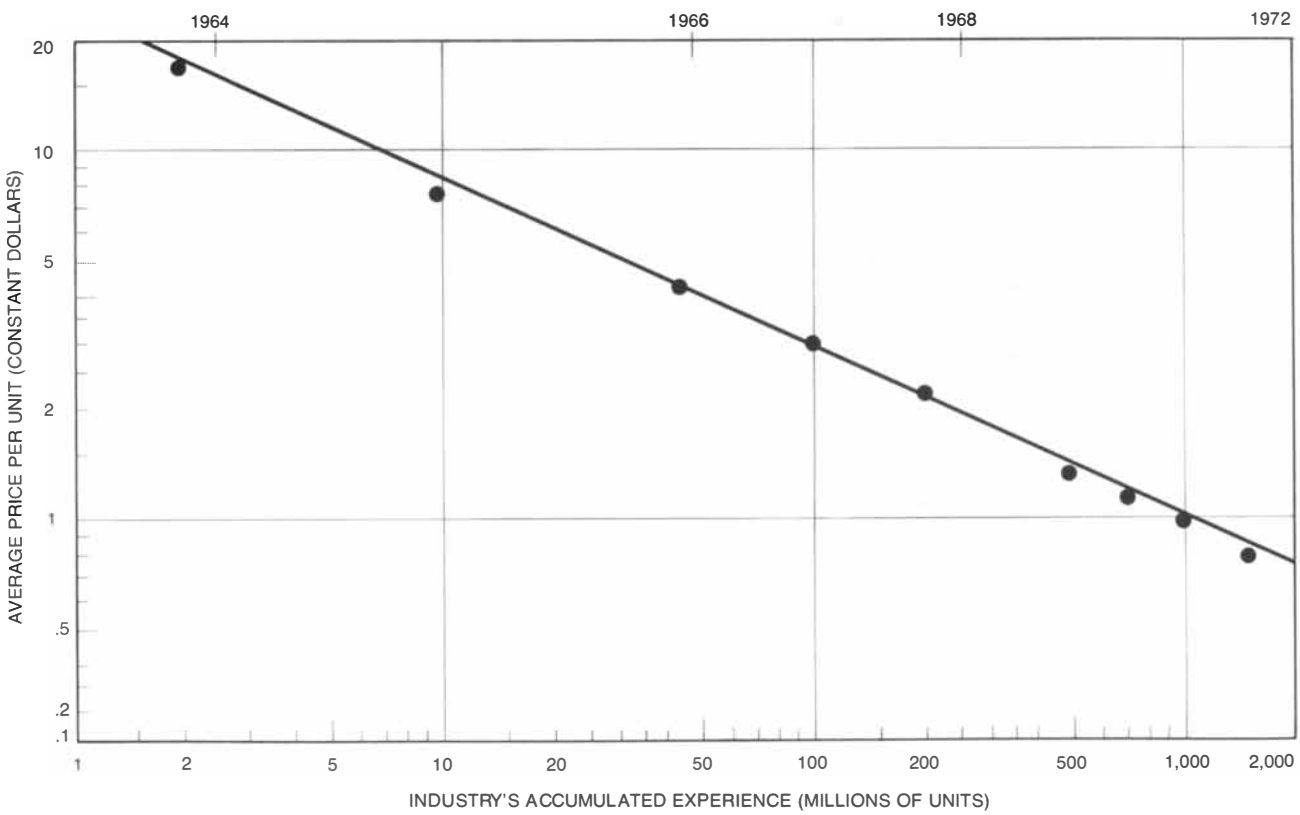
© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

esses. Now optical limits are being reached as dimensions in the circuit patterns enter the range of only a few wavelengths of light, and methods in which electron beams or X rays are substituted for visible light are being developed in order to reduce the dimensions even further [see "The Fabrication of Microelectronic Circuits," by William G. Oldham, page 110].

The reduction in size of the circuit elements not only reduces the cost but also improves the basic performance of the device. Delay times are directly proportional to the dimensions of circuit elements, so that the circuit becomes faster as it becomes smaller. Similarly, the power is reduced with the area of the circuits. The linear dimensions of the circuit elements can probably be reduced to about a fifth of the current size before any fundamental limits are encountered.

In an industry whose product declines in price by 25 percent a year the motivation for doing research and development is clearly high. A year's advantage in introducing a new product or new process can give a company a 25 percent cost advantage over competing companies; conversely, a year's lag puts a company at a significant disadvantage with respect to its competitors. Product development is a critical part of company strategy and product obsolescence is a fact of life. The return on successful investment in research and development is great, and so is the penalty for failure. The leading producers of integrated circuits spend approximately 10 percent of their sales income on research and development. In a constant-price environment one could say that investment for research and development buys an annuity paying $2.50 per year for each dollar invested! Clearly most of this annuity is either paid out to the purchasers of integrated circuits or reflected in price reductions that are necessary to develop new markets.

In this environment of rapid growth in market, rapid technological change and high returns on the successful development of a new product or process, a great number of entrepreneurial opportunities have been created and exploited. It is interesting that whereas the U.S. has led in both the development and the commercialization of the new technology, it was not the companies that were in the forefront of the vacuum-tube business that proceeded to develop its successor, the transistor. Of the 10 leading U.S. producers of vacuum tubes in 1955, only two are among today's top 10 U.S. semiconductor producers; four of the top 10 semiconductor companies were formed after 1955, and those four represent only a small fraction of the successful new ventures in the field. Time and time again the rapid growth of the market has found existing companies too busy expanding markets or product lines to which they were already committed to explore some of the more speculative new markets or technologies. And so the door was left open for new ventures, typically headed (originally at least) by an entrepreneur with a research or marketing background who had enough faith in the new market and technology to gamble. Fortunately for the U.S. economy capital was readily available in the late 1950's and the 1960's to finance these ventures, and approximately 100 new companies were formed to produce semiconductor devices; many of them made significant contributions to the development of microelectronics. Two such contributions in which I was directly involved were the development of the planar transistor and planar integrated circuit at Fairchild when that organization was only two years old, and the development of the microprocessor at the Intel Corporation only two years after that company was founded. There are many more examples. The environment for entrepreneurial innovation in the U.S. is not matched in other industrialized nations,



PRICES OF INTEGRATED CIRCUITS have conformed to an experience curve common to many industries, declining about 28 percent with each doubling of the industry's cumulative experience (as measured by the number of units produced). It is the particularly rapid growth of the microelectronics industry that has made the rate of decline in prices appear to be higher than the rate in other industries.

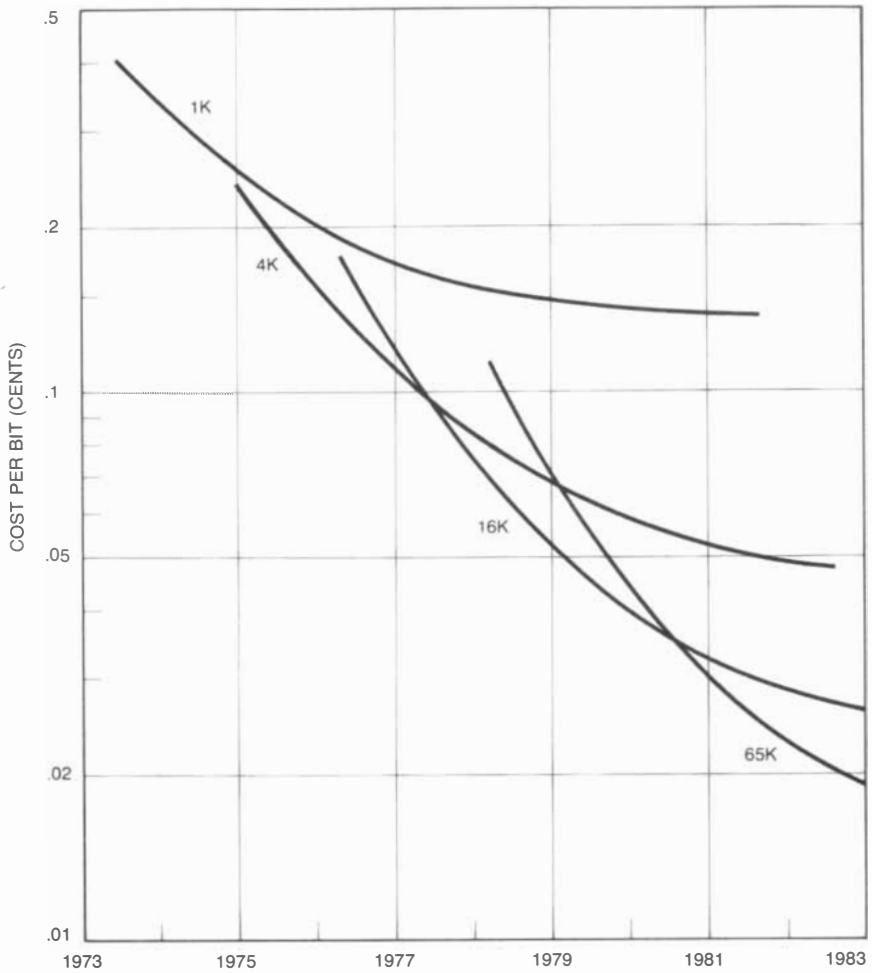
© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

and it has been a major contributor to America's leadership in the field.

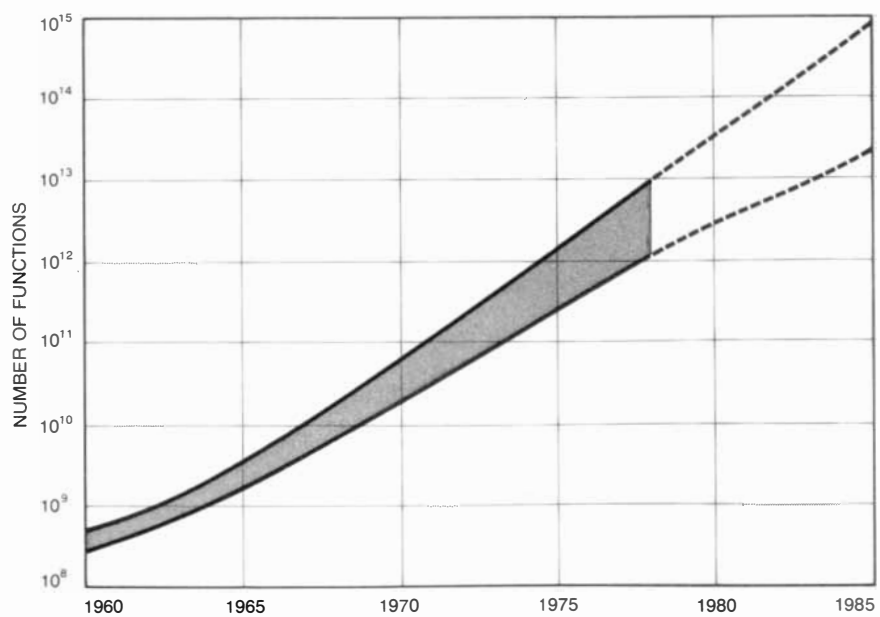
The growth of microelectronics has in turn created other opportunities. A host of companies have been established to serve the needs of the integrated-circuit producers. These companies supply everything from single-crystal silicon to computer-controlled design aids to automatic test equipment and special tooling. Often the novel consumer products that are spawned by developments in microelectronics have been manufactured and marketed initially by new companies. The digital watch and the television game are familiar examples.

When the integrated circuit was still an infant, Patrick E. Haggerty of Texas Instruments called attention to the increasing pervasiveness of electronics and predicted that electronic techniques would continue to displace other modes of control, reaching into nearly all aspects of our lives. Just such a displacement has been taking place, primarily because the microelectronics industry has been able to make ever more sophisticated functional elements at ever decreasing costs. Mechanical elements of the calculator and the watch have been displaced by integrated circuits that are less expensive and also offer more flexibility. Now the electromechanical functions of vending machines, pinball machines and traffic signals are being displaced. In the near future the automobile engine will be controlled by a computer, with a consequent improvement in efficiency and reduction of pollutants. All these applications are simply extensions of the traditional applications of electronics to the task of handling information in measurement, communication and data manipulation. It has often been said that just as the Industrial Revolution enabled man to apply and control greater physical power than his own muscle could provide, so electronics has extended his intellectual power. Microelectronics extends that power still further.

By 1986 the number of electronic functions incorporated into a wide range of products each year can be expected to be 100 times greater than it is today. The experience curve predicts that the cost per function will have declined by then to a twentieth of the 1976 cost, a reduction of 25 percent per year. At such prices electronic devices will be exploited even more widely, augmenting mail service, expanding the library and making its contents more accessible, providing entertainment, disseminating knowledge for educational purposes and performing many more of the routine tasks in the home and office. It is in the exponential proliferation of products and services dependent on microelectronics that the real microelectronic revolution will be manifested.



COST PER BIT of computer memory has declined and should continue to decline as is shown here for successive generations of random-access memory circuits capable of handling from 1,024 (1K) to 65,536 (65K) bits of memory. Increasing complexity of successive circuits is primarily responsible for cost reduction, but less complex circuits also continue to decline in cost.



ANNUAL UTILIZATION of electronic functions (transistors, logic gates and bits of memory) worldwide has increased some 2,000 times since the integrated circuit was developed in 1960. Utilization can be expected to increase by another factor of 100 in the next 10 years.

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

Microelectronic Circuit Elements

The basic functional element of a modern electronic circuit is the transistor. Microelectronic technology has made it possible to employ large numbers of them in a single circuit

by James D. Meindl

An electronic device is made up of "active" circuit elements, such as transistors, in combination with other components such as resistors, capacitors and inductors. It was once the universal practice to manufacture each of the components separately and then assemble the complete device by wiring the components together with metallic conductors. The advent of microelectronic circuits has not, for the most part, changed the nature of the basic functional units: microelectronic devices are also made up of transistors, resistors, capacitors and similar components. The major difference is that all these elements and their interconnections are now fabricated on a single substrate in a single series of operations.

The primary material of microelectronic circuits is silicon, and the development of microelectronics has therefore depended in large measure on the invention of techniques for making the various functional units on or in a crystal of this semiconducting material. Indeed, methods have been developed for fabricating most of the standard devices, although inductors cannot conveniently be employed. The designs of the earlier and bulkier technology, however, have not merely been adopted and miniaturized. With a change in scale has come a change in the resources available to the designer, followed by a change in the way those resources are deployed. In particular, a growing number of functions have been given over to the circuit elements that are most easily fabricated in silicon and that perform best: transistors. Several kinds of microelectronic transistor have been developed, and for each of them families of associated circuit elements and circuit patterns have evolved.

An important distinction can be made between active circuit elements, exemplified by transistors, and all other electronic devices, which by contrast can be called passive. An active element can change its state in response to an external signal; resistors, capacitors and inductors have no such capability.

Any material that carries an electric current—even a straight wire—exhibits all the characteristics of the passive circuit elements: resistance, capacitance and inductance. Useful devices simply possess one of these attributes in larger measure. The electrical resistance of a metal wire can be interpreted as the disruption of the orderly movement of electrons by interactions with the atomic structure of the material. Resistors constructed as discrete components generally employ a medium with a relatively high resistance per unit length, such as carbon or the alloy nichrome.

Capacitance and inductance are effects that can be attributed to the electromagnetic field generated by an electric charge or current. Capacitance is a measure of the electric field surrounding a conductor. The largest values of capacitance are attained when extensive areas of conductors bearing opposite electric charges are brought close together, and so discrete capacitors are often made of metal plates or foils separated by a thin layer of insulator. Inductance represents the energy stored in the magnetic field set up by an electric current. In order to concentrate the magnetic field, inductors are made by winding a conductor into a coil, sometimes with a core of a ferromagnetic material.

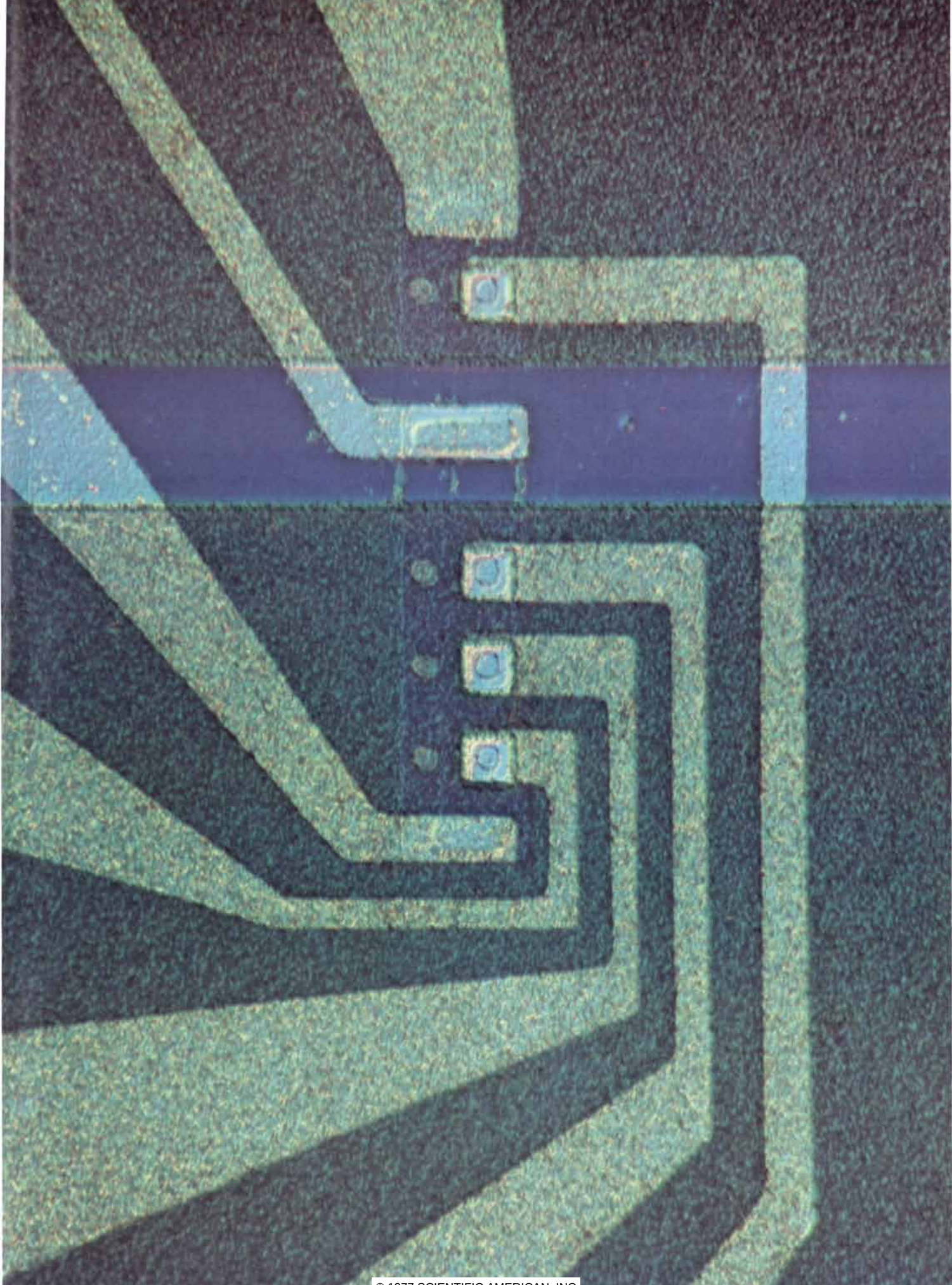
In a microelectronic device the carbon or nichrome of a resistor, the interleaved conductors of a capacitor and the windings of an inductor simply are not available. All the components of the circuit must be fabricated in a crystal of silicon or on the surface of the crystal. Silicon is far from being an ideal material for these functions, and only modest values of resistance and capacitance can be achieved. Practical microelectronic inductors cannot be formed at all. On the other hand, silicon is a material without equal for the fabrication of transistors, and the abundance of these active components in microelectronic devices more than compensates for the shortcomings of the passive elements.

The one property of transistors that makes them indispensable in microelectronics is the capacity for gain, or amplification. This property can be understood by considering both passive and active circuit elements as "black boxes" whose internal workings are immaterial and whose behavior can be examined only at their input and output terminals. A signal applied to the input terminals of a black box containing a resistor, a capacitor or an inductor can be transformed in a number of ways, but invariably the signal is reduced in power. A black box that contains a transistor, on the other hand, can transform a low-power signal into a high-power one.

In order to understand how transistors and other circuit elements can be made from silicon, it is necessary to consider the physical nature of semiconductor materials. In a conductor, such as a metal, current is carried by electrons that are free to wander throughout the

PAIR OF LOGIC CIRCUITS in the photomicrograph on the opposite page were fabricated as a unit in the surface of a silicon chip. The circuits consist of several interconnected transistors, which are by far the most important circuit elements in microelectronic devices. Of the four aluminum conductors that encircle the device and approach it from the right, the top one makes contact with one region of a transistor in which current flows parallel to the surface of the chip, emerging through the conductor that terminates on the bright blue horizontal bar. Under this conductor are three more transistors of a different type; in these, current flows up from the substrate to the row of contacts below the blue bar. The circuit is an example of the semiconductor technology called integrated-injection logic, or I^2L. A distinguishing feature of I^2L circuits is that some regions of the chip function as elements of more than one transistor. In the blue bar the surface of the chip can be seen; the pebbly texture elsewhere is polycrystalline silicon. Variations in color are not intrinsic to the silicon but are caused by interference in the layers of silicon dioxide that cover the surface. The device was made in the author's laboratory at Stanford University by Roderick D. Davies and was photographed by Fritz Goro.

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC



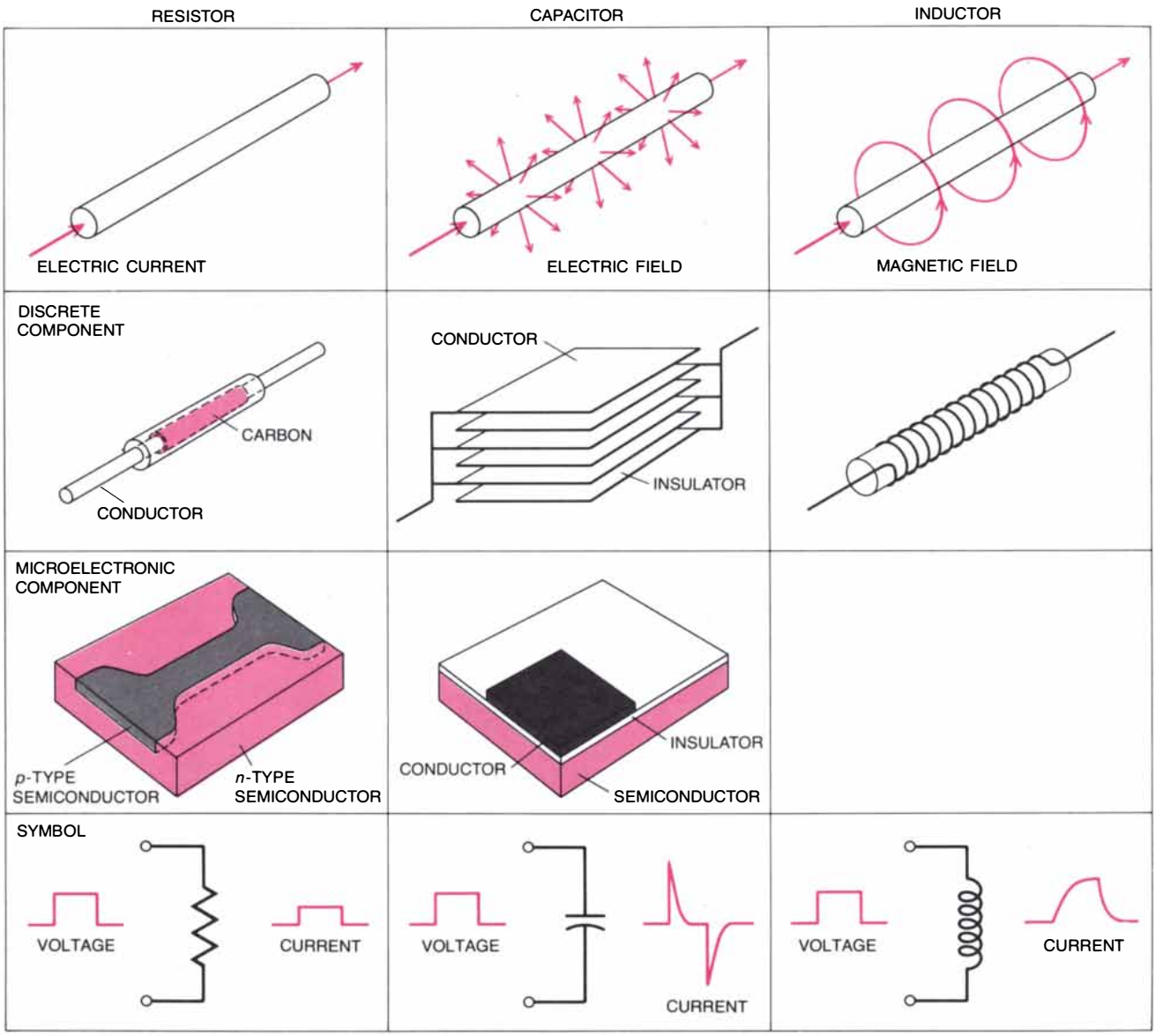
© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

atomic lattice of the substance. In an insulator all the electrons are tightly bound to atoms or molecules and hence none are available to serve as carriers of electric charge. The situation in a semiconductor is intermediate between the two: free charge carriers are not ordinarily present, but they can be generated with a modest expenditure of energy.

An atom of silicon has four electrons in its valence, or outermost, shell of electrons; in solid silicon, pairs of these electrons, shared by neighboring atoms, are arranged symmetrically so that each atom is surrounded by eight shared electrons. Since all the electrons are committed to the bonds between atoms, a crystal of pure silicon is a poor conductor of electricity.

Semiconductor devices are made by introducing controlled numbers of impurity atoms into the crystal, the process called doping. For example, part of a silicon crystal might be doped with phosphorus, an element whose atoms have five electrons in the valence shell. A phosphorus atom can displace a silicon atom without disrupting the crystal structure, but the extra electron it brings has no place in the interatomic bonds. In the absence of an external stimulus the extra electron remains in the vicinity of the impurity atom, but it can be mobilized by applying a small voltage across the crystal.

Silicon can also be doped with boron, an element whose atoms have three valence electrons. Each boron atom inserted in the silicon lattice creates a deficiency of one electron, a state that is called a hole. A hole also remains associated with an impurity atom under ordinary circumstances but can become mobile in response to an applied voltage. The hole is not a real particle, of course, but



PASSIVE CIRCUIT ELEMENTS employed in electronic devices include resistors, capacitors and inductors. Resistance represents the energy dissipated by electrons as they move through the atomic structure of a conductor. Capacitance measures the energy stored in the electric field that surrounds a charged conductor. Inductance measures the energy stored in the magnetic field set up by an electric current. Resistors constructed as discrete components consist of carbon or some other substance that conducts electricity poorly, such as the alloy nichrome; a resistor that forms part of a microelectronic assembly consists of a thin ribbon of one type of semiconductor surrounded by semiconductor of the opposite type. A discrete capacitor is made of many interleaved conducting and insulating layers; a microelectronic capacitor is made by forming on the surface of a semiconductor crystal a thin layer of insulator followed by a layer of metal. Only small values of capacitance can be obtained in this way. A discrete inductor consists of a coiled wire, often wound on a core of ferromagnetic material; no satisfactory method for building microelectronic inductors has been devised. The symbols for each of the passive elements are shown at the bottom along with the signal currents that flow through them in response to an applied signal voltage.

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

merely the absence of an electron at a position where one would be found in a pure lattice of silicon atoms. Nevertheless, the hole has a positive electric charge and can carry an electric current. The hole moves through the lattice in much the same way that a bubble moves through a liquid medium. An adjacent atom transfers an electron to the impurity atom, "filling" the hole there but creating a new one in its own cloud of electrons; the process is then repeated, so that the hole is passed along from atom to atom.

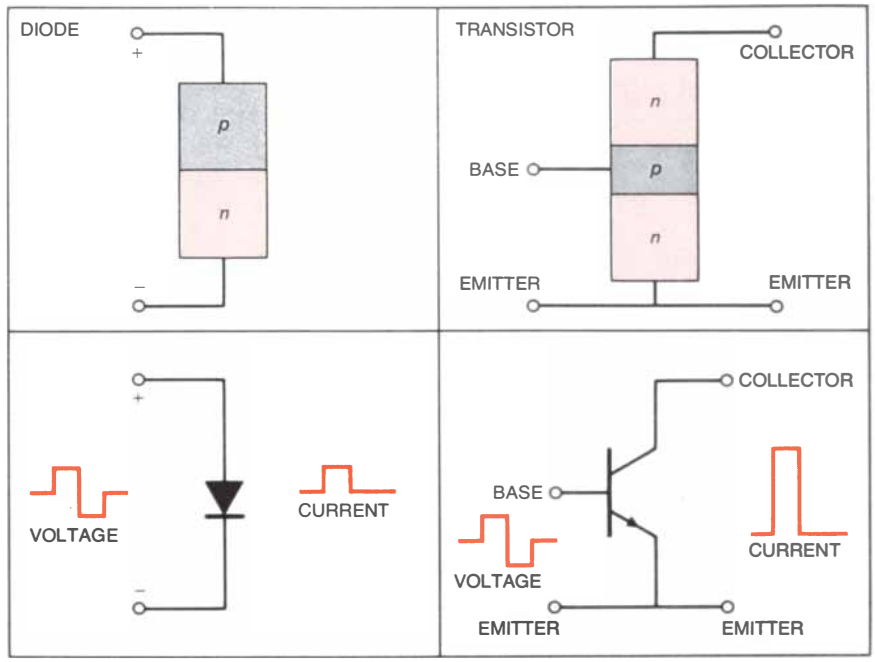
Silicon doped with phosphorus or another pentavalent element is called an *n*-type semiconductor, the *n* representing the negative electric charge of the conduction electrons. Doping with boron or another trivalent element gives rise to a *p*-type semiconductor, the designation referring to the positive electric charge of the holes.

The simplest semiconductor device is a diode made up of adjoining *n*-type and *p*-type regions in a single crystal of silicon. When a positive voltage is applied to the *p*-type region and a negative voltage to the *n*-type region, countercurrents of electrons and holes are established. The holes in the *p*-type region are repelled by the positive charge applied to the *p* terminal and are attracted to the negative terminal, so that they flow across the junction. Electrons in the *n*-type region are propelled in the opposite direction. The large current that results is called the forward diode current.

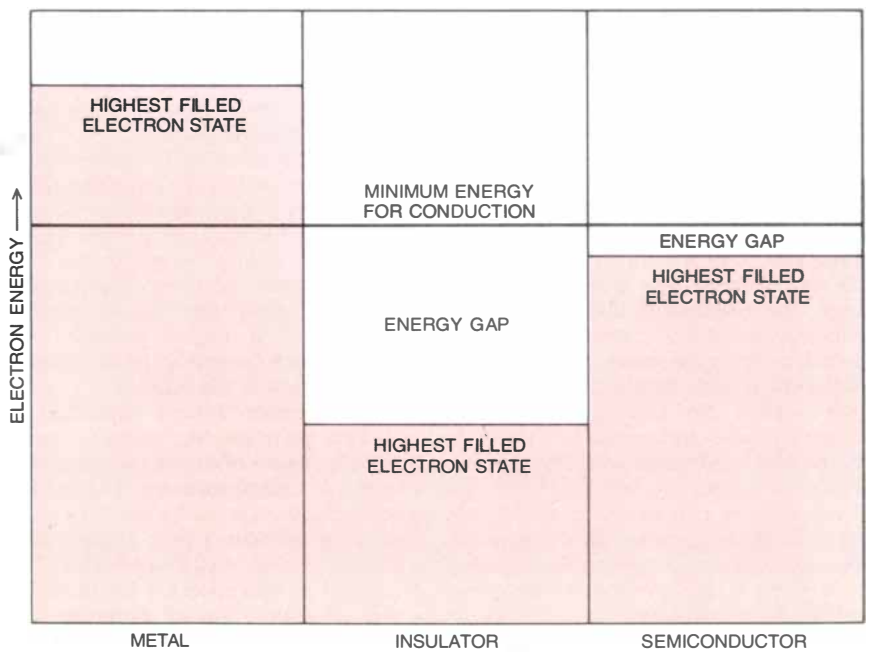
If the connections to the diode are reversed, holes are pulled back toward the terminal of the *p*-type region, which now has a negative charge, and electrons are drawn back into the *n*-type region toward the positive terminal. No current flows across the junction. Actually a very small "reverse" current is always observed, carried by a few electrons found in the *p*-type silicon and by holes in the *n*-type. Such "minority" carriers are always present, but their concentration is low.

A diode is not capable of gain, and so it cannot serve as an active circuit element; on the other hand, it has a property that distinguishes it from other passive devices. Resistors, capacitors and inductors are all symmetrical devices: their effects on a signal are the same no matter what the polarity of the signal and no matter which way they are connected in a circuit. The most conspicuous property of the diode is its asymmetry: it presents a low resistance to a signal of one polarity and a high resistance to a signal of the opposite polarity.

A transistor can be made by adding a third doped region to a diode so that, for example, a *p*-type region is sandwiched between two *n*-type regions. One of the *n*-doped areas is called the emitter and the other the collector; the *p* region between them is the base. In structure,

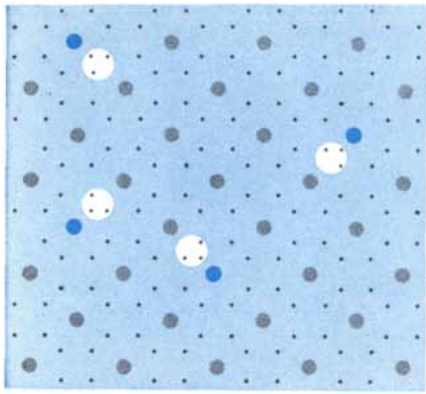


SEMICONDUCTOR DEVICES from which microelectronic circuits are constructed include the diode (*left*) and the transistor. Both devices are made of apposed regions of silicon doped with impurity elements; the two kinds of doped silicon are called *n* type and *p* type. The essential property of the diode is its asymmetry: connected as shown here, it transmits a signal of positive polarity but blocks a negative one. In this respect the transistor is also asymmetrical, but it has an additional property of greater importance. A transistor is capable of amplification; by drawing on an external power supply it can convert a low-power signal into a high-power one.

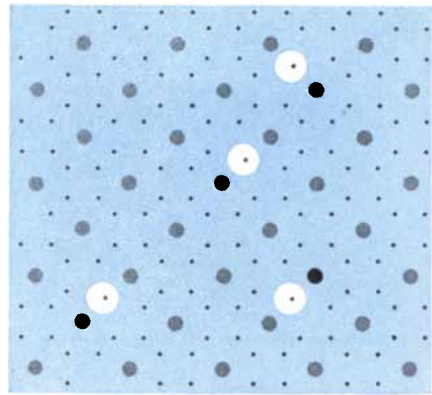


ELECTRONIC STRUCTURE of metals, insulators and semiconductors determines their electrical properties. Each of the electrons in a substance occupies a discrete, unique state, and the available states are filled in order, beginning with the one of lowest energy. Conduction requires electrons of relatively high energy. (For simplicity the minimum energy for conduction is shown here as if it were the same in all materials, although in fact there are substantial differences.) In a metal the highest filled electron state is at an energy exceeding the minimum for conduction, so that conduction electrons are always present; they wander freely through the atomic lattice of the metal. In an insulator there is a large gap between the highest electron energy and the energy needed for conduction; this gap can be interpreted as the energy needed to pull an electron free from the atom to which it is bound. There is also a gap in the electron structure of a semiconductor, but it is a small one. When they are undisturbed, electrons in a semiconductor remain in the vicinity of particular atoms, but they can be freed by a small expenditure of energy, such as that represented by the voltage applied to a diode or a transistor.

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC



n-TYPE SEMICONDUCTOR



p-TYPE SEMICONDUCTOR

DOPING OF SILICON with impurity atoms alters the electronic structure of the substance in such a way that carriers of electric charge are easily freed from the atomic lattice. A silicon atom (*gray*) has four electrons in its valence, or outermost, shell, and in a pure crystal these electrons form pairs that are shared by adjacent atoms. As a result each atom is surrounded by eight electrons, an inherently stable configuration. An *n*-type semiconductor can be made by replacing a few atoms of silicon with those of an element, such as phosphorus (*color*), that has five electrons in its valence shell. The extra electron has no part to play in the bonds between the atoms of the crystal and so it readily becomes a mobile charge carrier. In a *p*-type semiconductor the impurity introduced is an element, such as boron (*black*), with three electrons in its valence shell. Each impurity atom gives rise to a deficiency of one electron, called a hole. A hole has a net positive charge, and under an applied voltage it can move from atom to atom through the crystal structure. The designations *n* and *p* refer respectively to the negative and positive polarities of the charge carriers. Here the concentration of impurity atoms is greatly exaggerated.

then, the transistor can be regarded as two diodes joined back to back on a single crystal of silicon. As might be expected from this analysis, the operation of the transistor depends on the relative voltages applied to the three regions.

As a point of reference the *n*-type emitter can be assigned a potential of zero volts; we shall then assume that the *p*-type base has a small positive voltage and the *n*-type collector has a larger positive voltage. With this arrangement of voltages the emitter and the base represent a diode operating in the forward direction: holes are drawn into the emitter and electrons are injected into the base. The voltages on the base and the collector, in contrast, are of the wrong polarities for conduction, and so only a negligible reverse current flows through that junction. The collector is not idle, however: electrons injected into the base by the emitter are transported to the collector by a diffusion process similar to the mixing of two gases. In a well-designed transistor almost all the injected electrons diffuse all the way through the base, and a large current flows from the emitter to the collector.

If the positive voltage on the base is reduced to zero or if the base is given a negative potential, the forward diode current from the emitter to the base is halted. Because electrons are no longer injected into the base, the emitter-to-collector current also stops. Hence the collector current is controlled by the base current. By changing the polarity of the base voltage the collector current can be switched on or off; between these two states the collector current is roughly proportional to the base current. If the doped regions of the transistor have the proper dimensions and arrangement, the collector current can be much larger than the base current, so that the transistor exhibits gain. The ratio of collector current to base current is commonly as high as 100, and current gains greater than 1,000 are attainable.

The most important dimensional constraint on the design of such a transistor is that the base must be narrow so that virtually all the electrons injected by the emitter are transported across the base to the collector. A narrow base also reduces the transit time for an injected electron and therefore increases the speed at which the transistor can change from one state to the other.

The transistor I have described is called an *npn* transistor, the term denoting the sequence of doped regions in the silicon. A complementary device, the *pnp* transistor, is made by inserting an *n*-type base between *p*-type regions that define the emitter and the collector. The principles of operation are the same for a *pnp* transistor, but all polarities are reversed, so that for normal operation the base and the collector must be negative with respect to the emitter. The polarities of the charge carriers within the device are also reversed: the current from emitter to collector consists of injected holes.

The *npn* and *pnp* transistors make up the class of devices called junction transistors. They are also known as bipolar transistors because charge carriers of both polarities are involved in their operation. It is the bipolar transistor that was invented in 1948 by John Bardeen, Walter H. Brattain and William Shockley of the Bell Telephone Laboratories.

A second basic kind of transistor was actually conceived almost 25 years before the bipolar devices, but its fabrication in quantity did not become practical until the early 1960's. This is the field-effect transistor. Of the several types that have been devised, the one that is common in microelectronics is the metal-oxide-semiconductor field-effect transistor. The term refers to the three materials employed in its construction and is abbreviated MOSFET.

In a typical MOSFET two islands of *n*-type silicon are created in a substrate of *p*-type material. Connections are made directly to the islands, one of which is called the source and the other the drain. On the surface of the silicon over the channel between the source and the drain a thin layer of silicon dioxide (SiO_2) is formed, and on top of the oxide a layer of metal is deposited, forming a third electrode called the gate. Silicon dioxide is an excellent insulator, and so the gate has no direct electrical connection with the semiconductor substrate. The gate is coupled to the silicon, however, by capacitance, that is, the electric field generated by any charge placed on the gate electrode can influence the motion of charge carriers in the semiconductor channel.

In a common mode of operation the source and the substrate are connected by an external conductor and both are held at a potential of zero volts. The drain is then given a positive voltage. No current flows between source and substrate because they are both grounded; between the drain and the substrate there is only the negligible reverse current of a diode. In the quiescent condition, with no voltage applied to the gate, the *p*-type channel under the gate contains a majority of holes and few electrons can be attracted to the positive potential of the drain. When a positive potential is applied to the gate, the electric field attracts a majority population of electrons to a thin layer at the surface of the crystal immediately under the gate. Because of the presence of numerous electrons in a region that is normally *p* type, the surface is said to be inverted. The inversion creates a continuous *n*-type channel from source to drain and large currents can flow. Like the bipolar transistor, the MOSFET is capable of amplification, although the gain is usually measured in terms of a voltage ratio instead of a current ratio.

It should be noted that whereas both electrons and holes participate in the base current of a bipolar transistor, essentially only one kind of charge carrier

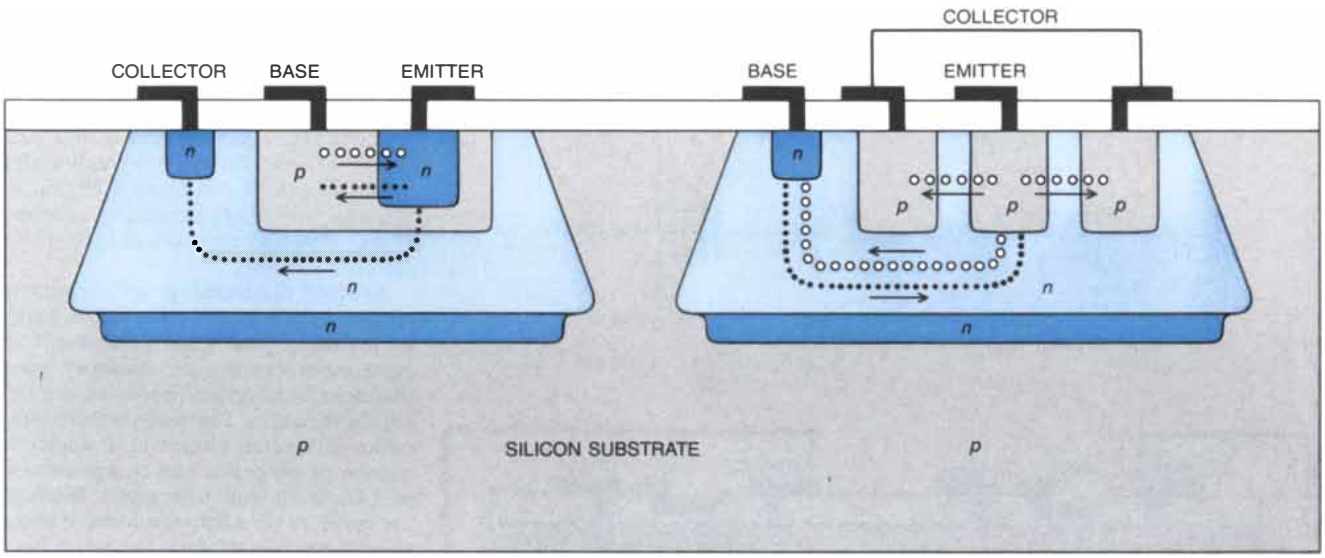
© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

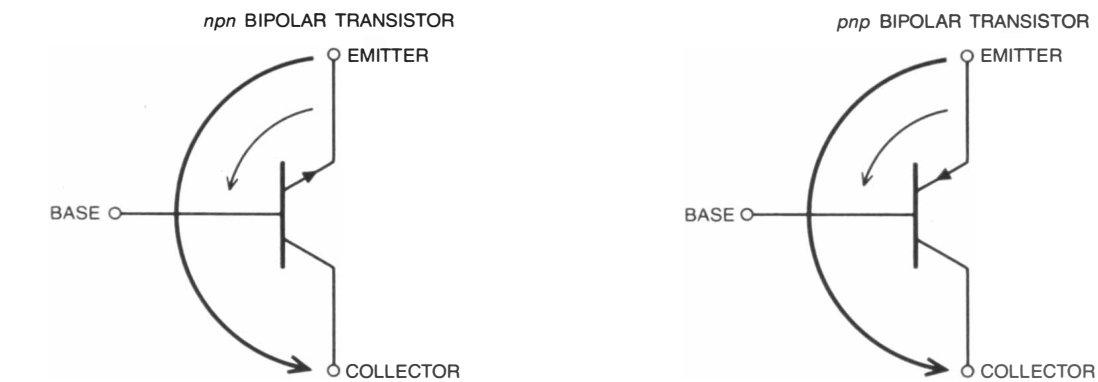
is present in the inverted channel of a MOSFET. In the device I have described these carriers are electrons, and the transistor is called an *n*-channel MOSFET or simply an *n*-MOS transistor. The complementary device can also be built; it consists of two islands of *p*-type material in an *n*-type substrate, with the same capacitance-coupled gate over the channel. All polarities are reversed in this device, and the charge carriers are holes rather than electrons. It is called a *p*-MOS transistor.

Still another kind of MOSFET is made by connecting two islands of *n*-type material with a thin but continuous *n*-type channel under the gate capacitor. Since a conduction channel is naturally present, current flows from the source to the drain in this device when the gate is not energized. A negative potential applied to the gate drives electrons from the channel and halts the current, turning off the transistor. Such a device is called a depletion-mode MOSFET, and of course the corresponding transistor with a *p*-type channel can also be constructed. Transistors whose conduction is turned on by a gate voltage are called enhancement-mode devices. All together, then, there are four types of MOS transistor: *n*-channel and *p*-channel types of both enhancement-mode and depletion-mode devices.

Dimensions are of importance in the fabrication of MOS transistors just as they are in bipolar technology. For a MOSFET the critical dimensions are the thickness of the oxide layer under the gate electrode and the distance separating the source and the drain regions; the sensitivity of the transistor's response to a gate voltage varies inversely as the thickness of the oxide layer.

The primary materials of a microelectronic device are areas of a silicon chip doped with various concentrations of *n*-type or *p*-type elements. In addition there are conductors, which can be made either of a metal, such as alumi-





SILICON DIOXIDE (SiO_2)

p-TYPE SILICON

n-TYPE SILICON

HEAVILY DOPED *n*-TYPE SILICON

ALUMINUM CONDUCTOR

••••••• ELECTRONS

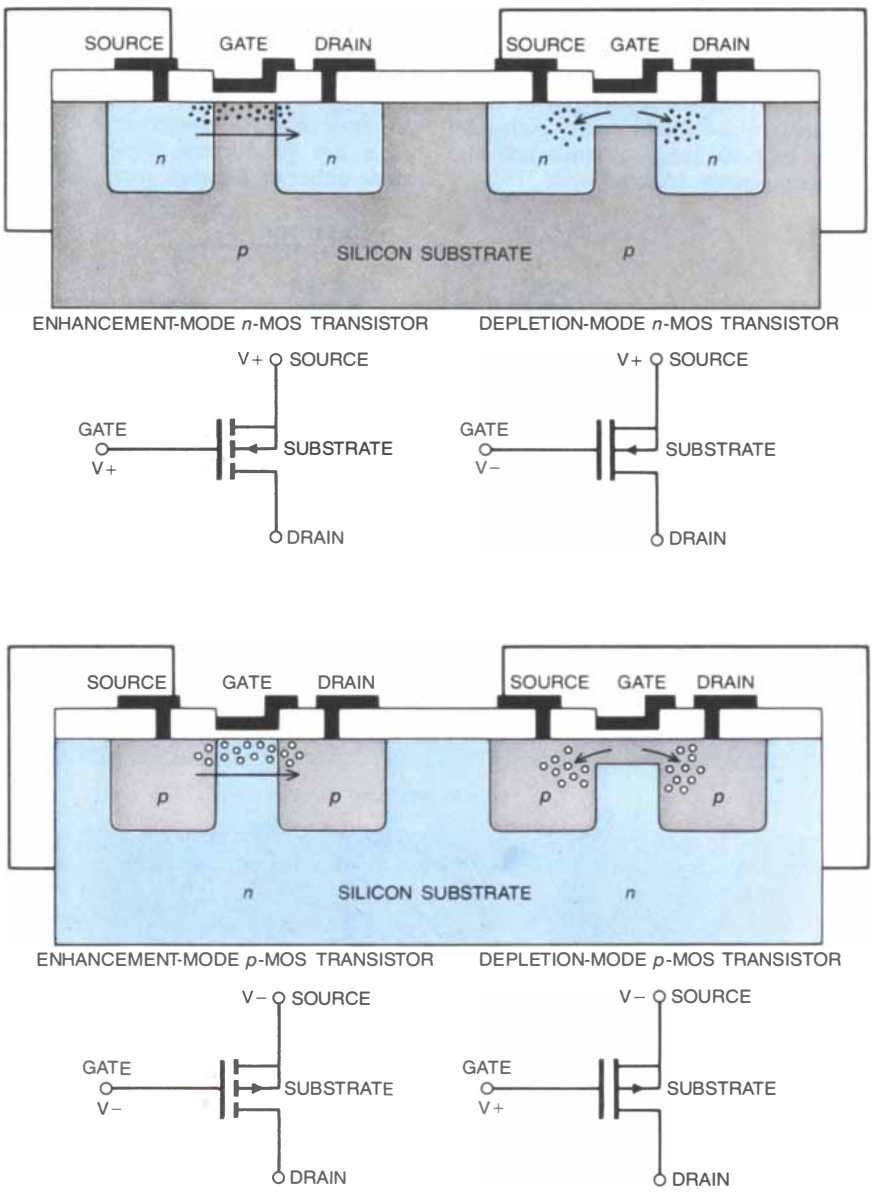
oooo HOLES

MICROELECTRONIC TRANSISTORS are fabricated in a single crystal of silicon through a series of operations that require access to only one surface of the silicon chip. In the example shown here the entire chip is doped with a *p*-type impurity, then islands of *n*-type silicon are formed. Smaller *p*-type and *n*-type areas are next created within these islands in order to define the three fundamental elements of the transistor: the emitter, the base and the collector. In an *npn* transistor (*left*) a positive voltage is applied to the base and the collector, and as a result holes flow from the base to the emitter and electrons are injected by the emitter into the base. Many of the injected electrons, however, migrate all the way through the base to reach the collector, and this emitter-to-collector current can be much larger than the emitter-to-base current. The device exhibits gain because a small signal applied to the base can control a large one at the collector. For simplicity in manufacturing, a *pnp* transistor (*right*) is generally constructed according to a different plan, in which the emitter-to-collector current is lateral rather than vertical. The principles of operation are the same except that all polarities are reversed. Connections to the circuit elements are made through aluminum conductors deposited over an insulating layer of silicon dioxide; some areas of *n*-type silicon are heavily doped to improve their conductivity. The large *n*-type islands are required to isolate the transistors. Because charge carriers of both polarities participate in the operation of these devices they are called bipolar transistors.

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

num, or of heavily doped polycrystalline silicon, which has a fairly high conductivity. Finally, silicon dioxide serves as a good insulator.

The fabrication of the circuit must be accomplished entirely from the surface. Areas to be doped, for example, are defined photolithographically, then the appropriate element is allowed to diffuse into the silicon structure. The process must be repeated several times in order to create all the needed doped regions, which are often nested one inside another. Areas of oxide are laid out in a similar way, and are formed from the substance of the chip itself, by heating it in the presence of oxygen. Conductors are deposited over a thick mat of oxide that covers the entire chip, breaking through the insulating barrier only where it is necessary to make electrical contact with the silicon.



FIELD-EFFECT TRANSISTORS, made by the metal-oxide-semiconductor (MOS) technique, differ from bipolar ones in that only one kind of charge carrier is active in a single device. Those that employ electrons are called *n*-MOS transistors; those that employ holes are *p*-MOS transistors. In an *n*-MOS device (*top*) two islands of *n*-type silicon, called the source and the drain, are formed in a *p*-type substrate. Over the channel between the source and the drain is a metal electrode, the gate, that is prevented from making contact with the semiconductor by a thin layer of silicon dioxide. In an enhancement-mode transistor (*top left*) a positive potential at the drain exerts an attractive force on electrons available from the source, but the electrons cannot pass through the *p*-type channel, which is rich in holes. When a positive charge is applied to the gate, however, the resulting electric field attracts electrons to a thin layer at the surface of the channel and current flows from the source to the drain. In a depletion-mode *n*-MOS transistor (*top right*) there is a continuous channel of *n*-type silicon between the source and the drain, so that the transistor normally conducts; only when a negative voltage is applied to the gate is the current halted, since electrons are then expelled from the channel. By forming islands of *p*-type material in an *n*-type substrate the corresponding *p*-MOS devices (*bottom*) can be constructed; here the charge carriers are holes. Because MOS transistors require no isolation islands they can be packed more densely on a chip of silicon than bipolar transistors.

A limited selection of passive circuit elements can be fabricated by these techniques. A resistor is formed by defining a thin ribbon of *p*-type silicon within an island of *n*-type material. Current flowing through the device is confined to the ribbon by maintaining it at a negative potential with respect to the *n*-type island so that only reverse current flows across the *pn* junction.

Doped silicon would be an unlikely choice of material for a resistor to be manufactured as a discrete component. It simply does not have enough of the desired property: electrical resistance per unit length. Practical values of resistance can be obtained in microelectronic circuits only because the precision of the fabrication technology makes it possible to form a ribbon of material with a very small cross-sectional area. Even so, resistors of large value are cumbersome.

Another disadvantage of the silicon resistor is that its ultimate value cannot be predicted with great precision. Circuits incorporating the resistors must therefore be designed to tolerate considerable variation. The manufacture of an entire integrated circuit in a single sequence of processes can compensate in part for such wide tolerances. Since all the resistors on a chip are formed at the same time, they all tend to depart from their specified values by roughly the same amount; moreover, the resistance values vary in concert with some of the properties of the transistors on the same chip. By arranging for the deviation of one component from its nominal value to be balanced by that of another, excellent performance of the circuit as a whole can be achieved.

The structure of a microelectronic capacitor is much like that of the gate electrode in a metal-oxide-semiconductor transistor. When the device is to function only as a capacitor and not as part of an active circuit element, the area of silicon under the electrode is doped very heavily in order to increase its conductivity. A thin layer of oxide is then formed, followed by a layer of aluminum. As in the case of resistors, this method of construction would not be employed in making discrete components. The silicon dioxide layer cannot be made as thin as some other insulators without the risk of a short circuit. Moreover, the total area of the conductors is very small; discrete capacitors are made up of many interleaved conductors, whereas the microelectronic equivalent is limited to a single pair of plates. For these reasons the values of capacitance available in microelectronic circuits are

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

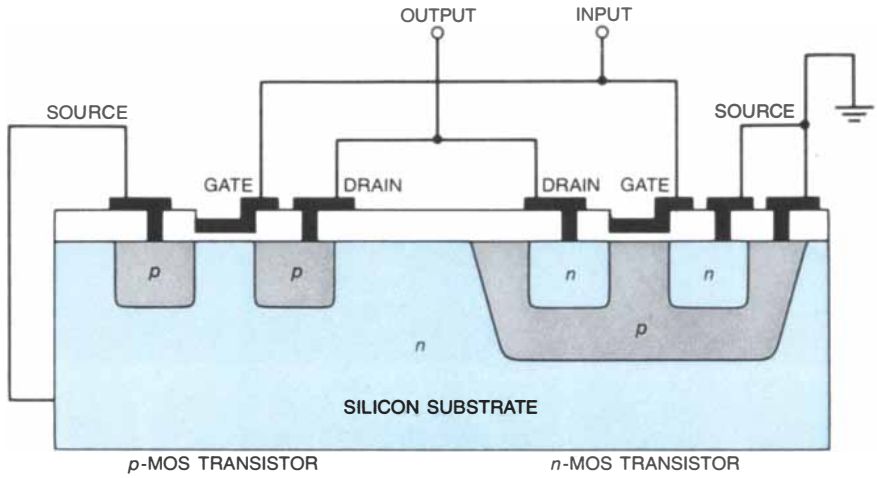
small, seldom more than a ten-thousandth the value of a typical capacitor in a discrete-component circuit.

If capacitors are difficult to shrink to the scale of microelectronic devices, inductors have so far proved impossible. The helical coils and ferromagnetic core materials of the discrete inductor are simply incompatible with silicon technology, and no substitute has been found. If an inductor is required, it must be supplied as a discrete component.

Improvements in the technology of fabrication will no doubt increase the selection of passive elements available to the designer of a microelectronic circuit. The potential for improvement is even greater, however, through the simple elimination of many passive components in favor of active ones.

The case of resistors is particularly dramatic: they can often be eliminated by direct substitution. A transistor can be regarded as a current-controlled or voltage-controlled resistor. It follows that if a suitable current or voltage is available to set the resistance, a transistor can be inserted into a circuit at almost every point where a resistor might be employed. This practice would never be adopted in a circuit made up of discrete components because discrete transistors are more expensive than discrete resistors. In a microelectronic circuit, on the other hand, the main cost of a component is the area of silicon it occupies, and that is at least as great for the resistor as it is for the transistor.

The replacement of other passive circuit elements with active ones involves more elaborate stratagems. In a sense the most elaborate of all is the sudden prominence in recent years of digital electronics. Many of the large capacitances and inductances of traditional electronic circuitry are employed to ensure the faithful reproduction of the continuously varying voltages and frequencies of analogue signals. Even in those circuits the large passive elements can often be replaced by a network of active ones, but the passive components are much more readily dispensed with in the processing of digital signals, which have only discrete levels. In most cases there are only two recognizable levels: high voltage and low (or zero) voltage. In such circuits transistors are operated as switches, which also have only two states—on or off—and in the switching mode they require fewer auxiliary devices.



COMPLEMENTARY MOS DEVICE includes both *n*-MOS and *p*-MOS transistors on a single chip of silicon. If the circuit is fabricated in an *n*-type substrate, as it is here, then a *p*-channel transistor can be made in the normal way, but an *n*-channel device requires an island of *p*-type material. The need for such islands adds another step to the manufacturing process and also reduces the packing density, and thus the total number of transistors that can be fitted onto a single chip. Complementary MOS devices can be arranged to achieve low power consumption. In the circuit shown here the gates of both transistors are connected to a single input; since the two transistors require signals of opposite polarity for conduction they are never turned on at the same time and little current flows from the power supply ($V+$) to ground.

The two basic types of transistor, bipolar and MOSFET, divide microelectronic circuits into two large families. The bipolar devices were the first to be developed, and a great variety of bipolar technologies have evolved. Today the greatest density of circuit elements per chip can be achieved with the newer MOSFET technology, but that is not to say that bipolar circuits are likely to become obsolete.

In the construction of a typical bipolar integrated circuit the entire chip is first given an overall doping with a *p*-type contaminant. In this ocean of *p*-type silicon separate *n*-type islands are then created for each transistor (and for other circuit elements such as resistors as well). These islands serve the function of isolation; the circuit is designed in such a way that all of them are maintained at a positive voltage with respect to the substrate, so that no current except the small reverse diode current flows between them. In order to make an *npn* transistor a lake of *p*-type material is introduced into the *n*-type island, and finally a smaller island of *n*-type semiconductor is built within this lake. The small, innermost island is the emitter; the *p*-type lake is the base and the main, isolation island serves as the collector. The electrons that make up the collector current flow down from the emitter, across the base and into the comparatively large volume of the collector.

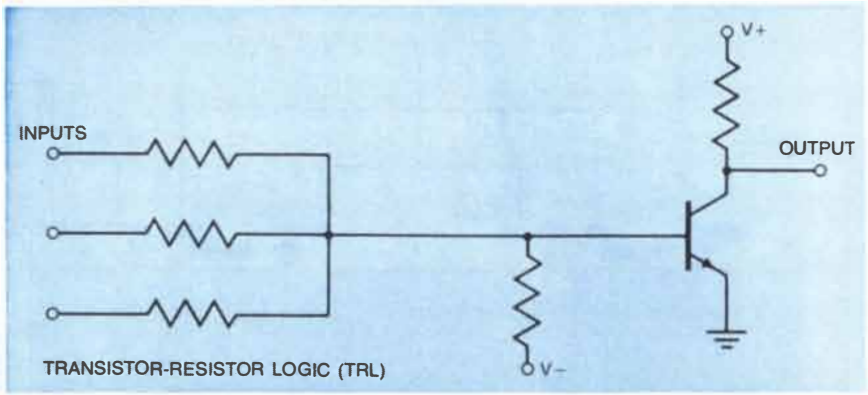
A *pnp* transistor of a similar design could be constructed in the same chip, but it would require adding one more doping operation to a schedule that already includes at least four. Once again an island of *n*-type material would be created in the *p*-doped sea. Then would be added in succession a lake of *p*-type semiconductor, a smaller island of the *n*-type material and finally within this small island a puddle of *p*-type silicon. Only the last three regions would participate in the operation of the transistor; the main island would serve for isolation only.

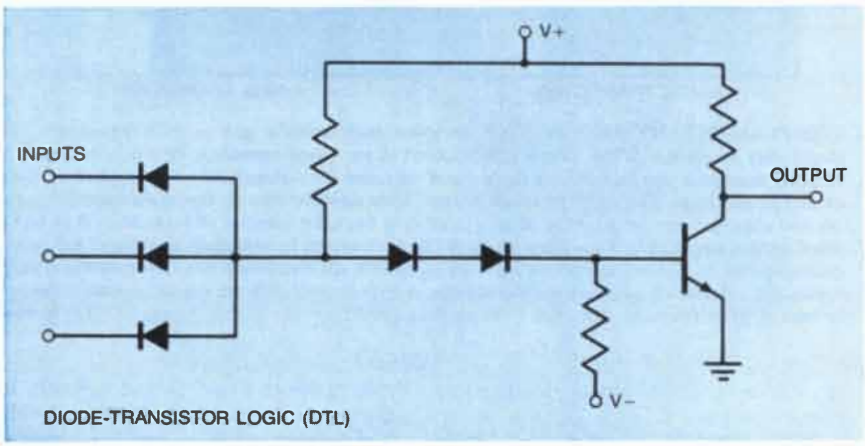
In order to avoid this complexity the *pnp* transistor is constructed according to a different plan, in which the current flow is lateral rather than vertical. In this design the *n*-type isolation island becomes the base and two separate *p*-doped regions are introduced. They are often formed in an annular arrangement, with the collector forming a ring around the emitter. The characteristics of the lateral *pnp* transistor are inferior to those of the vertical *npn* one because the base region separating the emitter from the collector is inevitably wider. As a result the current gain and the switching speed of the lateral transistor are reduced.

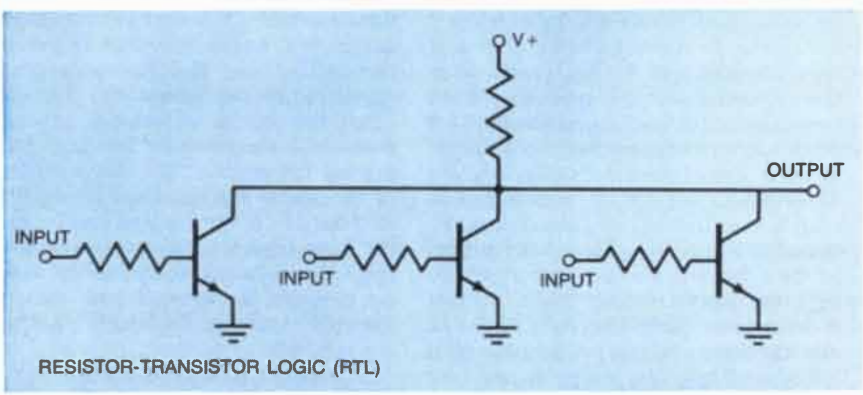
A metal-oxide-semiconductor transistor can also be fabricated at the surface of an ocean of *p*-type silicon, but in MOS circuits no isolation diodes are required. In order to build an enhancement-mode *n*-channel MOSFET it is sufficient to create two small islands of *n*-type material to serve as the source and the drain; then, of course, the oxide layer and the gate electrode must be formed on the surface of the chip over the channel. Isolation islands are not needed because the voltages applied to the source and the drain ensure that no current can flow between them and the substrate. The transistor isolates itself from all other elements on the chip.

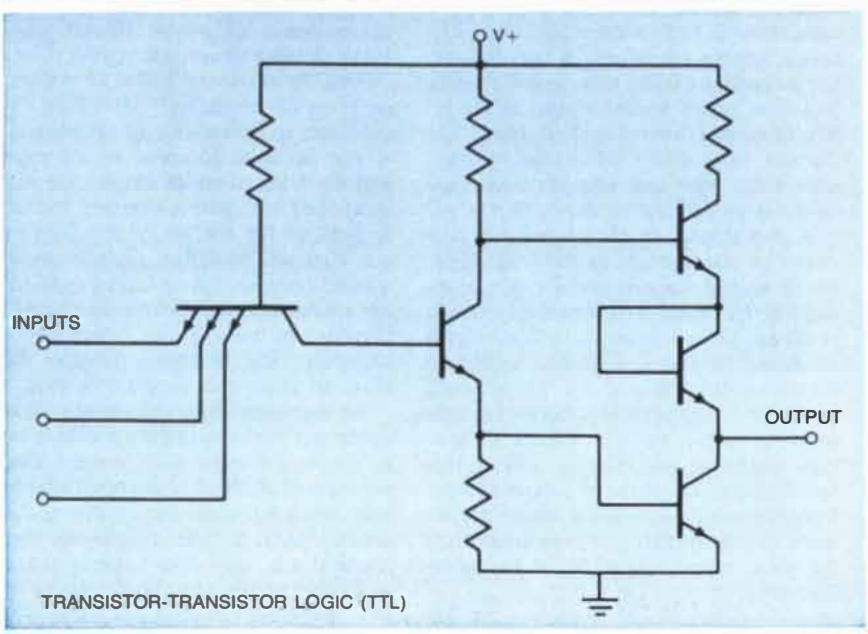
An *n*-channel microelectronic device operating in the depletion mode is built in much the same way, except that a permanent channel of *n*-doped silicon is laid down between the source and the drain. MOS devices employing the *p* channel are most conveniently formed in a substrate that has been treated with

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC









an *n*-type dopant. The polarities of all the semiconductor regions and the polarities of all the voltages applied to them must of course be reversed.

In microelectronic circuits employing metal-oxide-semiconductor technology the decision to employ *n*-channel or *p*-channel devices is usually a fundamental one because all the transistors on a single chip employ the same type of channel material. It is possible, however, to manufacture a chip containing both kinds of MOSFET, but only at the cost of increased complexity and lower density. Complementary MOS circuits are made, for example, by isolating all the *p*-channel devices within islands of *n*-type silicon. The complementary integrated circuits are more difficult to manufacture, but in some applications their convenience is worth the added cost. The particular advantage of the complementary MOS (CMOS) devices is the potential for low power consumption.

It is mainly because isolation islands are not required in conventional *n*-MOS and *p*-MOS devices that these transistors can be packed more densely than bipolar ones. The difference is a substantial one: roughly four times as many MOS transistors will fit on a given area of silicon as bipolar ones. For this reason MOS technology has come to dominate the manufacture of large-scale integrated circuits, in which tens of thousands of active elements are incorporated into a single device. A majority of one-chip microprocessors are built with metal-oxide-semiconductor technology, as are almost all semiconductor memory chips.

The most important virtue of bipolar circuits is higher speed of operation. The speed with which a bipolar transistor can change its state is determined mainly by the width of the base; the delay being measured depends on the time

DIGITAL LOGIC CIRCUITS employing bipolar semiconductor devices have evolved toward a state in which transistors are adopted for almost all functions. Digital logic operates with signals that have only two recognizable levels (such as high voltage and low voltage); logic circuits accept such signals as inputs and transform them according to fixed rules to generate an output. The first families of bipolar logic circuits were constructed from discrete components. In transistor-resistor logic (TRL) the number of resistors was maximized, since they were the cheapest devices. In diode-transistor logic (DTL) performance was improved by substituting semiconductor diodes for many of the resistors. Resistor-transistor logic (RTL) was the first microelectronic technology; a transistor was supplied for each input and only a few resistors with small values were required. Transistor-transistor logic (TTL) is today the commonest form of bipolar microelectronic technology. Transistors are abundant and are coupled directly together. The circuit illustrated here includes a device, the multiple-emitter transistor, that has no equivalent among discrete components.

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

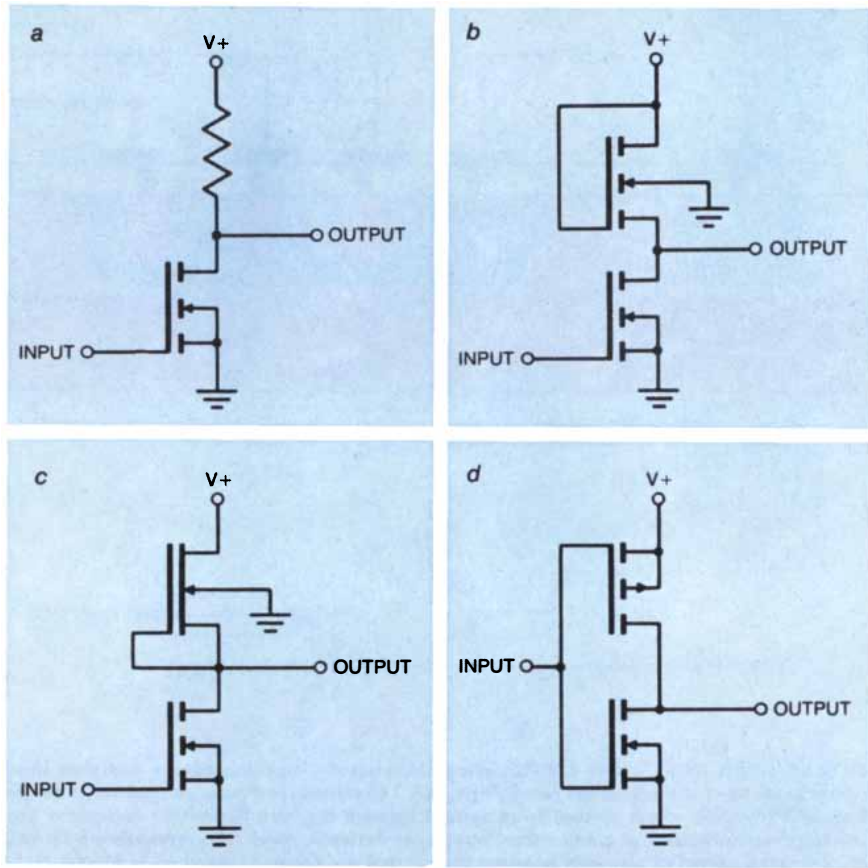
required for electrons to diffuse from the emitter to the collector. In the vertical design generally employed for *npn* transistors the base can be quite narrow, substantially more so than the narrowest line that can be resolved photolithographically on the surface of the chip. In a MOS device the width of the gate plays a similar role, but because MOS transistors are lateral devices that width cannot be reduced below the limit of resolution. The mobility of the charge carriers also has an effect on the speed of a MOS transistor: electrons move faster than holes, and so *n*-channel devices tend to be faster than *p*-channel ones. Finally, the speed of a MOS device is limited by the capacitor made up of the gate, the oxide layer and the substrate, which requires a finite time for charging and discharging. Reducing the capacitance speeds operation, but it also reduces gain.

Over the past two decades the development of microelectronic circuits has made high-quality transistors progressively cheaper and more abundant while providing only a meager selection of resistors and capacitors and no inductors at all. As a result circuit configurations have evolved that exploit the strengths of the technology and adeptly skirt its limitations. The trend can be traced in the evolution of digital logic circuits.

The fundamental units of electronic logic are circuits called gates (not to be confused with the gate electrode in an MOS transistor). Each kind of gate accepts a signal at its input terminals and transforms it according to a rule embodied in its internal wiring, the transformed signal appearing at the output terminals. Many gates accept more than one input and determine the output according to the combination of input signals. At the heart of every gate is at least one active circuit element, which acts as a switch; the switch controls the output of the circuit and is ultimately controlled by the input.

Among the families of logic circuits developed in the mid-1950's was one called transistor-resistor logic (TRL). The circuits were assembled entirely from discrete components and the number of resistors was maximized because resistors were the cheapest and most reliable devices. A typical gate with three inputs consisted of one transistor and five resistors.

In the late 1950's and early 1960's semiconductor diodes, also packaged as discrete components, became cheap enough to compete with resistors; the result was diode-transistor logic (DTL). The diodes were employed to isolate the input signals from one another and to shift voltage levels. A typical gate still relied on a single switching transistor, along with three resistors and five diodes. It offered both lower power consumption and higher speed than the equivalent transistor-resistor network.



MOS LOGIC CIRCUITS were developed later than bipolar ones and for the most part have been built only in microelectronic form. Each of the circuits here performs the function of inverting a signal, so that if the input is high, the output is low, and vice versa. In each case the input is applied to the gate of an enhancement-mode *n*-MOS transistor; the circuits are distinguished by the choice of a load element needed to limit the current through this transistor. The simplest choice is a resistor (*a*), but it also gives the poorest performance. A second enhancement-mode *n*-MOS transistor (*b*) is the easiest to fabricate; a depletion-mode *n*-MOS transistor (*c*) gives the highest packing density. Finally, by adding an enhancement-mode *p*-channel device (*d*) the low power consumption of a complementary MOS circuit can be achieved.

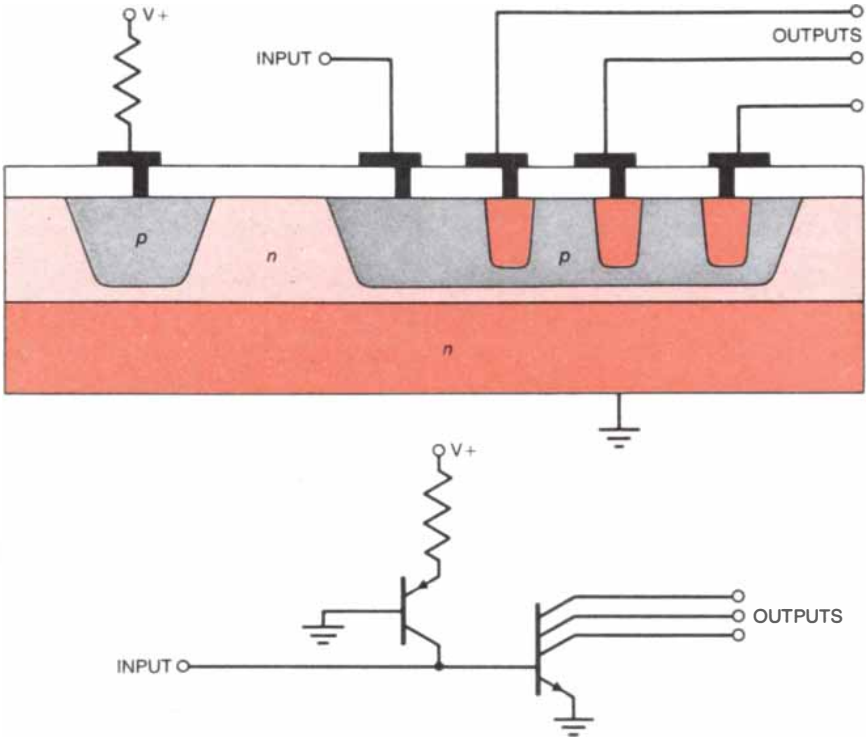
The next generation of logic designs, prevalent in the early and mid-1960's, introduced the first microelectronic logic circuits. The family of devices was given the name resistor-transistor logic (RTL), but the resistors had values much smaller than those of earlier circuits and transistors were employed much more generously. In a typical gate each of three inputs was allotted its own switching transistor. Once again both power consumption and speed were improved. Integrated RTL circuits were manufactured with one gate or a few gates on a chip.

The fourth major logic family to be introduced remains today the commonest form of bipolar digital technology. It is called transistor-transistor logic (TTL), and as the term implies it delegates most functions to active circuit elements. TTL gates were the first commercially important ones to incorporate a microelectronic circuit element that could not have been assembled from discrete components. That element is the multiple-emitter transistor, in which two or three emitters share a common base and collector. In a TTL gate each of the emitters accepts an input signal. The multiple-emitter transistor controls a single switching transistor, and that in turn drives a network of three output transistors. Compared with the previous family of RTL gates, TTL circuits provide greater output power (so that more gates in the next stage of an array can be driven), less stringent tolerances in manufacturing and greater immunity to spurious voltages, or electrical noise. Integrated circuits containing several hundred TTL gates are now common.

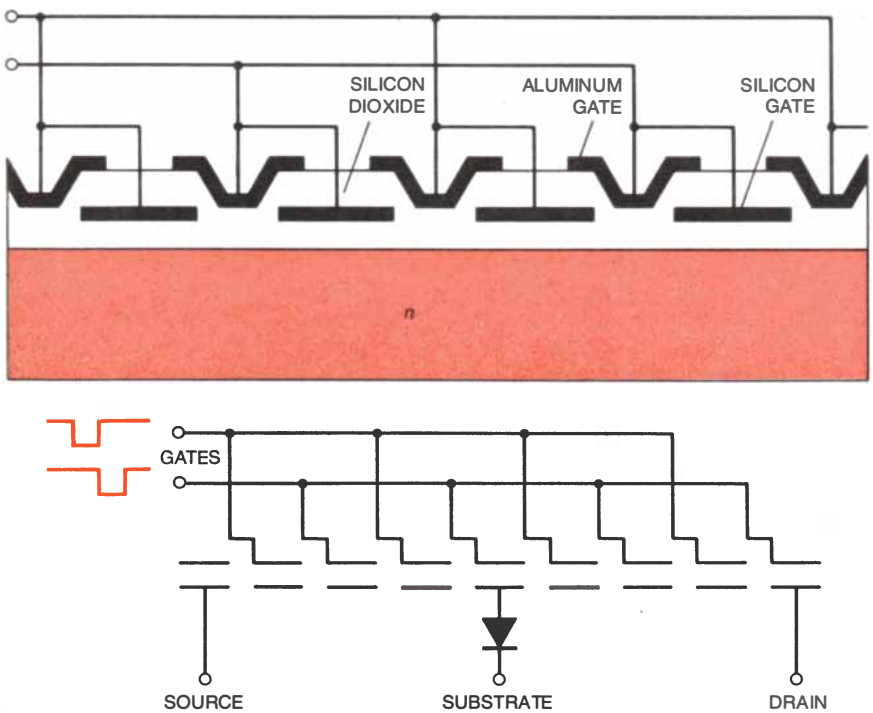
Perhaps because metal-oxide-semiconductor technology developed later, its evolution has been less complicated. As a rule newly introduced logic families have not completely displaced older ones; rather, each of the families has found applications for which it is best suited.

The first MOSFET microelectronic circuits employed *p*-channel devices exclusively because they are the easiest to

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC



INTEGRATED-INJECTION LOGIC, often abbreviated I²L, compresses a complete logic circuit made up of two transistors into a single unit. The substrate serves as the emitter of an *npn* transistor (*right*) in which current flows upward through the base to multiple collectors. The substrate is also the base of another transistor, a *pnp* device in which the current flow is lateral. By this arrangement of elements isolation islands that are normally required in bipolar technology are eliminated and packing densities similar to those of MOS circuits can be attained.



CHARGE-COUPLED DEVICE is a microelectronic circuit element whose function could not be duplicated by a practical assembly of discrete components. The device can be regarded as a stretched MOS transistor with a long string of gates (perhaps as many as 1,000) between the source and the drain. In the *p*-channel device shown here a charge packet, consisting of a concentration of holes, can be held in place for a short time by applying a steady negative voltage to one of the gates. If that voltage is then dropped and simultaneously the next gate in line is energized, the charge packet moves to a new position under the second gate. By applying pulses to alternate gates a sequence of charge packets can be transferred from source to drain.

make. They are also the slowest, because of the lower mobility of holes compared with electrons. Other technologies have largely replaced the *p*-MOS devices where high performance is needed, but the latter are still in widespread use in inexpensive electronic calculators, where speed of operation is not important and low cost is the foremost consideration.

In microprocessors and in semiconductor memories it is largely *n*-channel MOS circuits that have replaced the *p*-MOS devices. The varieties of *n*-MOS technology can be surveyed by considering a simple gate circuit with one input to an enhancement-mode *n*-channel field-effect transistor. The possible circuit configurations are distinguished by the element chosen as a load for this transistor.

The most straightforward choice and conceptually the simplest one is a resistor, but it also gives the poorest performance. Another possibility for the current-limiting load element is a similar enhancement-mode *n*-channel transistor, connected in series with the first one. This is the combination that is most easily fabricated and that is often chosen for low-cost applications. The highest packing density can be achieved with an *n*-channel depletion-mode device as the load element, and that is therefore the choice for demanding, large-scale integrated circuits, such as microprocessors. Finally, a *p*-channel enhancement-mode transistor can be employed as the load element. The gate is then no longer an *n*-MOS device but a complementary MOS (CMOS) circuit. Because only one of the transistors is conducting at any given time, except during the switching operation itself, there is little steady-state current through the gate and power consumption is low. An application in which CMOS technology excels is the electronic wrist watch, which must operate for long periods on the energy stored in a small battery.

Primarily through advances in fabrication methods and materials science the packing density of bipolar circuits has been considerably improved, and so has the speed of MOS devices. Nevertheless, a substantial gap remains between them. One candidate to fill this gap is a new bipolar technology called integrated-injection logic, usually abbreviated I²L.

The basic functional element in integrated-injection logic is not a single transistor but a pair of transistors formed as a unit in the silicon substrate. One of them has a vertical arrangement, but the current flows up to the collector rather than down as in the usual design. The substrate itself serves as the emitter of this transistor, and at the same time it forms the base of another, lateral transistor. Because of the voltages applied to the various doped regions no isolation islands are needed; the pair of "su-

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

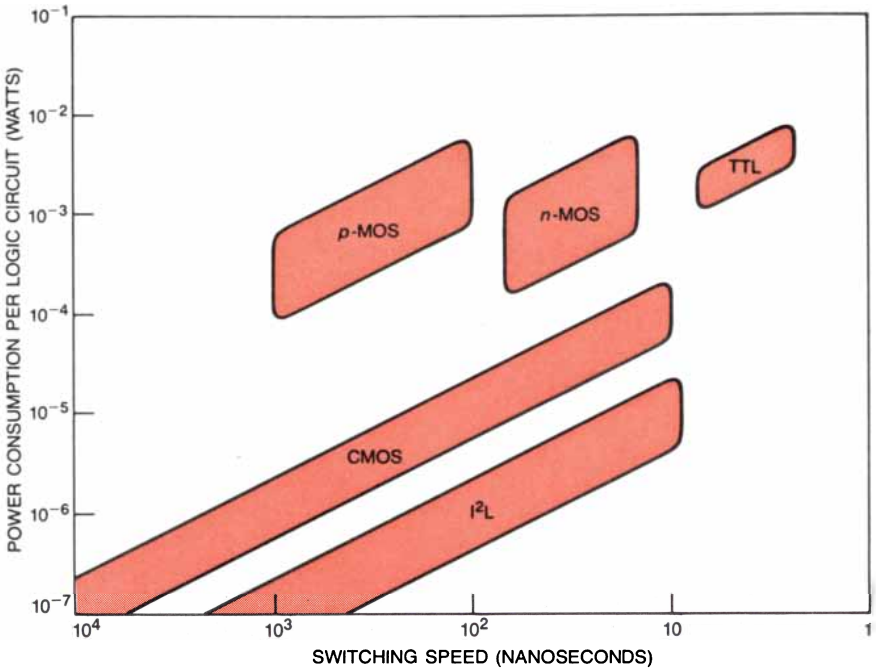
perintegrated" transistors forms a self-contained logic gate.

In speed I^2L gates will probably not catch up with the fastest TTL circuits, although I^2L is already faster than all the MOSFET technologies. On the other hand, the compact architecture of integrated-injection logic makes it a natural candidate for large-scale integration. Packing densities equal to those of *n*-MOS chips are a possibility.

The devices we have considered are in the mainstream of microelectronics development. The techniques learned in making gates for digital logic, however, have also been applied to the development of other kinds of microelectronic device. Circuits that process analogue signals are probably indispensable in devices such as the telephone and radios, and some of them can be made in microelectronic form. A typical low-power amplifier designed for assembly from discrete components has only one transistor but requires four resistors, two of them with large values, and three capacitors with large or very large values. An equivalent microelectronic device employs seven transistors but only one current-controlling resistor. In some cases a more productive way to handle analogue signals may be to convert them into digital form for processing, then convert them back again when necessary. The apparatus for the conversion can itself be fabricated in a microelectronic package.

Semiconductor technology has also provided a selection of transducers through which electronic devices can communicate with their environment. A novel example is a pressure gauge whose working element is a thin diaphragm of semiconducting silicon. The resistance of silicon changes as a response to mechanical strain, and so a change in the pressure across the diaphragm can be detected as a change in the resistance of the material.

A somewhat more familiar transducer is the photodiode and the fundamentally similar phototransistor. When a photon, or quantum of electromagnetic energy, is absorbed by the *p*-type region of a photodiode, the energy given up by the photon creates an electron and a hole. The electron migrates to the junction and crosses it, and the total current of such electrons is proportional to the flux of incident photons. The obverse device is the light-emitting diode, which is constructed so as to exploit collisions between electrons and holes. In each collision an electron fills a hole and both particles are effectively annihilated as charge carriers. Their energy appears in the form of a photon. In silicon, annihilations lead to the emission of infrared radiation but in the semiconducting compound gallium arsenide the light radiated is in the red portion of the visible spectrum. Arrays of gallium arsenide light-emitting diodes make up the numerical displays of many electronic calculators.



HIGH SPEED AND LOW POWER CONSUMPTION in a microelectronic device have a reciprocal relation: the circuit can be made to operate faster simply by applying more power. The product of the switching delay time and power consumption is an important figure of merit for a digital circuit: it represents the energy required for a single switching operation. The fastest logic circuits available today employ bipolar technology, as in the TTL devices, but these circuits also consume large amounts of power. In the MOS technologies *p*-MOS devices are being replaced by *n*-MOS ones because the latter operate faster without consuming more power. Complementary MOS circuits offer even lower power consumption without sacrifice of speed. I^2L technology is attractive because even at its highest speed power consumption is quite low.

One recently invented microelectronic functional element has the distinction that no practical assembly of discrete components could emulate its operation; it is quintessentially microelectronic. Called a charge-coupled device, it can be regarded as an ingenious extension of the enhancement-mode MOS transistor. The charge-coupled device consists of a source and a drain separated by a long row of gates. A packet of charge injected by the source can be trapped under the first gate by a voltage applied to that electrode. If the voltage on the first gate is dropped and a voltage is simultaneously applied to the second one, the charge packet is attracted to and trapped under the second gate. Repeating the process hands the packet of charge down the line of gates one at a time until it reaches the drain.

A memory device in which digits are stored as long strings of bits can be fabricated by building a charge-coupled device with perhaps 1,000 gates. Since the packing density can be very high, many such devices can be fitted onto one chip. Charge packets can also be generated photoelectrically rather than being injected by the source, so that an array of charge-coupled devices can function as the heart of a television camera with digital output.

The time is long past when the designer of a microelectronic device could study the behavior of his proposed circuit by building a "breadboard" prototype from discrete components. Instead the circuit is represented by a mathematical model whose characteristics are investigated with the aid of a computer. The model in turn must be based on an accurate description of the electrical properties of the individual circuit elements. As the elements recede ever further from human scale, verifying those descriptions becomes increasingly difficult. As the dimensions of the elements shrink below one micrometer, physical mechanisms that are inconsequential in larger devices may become important and in some instances even dominant. Thus one requirement for continued progress that must not be neglected is the need for improved models of the circuit elements.

An equally systematic approach will be required in the fabrication of the next generation of integrated circuits. The models must reveal not only how the element works but also how it is to be made. Compared with models of electrical behavior, such process models are in a primitive state; fabrication remains an empirical art. Continued progress in microelectronics may depend to a significant extent on our ability to predict the properties of a transistor from a knowledge of the steps taken in its fabrication.

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

The Large-Scale Integration of Microelectronic Circuits

When thousands of circuit elements are integrated on one chip, the integration is said to be large-scale. Many of these circuits not only are electrical but also follow the rules of Boolean logic

by William C. Holton

In the past 20 years the speed at which calculations can be performed has increased by six orders of magnitude, or roughly a million times. What is more, the cost of computation has fallen dramatically. Minicomputers available today for about $1,000 can nearly equal the capabilities of very large machines that cost as much as $20 million 15 years ago. By 1985 a medium-scale minicomputer may cost less than $100. The resulting increase in our ability to process information amounts to an intellectual revolution.

The need to improve the speed and computing capacity of machines was recognized in the 1940's, but performance was limited by the available electronic technology, which relied on vacuum tubes. Heat generated by the vacuum tubes resulted in their having a relatively short operating life, which placed an upper bound on the size of computers. The first completely electronic computer, ENIAC, was developed at the University of Pennsylvania in 1945; it had 18,000 vacuum tubes. Larger machines were clearly impractical; it would have taken almost 24 hours per day to find and replace the defective tubes.

The computer was saved from this premature end by the invention of the transistor in 1947. The reductions in size and cost that have been achieved in the past 10 years derive from the development of the integrated circuit in the late 1950's. Today the designing of computers and of other electronic devices is being transformed again by large-scale integration, the process whereby tens of thousands of transistors and their interconnections are manufactured simultaneously. Through this technology virtually all the logic elements of a digital computer can be fitted onto a chip of silicon no more than a quarter of an inch on a side.

The transistors of a digital circuit are operated as switches that generally have only two states: on or off, conducting or nonconducting. Similarly, the signals employed within the circuit have only two recognizable voltage levels, called simply high and low. It is because all the states of a digital circuit are confined to these two values that the logic and arithmetic functions of a computer are expressed in terms of the binary numbers, or numbers written to the base 2.

When a decimal number is read from right to left, each digit is understood to be multiplied by a progressively higher power of 10; indeed, the digits are often referred to as the ones, the tens, the hundreds and so forth. Binary numbers employ a similar positional notation except that the multipliers are powers of 2, so that the digits represent ones, twos, fours, eights and so on. Through this counting system any quantity can be represented as a string of 0's and 1's.

Arithmetic in the binary system is in many respects simpler than the corresponding operations with decimal numbers. Addition involves little more than counting, with provisions for carrying a binary digit, or bit, forward to the next higher power of 2. Multiplication is also a straightforward procedure. Since each digit of the multiplier must be either a 0 or a 1, each partial product formed must be equal either to zero or to the multiplicand. Thus the rule for multiplication is simply to write down the multiplicand, shifted one place to the left for each bit in the multiplier that is a 1, and sum those numbers.

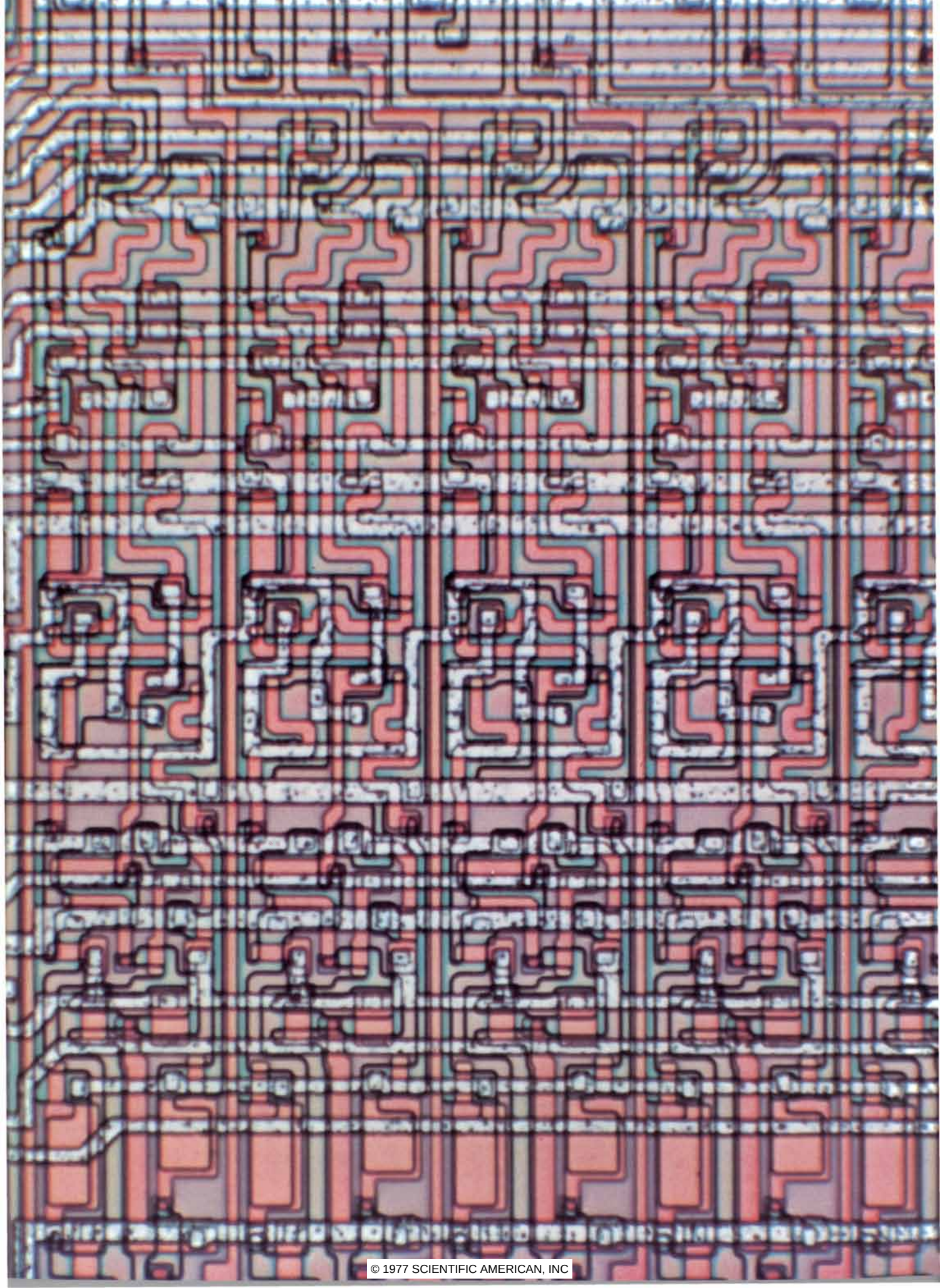
Subtraction can be performed in the usual way, including the borrowing of bits from the next higher column, but it can also be accomplished in another way that is often more conveniently mechanized. By "inverting" all the bits of a binary number, that is, by changing all the 0's to 1's and all the 1's to 0's, a number called the complement is formed, which has some of the characteristics of a negative number. Numbers can therefore be subtracted by converting the subtrahend into its complement form and performing a specified scheme of addition. Finally, division can be done by counting how many times one number can be subtracted from another, with the count being the quotient. An important conclusion that can be drawn from these procedures is that all arithmetic operations on binary numbers can be reduced to addition. It follows that a computer can get along without special circuits for subtraction, multiplication and division provided it has the ability to add.

Perhaps even more important than the convenience of binary arithmetic is the facility with which binary numbers can express propositions in symbolic logic. In 1938 Claude E. Shannon of the Massachusetts Institute of Technology pointed out that switching circuits of a kind that were then built with electromechanical relays could be employed to evaluate logic statements. In other words, the dualities of on or off, high voltage or low, 1 or 0 could be made to stand for the duality of true or false.

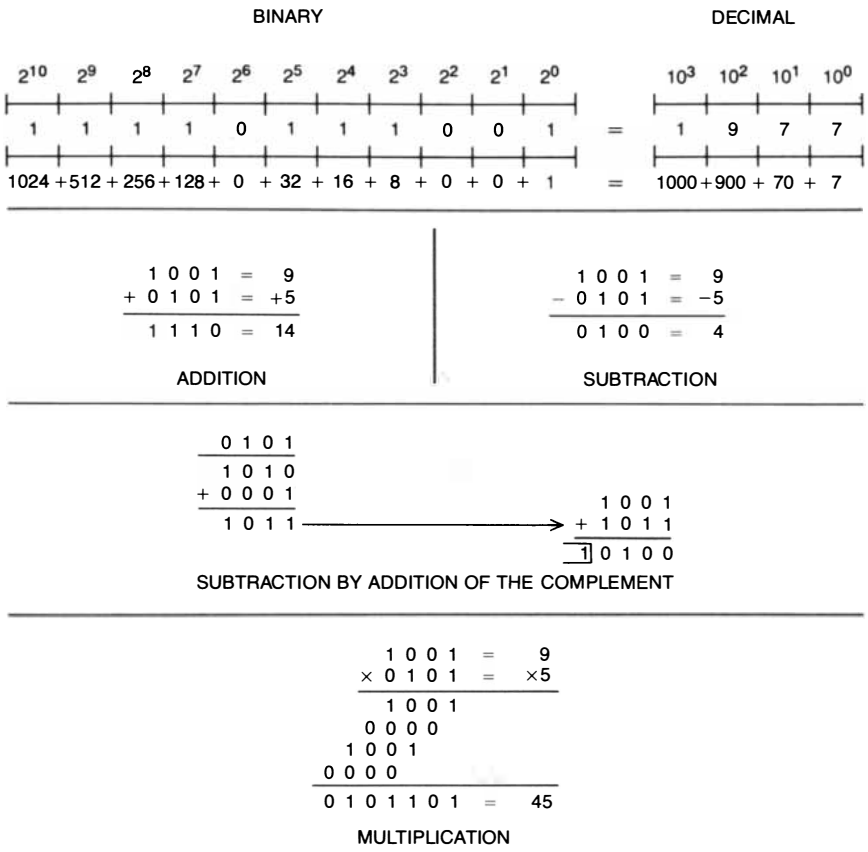
The logic system employed by digital

ELECTRONIC ADDER in the photomicrograph on the opposite page is a small portion of a microprocessor formed entirely in the surface of a single chip of silicon. The microprocessor, an example of large-scale integration, is the TMS 9900, made by Texas Instruments Incorporated. The organization of the adder can be perceived in the repetitive pattern that divides the area shown into four vertical columns. Each column is a circuit, made up of 31 transistors, that operates on one digit, or bit, of the binary numbers to be added. All together there are 16 such columns, so that the microprocessor can add numbers 16 bits wide. The adder is employed in all arithmetic calculations. Green areas on the chip are mainly the source and drain regions of metal-oxide-semiconductor transistors; the gates of the transistors are pink. Mauve color appears in certain areas coated with silicon dioxide, and the silver lines are aluminum conductors.

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC



© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

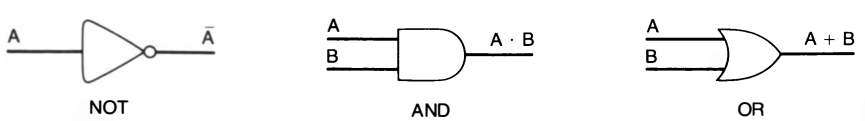


BINARY NUMBERS can represent any quantity as a string of 0's and 1's. Read from right to left, the bits of a binary number are understood to be multiplied by progressively higher powers of 2, just as the digits of a decimal number are multiplied by powers of 10. Binary addition involves little more than counting, with provisions for carrying a bit to the next higher power of 2. Subtraction can be done in the usual way, with borrowing from the next higher power of 2, or it can be done by means of a number called the complement, formed by changing all 0's to 1's and 1's to 0's, then adding 1 to the result. The difference between two numbers is found by adding the complement of the subtrahend to the minuend. Multiplication is much simplified because the digits of the multiplier are always 0 or 1; hence each partial product is equal either to zero or to the multiplicand. The partial products are written down, shifted an appropriate number of places to the left and added. Division, which is not illustrated here, can be done by repetitive subtraction. All these operations consist of procedures that can readily be performed by machine. Moreover, all the arithmetic operations can be reduced to addition.

A	$\bar{A}$
0	1
1	0

A	B	A · B
0	0	0
0	1	0
1	0	0
1	1	1

A	B	A + B
0	0	0
0	1	1
1	0	1
1	1	1



LOGIC FUNCTIONS can also be expressed in terms of binary numbers. The "not" function "inverts" a binary digit, changing 0 to 1 and 1 to 0. The "and" and "or" functions accept two bits as inputs (here designated *A* and *B*) and generate an output bit determined by the values of the inputs. The function *A* "and" *B* (written in symbols $A \cdot B$) is a 1 only if both *A* and *B* are 1's. The "or" function (written $A + B$) generates a 1 output if either *A* or *B* is a 1 or if both inputs are 1's. At the bottom are symbolic representations of "gates" that perform these logic operations.

computers was devised by the British mathematician George Boole almost a century before the first electronic computer was built. The Boolean algebra provides rigorous procedures for deciding whether a statement is true or false provided only that the statement can be expressed in terms of variables that have just two possible values. Here we shall arbitrarily assume that "true" in Boolean logic is represented by a binary 1 or by a high-voltage state.

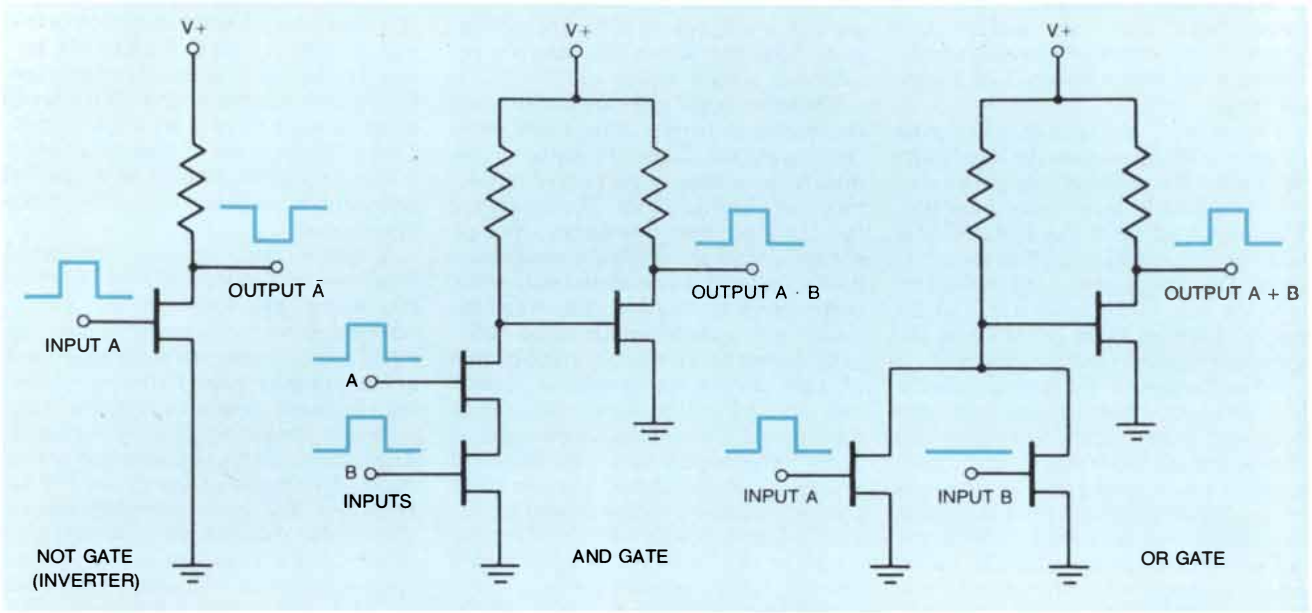
Through Boolean algebra logical analysis can be performed with just three functions, called "not," "and" and "or." The "not" function changes a binary bit to its opposite value: it converts a 0 into a 1 or a 1 into a 0. The "and" and "or" functions determine a single output bit from the values of two or more input bits. The "and" function is true only if all inputs are true. The "or" function, on the other hand, is true if one or more of its inputs are true.

The electronic representations of these functions are called logic gates. The "not" gate accepts a single bit as input and changes its value, or inverts it. If the input is a high voltage, the output is low; when the input changes, so does the output. The "and" gate accepts multiple input signals and produces a high output voltage only when a high voltage is simultaneously applied to all the inputs. The output of an "or" gate is high as long as a high voltage appears at one or more of its inputs.

Logic gates are basic functional units for both arithmetic and logic operations. An exercise that effectively demonstrates how the gates can be combined is the construction of a circuit that adds binary numbers. The circuit must accept as inputs the two bits to be added along with a carry bit, which could be either a 0 or a 1, from the next lower power of 2. It must produce as outputs a sum bit and a carry bit for the next higher power of 2.

The first step in the design of the circuit is the construction of a truth table that gives the desired output for every possible combination of inputs. There are eight combinations of the three binary inputs. The procedure for generating the sum bit consists in finding all the combinations that require a 1 as an output, then arranging gates to yield that output. If all three of the input bits are 0's, then of course the sum bit is also a 0. If exactly one of the input bits is a 1 while the other two are 0's, then a 1 output is required. There are three such combinations—the addend, the augend or the carry bit could be a 1—and circuitry must be provided for each of them. If two of the inputs are 1's and the third is a 0, then the sum bit is a 0, since in binary arithmetic 1 plus 1 equals 10. (The carry bit required will be generated in a separate group of gates.) Finally, all

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC



ELECTRONIC LOGIC GATES evaluate arithmetic and logic expressions in which binary values are represented by voltages. By convention a binary 1 is represented by a high voltage and a 0 by a low voltage. The gates shown here are constructed from metal-oxide-semiconductor transistors. The simplest is the "not" gate, or inverter. When the input to this gate is in the low state, the transistor does not conduct and only a negligible current flows from the supply voltage ($V+$) through the resistor and transistor to ground. As a result there is little voltage drop across the resistor and the output is in effect connected to the supply voltage. When a high signal is applied to the input, the transistor conducts and the comparatively large current flowing through the circuit produces a considerable voltage drop across the resistor. The output voltage is now near ground and is therefore in the low state. The "and" gate has two input transistors connected in series; current flows through them only when both receive a high signal simultaneously. In order to restore the proper polarity of the signal the output of the two series transistors is followed by an inverter. In an "or" gate the input transistors are arranged in parallel, so that a high signal applied to either one of them results in conduction. Again, an inverter is required to change the polarity of the output.

three of the inputs can be 1's, in which case the output is again a 1 (and a carry bit must again be generated). All together, then, four of the eight combinations of inputs require a 1 output: three combinations where exactly one input is in the 1 state and one combination in which all three inputs are 1's.

A circuit for the calculation of the sum bit can be built in segments, each segment representing one of the four "true" combinations of inputs. We can begin with the combination in which both the addend and the augend are 0's but the carry bit from the previous column is a 1. This condition must give rise to a 1 output, and so the addend and the augend are first passed through "not" gates, converting them into 1's, and are then applied to the inputs of an "and" gate. The output of this gate and the carry bit (in noninverted form) serve as inputs to another "and" gate, which gives the proper result.

Two more identical arrangements of gates are required. In one the addend and the carry bit are inverted by "not" gates and then combined with the augend; in the other the augend and the carry bit are inverted and combined with the addend. Finally, a fourth array of gates is needed to produce a true output when all three inputs are true. In this case "not" gates are unnecessary; the addend and the augend are applied to an "and" gate, whose output is combined with the carry bit in a second "and" gate. These four systems of gates will give the correct sum bit for all combinations of input bits. It remains only to tie the outputs of the four groups together with "or" gates so that the entire system of gates has a single output line that always gives the correct sum bit.

The generation of a carry bit for the next higher column is somewhat simpler than the calculation of the sum bit. The truth table for the carry bit indicates the bit should be a 1 whenever at least two of the inputs are 1's. It therefore suffices to combine the inputs in pairs. An "and" gate is provided for the addend and the augend, for the addend and the carry bit (from the next lower order) and for the augend and the carry bit. The outputs of these "and" gates are then combined by an "or" gate. If at least two of the inputs are true, then at least one of the "and" gates will have a true output and a carry bit of 1 will be generated.

When the adder is constructed, it has three input terminals (for the addend, the augend and the input-carry bit), which are applied to all the appropriate gates simultaneously. The two outputs are the sum bit and the carry bit for the next higher order. In this design the complete adder has three "not" gates, 11 "and" gates and five "or" gates. It is a simple matter to cascade such circuits to add binary numbers of more than one bit. The carry-output line of one stage is simply connected to the carry-input terminal of the next stage.

In a computer the symbols of Boolean algebra are reduced to the hardware of transistors and other electronic devices. In a microcomputer this transformation is particularly elegant because the symbolic logic is mapped almost directly onto the surface of a silicon chip.

We shall consider electronic realizations of the logic gates in only one semiconductor technology, that of enhancement mode n-channel metal-oxide-semiconductor (n-MOS) transistors [see "Microelectronic Circuit Elements," by James D. Meindl, page 70]. These transistors employ a positive power-supply voltage, and they conduct when a positive signal is applied to the gate. Only the simplest circuit configuration for each gate will be discussed here. These are not necessarily the best configurations, but the refinements commonly added to real computer circuits do not change any of the basic operating principles.

The three elements of an n-MOS transistor are the source, the gate and the drain. The gate (which should not be confused with a logic gate) controls the current flowing between the source and the drain. When a positive potential of about two volts is applied to the gate, the transistor conducts; when the voltage is reduced to zero, conduction ceas-

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

es. Again these voltages can be labeled simply "high" and "low," and we shall adopt the convention of equating a high-voltage state with a binary 1 or a logical "true."

The simplest of the logic gates is an inverter, which performs the logic function "not." It consists of a single transistor connected in series with a resistor. The supply voltage (a positive potential of about five volts) is applied to the resistor. The input signal is applied directly to the gate of the transistor, and the output is sensed at the point where the transistor and the resistor are joined.

When the input to the inverter is in the low state, the transistor does not conduct, and so no current flows from the supply through the resistor and the transistor to the ground point, or common return of the circuit. As a result there is no voltage drop across the resistor: the output is essentially connected to the supply voltage. When the input is low, the output is high.

If a high signal is now applied to the gate, the transistor conducts. With a large current flowing through the circuit there is a substantial voltage drop across the resistor. The output of the gate is now effectively connected, through the low resistance of the transistor, to the ground; it is therefore in the low-voltage state. This is precisely the behavior required of a "not" gate.

A	B	C	SUM BIT	CARRY BIT
0	0	0	0	0
0	0	1	1	0
0	1	0	1	0
0	1	1	0	1
1	0	0	1	0
1	0	1	0	1
1	1	0	0	1
1	1	1	1	1

TRUTH TABLES for binary addition give the calculated values of the sum bit and the carry bit for all possible values of the input. The inputs are the two bits to be added (*A* and *B*) and the carry bit (*C*) from the next lower power of 2. The rules for addition specify that the sum bit is a 1 if exactly one of the inputs is a 1 or if all three are 1's; otherwise the sum bit is a 0. The carry bit (for the next higher power of 2) is a 1 if at least two of the inputs are 1's.

The other logic gates are constructed on similar principles. For a two-input "and" gate the single transistor of the inverter is replaced by a pair of transistors connected in series. The inputs are the gates of these transistors; because the transistors are in series a conduction path to ground is completed only when both inputs are high. In this form the circuit acts simultaneously as an "and" gate and as an inverter, a combination of logic devices that is called a "nand" gate (for "not-and"). Logic arrays can be constructed from "nand" gates, and in some technologies that is the standard practice, but the circuit can easily be converted into a conventional "and" gate. All that is required is to follow the output of the "nand" gate with a second inverter, which restores the proper polarity to the signal. When both inputs to the gate are high, the output of the "nand" portion of the circuit is low; that forces the output of the inverter—and of the circuit as a whole—into the high-voltage state.

An "or" gate is built in the same way except that the two input transistors are arranged in parallel rather than in series. As a result of this change a conduction path to ground exists if either of the inputs is high. As in the "and" gate, an inverter must be appended to the circuit if a high output is to follow from a high input. Without the inverter the circuit is a "nor" gate (for "not-or").

By simply ganging together logic gates as they have been described, a one-bit binary adder could be built from about 50 transistors and almost as many resistors. Actually an adder need not be that complex. Refinements to the design that allow one transistor to serve more than one function reduce the number of elements to 17 transistors and four resistors, or merely 21 transistors.

Even in its most simplified form the adder circuit is a logic array of considerable complexity. Moreover, it can only add numbers that are one bit wide. Microprocessors commonly work with binary numbers from eight to 16 bits wide; for a complete adder the circuit would have to be replicated a corresponding number of times.

The logical and arithmetic manipulation of binary numbers is not the only function of the basic gate circuits. Another essential function in computers is the storage of information. This can be accomplished by combining gates into circuits that are variously called flip-flops, latches, registers and memory cells, the name applied in a particular instance being determined in large part by the purpose the circuit is being made to serve.

A pulse of voltage applied to the input of a logic gate passes through it in a few tens of nanoseconds (billionths of a second) and leaves no record of its passage. For reliable operation a complex array of gates must have a sense of history. That is the function of a latch: a circuit that maintains the state of its output indefinitely in response to a momentary input signal.

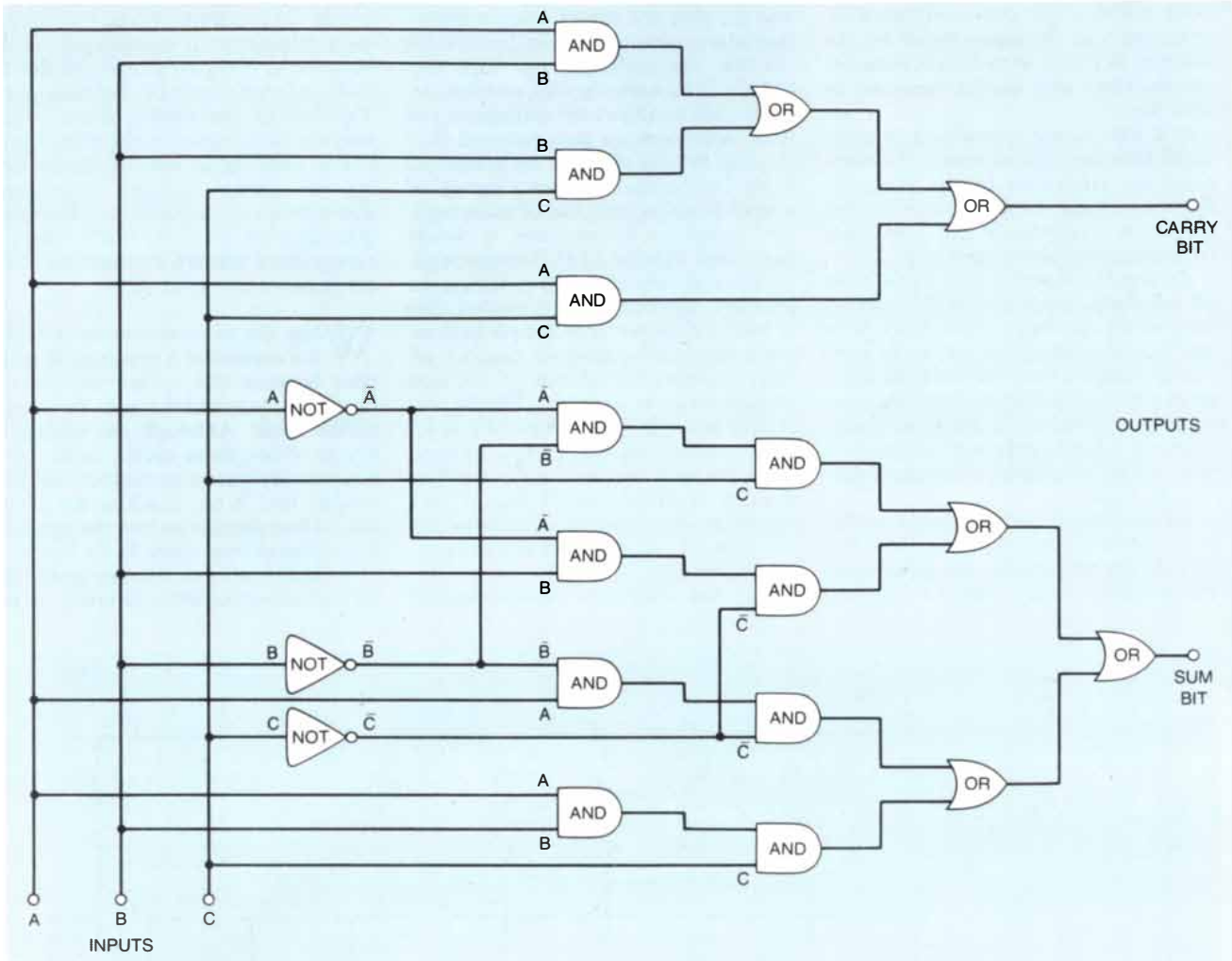
A simple latch can be constructed from two "or" gates and two inverters. One of the inputs to each "or" gate is reserved as an input to the circuit; the other inputs receive the inverted output of the opposite gate. Referring the inverted output signals back to the input terminals constitutes positive feedback, which stabilizes the circuit in one of two states. The inputs to the circuit are labeled "set" and "reset." The output is a 0 if the pulse received most recently was applied to the reset line; it is a 1 if the most recent pulse was sensed on the set line. This circuit, which is often called a flip-flop because of the manner in which it changes state, can be fabricated with as few as two transistors.

A somewhat more versatile device called a register latch can be made by preceding the inputs to a flip-flop with a simple circuit consisting of two "and" gates and an inverter. Of the two inputs to this circuit one is reserved for a control signal and the other receives data. As long as the control signal is low, data pulses are blocked and have no effect on the state of the output. When the control line is high, the output changes to reflect the momentary status of the data and retains that state even after the control pulse is removed. A single latch can store one bit of information, and so a complete register requires one latch for each bit that is to be stored.

In microprocessors registers are employed for the temporary storage of data, of partial results, of instructions and of the addresses where other data or instructions are to be found. A special register designed to count continuously from zero to its maximum capacity is universally employed to step through a sequence of instructions.

A number of other logic devices are required for a functioning computer. For example, a comparator determines whether two binary numbers are equal or unequal. The individual bits of the numbers to be compared are applied to the inputs of "and" gates, and the outputs of those gates are combined in such a way that a single high bit is produced only if all the bits are identical. A decoder accepts a binary number as an input and activates one output or in some cases more than one output depending on the value of the number. A decoder that accepts a three-bit number could select one of eight lines, since there are eight binary numbers of three bits each (ranging from 000 to 111).

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC



BINARY ADDER provides an array of logic gates for each combination of input bits (*A, B* and *C*) that requires an output. The four rows of gates at the bottom calculate the sum bit; the three rows at the top calculate the carry bit for the next higher power of 2. As an example, suppose both of the bits to be added (*A* and *B*) are 0's but the carry bit (*C*) from the preceding column is a 1; the truth table on the opposite page indicates that this combination of inputs must yield a sum bit of 1 and a carry bit of 0. The sum bit is generated in the fourth row from the bottom, where *A* and *B* are applied to an "and" gate in inverted form, so that both appear as binary 1's. The output of this gate, which is a 1, is combined with the carry bit in a second "and" gate, and the 1 output is passed through a series of "or" gates to the output of the adder. None of the gates for the calculation of the carry bit responds to this combination of inputs, and so the carry bit is a 0; if two or more of the inputs were 1's, then a carry bit of 1 would be issued. A binary adder requires a logic array like this one for each bit of the numbers to be added, with the carry-output line of each stage connected to the carry-input line of the next stage.

Any function that can be stated in terms of binary variables can be represented by an array of logic gates. We have seen how a circuit for addition can be constructed using about a dozen gates for each bit of the numbers to be added. By applying the same principles much more elaborate operations could be performed. For example, we might design a logic array that would square a number, then multiply the square by a coefficient, then add to that result the product of the original number and another coefficient and finally add a constant to the grand total. Such a circuit would evaluate quadratic expressions. It would be a complicated and expensive device, however, incorporating at least three multipliers (each in itself a complex circuit) along with adders, registers and other components. What is more, it could handle only quadratic expressions; to deal with cubic equations, another even more cumbersome circuit would be needed. If a computer were required to have a separate array of logic gates for every function it could perform, a machine of any versatility would be prohibitively large and costly.

Real computers make do with relatively few logic elements by effectively changing the interconnections between the devices and thereby creating at will any needed logic array. A calculation may call for several additions, for example, but the computer requires only one adder circuit, which is supplied in turn with each new set of operands. In order to operate a logic array in this flexible manner a more elaborate system of timing and control circuits is needed. Something else is required as well, something that is not present at all in the logic circuits we have considered so far: a program, or set of commands for changing the configuration of the logic array.

The concept of a stored program was introduced in 1833 by Charles Babbage as a feature of a "calculating engine" he proposed to build. His machine, which would have employed mechanical counting gears to do decimal arithmetic, would have incorporated a number of principles that are basic to the design of electronic computers. Although the idea was sound, the calculating engine was never built. The modern form of the stored program was introduced by John von Neumann, who added a significant refinement. He specified that both the data to be processed and the instructions for processing them be written in the

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

same notation. By this contrivance instructions can be manipulated by the machine as if they were data. A program can therefore alter another program or even itself.

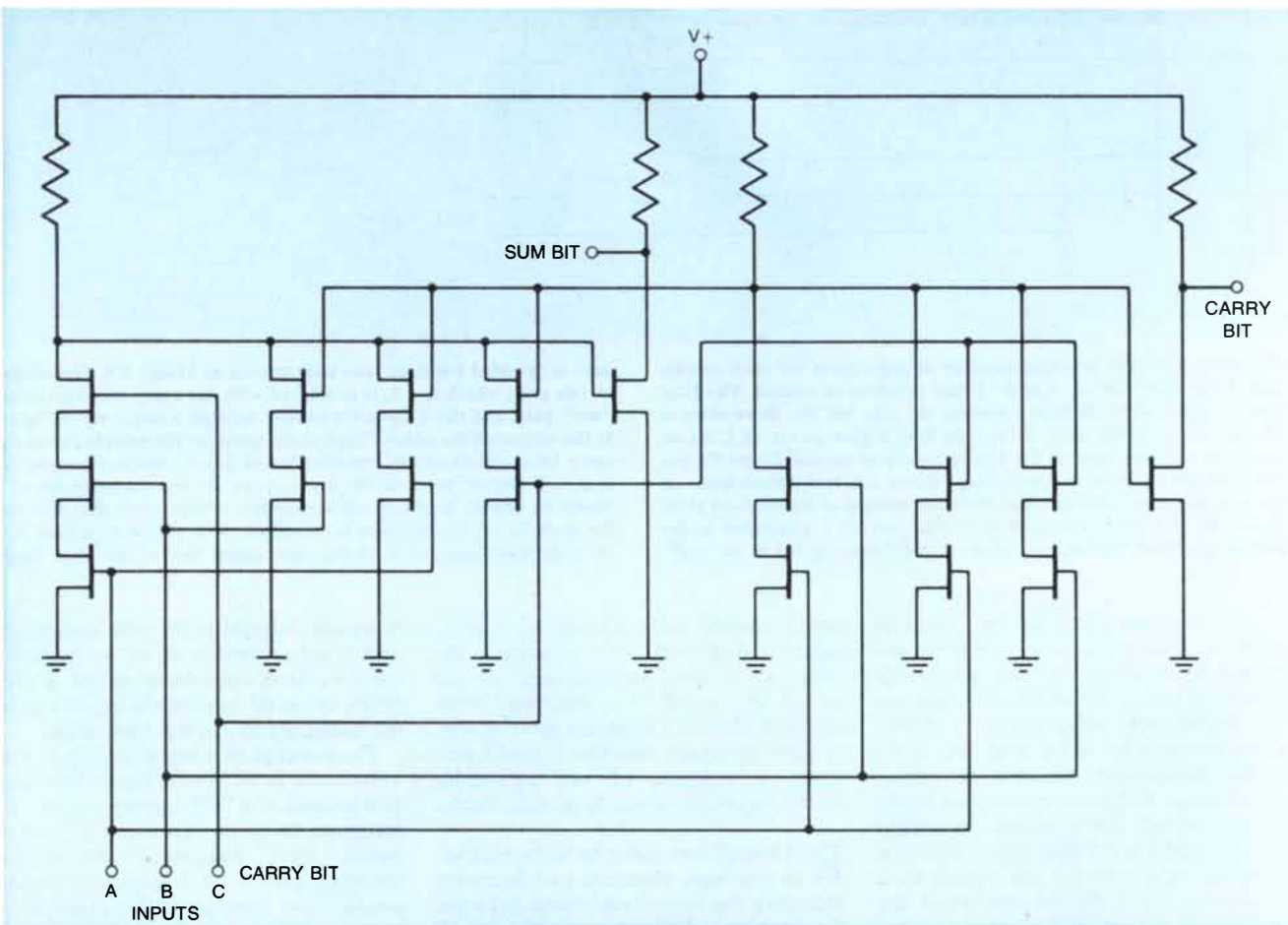
It is worthwhile considering in some detail how the logic elements of a computer are controlled by the program. For this purpose we shall invent a hypothetical microprocessor and a program for adding two binary numbers.

An organizational principle of almost all microprocessors is that the various parts of the machine communicate with one another through a system of conductors called a bus. The bus is simply a set of parallel conducting paths connecting various areas of the microprocessor chip and extending through connecting pins to a set of parallel conductors outside the chip.

All the logic devices that make up the computer are connected to the bus, but they do not all operate simultaneously. The memory, where both the program and the data are stored, communicates this information to the machine through the bus. The arithmetic and logic unit (ALU), as its name implies, contains devices such as adders for arithmetic and logic operations on data received over the bus. Several registers are connected to the bus for the temporary storage of operands and results; one of these registers, called the accumulator, is closely associated with the ALU. Another register is commonly dedicated to storing the memory addresses where needed data or instructions are to be found. Still another register, the program counter, always contains the address of the next instruction to be executed. Finally, decoding and controlling circuitry is attached to the bus, but it can also communicate with elements of the machine through separate control lines. Clock signals are provided to all parts of the machine over conduction paths independent of the bus.

The bus simplifies communication within the computer. Instead of installing a private line from each part of the machine to every other part, all the devices share one or more common buses. The cost of this simplification is that only one device can use any given bus at a time. Once again, more elaborate timing and control circuitry is required. The control is exercised by effectively disconnecting from the bus all devices except those that are transmitting or receiving data at a given time.

When the microprocessor is under the control of a program, it oscillates between two cycles: the instruction-fetch cycle and the instruction-execution cycle. Although the timing of events within these cycles varies from one microprocessor to another, we shall assume that in our machine the cycles are further divided so that the machine has a total of four states. In the first state an address is sent to memory and in the second an instruction is returned. In the



ADDER CIRCUIT is the functional equivalent of the logic array on the preceding page, but its structure is simplified by allowing some circuit elements to serve more than one function. The carry bit is generated in a straightforward manner by the seven transistors at the right. If any two of the inputs are in the high-voltage state, then one of the three pairs of transistors wired in series will conduct; if at least one of those pairs is conducting, then the common output of the three pairs is forced to the low-voltage state. This low signal is inverted by the transistor at the extreme right to produce a high, or binary 1, carry bit. The intermediate result of the carry-bit calculation is also employed in calculating the sum bit. In the array of seven transistors just to the left of center each of the inputs is combined with the inverted form of the carry bit, and the common output of these gates is also followed by an inverter. The result of this operation is that the sum bit is a 1 if one of the input bits is a 1 and the carry bit is a 0; examination of the truth tables for addition shows that this procedure always gives the correct sum. Finally, the three transistors wired in series at the extreme left generate a 1 output (through an inverter) if all three inputs are 1's. The circuit employs 17 transistors and four resistors, but in an integrated circuit the resistors could be replaced by transistors.

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

third state another address is sent to memory; in the fourth state an operand is returned from memory and processed in accordance with the instruction that has been received.

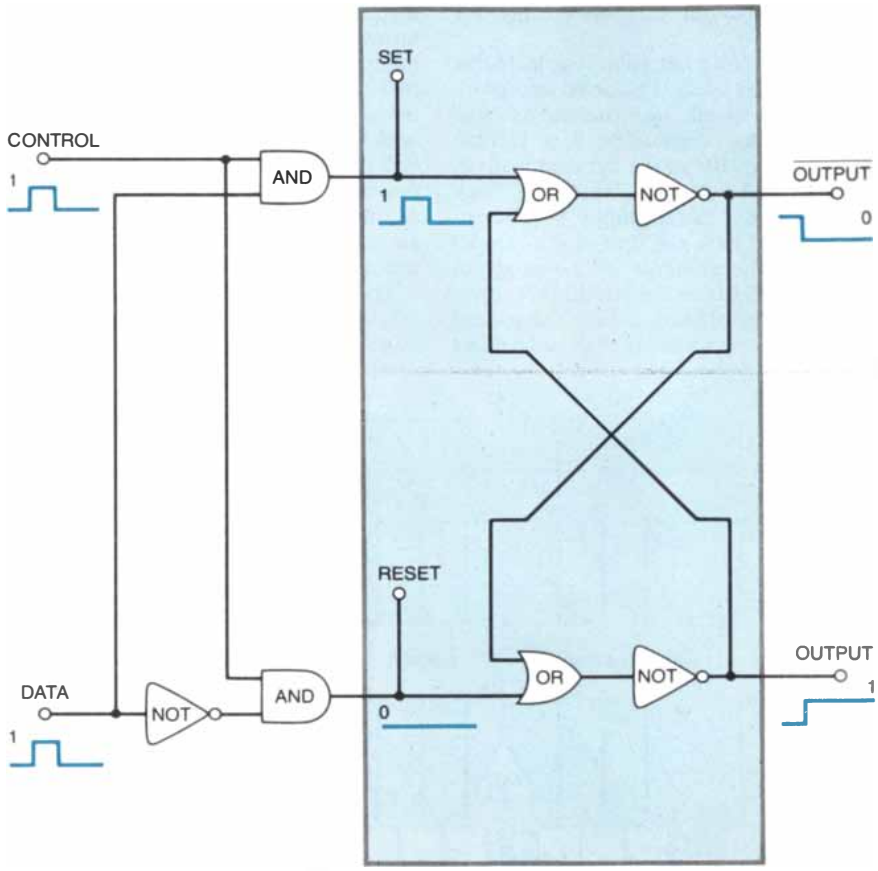
We shall assume that the program is properly stored in memory beginning at location 0 and that the program counter has been reset to 0. When the machine is started, it immediately enters the first state: the contents of the program counter are put on the bus and are interpreted as an address in memory. This start-up procedure is possible because the clock, which defines the four states, controls a system of gates that allows only the program counter to transmit signals to the bus during the first state. Only the memory system is able to receive signals from the bus during this period.

The address issued by the program counter is 0 since the counter was assumed to have been reset to that value. This binary number must be decoded by gates that form part of the memory system, so that a signal is applied to the memory cells with the address 0. The number of bits in the address determines the maximum number of memory locations. An eight-bit address can select only from among 256 locations, since there are only 256 binary numbers of eight bits each. A 16-bit address gives access to 65,536 locations. (Additional memory can be addressed if extra control signals are provided.)

The signal provided by the address-decoding circuitry to location 0 is a "read" signal; as a response to it the contents of that memory location are latched onto the memory output lines. When the machine leaves the first state and enters the second, the program counter and the address decoder are disconnected from the bus. At the same time the output of the memory is connected to it, again through gates controlled by the system clock. The contents of memory location 0 therefore appear on the bus during the second clock period. It will be remembered that the signals on the bus during this period are to be interpreted as an instruction, and so the clock must also activate the instruction-decoding and control circuitry. In the control unit the instruction is temporarily stored in a latch.

This entire sequence of events has served merely to fetch one instruction from memory and load it into the instruction register. What happens in the remainder of the machine cycle is now determined by the contents of that register. The decoding of the instruction is a crucial step in the operation of the machine. As in the decoding of memory addresses, the number of bits determines the maximum number of instructions, but that is rarely a serious limitation: few microprocessors have a repertory of more than 100 instructions.

The decoding of the instruction can be done in several ways. One method employs a "hard-wired" decoder, in which an array of gates selects a unique combination of active output lines for each possible combination of bits in the operation code. These outputs are the control lines that connect and disconnect various devices from the bus and that perform other functions as well, such as incrementing counters and initiating computations in the ALU. Instructions can also be decoded by applying them to a read-only memory, where a fixed pattern of bits is permanently stored when the processor is manufactured. Each of the operation codes is then interpreted as an address in the read-only memory; the output of the memory is latched and applied to the control lines.



LATCH, OR "FLIP-FLOP," CIRCUIT maintains a record of momentary signals. In its simplest form (*colored box*) the circuit has inputs designated "set" and "reset." With the reset input low a brief high pulse applied to the set input forces the output to the high-voltage state, which is then maintained indefinitely by feedback from the output. With the set line low a high pulse at the reset terminal resets the output to zero. A second output terminal provides an inverted signal. This circuit can be preceded by a system of gates to make a controlled register latch. One of the inputs is now designated "control," and no signals can reach the flip-flop unless the control signal is high. In the presence of a high control signal, data can be applied to the remaining input. All high data pulses are steered to the set input and all low data pulses go to the reset input, so that the output always reflects the state of the most recent data signal.

We shall assume that the instruction fetched from memory location 0 is a binary number that has been assigned the meaning "Fetch the next word in memory and load it into the accumulator." This instruction might be executed in the following way. The instruction decoder (whatever its mechanism) could be constructed in such a way that the pattern of bits representing this instruction would activate five control lines. One of these control lines increments the program counter, so that it contains the address of the next location: 1. The other four enable the program counter, the accumulator, the address decoder and the memory output lines to be connected to the bus. Not all those devices, however, are connected at the same time, even though they all receive control signals simultaneously. When the clock enters its third period, marking the beginning of the instruction-execution cycle, the machine enters a state that is reserved for sending an address to memory. Hence only the source of the address (in this case the program counter) and the destination (the address decoder) are activated during this period by both a clock signal and a control signal.

In the fourth clock state the program counter and the address decoder are isolated from the bus, and the memory outputs and the accumulator are connected to it. As a result the number stored at

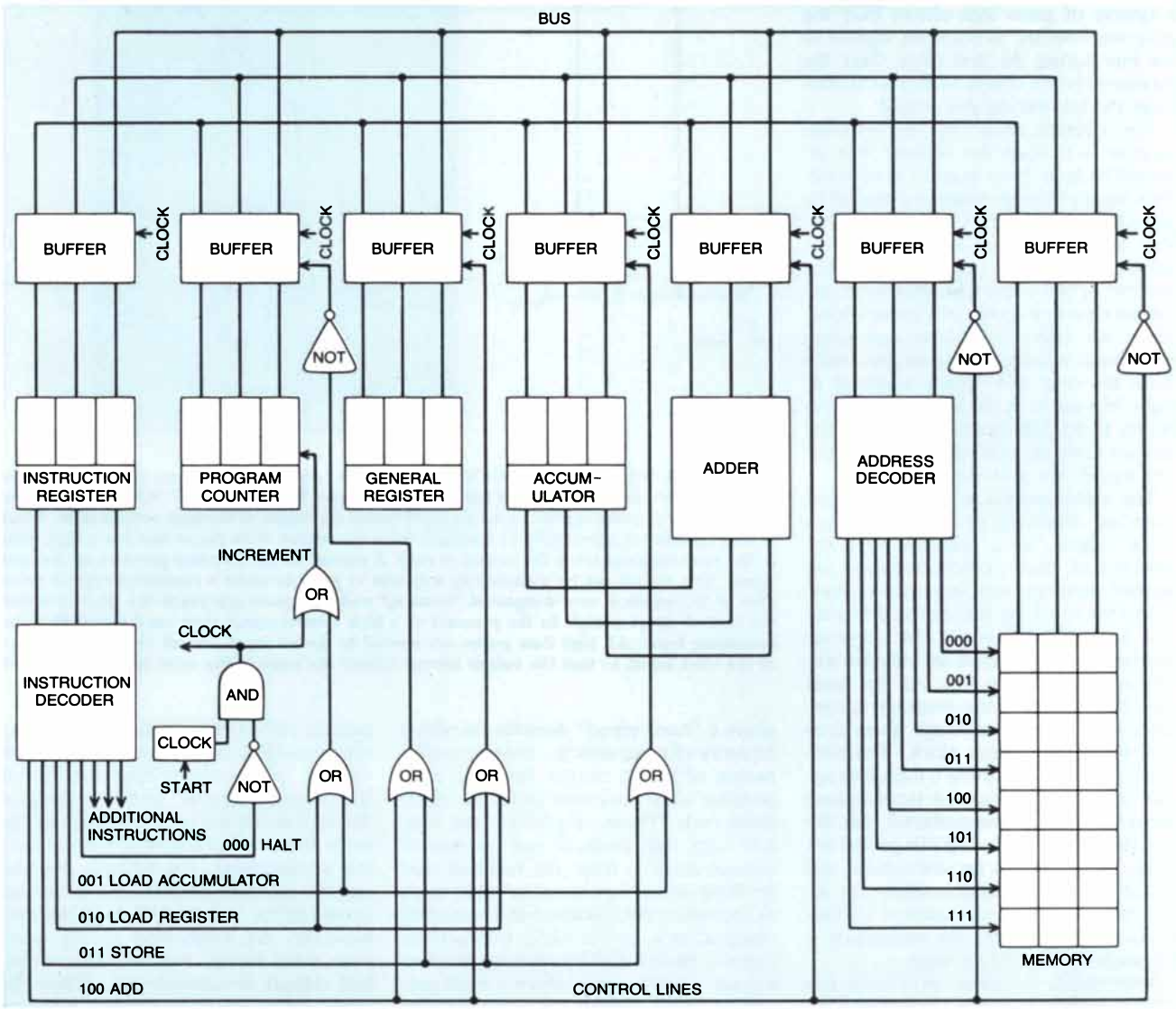
© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

memory location 1 is loaded into the accumulator.

The computer has now completed one full machine cycle. The program counter is automatically incremented again so that it contains the number 2, or in binary notation 010, where the next instruction is to be found. When the clock "ticks" again, the computer is returned to its initial state and the cycle is repeated. First the contents of the program counter are put on the bus and are interpreted as an address, then in the second clock state the contents of the addressed memory location are interpreted as an instruction. That second instruction might call for the contents of one of the registers to be issued as an address in memory during the third clock state, with the data returned being loaded into still another register during the fourth period. The second machine cycle would then be complete and the program counter would be incremented again (to 3, or binary 011).

The instruction fetched during the first part of the next machine cycle might call for adding the contents of a register to the contents of the accumulator. In this case there is no need to fetch an operand from memory during the third clock period and so that state could be ignored or perhaps deleted from the schedule. In order to execute the instruction the control circuitry must activate the adder in the ALU and arrange for the operands to be supplied by the correct registers. Results of operations within the ALU are ordinarily retained in the accumulator.

Subsequent instructions might call for comparing the sum formed by this oper-



HYPOTHETICAL COMPUTER is an array of electronic logic elements whose interconnections can be altered by instructions stored in the computer itself. Instructions, operands and the "addresses" that designate locations in the computer memory are all expressed as binary numbers. In this machine the binary numbers are just three bits wide; since there are only eight possible combinations of three bits, operands can have only eight values, the machine can have only eight memory locations and it is limited to a repertory of eight instructions. The major pathway for communication in the machine is the "bus," a set of parallel conductors with connections to almost all the devices. These devices include four registers: the program counter, which ordinarily contains the address of the next instruction; the instruction register, where the binary code for each operation is retained; a general register for the temporary storage of operands or addresses, and the accumulator, a register with connections both to the bus and to the arithmetic and logic unit (ALU) of the computer. In this case the ALU is merely an adder, but in real machines it is capable of several operations. Data are written into the memory or read from it at a location specified by the address decoder. The decoder is an array of logic gates that activates one of eight address lines in response to a three-bit binary number. Instructions are decoded in the same way. Each of these devices is isolated from the bus by a "buffer," which connects the device to the bus only on receipt of a control signal from the instruction decoder along with a simultaneous signal from the system clock, which issues a continuous train of pulses to all parts of the machine. Information appearing on the bus could represent an operand, an instruction or an address; how it is interpreted depends on the state of the timing and control signals. The capabilities of a computer this small are trivial, but it reflects principles of organization common in real machines, including microprocessors.

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

ation with a value stored in memory. If the two numbers were different, no action would be taken, and the machine would proceed to the next instruction in the sequence. If the numbers were identical, however, a signal would be issued resetting the program counter to some preselected value. Execution of the program would then resume at this new memory location. Operations of this kind are called conditional branch instructions, since they enable the machine to choose one of two paths through a program depending on the results of a calculation. Other operation codes could instruct the machine to read data from "peripheral," or external, devices, or to provide data as output to those devices. Ultimately the machine must come to a "halt" instruction, which stops all operations.

The machine described above is not equivalent to any particular microcomputer, but it incorporates features common to many of them (and to many large computers as well). The alternate fetching and execution of instructions, for example, is an almost universal mode of operation. A more fundamental feature is the use of the same language—the binary numbers—for all signals in the system. A pattern of bits appearing on the bus of our microprocessor can represent an address in memory, an instruction or an operand. How the pattern is interpreted depends on the state of the machine and thus depends critically on the timing and control signals, which are in turn determined by the instruction codes.

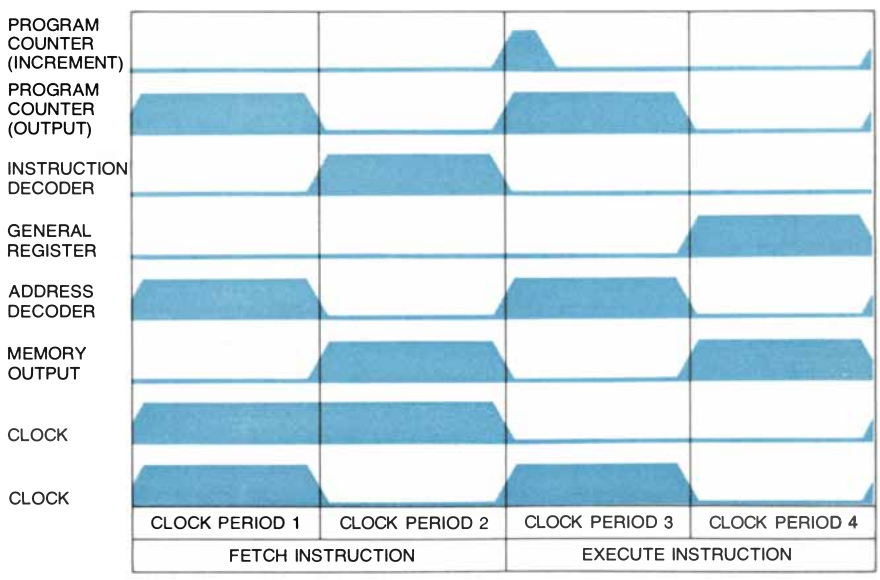
Large-scale integration has transformed the computer from a machine that must be built from many components into a component that can be incorporated into larger systems. A number of microprocessors now on the market include on a single chip all the circuitry we have discussed with the exception of random-access memory and in most cases the clock [see "Microprocessors," by Hoo-Min D. Toong, page 146]. A few single-chip devices even include a limited amount of memory.

The first generation of commercially produced microelectronic devices are now referred to as small-scale integrated circuits. They included only a few gates. Even where multiple gates were included in one package they were not always connected internally; the circuitry defining a logic array had to be provided by external conductors.

Devices with more than about 10 gates on a chip but fewer than about 200 are medium-scale integrated circuits. Many of these chips contain complete functional blocks of a computer. For example, chips are available that contain complete registers, decoders, comparators or counters. Perhaps the upper boundary of medium-scale integrated-circuit technology is marked by chips

MACHINE CYCLE	CLOCK PERIOD	PROGRAM COUNTER	INFORMATION ON THE BUS		MEANING OF INSTRUCTIONS
1 FETCH	1	000	CONTENTS OF PROGRAM COUNTER	000	
	2	000	INSTRUCTION "LOAD REGISTER"	010	LOAD CONTENTS OF NEXT MEMORY LOCATION INTO GENERAL REGISTER
EXECUTE	3	001	CONTENTS OF PROGRAM COUNTER	001	
	4	001	DATA	111	
2 FETCH	1	010	CONTENTS OF PROGRAM COUNTER	010	
	2	010	INSTRUCTION "LOAD ACCUMULATOR"	001	LOAD CONTENTS OF NEXT MEMORY LOCATION INTO ACCUMULATOR
EXECUTE	3	011	CONTENTS OF PROGRAM COUNTER	011	
	4	011	DATA	001	
3 FETCH	1	100	CONTENTS OF PROGRAM COUNTER	100	ADD CONTENTS OF GENERAL REGISTER TO CONTENTS OF ACCUMULATOR AND RETAIN THE RESULT IN THE ACCUMULATOR
	2	100	INSTRUCTION "ADD"	100	
EXECUTE	3	100	(IDLE)	—	
	4	100	CONTENTS OF GENERAL REGISTER	111	
4 FETCH	1	101	CONTENTS OF PROGRAM COUNTER	101	STORE THE CONTENTS OF THE ACCUMULATOR IN MEMORY AT AN ADDRESS SPECIFIED BY THE CONTENTS OF THE GENERAL REGISTER
	2	101	INSTRUCTION "STORE"	011	
EXECUTE	3	101	CONTENTS OF GENERAL REGISTER	111	
	4	101	CONTENTS OF ACCUMULATOR	000	
5 FETCH	1	110	CONTENTS OF PROGRAM COUNTER	110	
	2	110	INSTRUCTION "HALT"	000	
EXECUTE	3	110	—	—	
	4	110	—	—	STOP ALL OPERATIONS

PROGRAM for the three-bit computer calls for the addition of two numbers. The system clock divides each machine cycle into four periods; the first two periods are devoted to fetching an instruction, the last two to executing it. In the first clock period the contents of the program counter (initially 000) are put on the bus and interpreted as an address in memory; in the second period the contents of the designated memory location are latched into the instruction register. Events in the third and fourth periods depend on the operation specified by the instruction. In the first machine cycle the operation code is 010, which has been assigned the meaning "Fetch the contents of the next location in memory and load this number into the general register." In response to this pattern the instruction decoder activates a control line that increments the program counter, so that the counter points to the next item in memory, and enables the general register to receive the stored value. In the second machine cycle another operand is loaded into the accumulator, then in the third cycle the number in the register is added to the one in the accumulator. The numbers added are 111 and 001, and since the machine has no provisions for overflow the result is 000. In the fourth machine cycle the value in the general register, which was initially an operand, is treated as an address, where the result of the addition is stored.

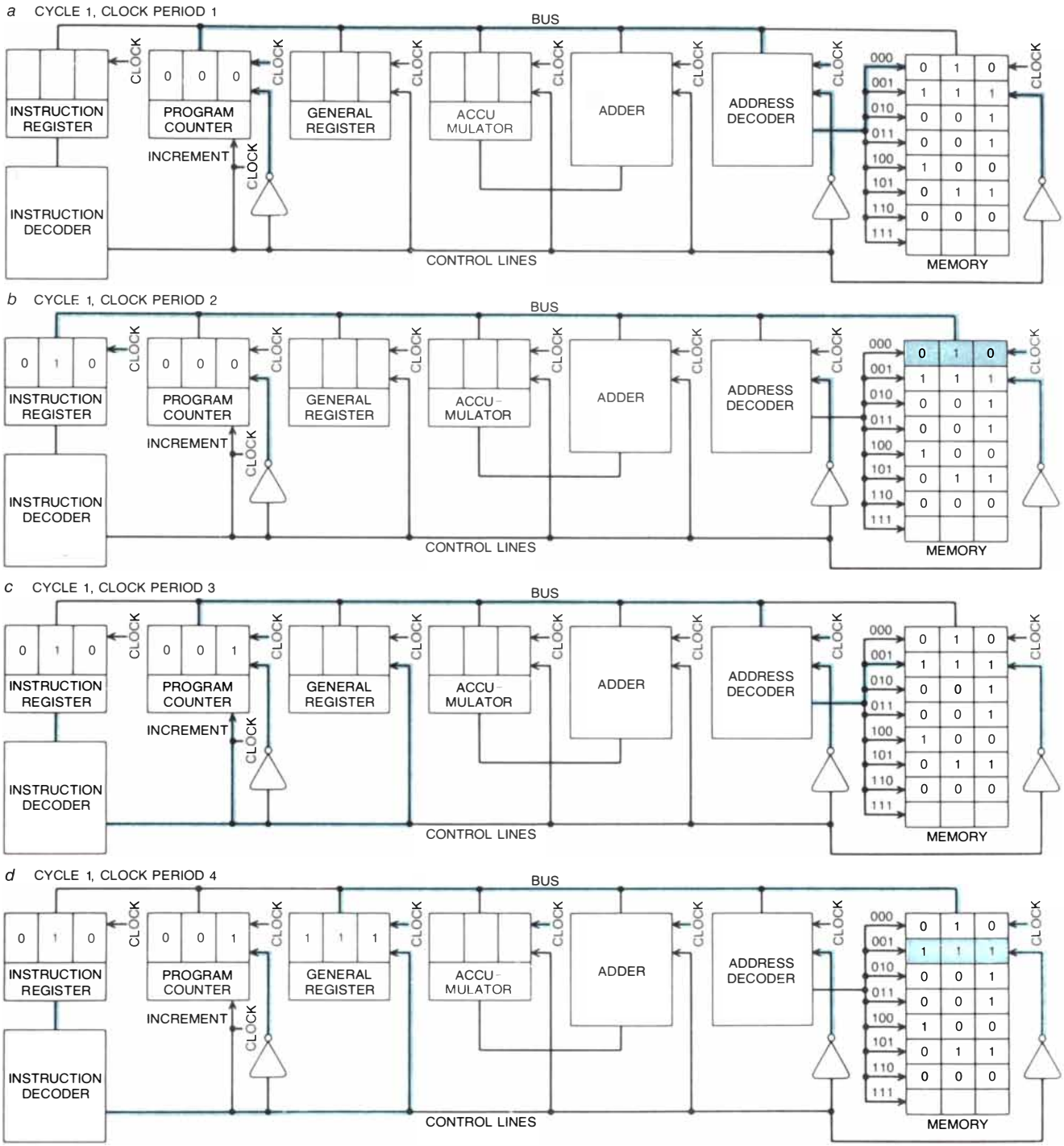


TIMING DIAGRAM gives the sequence of events during the first machine cycle in the execution of the program at the top of the page. Two clock signals divide the machine cycle into four clock periods. In the first period only the program counter and the address decoder are connected to the bus, and in the second period only the memory output and the instruction decoder are connected. In the third and fourth periods the machine is under the control of both the clock and the instruction decoder. Together they increment the program counter, then connect both it and address decoder to bus. In fourth period the memory output and the general register are active. Finally, as the clock returns to the first state, the program counter is incremented again.

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

that contain a complete arithmetic and logic unit. This unit accepts as inputs two operands and can perform any one of a dozen or so operations on them depending on the state of several control lines. The operations include addition, subtraction, comparison, logical "and" and "or" and shifting one bit to the left or right.

The greatest variety of medium-scale integrated circuits is available in the bipolar semiconductor technology called TTL, for transistor-transistor logic. Even with the development of large-scale integration, TTL devices have retained their utility. Many microprocessors are designed so that their signal voltages and power-supply requirements are compatible with those of TTL circuits. Hence TTL devices can be employed as auxiliary components in a mi-

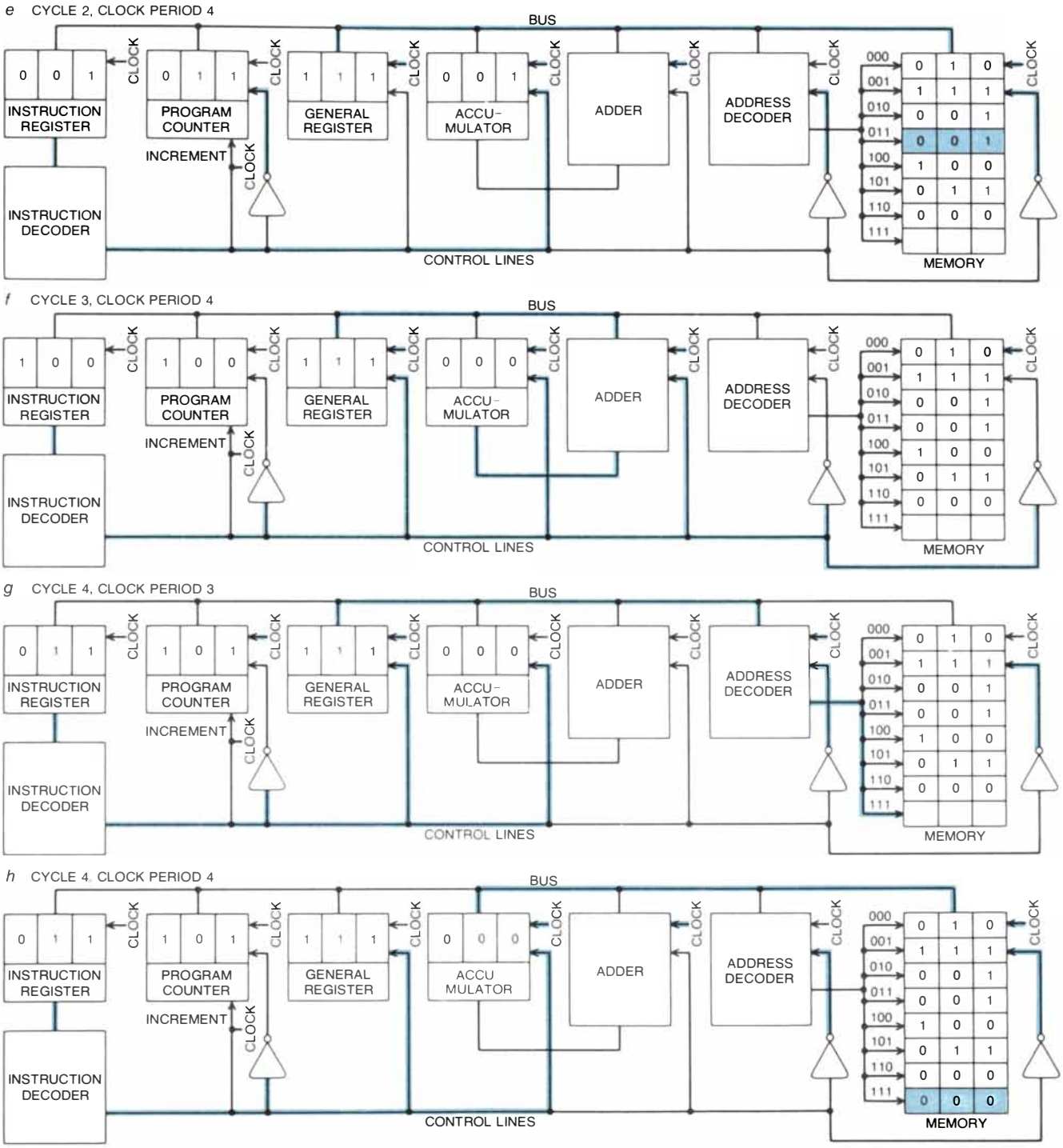


EXECUTION OF A PROGRAM by the three-bit computer is traced in a sequence of simplified diagrams. Initially the program is stored in the first seven memory locations and the program counter is set to 000. During the first two clock periods no instruction has yet been decoded and so the machine must operate entirely under the control of the system clock. This mode of operation is made possible by inverters in the control lines to the program counter, the address decoder and the memory output, which ensure that these devices can be activated by the clock in the absence of a control signal. In the first clock period (*a*) the program counter and the address decoder are connected to the bus, with the ultimate result that location 000 in memory is designated for reading. The contents of this location are latched into the instruction register during the second period (*b*). It is not until the third clock period that control signals from the instruction decoder become available. The control line that is energized immediately increments the program counter and provides a signal enabling the general register to be connected to the bus; in addition this control line fails to disconnect the program counter, the address de-

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

crocomputer system for the control of memory or of input and output terminals and for other functions such as generating timing signals.

For the most part large-scale integrated circuits have been fabricated not with the bipolar transistors of TTL but with metal-oxide-semiconductor transistors, which can be made smaller and packed closer together. The change in scale can be measured crudely by counting the number of transistors that can be fitted onto a chip. Small-scale integrated circuits have on the order of 10 transistors per chip; medium-scale circuits have on the order of 100. Recent microprocessors made through large-scale integration have between 10,000 and 20,000 transistors. In the orderly geometric array of elements in semiconductor memory chips the number of transis-



coder and the memory output. Not all these devices are activated simultaneously, however. Since the third clock period (*c*) is reserved for sending the address of an operand to memory, the clock activates only the program counter and the address decoder during this period. In the fourth period (*d*) the program counter and the address decoder are turned off by the clock, and the memory output and the general register are activated. The instruction decoded during the second machine cycle (*e*) calls for loading another value from memory into the accumulator. Addition is performed during the third cycle (*f*). Since this operation requires no memory access, signals are issued by the instruction decoder that disable the address decoder and the memory output; the program counter is also disabled. At the same time the general register, the accumulator and the adder are activated. In the third clock period of the fourth cycle (*g*) the contents of the general register are put on the bus, and since the only other active device is the address decoder this value is interpreted as an address in memory. The contents of the accumulator, where the result of the addition was retained, are stored at this location during the fourth period (*h*).

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

tors is now approaching 100,000 [see "Microelectronic Memories," by David A. Hodges, page 130].

Three factors have contributed to the rapid growth in the number of circuit elements per chip. One factor is improvement in techniques for growing large single crystals of pure silicon. By increasing the diameter of the wafers—the disks of silicon on which chips are manufactured—more chips can be made at one time, reducing the unit cost. Moreover, the quality of the material has also been improved, reducing the number of defects per wafer. This has the effect of increasing the maximum practical size of a chip because it reduces the probability that a defect will be found within a given area. The chip size for large-scale integrated circuits has grown from less than 10,000 square mils (thousandths of an inch) to 70,000.

A second factor is improvement in optical lithography, the process whereby all the patterns that make up a circuit are ultimately transferred to the surface of the silicon. By developing optical systems capable of resolving finer structures, the size of a typical transistor, as measured by the gate length, has been reduced from a few thousandths of an inch in 1965 to two ten-thousandths of an inch today. Finally, refinements in circuit structure that make more efficient use of silicon area have led to a hundredfold increase in the density of transistors on the chip.

Continued evolution of the microcomputer will demand further increases in packing density. As the limit of optical resolution is now being reached, new lithographic and fabrication techniques will be required. Circuit patterns will have to be formed with radiation having wavelengths shorter than those of light, and fabrication techniques capable of greater definition will be needed.

The present scale of microelectronic structures requires an edge acuity of 2,500 angstroms, which is roughly the wavelength of the ultraviolet radiation employed in making the circuits. To form sharp images of still smaller structures, patterning by means of a steered electron beam can be employed. The highest potential resolution is offered by X-ray lithographic systems, which have an effective wavelength of about 10 angstroms.

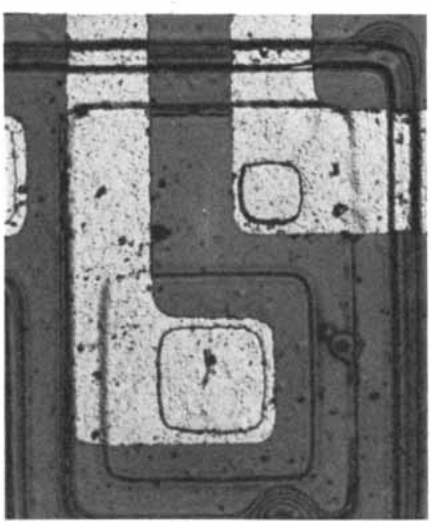
Electron-beam and X-ray patterning could conceivably reduce the linear dimensions of a transistor by another factor of 50. The area occupied by the transistor would therefore be reduced more than 1,000 times. If the capabilities of the present generation of microprocessors are remarkable, the prospects for this next generation of very-large-scale integrated circuits (VLSI) are extraordinary. A processor would take up a trivial portion of such a chip; millions of bits of memory could be included as well.

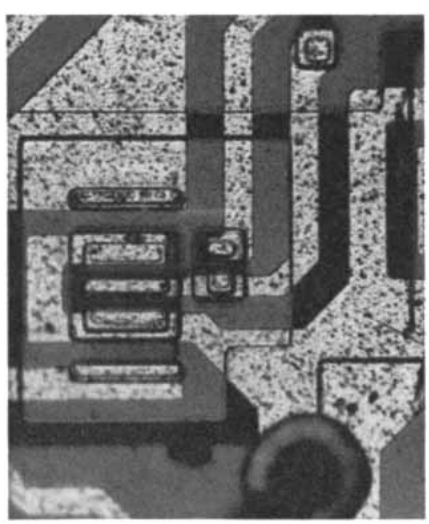
Although the immediate impediments to building more complex microprocessors lie in the fabrication process, the task of design is hardly trivial. The design process begins with the determination of the overall organization of the computer. The "width" of the machine, or in other words the number of bits in a standard word, is a fundamental consideration; so is the amount of memory to be addressed, which dictates the number of address bits that must be provided. Among a multitude of other considerations, attention must be given to the total number of connections to be made to the chip: each connection requires a metallic pad at the edge of the chip, and there is limited room for these pads.

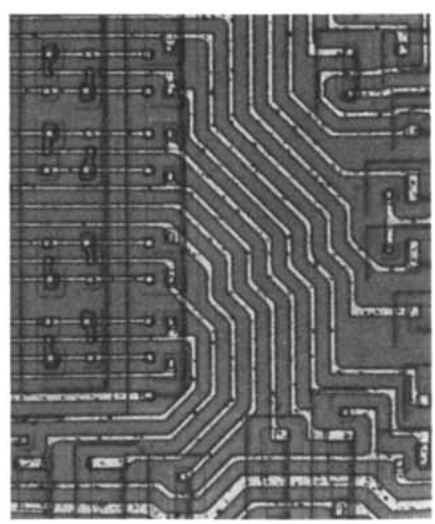
Once the architecture, or organization, of the machine has been decided on, logic diagrams must be prepared for all the functions that are to be included. The logic diagrams must then be reduced to their electronic equivalents, and finally the resulting circuit diagrams must be expressed in terms of electronic devices and interconnection paths between them that can be manufactured at a reasonable cost within the allotted area of silicon [see "The Fabrication of Microelectronic Circuits," by William G. Oldham, page 110].

The properties of individual transistors and other components depend critically on their dimensions. If the circuit is to function reliably, these must remain within prescribed limits in spite of variations in the manufacturing process. Timing is equally critical: when a signal is issued by one part of the computer, another part must be ready to receive it. One obvious approach to these problems is to build a prototype of the processor out of existing components. In recent years it has become far commoner, however, to build a simulated prototype with the aid of a computer. Mathematical models of the individual circuit elements are constructed and combined to form models of entire systems. In essence a large computer is made to emulate the behavior of a smaller one.

When a design is complete, the computer itself can prepare the master drawings that will be employed to define the circuit pattern on the silicon. Other computers supervise the fabrication process, and still another one tests the completed chips, automatically marking the defective ones. There is no more telling demonstration of the need for evolutionary development in the creation of a complex technology. The integrated circuits being designed and manufactured today could not be made without the assistance of those made in past years.

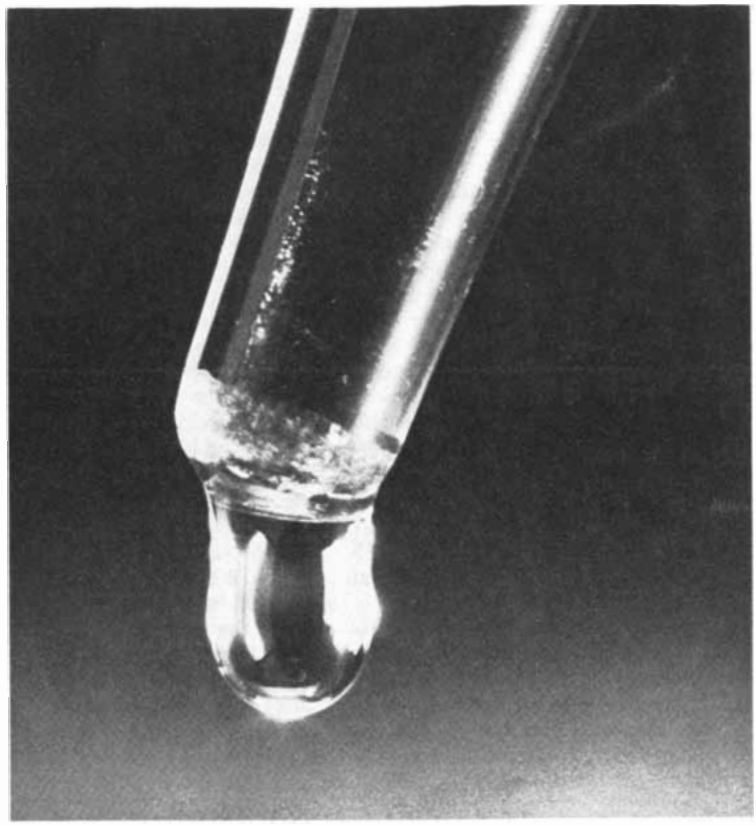






DIMINISHING SCALE of microelectronic devices is apparent in three chips seen at the same magnification: about 300 times. At the left is a chip manufactured in 1961; a single transistor fills the field of view. The chip in the middle was made in 1965; portions of several active elements are visible. The large-scale integrated circuit at right, manufactured in 1975, crowds more than a dozen transistors into the same area of silicon. All these devices employ bipolar semiconductor technology; higher density can be achieved with MOS transistors.

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC



This liquid makes microelectronics possible.

Sure surprised us.

It is photo resist, which is better than a jackknife for carving out 10,000 transistors and diodes on a 1 cm chip of silicon when you have orders for 10,000 —or is it 50,000?—such chips a day to serve as microprocessors. Light or other radiation does the work. A drawing used to be considered a representation of reality. With photo resist followed by etching, what the computer generates *becomes* the reality. The radiation produces a difference, plus or minus as desired, in the solubility of the polymer in the developer. A half-micrometer thickness of the undissolved polymer must stand up to powerful etchants, then be washed away cleanly and quickly by other solvents. No graininess allowed.

The first beginnings of photography around 1822 employed bitumen of Judea, a photo resist subsequently eclipsed by M. Daguerre's success with silver iodide. When photography boomed, photo resists returned with the need to reproduce photographs by inked metal on printing presses. The hardening effect of arc light on bichromated glues served that need until polymers became a subject worthy of scientific study.

At the Kodak Research Laboratories around 1945, L. M. "Red" Minsk synthesized polyvinyl cinnamate. In testing it, he and friends dyed it for convenience and discovered that their dye

L. M. Minsk in retirement

was making it highly sensitive to photopolymerization. Their bosses' bosses foresaw a huge market in the photoengraving trade. An ad couched something like this one was published about it.

Some chaps read the ad and wondered how Kodak photo resist would work out for etching semiconductors instead of metal. We date the microelectronics age from the day they found it worked. Out went our whole marketing concept for Kodak photo resists.

Now, 20 years or more later, we can send you data sheets on photo resists designed for microelectronics, not graphic arts, and very different from Mr. Minsk's polyvinyl cinnamate. We can send them to you even if you are not in the microelectronics trade, just as certain readers of that earlier ad were not in the graphic arts trade.

But if you *are* in the microelectronics trade and would like an invitation to the Kodak Microelectronics Seminars that we put on annually for users of Kodak micro resists, talk it over with Jerry Coder at 716-724-4544. He also supplies the data sheets. His address is Kodak, Graphics Markets Division, Rochester, N.Y. 14650.

The name of that division shows that we have not been wholly diverted from our original marketing intent for photo resists—not when we compare the total acreage of newspaper pages prepared for press each day with the number of square meters of teeny-weeny microprocessors the world produces that same day.

As a matter of fact, in May, 1977 we announced KODAK MX-929 Resist, for use in an arrangement for translating a paste-up of a newspaper page to metal by scanning with a He-Ne laser and modulating an argon ion laser to expose the resist. Since the 515 and 488 nm lines of the argon ion laser are more economical to use than its ultraviolet emission, our new resist has been given the appropriate spectral sensitivity.

Kodak

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

SCIENCE AND THE CITIZEN

The Ph.D. Population

A revealing group portrait of the top echelon of American scientists and engineers is presented by a recent publication of the National Science Foundation, *Characteristics of Doctoral Scientists and Engineers in the United States, 1975*. Between 1973 and 1975 (the most recent year for which complete figures are available) the U.S. population of engineers and scientists with doctoral degrees increased by 13 percent, from 245,000 to 278,000. In the same period the nation's total labor force increased 4.4 percent, from 88.7 million to 92.6 million. Thus in 1975 three workers in 1,000 were doctoral scientists and engineers.

The 1975 Ph.D. labor force was distributed among the following major fields: engineering 16.5 percent, biology 15.3, chemistry 13.8, psychology 11.6, physics and astronomy 7.3, agriculture 5.2, medicine 5.1, mathematics 4.6, economics 3.9, earth sciences 3.7, sociology and anthropology 3.1 and computer sciences 1.4.

The overall median salary of doctoral scientists and engineers was seriously eroded by inflation between 1973 and 1975. Although median salaries increased 11 percent in the period (from $20,900 to $23,100), income in constant dollars actually declined by 10 percent. For men salaries ran about $300 above the median. For women median salaries in current dollars increased only 8 percent (from $17,600 to $19,000), making their real loss in constant dollars about 12 percent. Hence overall women lost ground to men in income between 1973 and 1975: the female/male salary ratio decreased from .83 to .81. Women in the youngest age groups (under 35), however, slightly gained ground: the ratio increased from .86 to .89.

Sex aside, median salaries varied considerably from field to field, from employer to employer and from state to state. The three highest-paid fields in 1975 were medical science ($25,700), engineering ($25,200) and economics ($24,600). The three lowest-paid fields were biology ($21,300), mathematics ($20,900) and sociology and anthropology ($20,700). The Federal Government paid the highest median salaries ($26,200), followed by business ($26,000) and nonprofit organizations ($24,400). Four-year colleges and universities paid well below the median: $21,400. The highest salaries were paid for management and administration of research and development: $30,200.

In every discipline but one (chemistry) the highest salaries were paid in the District of Columbia, where the medians ranged from a low of $25,100 for chemists (of whom there were 758) to $30,500 for the most populous group of scientific workers in Washington, the economists, of whom there were 1,456. Their salary was exceeded only by a smaller group, the 466 environmental scientists who received the top median salary in the U.S. for a Ph.D. in science or engineering: $31,500. If you were a chemist, to be eligible for a median salary higher than $26,000 you had to be one of 1,840 chemists working in Delaware (median salary $28,300), one of 400 in New Mexico ($26,200), one of 325 in West Virginia ($26,200) or one of 1,600 in Michigan ($26,100).

For the country as a whole in 1975 there were 130 doctoral scientists and engineers per 100,000 population. If one ranks the 50 states and the District of Columbia according to the density of scientists and engineers in their population, the results are rather surprising. California, which has the highest total number of scientists and engineers (31,855), barely makes the top quartile, with 150 per 100,000 population. Some areas not ordinarily regarded as centers of scientific work rank much higher. The top quartile, consisting of 12 states plus the District of Columbia, employed the following number of doctoral scientists and engineers per 100,000 in 1975: District of Columbia 1,344, Delaware 560, New Mexico 269, Maryland 216, Utah 211, Massachusetts 208, Colorado 202, Vermont 189, Connecticut 163, New Jersey 159, New York 155, California 150 and Virginia 150.

Dead or Alive?

Vaccination against poliomyelitis has been one of the triumphs of contemporary public health, but in the U.S. there have been two nagging concerns. One is the persistence of a small—very small—incidence of paralytic poliomyelitis associated with the oral administration of attenuated live virus. The other is the declining rate of vaccination, with a consequent increase in the pool of susceptible people. If the trend continues, there is a distinct possibility of future epidemics of poliomyelitis in the U.S. A committee established by the Institute of Medicine of the National Academy of Sciences has considered these interacting problems and has come up with recommendations on the type of vaccine and a schedule for administering it.

The first poliomyelitis vaccine, developed by Jonas Salk and widely administered beginning in 1954, was an injected killed-virus vaccine (IPV). In 1962 the decision was made to change to a policy favoring an oral poliomyelitis vaccine (OPV), developed by Albert Sabin and prepared with attenuated live virus. OPV was favored primarily because of its ease of administration and the long-lasting immunity it confers, and its success has been dramatic: in the past three years the incidence of paralytic poliomyelitis has been respectively only five, 12 and eight cases in the entire country. On rare occasions, however, individuals who are given the oral vaccine, or who are in contact with recipients of the vaccine, develop paralytic poliomyelitis; there appear to have been 44 such cases in the years from 1969 through 1976. Such vaccine-associated cases are apparently not a side effect of the killed-virus vaccine, which is routinely administered in the Netherlands and in some Scandinavian countries.

The Institute of Medicine committee considered various options, ranging from complete reliance on either OPV or IPV to making it a matter of free choice by the individual parent. It finally recommended continued reliance on OPV as the principal vaccine, with additional provisions. IPV should be administered to people with heightened susceptibility to infection, such as children known to have a deficient immune system and their siblings, people taking drugs that suppress the immune response and adults being vaccinated for the first time. Moreover, a new immunization should be added to the standard schedule: a dose of OPV for all children of an age when they would normally be entering the seventh grade.

The committee pointed out that both vaccines are remarkably safe. IPV may be the safer of the two, and it is appropriate in countries where almost complete immunization is attained. In the U.S., however, the greater ease of administering OPV, the ability of the vaccine to spread immunity to unvaccinated individuals in the community through the dispersal of the virus in feces, and the effectiveness of the vaccine in producing intestinal immunity (preventing reinfection by "wild" virus) are determining considerations because of the low vaccination levels. As of 1974 only 67 percent of all white children and only 45 percent of all nonwhite children were vaccinated against poliomyelitis. The committee called for a nationwide effort to attain 90 percent immunization within the next few years. When that goal is reached, the current reliance on OPV may be reassessed. Meanwhile the

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

THE SEAGRAM'S GIN AND TONIC SECRET.

Use ice cubes made of tonic water.
Then add Seagram's Gin
and your usual amount of tonic.

Seagram's. The Perfect Martini Gin. Perfect all ways.

SEAGRAM DISTILLERS COMPANY, NEW YORK CITY. 80 PROOF. DISTILLED DRY GIN. DISTILLED FROM AMERICAN GRAIN.

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

Introducing Apple II.™

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

The home computer that's ready to work, play and grow with you.

Clear the kitchen table. Bring in the color T.V. Plug in your new Apple II,* and connect any standard cassette recorder/player. Now you're ready for an evening of discovery in the new world of personal computers.

Only Apple II makes it that easy. It's a complete, ready to use computer—not a kit. At $1298, it includes features you won't find on other personal computers costing twice as much.

Features such as video graphics in 15 colors. And a built-in memory capacity of 8K bytes ROM and 4K bytes RAM—with room for lots more. But you don't even need to know a RAM from a ROM to use and enjoy Apple II. It's the first personal computer with a fast version of BASIC—the English-like programming language—permanently built in. That means you can begin running your Apple II the first evening, entering your own instructions and watching them work, even if you've had no previous computer experience.

The familiar typewriter-style keyboard makes communication easy. And your programs and data can be stored on (and retrieved from) audio cassettes, using the built-in cassette interface, so you can swap with other Apple II users. This and other peripherals—optional equipment on most personal computers, at hundreds of dollars extra cost—are *built into* Apple II. And it's designed to keep up with changing technology, to expand easily whenever you need it to.

As an educational tool, Apple II is a sound investment. You can program it to tutor your children in most any subject, such as spelling, history or math. But the biggest benefit—no matter *how* you use Apple II—is that you and your family increase your familiarity with the computer itself. The more you experiment with it, the more you discover about its potential.

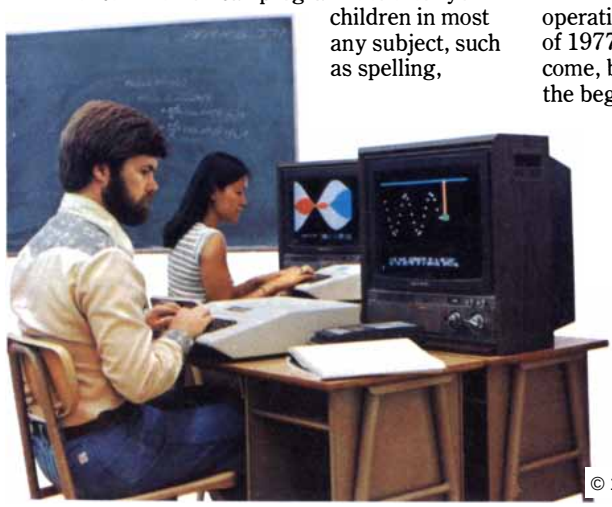
Start by playing PONG. Then invent your own games using the input keyboard, game paddles and built-in speaker. As you experiment you'll acquire new programming skills which will open up new ways to use your Apple II. You'll learn to "paint" dazzling color displays using the unique color graphics commands in Apple BASIC, and write programs to create beautiful kaleidoscopic designs.

As you master Apple BASIC, you'll be able to organize, index and store data on household finances, income tax, recipes, and record collections. You can learn to chart your biorhythms, balance your checking account, even control your home environment. Apple II will go as far as your imagination can take it.

Best of all, Apple II is designed to grow with you. As your skill and experience with computing increase, you may want to add new Apple peripherals. For example, a refined, more sophisticated BASIC language is being developed for advanced scientific and mathematical applications.

And in addition to the built-in audio, video and game interfaces, there's room for eight plug-in options such as a prototyping board for experimenting with interfaces to other equipment; a serial board for connecting teletype, printer and other terminals; a parallel interface for communicating with a printer or another computer; an EPROM board for storing programs permanently; and a modem board communications interface. A floppy disk interface with software and complete operating systems will be available at the end of 1977. And there are many more options to come, because Apple II was designed from the beginning to accommodate increased power and capability as your requirements change.

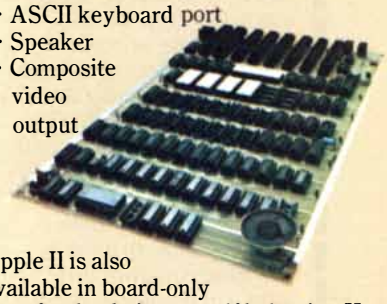
If you'd like to see for yourself how easy it is to use and enjoy Apple II, visit your local dealer for a demonstration and a copy of our detailed brochure. Or write Apple Computer Inc., 20863 Stevens Creek Blvd., Cupertino, California 95014.



Apple II™ is a completely self-contained computer system with BASIC in ROM, color graphics, ASCII keyboard, lightweight, efficient switching power supply and molded case. It is supplied with BASIC in ROM, up to 48K bytes of RAM, and with cassette tape, video and game I/O interfaces built-in. Also included are two game paddles and a demonstration cassette.

SPECIFICATIONS

- **Microprocessor:** 6502 (1 MHz).
- **Video Display:** Memory mapped, 5 modes—all Software-selectable:
  - Text—40 characters/line, 24 lines upper case.
  - Color graphics—40h x 48v, 15 colors
  - High-resolution graphics—280h x 192v; black, white, violet, green (16K RAM minimum required)
  - Both graphics modes can be selected to include 4 lines of text at the bottom of the display area.
  - Completely transparent memory access. All color generation done digitally.
- **Memory:** up to 48K bytes on-board RAM (4K supplied)
  - Uses either 4K or new 16K dynamic memory chips
  - Up to 12K ROM (8K supplied)
- **Software**
  - Fast extended Integer BASIC in ROM with color graphics commands
  - Extensive monitor in ROM
- **I/O**
  - 1500 bps cassette interface
  - 8-slot motherboard
  - Apple game I/O connector
  - ASCII keyboard port
  - Speaker
  - Composite video output



Apple II is also available in board-only form for the do-it-yourself hobbyist. Has all of the features of the Apple II system, but does not include case, keyboard, power supply or game paddles. $598.

PONG is a trademark of Atari Inc.

*Apple II plugs into any standard TV using an inexpensive modulator (not supplied).

apple computer inc.™

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

No cassette deck can give you better performance without all these recording ingredients.

JVC's new front-loading KD-35 cassette deck is as close as you can come to goof-proof recording. It has something no other make of cassette deck has. **1.** Five peak-reading LED indicators to help you avoid under-recording, tape saturation and distortion. Combine this with **2.** Dolby noise reduction, **3.** bias and equalization switches, **4.** JVC's exclusive Sen-Alloy head, **5.** automatic tape-end stop, plus absentee recording when you connect an accessory timer – and you realize why the KD-35 stands out in any crowd.

The KD-35 cassette deck is priced just above the least expensive model in JVC's new cassette deck lineup. Just imagine what our top model is like.

JVC

Dolby is a trademark of Dolby Labs Inc.

JVC America Company, Division of US JVC Corp., 58-75 Queens Midtown Expressway, Maspeth, N.Y. 11378 (212) 476-8300.
For nearest JVC dealer call toll-free (outside N.Y.) 800-221-7502, Canada: JVC Electronics of Canada, Ltd., Scarborough, Ont.

Why do we behave as we do?

In his first major work since *On Aggression*, Nobel Prize-winner Konrad Lorenz presents a fascinating analysis of the mechanisms directing human behavior and thought processes. Using vivid examples drawn from a life-time of observation, he provides startling insights into man's alarming propensity for destruction.

Translated by Ronald Taylor

A HELEN AND KURT WOLFF BOOK

To order, please send check or money order for $10.50 per copy (includes postage) to:

HBJ HARCOURT BRACE JOVANOVICH
General Books Division,
Dept. CE-H
757 Third Avenue
New York, N.Y. 10017

recommended immunization at the age of 11 or 12 may help to catch some of the children who have not been vaccinated as infants. More specifically, the seventh-grade vaccination is intended to give extra protection in later years, because young adults appear to be most susceptible to vaccine-associated infection (by contact with their own vaccinated infants), and to give it at an age when the evidence indicates that people are not yet at increased risk to direct vaccine-associated infection.

Seed Money

For many years some 90 percent of the Federal Government's support of research in the life sciences has been provided by the National Institutes of Health. The result, as was pointed out last year by a group advising President Ford on science and technology, is that "the overwhelming majority of the ablest young scientists in the basic biological disciplines are being trained in and supported by biomedical programs." The implication is that workers in the basic biological disciplines not closely related to medicine are receiving less than their share of Federal support. Taking note of the situation, the Congressional Office of Technology Assessment (OTA) has recommended a substantial increase in the amount of Federal money devoted to basic research designed to increase the production of food. The program would be concentrated in three areas: photosynthesis, the biological fixation of nitrogen and the laboratory culture of plant cells. (In such culture the cells of crop plants are grown like bacteria, making it possible to manipulate media, isolate mutant cells and otherwise perform experiments that are difficult or impossible with whole plants.) The program would be administered by the U.S. Department of Agriculture in the form of competitive grants that would be open to all scientists.

In a report, *Organizing and Financing Basic Research to Increase Food Production,* the OTA found two reasons for the decline of the relative support of research on food production over the past two decades. One is inflation and the other is that "Congress was concerned more with the costs of storing surplus crops and maintaining farm income support programs." Although the amount of money appropriated for agricultural research rose in absolute terms, "almost all increases have been utilized to support urgently requested pest [and] disease control." Yet on the basis of what U.S. agriculture has achieved in the past as a result of research in food production "it is highly probable that an investment of $300 million to $500 million over a 10-year period would yield

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

returns of $1 billion to $2 billion over the next 20 years."

An advisory panel assisting the OTA on the report found that about $15.6 million is being spent annually in the three high-priority areas. It recommended an increase of at least $12.45 million in the first year and from $4 million to $6 million per year thereafter for six years. Offering a few examples of specific results that could be expected from such a program, the report stated that "an increase in the efficiency of photosynthesis in a crop [such as] soybeans could result in a 50 percent increase in yield per acre." If nitrogen fixation by legumes, which are already symbiotic with nitrogen-fixing bacteria, could be enhanced, and if nonlegume crops such as maize and cereal grains could be made nitrogen-fixers, the expenditure of money and energy for synthetic nitrogen fertilizers could be greatly reduced. As for plant-cell-culture studies, they "offer promise for developing new combinations of germ plasm and thus provide a means for genetic engineering that could ... lead to new varieties of soybeans, cereals, potatoes and other crops with substantially higher photosynthetic efficiency levels than occur in conventional plant-breeding methods. In addition, cell and tissue cultures have demonstrated their value both in freeing important cultivars of viruses and other pathogens and as a method for rapidly propagating new improved cultivars."

Older Testament

More than a decade of excavation at a 140-acre mound near Aleppo in Syria has been rewarded over the past three seasons by the discovery of a linguistic bonanza: some 20,000 northwestern Semitic texts, preserved on intact clay tablets or fragments of tablets, that are 1,000 years older than any previously known. The rich find was made by Paolo Matthiae of the University of Rome; the texts are being analyzed by a colleague, Giovanni Pettinato. The great mound is named Tell Mardikh today, but early in their work the investigators uncovered a votive statue dating to the middle of the Bronze Age with an inscription identifying the site as the ancient city of Ebla, a place-name that appears on a number of Mesopotamian inscriptions.

The writing of the Ebla tablets is the cuneiform of Sumer, a pictographic script that the scribes of Ebla put to their own purposes. As an aid to the correct interpretation of the Sumerian pictographs the scribes could turn to bilingual reference tablets that show the pictograph and a matching Semitic definition written in syllabic form. The excavators have found 32 such syllabaries; one translates nearly 1,000 picto-

INTRODUCING THE BLACK MIST.

IF YOU HAVE A TASTE FOR HISTORY, REDISCOVER THE NATURAL TASTE OF MEAD IN THE DRINK THAT MAY BE YOUR MATCH:

The Black Mist.

Equal parts Imported Irish Mist and dark Creme de Cacao on-the-rocks.

Uncommonly smooth. Remarkably delicious.

Yet, not to be taken lightly.

For its potency traces its roots back thousands of years to Man's unquenchable thirst for the legendary taste of mead:

A zesty and pleasing spirit touched with natural overtones of honey, herbs and spices.

A taste rediscovered in Irish Mist.

Before or after dinner, it is the perfect balance of potency and good taste one would expect from "The Legendary Spirit of Man."

And, to "The Black Mist," it brings a taste of history.

Imported Irish Mist.

The natural taste of mead. Rediscover it in "The Black Mist."

IRISH MIST: THE LEGENDARY SPIRIT OF MAN.

IMPORTED IRISH MIST® LIQUEUR. 80 PROOF. ©1977 HEUBLEIN, INC., HARTFORD, CONN., U.S.A.

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

That's Plenco in these AB DE-ION® Circuit Breakers.

Westinghouse checks off why.

A complete line of circuit breakers from Westinghouse Low Voltage Breaker Division, Beaver, PA. Designed for diversified and demanding use in power distribution applications.

Westinghouse engineers checked off the reasons our Plenco 414 Black phenolic molding compound was selected for the breakers:

- ☑ "Plenco 414 has dimensional stability."
- ☑ "It meets our heat-resistant requirements."
- ☑ "Has good impact resistance."
- ☑ "Passes UL 489 tests."
- ☑ "Is available as asbestos-free material."

An easy mold, fast cure heat-resistant/electrical compound. Like many of our thermosetting Plenco phenolics, it lends itself to the compression, transfer and screw-injection molding methods.

More than likely we can provide a thermoset to suit your particular application and method. Give us a call and check. (414) 458-2121

PLENCO
THERMOSET PLASTICS

PLASTICS ENGINEERING COMPANY
Sheboygan, WI 53081

Through Plenco research ... a wide range of ready-made or custom-formulated phenolic, melamine-phenolic and alkyd thermoset molding compounds, and industrial resins.

graphs into northwestern Semitic. The tablet inscriptions are not unrelievedly Sumerian: when an Eblaite syllabic word appears among the pictographs, its presence is indicated by distinctive wedge marks.

Preliminary readings have revealed a wealth of detail about the rich and populous city-state. Ebla flourished in the second half of the third millennium B.C. and maintained a network of commercial relations extending as far south as the Sinai, as far north as central Asia Minor, to the highlands of Mesopotamia on the east and to the island of Cyprus on the west. One text states that the population of the kingdom was more than a quarter of a million. The names of Ebla's kings, regularly recorded in texts of an economic and administrative character, allow the reconstruction of a dynastic succession beginning before the time of Sargon of Akkad (2340 B.C.) and ending with the Akkadian conquest of Ebla in about 2250 B.C.

The texts attest to an agricultural economy based on the cultivation of grain, cattle husbandry and wine-making. Textiles and metals were the principal items of trade, with timber and gemstones ranking next. Among the texts are royal ordinances and edicts, statutes, international treaties, state correspondence and lists of subject cities. One tablet details the tribute demanded by a king of Ebla from the conquered city of Mari: 11,000 pounds of silver and 880 pounds of gold.

The most intriguing Ebla texts hint of a continuity with Hebrew traditions of a far later period. The religion of Ebla was a robust polytheism, borrowed largely from Sumerian sources, with a pantheon numbering in the hundreds. Nevertheless, some of the gods' names and certain personal names that include divine elements are echoed in the Old Testament. For example, an Eblaite deity, Dagan of Canaan, is identical in name with the Dagan whose temple Samson destroyed. A score of Eblaite personal names have Old Testament parallels. The name of one of Ebla's kings, Ebrum (syllabic *Eb-ru-um*), is reminiscent of Eber (Genesis 10:21), the father of the Semites. Perhaps the most compelling evidence of some kind of link between the Ebla archives and the drafters of the Old Testament is also found in Genesis. The listing of the five "cities of the plain," Sodom, Gomorrah, Admah, Zeboiim and Bela (14:2), is duplicated in an Ebla text and the names appear in the same order.

Gold-Dust Twins

A new experimental technique for visualizing the tracks of moving cells on a gold-coated glass microscope slide has yielded some surprising information

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

HERE'S ONE ENGINEERING OPPORTUNITY YOU WON'T GET IN PRIVATE INDUSTRY.

If you're thinking about a technical position after graduation, think about this.

How many companies can offer you a nuclear submarine to operate? The answer is none. Equipment like this is available only in one place—the Navy.

The Navy operates over half the nuclear reactors in America. So our training is the broadest and most comprehensive. We start by giving you a year of advanced technical education. In graduate school, this would cost you thousands, but in the Navy, we pay you.

Once you're a commissioned Nuclear Propulsion Officer, you'll earn a top salary. Over $24,000 a year after four years. And you'll be responsible for some of the most advanced equipment developed by man.

The Navy also has other opportunities in surface ships and aviation assignments. If you are majoring in engineering, math or the physical sciences, contact your placement office to find out when a Navy representative will be on campus. Or send your resume to: Navy Officer Programs, Code 312-B386, 4015 Wilson Blvd., Arlington, VA 22203.

The Navy. When it comes to nuclear training, no one can give you a better start.

NAVY OFFICER. IT'S NOT JUST A JOB, IT'S AN ADVENTURE.

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

FREE!

with your business card or send $1.00 (refundable on 1st order)

LARGEST CATALOG IN ITS FIELD

Catalog Includes:

- Manufacturer's catalogs.
- News about amazing breakthroughs in the Mini-micro computer field.
- $2.00 Discount Certificate.
- Discounts up to 90% on Used Equipment.

A Complete Computer System Just $289

No Kits!

Everything:
- **Fully Assembled**
- **Fully tested**
- **Fully Warranted**
- **KIM-1** — MOS Technology Computer Module 1K-RAM, audio cassette interface, 15 bidirectional I/O lines, 24-key keyboard, and six-digit LED display.
- **System Power Supply** (5V at 1.2A, 12V at 0.1A), with power line and switch.
- **Software** — System Executive. Sample application programs.

User hardware & programming manuals, wall size System Schematic

Programmer's Reference Card

Computer Books

An Introduction to Microcomputers, Vol 1 - Basic Concepts (Osborne). A complete book. $7.50

Vol 2 - Some Real Products. Details today's real products. $12.50

Basic BASIC: An Introduction to Computer Programming in BASIC Language (Coan) An excellent introduction to BASIC. $7.95

Advanced BASIC: Applications and Problems (Coan) Advanced techniques and applications. $8.95

Hobby Computers are HERE (Green) Simplified introductions to various aspects of hobby computing. $4.95

101 BASIC Computer Games (Ahl) Contains (in Basic), listing, a sample run, descriptive write-up. $7.50

Guarantee

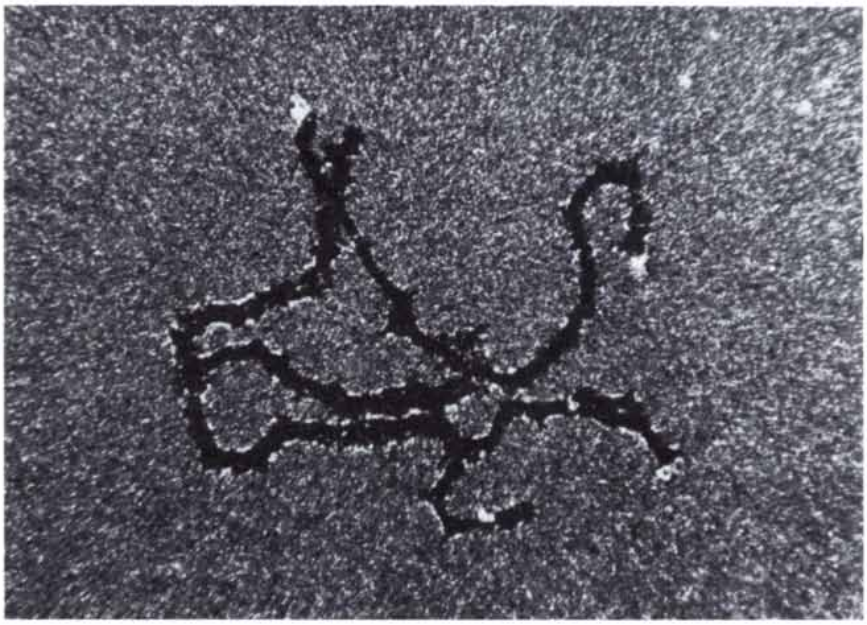
Return undamaged for any reason within 10 days of receipt and get a complete refund.

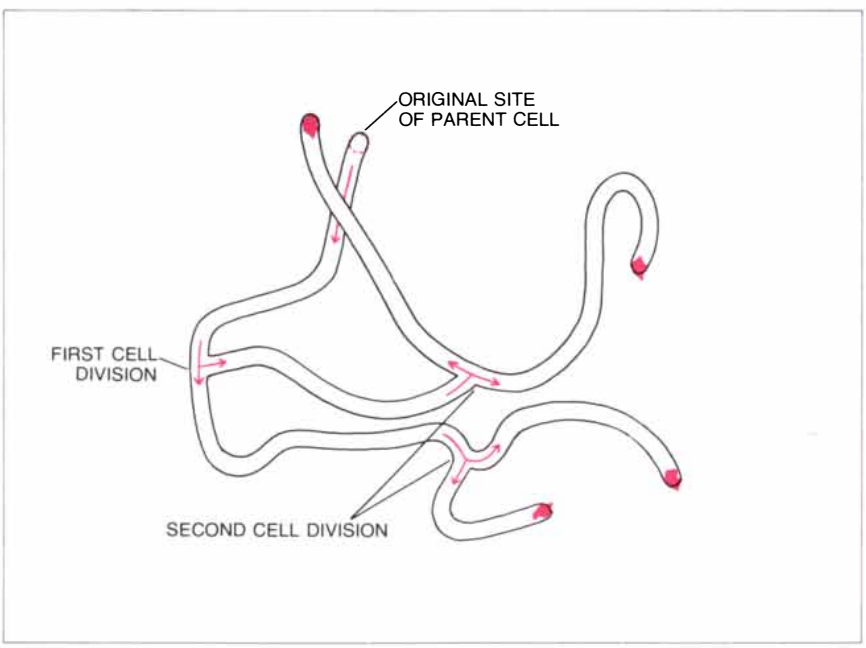
Bankard/Visa & Master Charge accepted

NEWMAN COMPUTER EXCHANGE
1250 N. Main St. Ann Arbor, Mi. 48104
(313) 994-3200

about the migratory behavior of certain embryonic cells and their descendants. The observations made so far with the aid of the new technique suggest that the seemingly aimless meandering of the "mother" and "daughter" cells is not as random as it appears but rather is predetermined in various ways at the time of mitosis, or reproduction by cell division.

The technique responsible for this discovery was developed over the past two years or so by Guenter Albrecht-Buehler, a biologist at the Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory. The idea of letting moving cells record their own migrations on a substrate arose from the finding that cells moving on a glass surface that has been densely and evenly coated





THREE GENERATIONS of migrating 3T3 fibroblast cells, obtained from embryonic mouse tissue, are represented by their "phagokinetic" tracks in the photomicrograph at top, enlarged about 70 diameters. The directions of the cells' motions are indicated in the diagram at bottom. The granulated light gray background of the micrograph is a coating of fine gold particles deposited on the glass microscope slide. The particle-free tracks left by the migrating cells appear black in dark-field illumination. The positions of the "granddaughter" cells are revealed by the bright white clusters, which are made up of large numbers of gold particles either ingested by the cells or riding along on their top surfaces. The angles between the separating cells in each generation are typically about either 90 degrees or 180 degrees. This particular cell line, according to Guenter Albrecht-Buehler, inventor of the new phagokinetic cell-tracking technique, appears to produce characteristic "smoothly winding tracks shaped like a question mark." Micrograph originally appeared in the journal *Cell,* Vol. 11, No. 2, pages 395–404; June, 1977.

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

Authentic.

The world's best judges of whisky have pinned lots of medals on Dewar's.

It's still happening every day. Any Scotch-lover, sipping a Dewar's "White Label" for the first time, will mentally pin still another gold medal on its famous label.

London, 1888

Paris, 1889

Edinburgh, 1890

Brussels, 1893

Antwerp, 1894

Zurich, 1930

Dewar's never varies.

BLENDED SCOTCH WHISKY • 86.8 PROOF

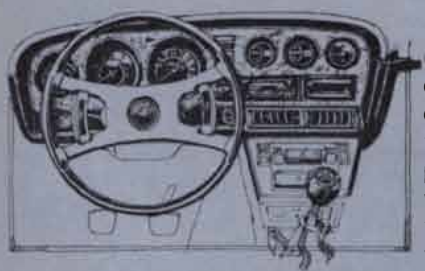
©SCHENLEY IMPORTS CO., N. Y., N. Y.

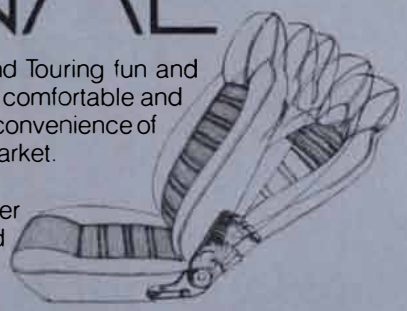
The facts in this advertisement have been authenticated by the management of John Dewar & Sons, Ltd., Perth, Scotland

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

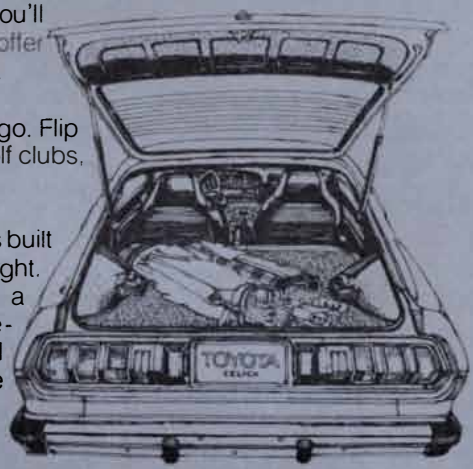
FUNCTIONAL

The Toyota Celica GT Liftback. Probably the best combination of Grand Touring fun and practicality you can buy. Built in the GT tradition to handle beautifully, be comfortable and look like a million. Built in the Toyota tradition to be reliable. Add to this the convenience of a liftback design and you've got what may be the best GT buy on the market.





GT fun. The durable Toyota 2.2 liter engine, coupled to a 5-speed overdrive gear box, delivers efficient performance and driving fun. The MacPherson strut front suspension and power assisted front disc brakes make driving on winding back roads a real pleasure. And when you tune into your favorite FM stereo station and sit back in your reclining bucket seat you'll wonder why driving ever had to be boring — or why other cars don't offer this combination of performance and comfort as standard equipment.



Convenience is fun. You won't have to share your back seat with cargo. Flip up the liftback, flip down the rear seat and you'll have fun room for golf clubs, a bike, or functional room for 9 bags of groceries.

The fun should last. The Celica GT Liftback is a Toyota. And as such is built to endure. Welded unitized-body construction helps keep Toyotas tight. Rust inhibiting primers are put on by immersing the entire body in a primer bath, and even that pretty paint is applied to a thickness designed to help withstand the elements. And it doesn't cost an arm and a leg to buy or maintain a Celica. Celicas are Toyotas, and Toyotas are economical and dependable. The Celica is truly a functional car

©Toyota Motor Sales U.S.A. Inc. 1977

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

with fine gold particles tend to clear the particles out of their way, producing particle-free tracks. The tracks can be seen clearly as black lines in low-power photomicrographs made with dark-field illumination (*see illustration on page 104*). Albrecht-Buehler has proposed that the formation of such tracks on particle-coated surfaces be called "phagokinetics," because it involves a combination of phagocytosis (the propensity of certain kinds of cells, called phagocytes, to engulf and digest foreign objects in their vicinity) and kinetics (the study of motion).

The record of cellular movements inscribed in the patterns left by the phagokinetic tracks makes it possible to conveniently study the movements of large numbers of individual cells. For example, when Albrecht-Buehler examined the tracks formed by the supposedly "identical twin" daughters of the phagocytic mouse cells known as 3T3 fibroblasts, he found that in approximately 40 percent of the cases the separately moving daughter cells changed direction in a symmetrical way, forming tracks that looked like slightly distorted mirror images of each other. Furthermore, both daughter cells usually began the next mitosis at roughly the same time. The angle between the separating daughter cells in each generation turned out to be about either 90 degrees or 180 degrees.

This last observation, according to Albrecht-Buehler, raised "the suspicion that the angle between certain microfilament bundles of the two daughter cells may be related to the angle under which they move away from each other." When he examined the daughter cells by means of another recently invented microscopic technique, called indirect immunofluorescence, which reveals complex cytoplasmic structures within the cell, he found that in 42 daughter-cell pairs sampled, 34 percent contained symmetrical bundles of actin-containing microfilaments, 24 percent contained identical actin patterns and 42 percent contained unrelated actin patterns. In reporting these early results in a paper written a year ago for *The Journal of Cell Biology,* Albrecht-Buehler remarked that the "obvious question" at that point was "whether the symmetry relationship between the two branches of a mitotic track correlates with the symmetry relationship between the actin patterns of the cells at the end of each branch." Although Albrecht-Buehler described his results at that stage as "inconclusive," he wrote that "I feel that my results support the idea that the intracellular organizations of daughter 3T3 cells form mirror images of each other," and he put forward the suggestion that "the actin-bundle pattern, the angle of separation, major directional changes during interphase and the time of the next mitosis are predetermined by the parental cell."

In a subsequent article published in the journal *Cell* Albrecht-Buehler described three further observations obtained with the new technique: (1) When the phagokinetic tracks of many different 3T3 cells are examined, track patterns characteristic of particular cell lines become apparent. (2) In several cases second- or third-generation descendants of 3T3 cells were observed to repeat the track patterns of their ancestor cell. (3) When a 3T3 cell collides with another 3T3 cell or with a nonmigrating cell, it forms an outgoing track from the impact area "as if the cell [were] elastically reflected at the target." Taken together with his earlier observation of the mirror-symmetrical daughter-cell tracks, Albrecht-Buehler concluded, the new findings "suggest that directions and techniques of displacements of 3T3 cells are controlled by various intracellular predeterminations, but are also subject to overriding extracellular signals." Although the concept of parental predetermination advanced in his earlier paper therefore seemed to be "strengthened and supplemented" by the additional findings, he emphasized that "if such predetermination exists, there is no evidence as yet that it is genetic."

In an even more recent paper prepared for publication in *Cell* Albrecht-Buehler reports the results of his latest search for "cellular structures able to store movement instructions and to control their timely execution by the motile apparatus of the cell." The results of this ongoing inquiry, he reports, suggest that a tiny rodlike structure called the primary cilium plays a role in the directional control of a migrating 3T3 cell and that the main actin-containing microfilament bundles attach themselves to the substrate, acting as "rails" along which the rest of the cell slides in the course of its travels.

Supervolts

The system of detectors set up to monitor compliance with the nuclear test-ban treaty of 1963 has provided a windfall of scientific findings quite unrelated to nuclear testing. A network of seismometers (installed to detect underground explosions) has accumulated a file of information on worldwide earthquakes that is by far the most complete and consistent ever compiled. Bursts of gamma rays from astronomical objects were first detected in 1967 by instruments aboard satellites launched to detect the radiation from nuclear tests in the atmosphere or in space. Now an unexpected terrestrial phenomenon has been discovered in data collected by the

UNDERSTANDING MICRO COMPUTERS

AND SMALL COMPUTER SYSTEMS

Here, at last, is a profusely illustrated, easy-reading, "must" book explaining fundamental concepts behind operation of almost all microcomputers . . . in simple English . . . giving you that extra knowledge to read and *understand* computer magazines and manufacturer's literature . . . and feel "at home" around computers. Things like: ■ How a CPU is organized; how it follows sequences of orders to solve problems ■ Illustrates basic instructions from almost every microcomputer ■ Discusses common memory addressing modes — illustrates typical uses ■ What to know to tell a computer what to do when using machine language programming ■ Use of flow charts; program worksheets; hand assembly of source codes into object codes; memory maps; purpose of Editor, Assembler, Monitor.

only $9.95. Order your copy today!

■ How a computer communicates ■ Commonly used I/O devices and operational concepts ■ Practical aspects of selecting a small computer system ■ Plus, hundreds of other practical facts and information! If you're curious about small computers, you must own this 300 page no-nonsense easy-reading text. Includes easy-to-use glossary of key microcomputer-oriented words.

UNDERSTANDING MICROCOMPUTERS. The name says it all! Only $9.95 ppd. Order your copy today!

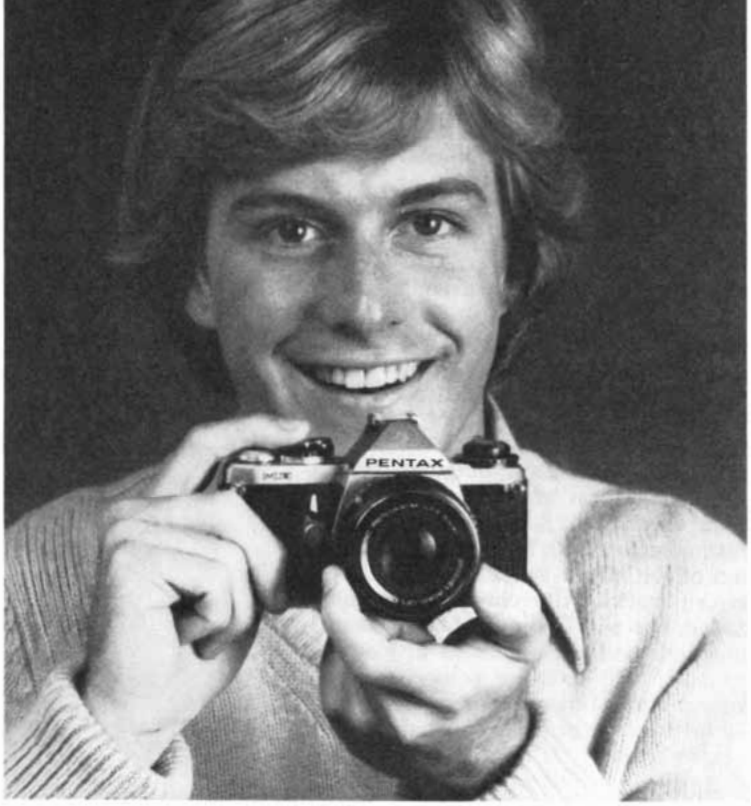
SCELBI COMPUTER CONSULTING INC.

P.O. Box 133 — PP STN, Dept. SA
Milford, CT 06460

Price shown for North American customers. Master Charge. Postal and Bank Money Orders preferred. Personal checks delay shipping up to 4 weeks. Pricing, specifications, availability subject to change without notice. SCELBI Books are available in many fine Computer Stores.

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

THESIMPLEST



You can learn to take great pictures in 42 seconds. With the new Pentax ME.

The new Pentax ME is the smallest, lightest, easiest-to-use, fully automatic 35mm single lens reflex camera ever made.

All the complicated calculations a pro goes through, the Pentax ME does for you. Automatically. Precisely. Instantly. With its electronic brain.

You just set, focus, shoot—and get great pictures. It's as easy to use as a pocket camera, but it's built to satisfy the most demanding pro.

If you want to be sure to capture fast-moving events (diving, running, a ball game, a baby's first steps), you can add on the ME Auto Winder. It advances the film automatically. Far faster than you can by hand. So you can get a series of shots of all the action. You'll be doing rapid-fire shooting. Just like the pros.

If you want special effects such as telephoto or wide angle shots, you can choose from among 40 different lenses. Then, as your knowledge of photography grows you can build a totally professional Pentax ME system.

Go see your photo dealer today. Ask for the 42-second demonstration. He'll show you how easy it is to get great pictures with the new Pentax ME.

It's that simple.

PENTAX
CORPORATION
9 Inverness Dr East, Englewood, Co 80110

same series of satellites: numerous lightning strokes more than 100 times as powerful as a typical stroke.

The satellites, given the code name Vela, are placed in circular orbits some 100,000 kilometers above the earth's surface. Among their instruments are detectors of X rays and gamma rays and optical detectors sensitive to sudden, bright flashes of light. The optical sensors are triggered by thousands of lightning strokes each year. Soon after the satellites were launched unusual signals were recognized that had most of the characteristics of lightning but seemed much too powerful. That the signals are in fact generated by lightning has now been established. They have been given the name lightning superbolts.

The nature of the signals was confirmed by still another system of test-ban monitors: a network of very-low-frequency radio receivers. The receivers were built to detect the long-wavelength radiation associated with nuclear explosions, but they are sensitive enough to detect virtually all lightning discharges over the Eurasian land mass. Convincing correlations were found between many of the light flashes recorded by the Vela satellites and radio signals.

The discovery of the superbolts was described recently by B. N. Turman of the Air Force Technical Applications Center at Patrick Air Force Base in Florida. He reported his findings in *Journal of Geophysical Research.*

The superbolts radiate optical power up to 10^{13} watts: several thousand times the output of a large electric-generating station. Because of the characteristics of the satellite instruments only the first "return" stroke is detected: the initial surge of current that flows once a path of ionized atoms has been established in the atmosphere. The stroke lasts for about a millisecond, giving the stroke a total radiant energy of more than a billion joules. A typical lightning stroke has a peak optical power of about 10^{10} watts and emits a total energy at optical wavelengths of roughly a million joules.

In one sample period of 40 months 17 superbolts were detected with a peak optical intensity greater than 3×10^{12} watts. The largest number were over the northern Pacific near Japan. Since the discharges can be seen from above, they must follow paths at least partly in the upper levels of clouds, and they probably do not reach the ground. Turman speculates, however, that the superbolts may be related to unusual ground discharges associated with winter storms in Japan. In these storms lightning is infrequent but exceptionally powerful. Its principal distinguishing trait is that the first return stroke seems to propagate upward from the ground rather than down from the cloud as it does in most lightning.

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

"It's against reason," said Filby.
"What reason?" said the Time Traveller.
—H.G. Wells, *The Time Machine* (1895)

The HP-01: a new kind of "time machine" you wear on your wrist.

New tools sometimes demonstrate their full significance only after people have invented a new range of uses for them. Their existence precedes their "reason" for existence. The HP-01 may be such a tool. It results from a timely fusion of two Hewlett-Packard technologies—precision time measurement[1] and computation—and *interrelates* timekeeping with a computing element for the first time in a wrist-sized instrument.

Any resemblance between the HP-01 and a watch/calculator stops inside the case. What makes the HP-01 a new kind of "time machine" is that it can compute time data to produce numerical perspectives in time. For example:

It displays hours, minutes, and seconds in 12- or 24-hour formats. Adds and subtracts time intervals from present time, and lets you use time intervals or segments in arithmetic manipulations.

It times by increments of .01 seconds from 00:00.00 to 99:59:59. You can take cumulative splits (freeze an exact time in the display as the stopwatch continues to run) as often as desired. It starts backwards from any nonzero time up to 99:59:59, counts down to zero, sounds an alarm, and counts forward as described above. (A second, separate alarm can be set to sound anytime during a 24-hour day). You can make continuously updated arithmetical calculations using the stopwatch or timer.

It displays the current day, month, year (or month, day, year). Preprogrammed 200-year calendar allows the HP-01 to find the number of days between dates, or any date given any other date and number of days, or the day of the week or year.

It computes. Whether interactively or not, it adds, subtracts, multiplies, divides; performs chain, mixed chain, serial, and mixed serial calculations; finds percentages, changes signs. Computes to 11-digit accuracy and rounds the display to seven digits. Automatically switches to scientific notation when the answer is equal to or greater than 10^7 or less than 10^{-4}, with a range of 1×10^{-99} to 9.999×10^{99}. Lets you store data and recall it for further computation in memory. You can, for instance, keep a numeric quantity in continuous memory.

Admittedly not everyone's cup of tea, the HP-01 offers fascinating ways to compute and keep track of numbers in the time domain. For example, you can compute and then count down the time it takes for a command to reach a spacecraft several hundred million miles away. The HP-01 can alternately show you the time remaining until the message is received, displayed to seconds or hundredths of seconds, and the distance the radio waves have yet to travel, updated each second. When the message arrives (T zero) the HP-01's alarm sounds automatically.

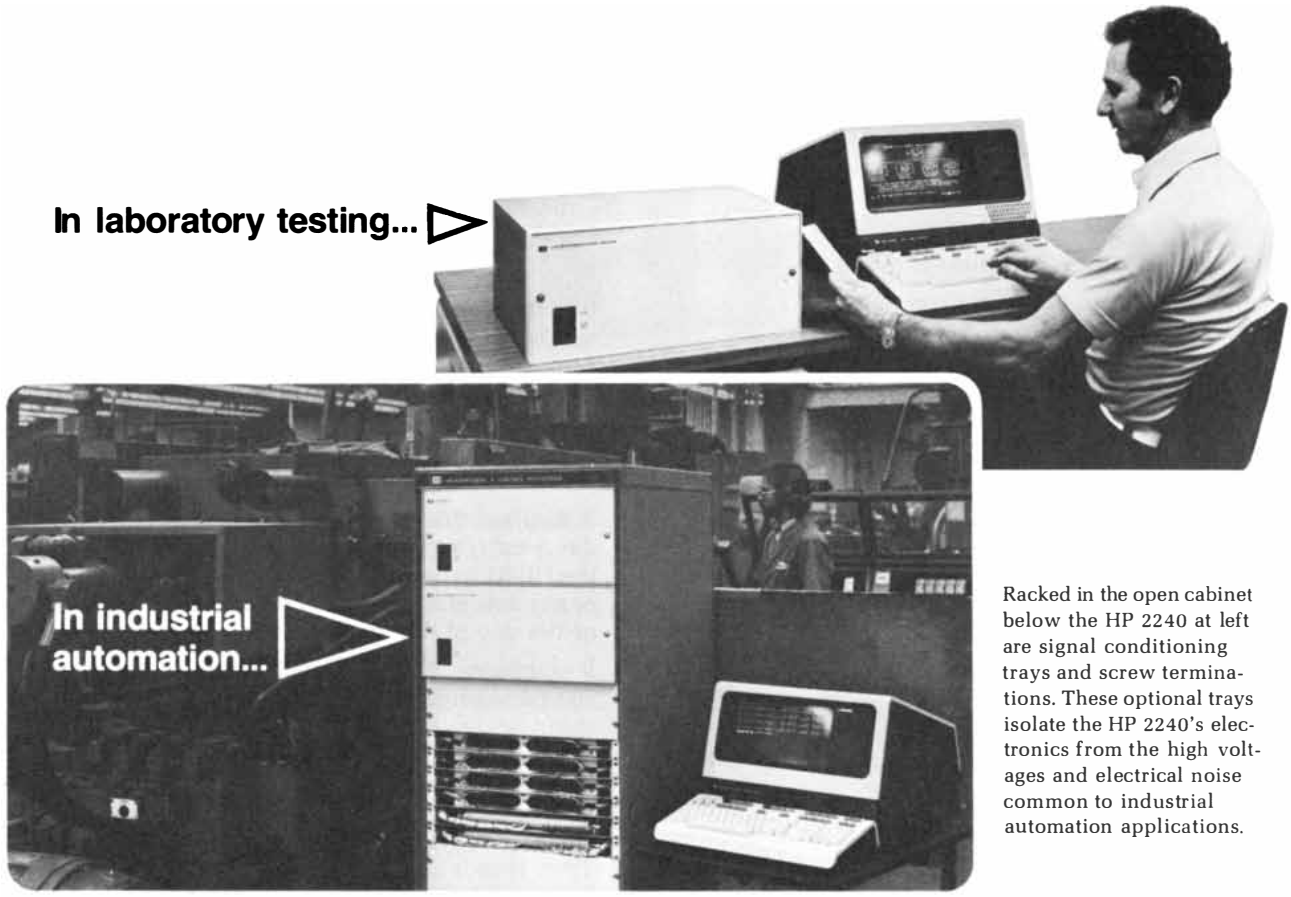
Because only a relatively small number of these instruments will be made, we suggest you start your own discovery process by mailing the coupon now. Call 800-648-4711 in the U.S.A. (in Nevada, call 323-2704 collect) for the name of the HP-01 retailer nearest you.

The HP-01 with accessories costs $650* in stainless steel, or $750* with gold-filled case and gold-plated band. With its 200-year calendar, it not only bridges the generation gap, but represents a legacy of sorts.

[1]HP cesium beam frequency and time standards keep time with an accuracy equivalent to a 1-second error in 4500 years. They are used for calibration at observatories and at national centers for measurement standards throughout the world. The HP-01 is calibrated against this standard, though obviously it does not possess the same degree of accuracy.

For more Hewlett-Packard advances, turn the page.

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC



Racked in the open cabinet below the HP 2240 at left are signal conditioning trays and screw terminations. These optional trays isolate the HP 2240's electronics from the high voltages and electrical noise common to industrial automation applications.

This little box is a computer conserver.

Incorporating HP's new silicon-on-sapphire LSI technology, this microprocessor-based analog/digital subsystem is designed to simplify product testing and real-time monitoring and control. It performs measurement and control tasks that your computer previously had to handle, freeing the computer for other uses and reducing program timing constraints.

Think of the HP 2240 as your industrial computer's right arm. Too often, automating measurement and control jobs has required complicated computer languages and programming, and expensive interconnection devices. The HP 2240 changes all that. In conjunction with the HP Interface Bus (HP-IB)[2], it simplifies task communications and programming. It decouples automation tasks from the computer through its microprocessor intelligence: timing, scanning, event synchronizing, formatting, and interrupt tasks can now be delegated to the HP 2240. And an advanced level of self testing allows you to speed your installation and lower your service costs.

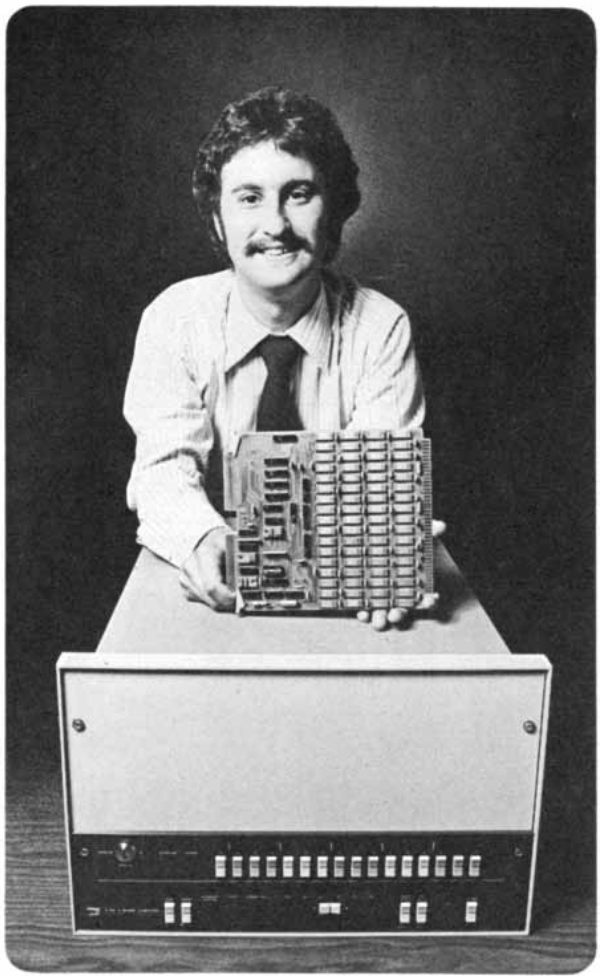
The 16-bit silicon-on-sapphire (SOS) microprocessor, tailored for controller applications, operates at the high speed required for real-time applications, and consumes just half the power of comparable systems. This built-in intelligence, and an industry-standard interface (HP-IB), let you implement measurement and control solutions in three easy steps:

- **Connect to the computer of your choice.** The HP 2240 is designed to operate with any computer that is HP-IB compatible. With the HP 2240, the HP 1000 and 21MX series computers and HP 9800 series desk-top computers become powerful tools for the acquisition of data and the control of physical and electrical processes.
- **Connect to your measurement and control application.** Through common industrial sensors, the HP 2240 accepts both analog and digital inputs and outputs, and several interrupt-driven inputs, to simplify interfacing with real-time processes.
- **Give simplified instructions to the HP 2240.** The powerful command set of the HP 2240 is easy to use. When you delegate real-time tasks from the computer, the HP 2240 holds the task instructions in memory and executes them in sequence without further computer interaction—freeing the computer for other operations.

The HP 2240 measurement and control processor, with a typical mix of analog and digital I/O cards, costs about $6000*. Low-cost laboratory data acquisition systems based on the HP 2240 and HP 9825 desk-top computer start at $15,000*. High-performance equipment control systems based on the HP 2240 and HP 1000 Model 20 computer system begin at $27,600*.

[2]HP's implementation of IEEE Standard 488-1975.

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC



Small wonder: a breadbox-size computer with up to 1 million bytes of fault-control, semiconductor memory—at 5¢ a byte.

For technically and/or environmentally demanding applications where processing reliability, or high speed, or both, are essential, HP 21MX and HP 1000 computers can now contain up to 1 megabyte of memory in modules of 128k bytes.

With up to 1 million bytes of fault-control semiconductor memory, HP's small computers can go to work in demanding applications where large or disc-based systems were previously needed:

- in rugged environments such as ships and airplanes, or in remote, unattended locations such as offshore oilwell platforms—applications where reliability is critical and downtime must be held to a schedule;
- in applications such as physics and electronics labs, where data must be acquired at speeds beyond those possible with a disc.

A new fault-control memory system uses 22-bit Hamming error correction code to ensure high reliability: Because the system automatically corrects all single-bit errors, programs can continue even if a memory chip malfunctions. Additionally, the system reports all double-bit errors and most errors of three bits or more. Fault-indicating LED's pinpoint failures at chip level. Maintenance can be performed on a scheduled rather than emergency basis, and unscheduled downtime is effectively avoided.

Reliability tests indicate that mean time between failures (MTBF) for an HP 21MX computer with 1 megabyte of high-density, fault-control memory is 6000 to 8000 hours—roughly a year without probability of failure.

The 128k byte high-density memory modules that make it all possible cost $6400* each, and can be used with 21MX K, M, and E series computers, and HP 1000 computer systems.

Here are prices for typical configured computers:

0.5 megabyte: An 8½-inch-high 21MX E Series computer with 512k bytes of memory, fully capable of running the supporting RTE software: $35,950*.

1 megabyte: A 12¼-inch-high E Series computer with 1024k bytes of memory: $59,800*.

1.8 megabytes: A 12¼-inch-high E Series computer with an optional memory extender adding 768k bytes, for a total of 1792k bytes of memory: $108,800*.

HEWLETT hp PACKARD

1504 Page Mill Road, Palo Alto, California 94304

For assistance call: Washington (301) 948-6370, Chicago (312) 255-9800, Atlanta (404) 955-1500, Los Angeles (213) 877-1282.

Mail to: Hewlett-Packard, 1504 Page Mill Road, Palo Alto, CA 94304.
Please send me further information on

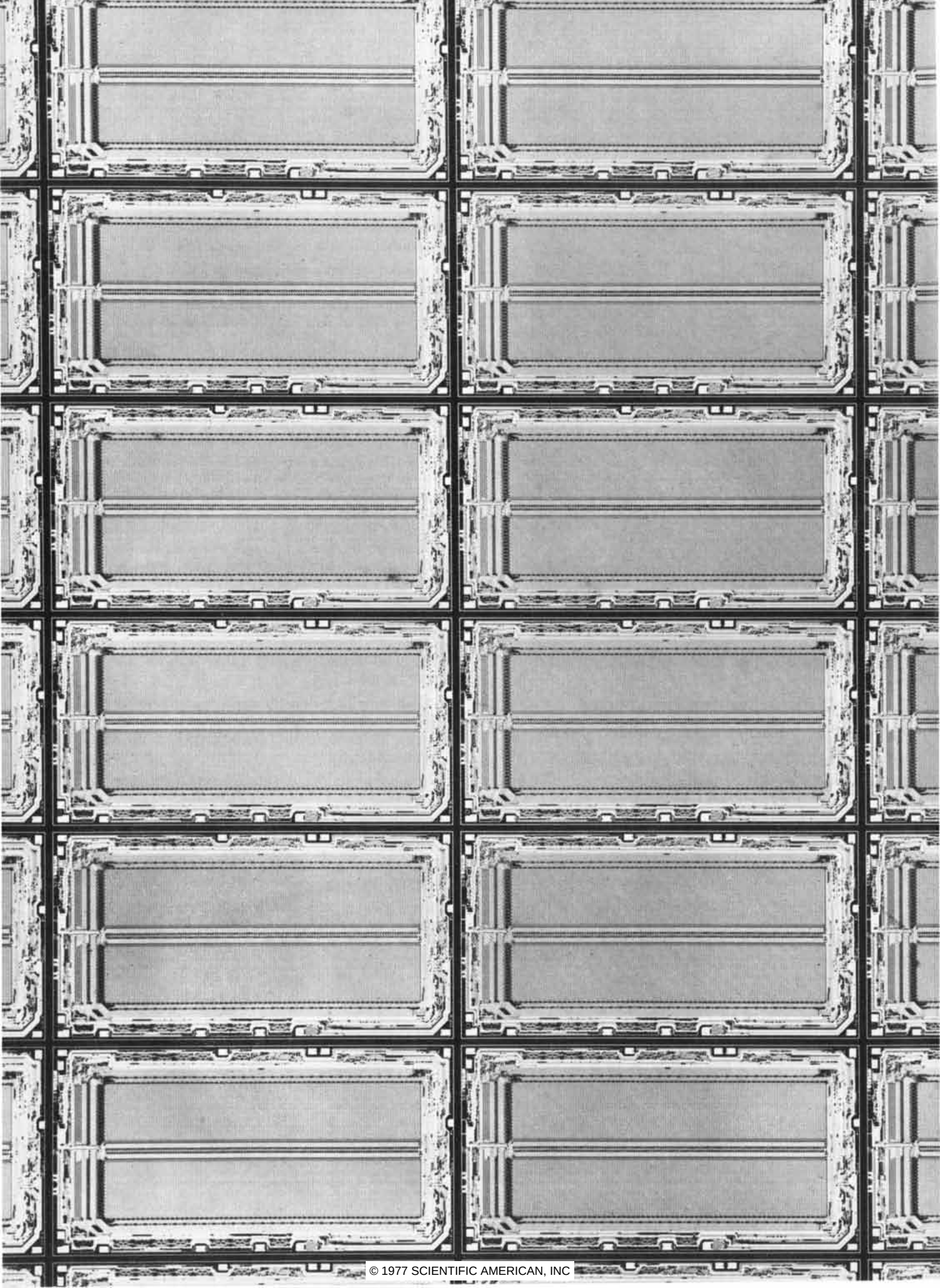
( ) HP-01
( ) HP 2240 measurement and control processor
( ) HP high-density memory module

Name _____
Company _____
Address _____
City _____ State _____ Zip _____

*Domestic U.S. prices only.

00748

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC



© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

The Fabrication of Microelectronic Circuits

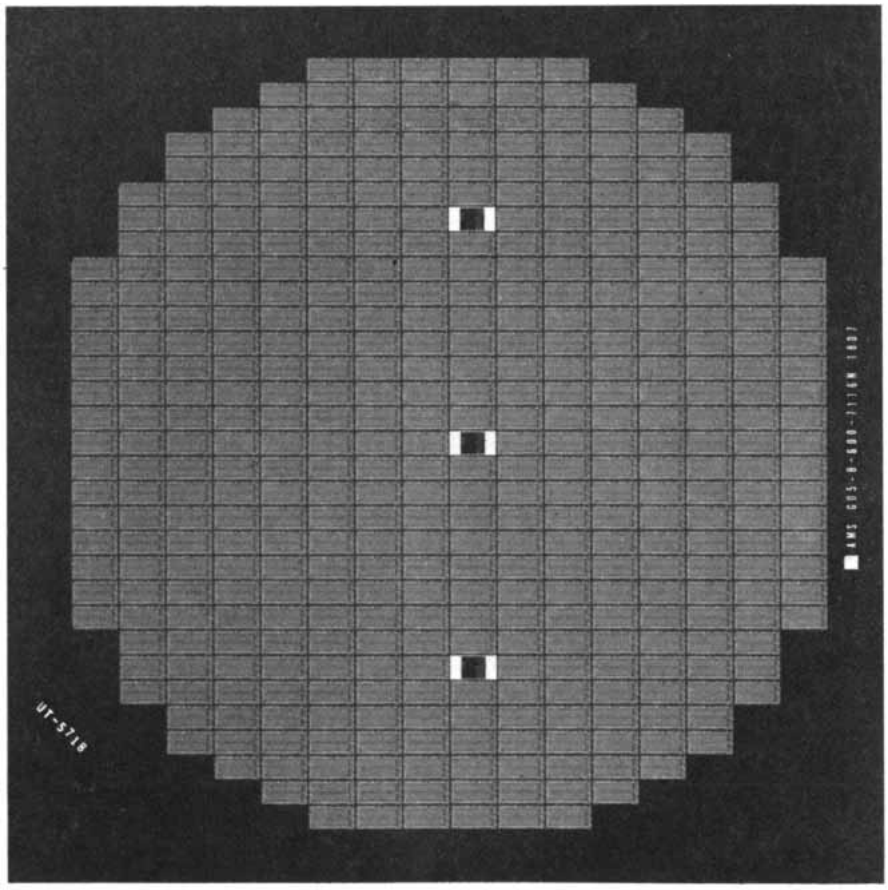
The patterns of integrated circuits are made in the large and then are put on the chip photographically. The objective of fabrication methods is the production of chips at the lowest cost per function

by William G. Oldham

The manufacture of large-scale integrated circuits has as its primary goal the lowest possible cost per electronic function performed. The main features of the fabrication processes adopted by the microelectronics industry can be best understood in terms of this goal. These features include the fabrication of many circuits at a time (an extraordinary example of mass production), the reduction of the circuits to the smallest possible size and the maximum simplification of the processing technology.

The dramatic reduction in the cost of microelectronic circuits achieved in the past few years has not resulted from any major new breakthrough in fabrication technology. Indeed, most of the basic manufacturing processes involved have been widely adopted in the industry for five years or more. The recent sharp drop in fabrication cost has been achieved during a period of general economic inflation. The cost of processing a "wafer" of silicon, the substrate on which the microelectronic circuits are made, has risen moderately, but the area of the wafers has increased more rapidly, approximately doubling every four years. Thus the processing cost per unit area has actually decreased. Meanwhile the space required for a given electronic function has shrunk by a factor of two every 18 months or so. This reduction in size has come not only from great ingenuity in designing simple circuits and simple technological processes for making them but also from the continuing miniaturization of the circuit elements and their interconnections. Moreover, the gradual elimination of defects in various manufacturing steps has resulted in a significant decrease in the net cost of fabrication. With a lower frequency of defects the yield of good circuits on a given wafer increases.

The current pace of developments in the manufacture of microelectronic circuits suggests that the progress in reducing production costs will continue. Virtually every stage of fabrication—from photolithography to packaging—is either in the midst of a significant advance or on the verge of one.



PHOTOMASK, a glass plate bearing the pattern for a single layer of integrated circuitry etched in a chromium film on its surface, is shown in silhouette in these two photographs, one reproduced actual size (*above*) and the other enlarged 10 diameters (*opposite page*). The photomask is used in the manufacture of a 16,384-bit random-access memory, a product of Intersil Inc.

A large-scale integrated circuit contains tens of thousands of elements, yet each element is so small that the complete circuit is typically less than a quarter of an inch on a side. The pure, single-crystal silicon wafers that bear the circuits are much larger: currently three or four inches in diameter. One of the key economies in the manufacture of microelectronic circuits is the simultaneous fabrication of hundreds of circuits side by side on a single wafer. An even greater scale of mass production is attained in several stages of manufacture by processing as many as 100 wafers together in a batch. Hence the cost of labor and equipment is shared by

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

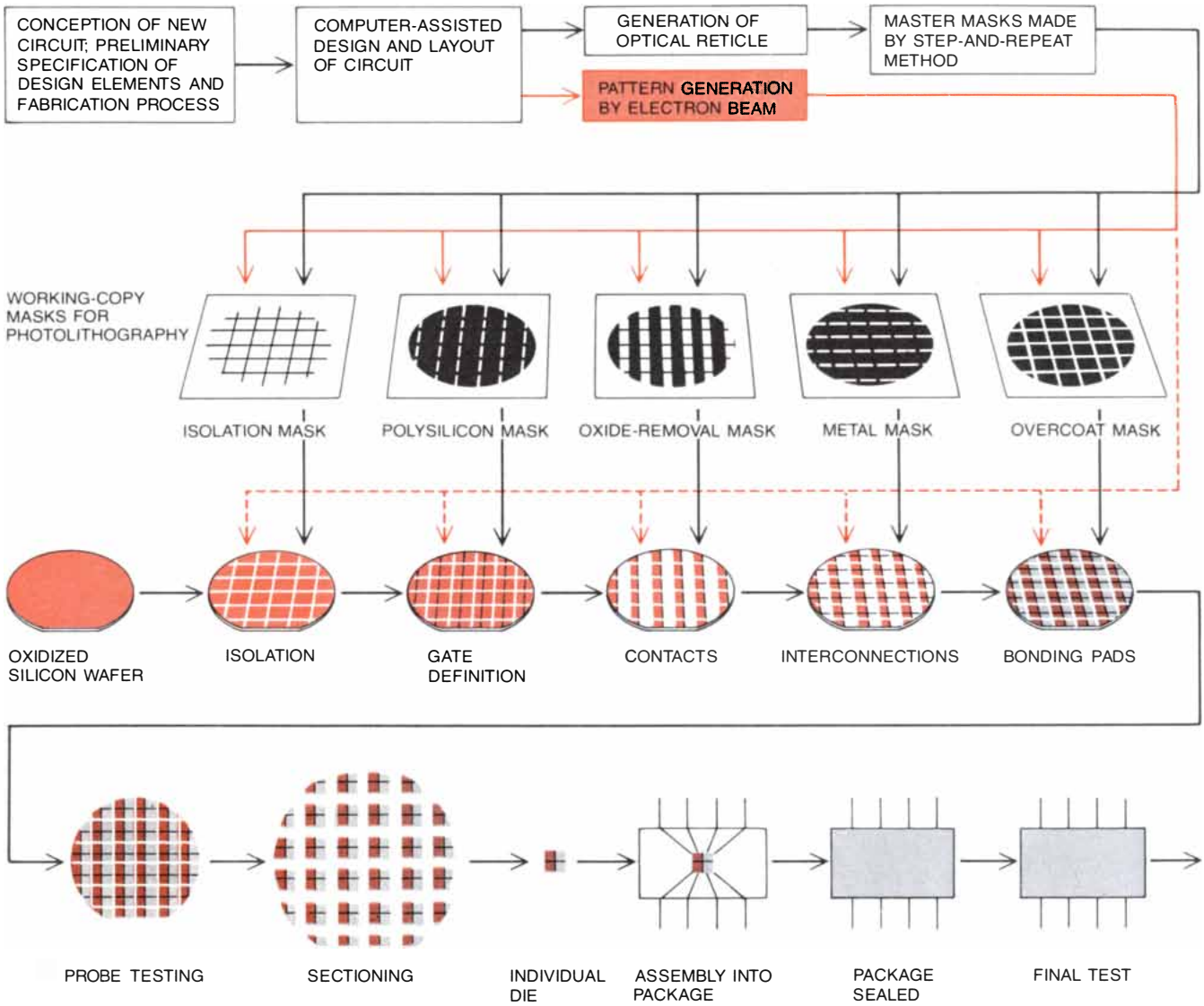
thousands of circuits, making possible the extremely low per-circuit cost that is characteristic of microelectronics.

After a wafer has passed through the fabrication stage it is sectioned into individual dice, or chips, each of which is a complete microelectronic circuit. Not all the circuits will work. Defects in a wafer cannot be avoided, and a single defect can ruin an entire circuit. For example, a scratch only a few micrometers long can break an electrical connection. It is impossible both physically and economically to repair the defective circuits; they are simply discarded.

As one might expect, the larger the die, the greater the chance for a defect to appear and render the circuit inoperative. The yield (the number of good circuits per wafer) decreases with the size of the dice, both because there are fewer places on a wafer for larger dice and because larger circuits are more likely to incorporate a defect.

At first it might appear most economical to build very simple, and therefore very small, circuits on the grounds that more of them would be likely to be good ones. It is true that small circuits are inexpensive; simple logic circuits are available for as little as 10 cents each. The costs of testing, packaging and assembling the completed circuits into an electronic system, however, must also be taken into account. Once the circuits are separated by breaking the wafer into dice, each die must be handled individually. From that point on the cost of any process such as packaging or testing is not shared by hundreds or thousands of circuits. In fact, for medium-scale integrated circuits packaging and testing costs often dominate the other production costs.

A typical microelectronic system con-



MANUFACTURE of a large-scale integrated circuit is outlined in this schematic diagram. The design of the circuit is often carried out with the aid of a computer, which helps to determine the most space-conserving layout of the circuit elements. The resulting layout is used to prepare a set of photomasks, each containing the pattern for a single layer. Usually this is done by first generating a tenfold enlargement of each layer, called a reticle, which is checked, corrected and regenerated until it is perfect. A photographically reduced image of the reticle is next reproduced hundreds of times in a "step and repeat" process to yield a set of final-size master masks, from which a large number of working plates are copied. (The electron-beam approach to pattern generation, represented here in color, is beginning to replace the optical method for producing the masks, thereby making it possible to eliminate two photographic steps and write the pattern directly on the working mask from the information stored in the computer memory; in time it is expected that electron-beam lithography will also be introduced directly into the fabrication of the circuits themselves.) The silicon "wafers" that serve as substrates for the circuits are obtained by sawing a long single crystal of silicon into thin slices, which are polished, cleaned and oxidized in preparation for the first patterning step. (A "flat" is ground along the length of the crystal so that each wafer will have a reference edge parallel to a natural crystal plane.) Following the five-mask fabrication process depicted in this greatly simplified example, the wafer is probe-tested to determine the good circuits, and the defective circuits are marked with an ink spot. Individual "dice" bearing good circuits are then selected from the sectioned wafer and assembled into packages. A final test is performed to ensure that the packaged circuit works properly.

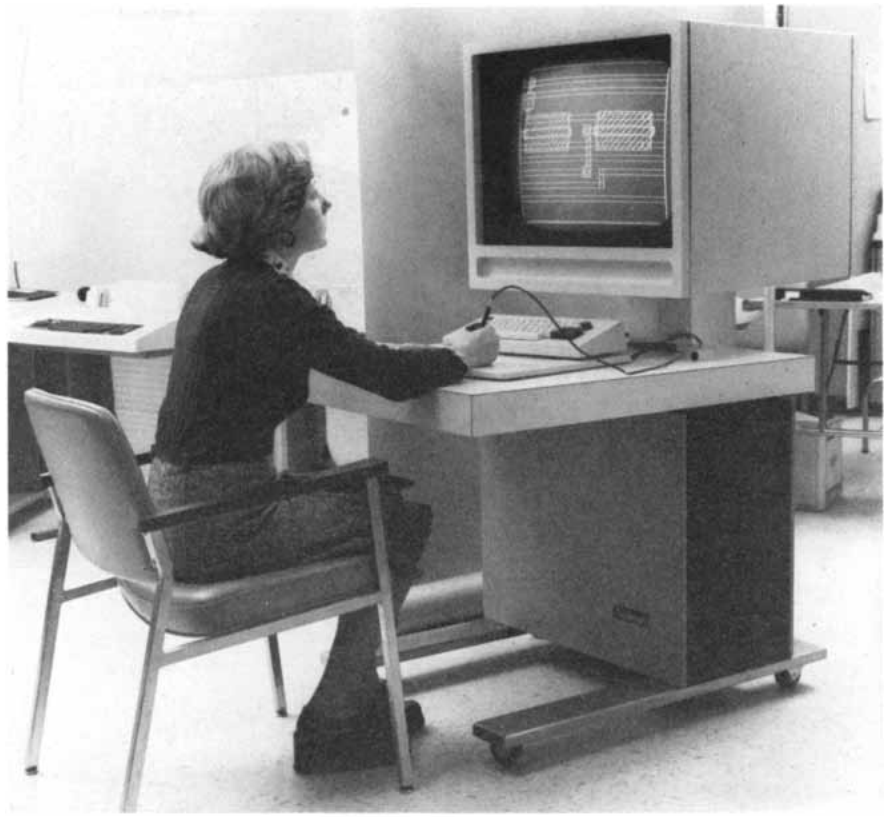
© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

tains both large-scale and medium-scale integrated circuits, and the cost of designing and constructing the system rises rapidly as the number of circuits increases. To minimize the total cost of the system one would like ideally to use either a small number of very powerful circuits (requiring that each circuit be large) or a large number of very cheap circuits (requiring that each circuit be small). In many complex systems the minimum total cost is achieved with the more expensive, larger circuits: ones costing closer to $10 each than to $1. If less powerful, cheaper circuits were to be used, many more would be needed for constructing the system, and testing and assembly costs would tend to build up. On the other hand, if too much electronic function is packed into a circuit, the large size of the die would result in such a low yield per wafer that the cost per circuit would become prohibitive.

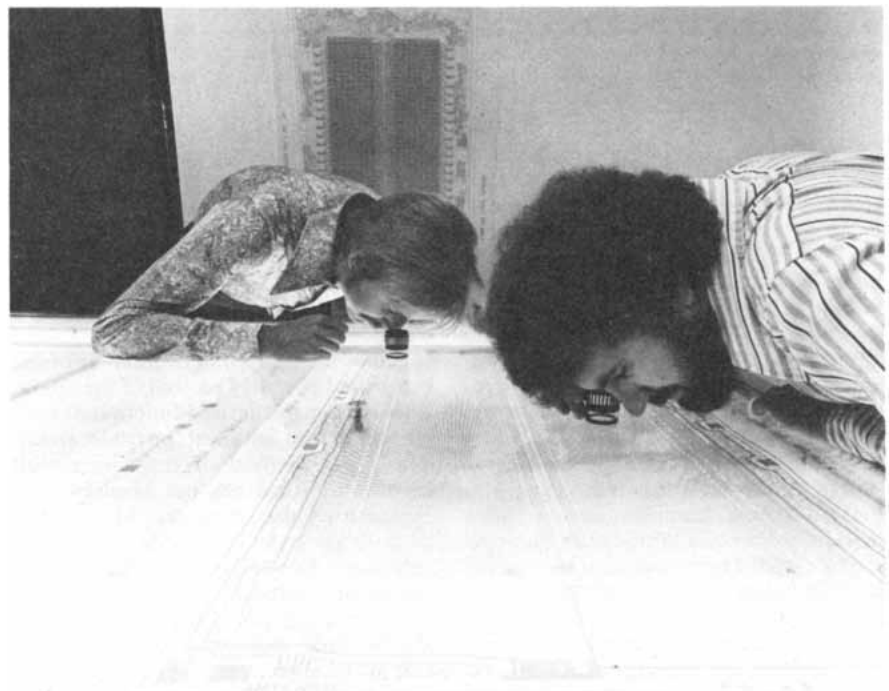
Assuming a typical selling price of $10 for a large-scale integrated circuit, one can work backward and estimate optimum die sizes. (The selling price of the circuit must of course be high enough to recover not only the direct costs of manufacture but also the costs of research and development, marketing and general overhead; thus it is reasonable to assume that the direct manufacturing cost is a good deal less, say about $5.) It costs roughly $100 just to process a silicon wafer, regardless of the size of the dice; when testing and packaging are included, the total manufacturing cost is perhaps doubled. Hence if the manufacturing cost of the particular integrated circuit in question is assumed to be $5, the optimum die size is one that yields about 40 good circuits per wafer. At present it is possible to achieve such a yield for dice that measure approximately five millimeters on a side. It is interesting to note that in this example a rather low percentage of the circuits on the wafer are good. The yield is only 40 good circuits out of the 250 that can be fabricated on a single wafer 100 millimeters in diameter.

The structure of an integrated circuit is complex both in the topography of its surface and in its internal composition. Each element of such a device has an intricate three-dimensional architecture that must be reproduced exactly in every circuit. The structure is made up of many layers, each of which is a detailed pattern. Some of the layers lie within the silicon wafer and others are stacked on the top. The manufacturing process consists in forming this sequence of layers precisely in accordance with the plan of the circuit designer.

Before examining how these layers are formed it will be helpful to take an overall look at the procedure by which an integrated circuit is transformed from a conception of the circuit designer to a physical reality. In the first stage



MICROCIRCUIT IS LAID OUT with the aid of a computer. The portion of the large-scale integrated circuit being laid out in this demonstration is studied by the circuit designer on the screen of a cathode-ray tube. By typing in commands or redrawing with a "light pen," circuit elements can be added, subtracted or moved. The terminal seen here is made by Applicon Inc.



LAYOUT IS CHECKED by scrutinizing a photomask image that is 500 times larger than the actual circuit. Usually a reticle representing a tenfold enlargement of the pattern for a single layer of the device is generated for this purpose on a glass photographic plate five inches square. In this case an image of the reticle that has been magnified an additional 50 times is checked to verify that every circuit element is correctly placed and is the right size. The master masks are prepared by projecting a reduced image of the reticle onto another photographic plate by means of a lens system capable of extremely high resolution. The circuit seen on the light table here is the same as the one shown in the first two photographs in this article.

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

WAFER-FABRICATION FACILITY needs to be kept extremely clean in order to avoid contaminating the manufacturing environment with even the tiniest dust particles. Special clothing is worn by the workers, and the air is continuously filtered and recirculated to keep the dust level to a minimum. This photograph of a "clean room" was made at a plant operated by Zilog Inc. in Cupertino, Calif.

of the development of a new microelectronic circuit the designers who conceive of the new product work at specifying the functional characteristics of the device. They also select the processing steps that will be required to manufacture it. In the next stage the actual design of the device begins: the size and approximate location of every circuit element are estimated. Much of this preliminary design work is done with the aid of computers.

A computer can simulate the operation of the circuit in much the same way that electronic television games simulate the action of a table-tennis game or a space war. The circuit designer monitors the behavior of the circuit voltages and adjusts the circuit elements until the desired behavior is achieved. Computer simulation is less expensive than assembling and testing a "breadboard" circuit made up of discrete circuit elements; it is also more accurate. The main advantage of simulation, however, lies in the fact that the designer can change a circuit element merely by typing in a correction on a keyboard, and he can immediately observe the effect of the modification on the behavior of the circuit.

The final layout giving the precise positions of the various circuit elements is also made with the aid of a computer. The layout designer works at a computer terminal, placing and moving the circuit elements while observing the layout magnified several hundred times on a cathode-ray-tube display. The layout specifies the pattern of each layer of the integrated circuit. The goal of the layout is to achieve the desired function of each circuit in the smallest possible space. The older method of drawing circuit layouts by hand has not been entirely replaced by the computer. Many parts of a large-scale integrated circuit are still drawn by hand before being submitted to the computer.

At each stage of this process, including the final stage when the entire circuit is completed, the layout is checked by means of detailed computer-drawn plots. Since the individual circuit elements can be as small as a few micrometers across, the checking plots must be greatly magnified; usually the plots are 500 times larger than the final size of the circuit.

The time required to complete the task of circuit design and layout varies greatly with the nature of the circuit. The most difficult circuits to design are microprocessors, and here the design and layout can take several years. Other devices, such as static memories with a largely repetitive pattern, can be designed and laid out more quickly, in some cases in only a few months.

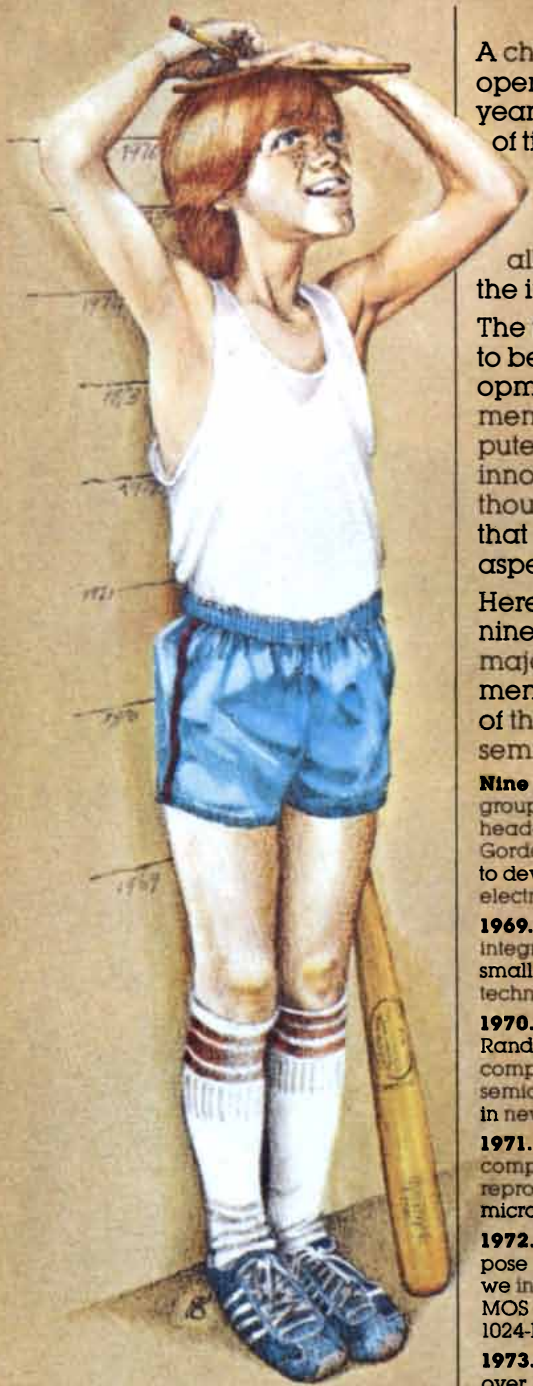
When the design and layout of a new circuit is complete, the computer memory contains a list of the exact position of every element in the circuit. From that description in the computer memory a set of plates, called photomasks, is prepared. Each mask holds the pattern for a single layer of the circuit. Since the circuits are so small, many can be fabricated side by side simultaneously on a single wafer of silicon. Thus each photomask, typically a glass plate about five inches on a side, has a single pattern repeated many times over its surface.

The manufacture of the photomasks is an interesting story in itself. Typically the process consists in first generating from the computer memory a complete pattern for each layer of the circuit. That is done by scanning a computer-controlled light spot across a photographic plate in the appropriate pattern.

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

Nine years of growth: microcomputers, memories and a look into the future.



A child born when Intel first opened its doors is now nine years old. In that short period of time, a new technology has come of age which may have a greater impact on man's productivity than all the gears and wheels of the industrial revolution.

The technology we're referring to began at Intel with the development of the semiconductor memory and the microcomputer. The results of these innovations can be seen in the thousands of "smart" products that are proliferating every aspect of our society.

Here is a brief look at the past nine years at Intel and some major technology achievements which created the age of the microcomputer and the semiconductor memory.

Nine years at Intel... In 1968, a small group of scientists and engineers headed by Dr. Robert Noyce and Dr. Gordon Moore form a company to develop LSI (large scale integration) electronic circuits.

1969. Intel develops a process to integrate thousands of transistors in a small "chip" of silicon with a new LSI technology called silicon gate MOS.

1970. Intel produces the first 1024-bit Random Access Memory (RAM) and computer manufacturers begin using semiconductor instead of core memories in new designs.

1971. We invent the 4-bit microcomputer and a UV erasable and reprogrammable memory that makes microcomputers easy to program.

1972. We invent the first general purpose 8-bit microcomputer. In memories, we introduce the first 5-volt n-channel MOS memory and the first high-speed 1024-bit static memory.

1973. We have learned to integrate over 10,000 transistors in a chip. We develop a powerful microprocessor (the 8080) and the first 4096-bit RAM.

1974. IBM computer users begin "adding on" Intel memory systems and we soon become the largest independent supplier of semiconductor memory systems.

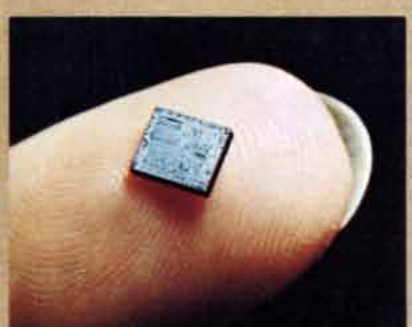
1975. We produce the first complete computer on a single printed circuit board, the first 16K RAM and the first 16K Charged Coupled Device (CCD).

1976. We develop the first single-chip 8-bit computer. This microcomputer chip contains over 20,000 transistors and adds intelligence to games, appliances and other very low cost products.

So far in 1977, we have introduced a new high-performance MOS process we call HMOS. This process significantly increases the speed of MOS memories well beyond what was thought possible for MOS devices. We also introduced the first 16K 5-volt EPROM and the next generation 8-bit microcomputer, the 8085.

The expanding memory

Since the early 70's, the semiconductor memory has replaced ferrite cores as the dominant data storage technology used in mainframe computers. And its use has expanded well beyond the computer. Over 1.6 trillion bits of semiconductor memory have been sold since 1970, and it is estimated that this will increase to a total of 85 trillion bits by 1985.



The first widely-used semiconductor memory was Intel's 1103, a 1024-bit random access memory (RAM). And, through a succession of technological firsts, such as the MOS n-channel silicon gate process and the dual poly-silicon gate process, Intel continued its technological leadership in semiconductor memories.

These innovations became the standard processes used throughout the industry for producing reliable semicon-

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

ductor memories. They also led to Intel's production of the first 4K RAM and the first 16K RAM. This latter device is 16 times more complex, only 2 times larger, 20 percent faster and costs 50 times less per bit than the 1K RAM introduced only seven years earlier.

Another significant memory technology pioneered by Intel was the development of the ultra-violet erasable and electrically reprogrammable memory (EPROM). The content of this memory device can only be erased by passing an ultra-violet light over it.

The EPROM has become an essential element in prototyping systems because of the ease with which the software designs can be changed.

Intel continues to advance the state-of-the-art in memories with the recent development of the high performance MOS process we call HMOS. This process increases the speed of MOS circuits by almost an order of magnitude while reducing power consumption substantially.

A microcomputer on every corner.

A microcomputer is a small computer where all the functions—CPU, memory, input and output and other essential tasks—are integrated onto one or more MOS LSI circuits.

When Intel invented the microcomputer in 1971, few realized its eventual impact on society. Today, microcomputers are everywhere—on street corners controlling traffic signals, in automobiles controlling emissions, increasing the reliability of blood analyzers and other scientific instruments, maintaining inventory control in plants, supermarkets and retail stores, distributing intelligence in data communications systems, increasing the fun and challenge of electronic games and hobby computers and expanding a whole world of "intelligent" machines.

Intel's microcomputer innovations are making computing devices inexpensive and small enough to put the power of what used to be a room full of computers into the palm of your hand at very low cost.

The most widely used microcomputer in the world today is the Intel 8080, with over a million units shipped since 1973.

And Intel's newest generations of microcomputers, the 8085 and single chip 8048 microcomputers, continue to expand the performance range and lower the cost of adding intelligence to any system.

In 1976, Intel introduced its first single board computers. Each is a complete computer system packaged on a small circuit board. They cut the time needed to develop new products and systems by 50 percent or more.

Intel's innovations in microcomputer peripheral LSI devices, development tools, software and kits are making it easier for more and more people to use microcomputers too. One need not be a computer systems engineer to take advantage of the world's most sophisticated computer building blocks.

The microcomputer is man's new electronic tool and it all began at Intel.

We're just beginning.

Intel is now the largest manufacturer of semiconductor memories and microcomputers in the world. And in an industry where innovation and change i a way of life, Intel continues to pace the industry with state-of-the-art products based on our dedication to advanced process technology.

Intel thrives on innovation, yet is committed to producing reliable, high technology products that can be made in large volume. Thus our motto, Intel delivers. It is this signature that is the ultimate tribute to our 8,000 employees at 16 sites on three continents.

At Intel, technology is our way of life. We are seeking continually to find better ways to make our products useful to more and more people.

intel delivers.

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

IMPORTED BY BROWNE VINTNERS, NEW YORK AND SAN FRANCISCO. AD PREPARED BY [illegible] INC.

Never buy a white Bordeaux by the bottle. Buy a crisp, white Bordeaux by the label.

B&G.
The B&G label.
250 years of wine making history from all the great wine regions of France: Bordeaux, The Loire Valley, Beaujolais, Côtes du Rhône and Burgundy.

Now, B&G brings you Pontet-Latour, the crisp white wine from Bordeaux.

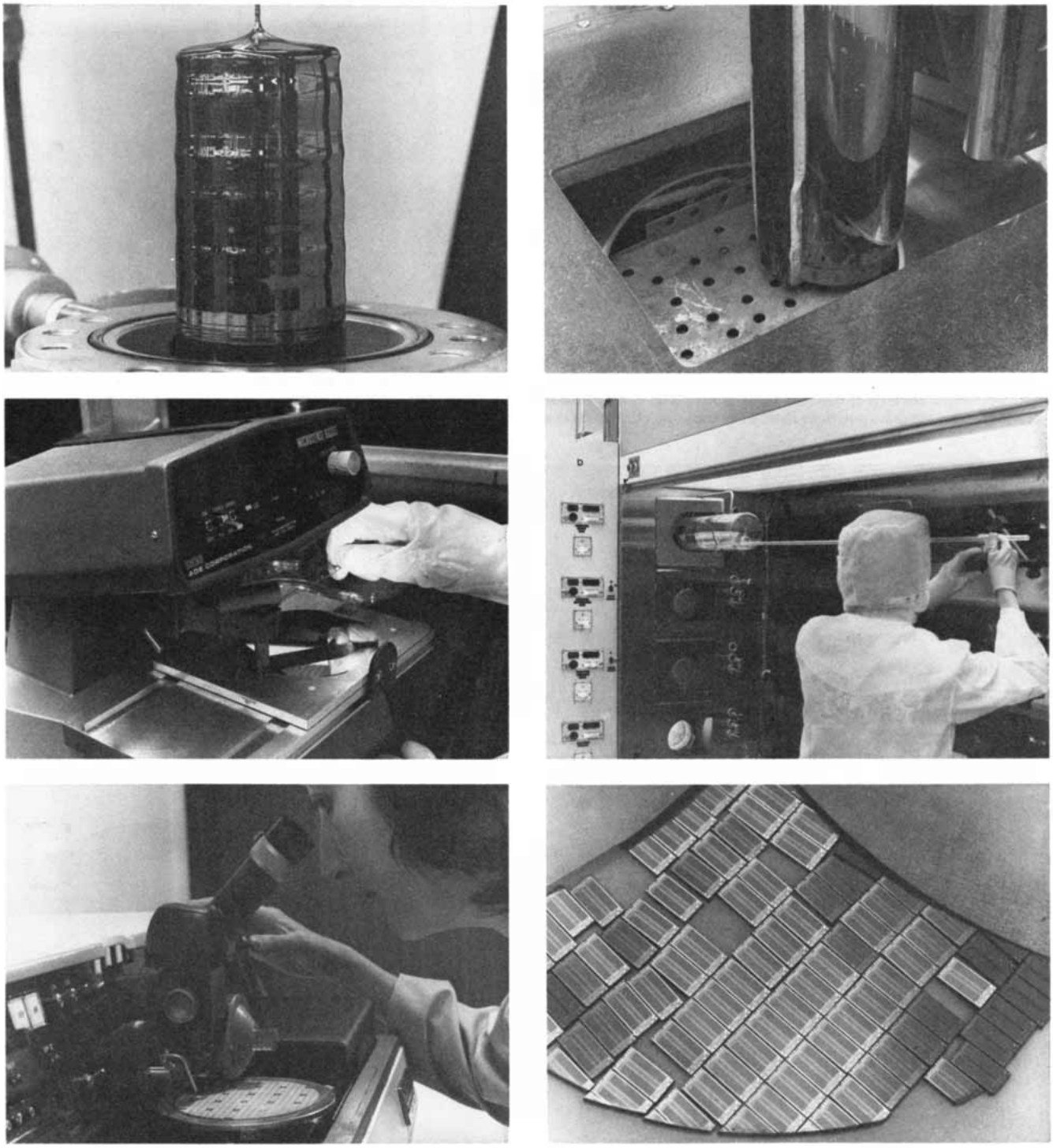
Elegant. Affordable. Buy it by the label.

B&G.

Letters of recommendation from France

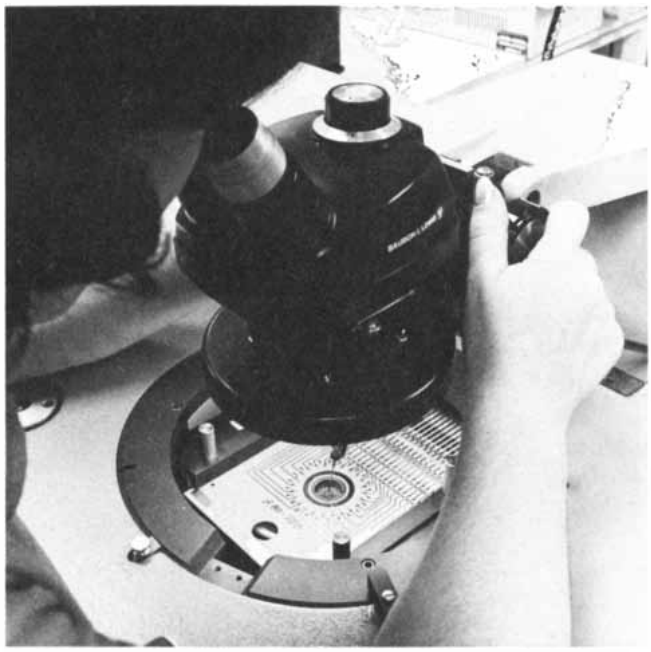
© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

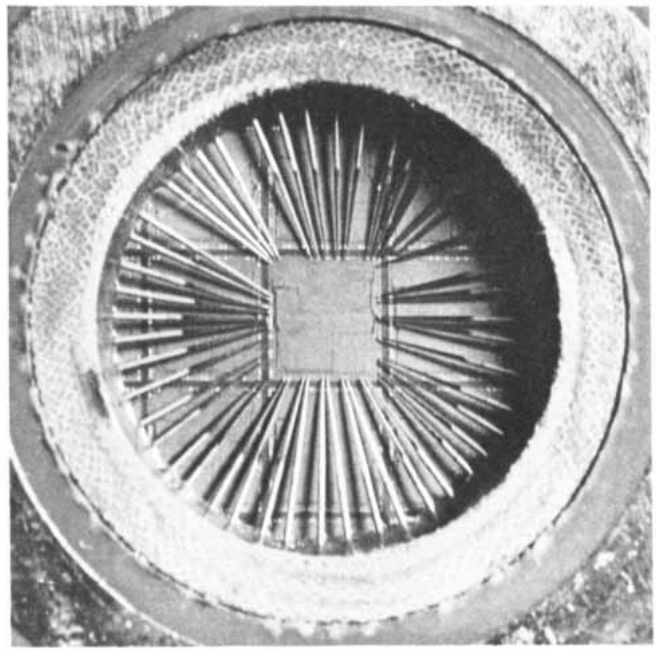
This primary pattern, called the reticle, is checked for errors and corrected or regenerated until it is perfect. Typically the reticle is 10 times the final size of the circuit. An image of the reticle that is one-tenth its original size is then projected optically on the final mask. The image is reproduced side by side hundreds of times in a process called "step and repeat." The constraints on both the mechanical system and the photographic system are demanding; each element must be correct in size and position to within about one micrometer. The original plate created by the step-and-repeat camera is copied by direct contact printing to produce a series of submasters. Each submaster serves in turn to produce a large number of replicas, called working plates, that will serve for the actual fabrication process. The working



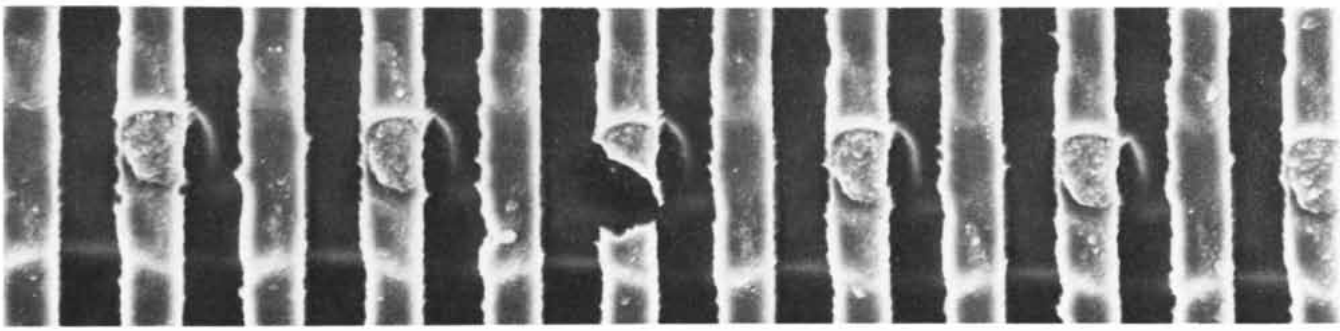
SIX STAGES in the fabrication of a microelectronic circuit are depicted in this sequence of photographs: growing a single-crystal ingot of "doped" silicon by withdrawing a small "seed" crystal of silicon from a quartz crucible containing pure molten silicon to which the desired dopant has been added (*top left*); slicing the precisely machined silicon crystal into thin wafers with a diamond-edged circular saw (*top right*); testing the smoothness of a polished wafer in a precision measuring device (*middle left*); forming a thin surface layer of silicon dioxide on a batch of wafers, shown being inserted into the oxidation furnace in a quartz "boat" (*middle right*); sawing grooves on the surface of the wafer prior to breaking the wafer into individual dice (*bottom left*); breaking the wafer into dice, each bearing a complete circuit (*bottom right*). The first three photographs were made in the Siltec Corporation's plant in Menlo Park, Calif. The last three were made at the Zilog facility. Numerous other processing steps, not shown here, are involved in building up the various circuit layers.

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

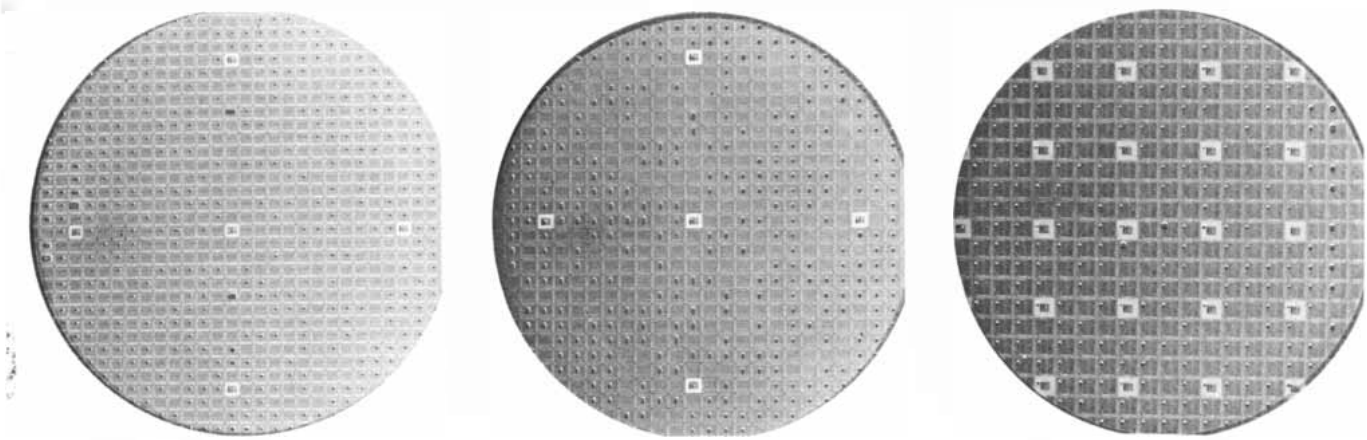




ELECTRICAL TESTING to distinguish good circuits from defective ones is carried out before the silicon wafer is broken into separate dice. An appropriate probe card carrying an array of extremely fine needlelike contacts is used for this purpose. The computer-controlled testing machine positions itself over each die, establishes contact with the circuit pads, tests the circuit and, if the circuit is defective, marks it with an ink spot to indicate that it should be discarded. The machine then steps to the next die and repeats the operation. Photograph at left shows an operator monitoring testing through a microscope; photograph at right shows closeup view of circuit being tested.



SINGLE DEFECT can ruin an entire microelectronic circuit. This scanning electron micrograph, made by William Roth of the Coates and Welter Instrument Co., shows a small portion of a 16,384-bit memory. A dust particle on the photomask used to define the aluminum layer has caused a break in an electrical connection. Aluminum strips are six micrometers wide. Magnification is 1,600 diameters.



EFFECT OF CIRCUIT SIZE ON YIELD is demonstrated for microcircuits of three different sizes. The wafers bearing the circuits all measure 100 millimeters in diameter, and all were manufactured in the same Zilog fabrication facility. The circuits on the wafers have been tested and the defective dice marked with an ink spot. Wafer at left contains 340 good circuits, each 10.2 square millimeters in area. Wafer at center contains 240 good circuits, each 13.7 square millimeters in area. Wafer at right contains 80 good circuits, each 22.9 square millimeters in area. (In practice the yield varies greatly from wafer to wafer even for the same type of circuit; these three wafers were selected to be representative of the general trend.) The number of good circuits on a wafer decreases rapidly with increasing circuit size, both because there are fewer places on a wafer for larger dice and because larger circuits are more likely to incorporate a defect.

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

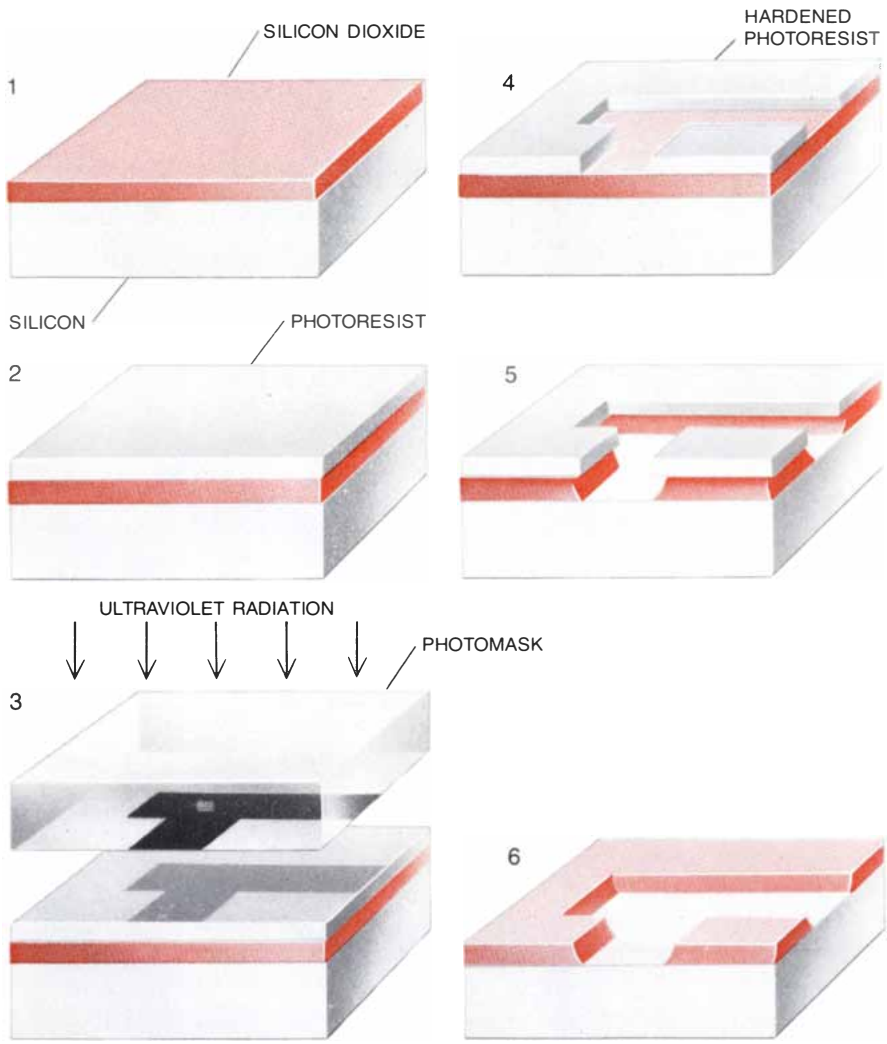
plate may be either a fixed image in an ordinary photographic emulsion or a much more durable pattern etched in a chromium film on a glass substrate.

A complete set of correct masks is the culmination of the design phase of the development of the microelectronic circuit. The plates are delivered to the wafer-fabrication facility, where they will be used to produce the desired sequence of patterns in a physical structure. This manufacturing facility receives silicon wafers, process chemicals and photomasks. A typical small facility employing 100 people can process several thousand wafers per week. Assuming that there are 50 working circuits per wafer, such a plant can produce five million circuits per year.

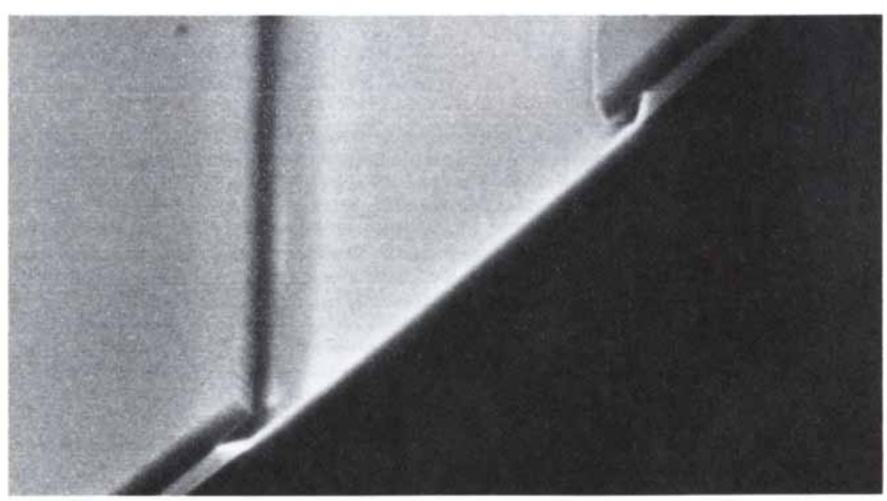
The inside of a wafer-fabrication facility must be extremely clean and orderly. Because of the smallness of the structures being manufactured even the tiniest dust particles cannot be tolerated. A single dust particle can cause a defect that will result in the malfunction of a circuit. Special clothing is worn to protect the manufacturing environment from dust carried by the human operators. The air is continuously filtered and recirculated to keep the dust level at a minimum. Counting all the dust particles that are a micrometer or more in diameter, a typical wafer-fabrication plant harbors fewer than 100 particles per cubic foot. For the purpose of comparison the dust level in a modern hospital is on the order of 10,000 particles per cubic foot.

The circuit manufacturer often buys prepared wafers of silicon ready for the first manufacturing step. The low price (less than $10) of a prepared wafer belies the difficulties encountered in its manufacture. Raw silicon is first reduced from its oxide, the main constituent of common sand. A series of chemical steps are taken to purify it until the purity level reaches 99.9999999 percent. A charge of purified silicon, say 10 kilograms, is placed in a crucible and brought up to the melting point of silicon: 1,420 degrees Celsius. It is necessary to maintain an atmosphere of purified inert gas over the silicon while it is melted, both to prevent oxidation and to keep out unwanted impurities. The desired impurities, known as dopants, are added to the silicon to produce a specific type of conductivity, characterized by either positive (*p* type) charge carriers or negative (*n* type) ones.

A large single crystal is grown from the melt by inserting a perfect single-crystal "seed" and slowly turning and withdrawing it. Single crystals three to four inches in diameter and several feet long can be pulled from the melt. The uneven surface of a crystal as it is grown is ground to produce a cylinder of standard diameter, typically either three inches or 100 millimeters (about four

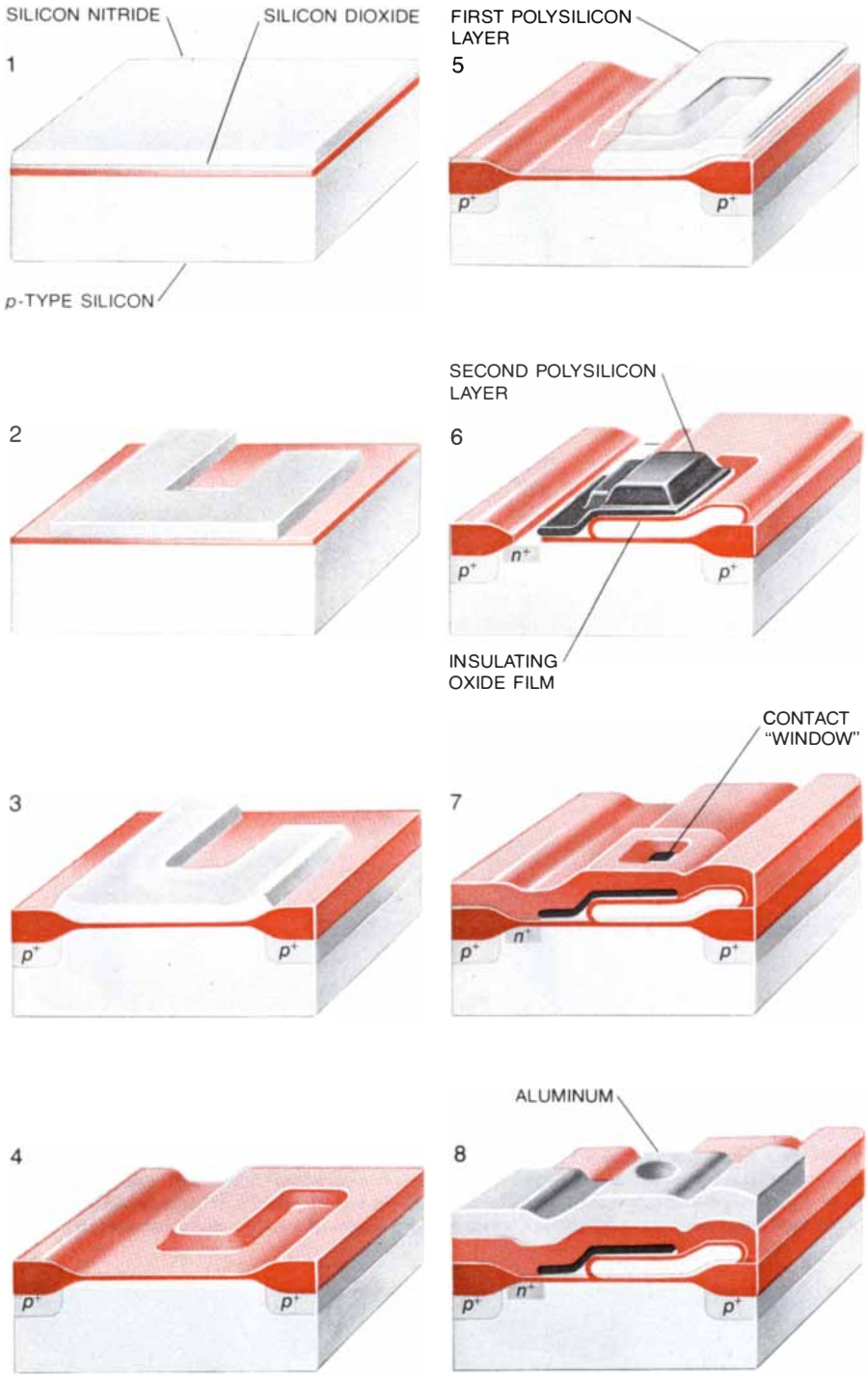


PHOTOLITHOGRAPHY is the process by which a microscopic pattern is transferred from a photomask to a material layer in an actual circuit. In this illustration a pattern is shown being etched into a silicon dioxide layer (*color*) on the surface of a silicon wafer. The oxidized wafer (*1*) is first coated with a layer of a light-sensitive material called photoresist (*2*) and then exposed to ultraviolet light through the photomask (*3*). The exposure renders the photoresist insoluble in a developer solution; hence a pattern of the photoresist is left wherever the mask is opaque (*4*). The wafer is next immersed in a solution of hydrofluoric acid, which selectively attacks the silicon dioxide, leaving the photoresist pattern and the silicon substrate unaffected (*5*). In the final step the photoresist pattern is removed by means of another chemical treatment (*6*).



TWO-LAYER STRUCTURE corresponding to step 5 in the top illustration on this page is seen in this scanning electron micrograph. The sample was cleaved to display this cross section just after the oxide layer was etched. Silicon appears black. Magnification is 10,000 diameters.

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC



COMPLETE FABRICATION SEQUENCE for a two-level *n*-channel (denoting negative charge carriers) polysilicon-gate metal-oxide-semiconductor (MOS) circuit element requires six masking steps. The first few process steps involve the selective oxidation of silicon with the aid of a film of silicon nitride, which acts as the oxidation mask. A thin film of silicon dioxide is grown over the entire wafer, and a layer of silicon nitride is deposited from a chemical vapor (*1*). The layer is selectively removed in a conventional photolithographic step in accordance with the pattern on the first mask (*2*). A *p*-type dopant (for example boron) is implanted using the silicon nitride film as a mask, followed by an oxidation step, resulting in a thick layer of silicon dioxide in the unmasked areas (*3*). The silicon nitride is then removed in a selective etchant that does not attack either silicon or silicon dioxide (*4*). Since silicon is consumed in the oxidation process, the thick oxide layer is partly recessed into the silicon substrate. The first layer of polycrystalline silicon is then deposited and patterned in the second masking step (*5*). A second insulating film of oxide is grown or deposited, followed by the deposition of the second polysilicon layer, which is in turn patterned in the third masking step (*6*). A short etch in hydrofluoric acid at this stage exposes certain regions to an implantation or diffusion of *n*-type dopant. A thick layer of silicon dioxide is deposited next, and contact "windows" are opened with the fourth mask (*7*). Finally a layer of aluminum is deposited and patterned in the fifth masking operation (*8*). The wafer will also receive a protective overcoating of silicon dioxide or silicon nitride (not shown); the fact that openings must be provided in this overcoating at the bonding pads accounts for sixth masking step. Vertical dimensions are exaggerated for clarity.

inches). The crystal is mounted in a fixture and cut into wafers with a thin high-speed diamond saw. In the finishing step the wafers are first smoothed on both sides by grinding and then are highly polished on one side. The final wafer is typically about half a millimeter thick. The final steps must also be carried out in an absolutely clean environment. There can be no defects, polishing damage, scratches or even chemical impurities on the finished surface.

The dominant role of silicon as the material for microelectronic circuits is attributable in large part to the properties of its oxide. Silicon dioxide is a clear glass with a softening point higher than 1,400 degrees C. It plays a major role both in the fabrication of silicon devices and in their operation. If a wafer of silicon is heated in an atmosphere of oxygen or water vapor, a film of silicon dioxide forms on its surface. The film is hard and durable and adheres well. It makes an excellent insulator. The silicon dioxide is particularly important in the fabrication of integrated circuits because it can act as a mask for the selective introduction of dopants. Convenient thicknesses of silicon dioxide can be grown at temperatures in the range between 1,000 and 1,200 degrees C. The exact thickness can be accurately controlled by selecting the appropriate time and temperature of oxidation. For example, a layer of oxide a tenth of a micrometer thick will grow in one hour at a temperature of 1,050 degrees C. in an atmosphere of pure oxygen. A layer five times thicker will grow in the same time and at the same temperature in steam.

An important aspect of the oxidation process is its low cost. Several hundred wafers can be oxidized simultaneously in a single operation. The wafers are loaded into slots in a quartz "boat," separated by only a few millimeters. The high-temperature furnace has a cylindrical heating element surrounding a long quartz tube. A purified stream of an oxygen-containing gas passes through the tube. The boats of wafers are loaded into the open end and slowly pushed into the hottest part of the furnace. The temperature in the process zone is controlled to an accuracy of better than one degree C. Often the entire procedure is supervised by a computer. A small process-control computer monitors the temperature, directs the insertion and withdrawal of the wafers and controls the internal environment of the furnace.

The fabrication of integrated circuits requires a method for accurately forming patterns on the wafer. The microelectronic circuit is built up layer by layer, each layer receiving a pattern from a mask prescribed in the circuit design. The photoengraving process known as photolithography, or simply masking, is employed for the purpose.

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

The most basic masking step involves the etching of a pattern into an oxide. An oxidized wafer is first coated with photoresist, a light-sensitive polymeric material. The coating is laid down by placing a drop of the photoresist dissolved in a solvent on the wafer and then rapidly spinning the wafer. A thin liquid film spreads over the surface and the solvent evaporates, leaving the polymeric film. A mild heat treatment is given to dry out the film thoroughly and to enhance its adhesion to the silicon dioxide layer under it.

The most important property of the photoresist is that its solubility in certain solvents is greatly affected by exposure to ultraviolet radiation. For example, a negative photoresist cross-links and polymerizes wherever it is exposed. Thus exposure through a mask followed by development (washing in the selective solvent) results in the removal of the film wherever the mask was opaque. The photoresist pattern is further hardened after development by heating.

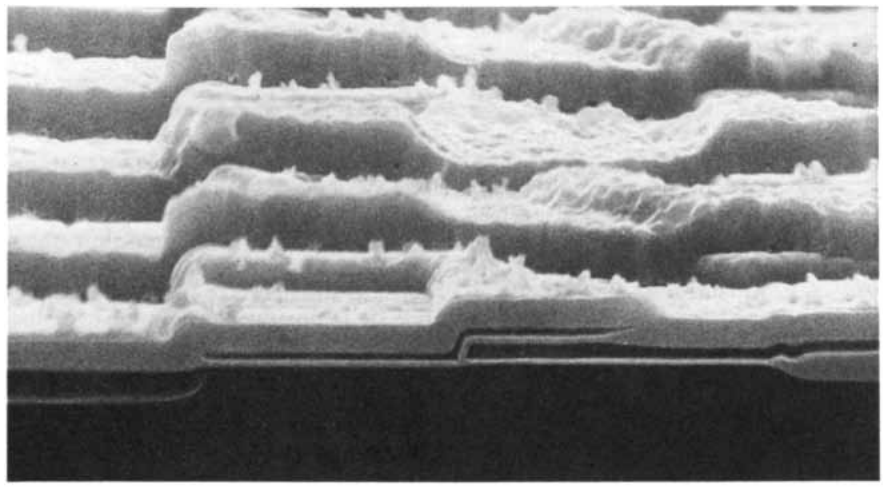
The wafer, with its photoresist pattern, is now placed in a solution of hydrofluoric acid. The acid dissolves the oxide layer wherever it is unprotected, but it does not attack either the photoresist or the silicon wafer itself. After the acid has removed all the silicon dioxide from the exposed areas the wafer is rinsed and dried, and the photoresist pattern is removed by another chemical treatment.

Other films are patterned in a similar way. For example, a warm solution of phosphoric acid selectively attacks aluminum and therefore can serve to pattern an aluminum film. Often an intermediate masking layer is needed when the photoresist cannot stand up to the attack of some particular etching solution. For example, polycrystalline silicon films are often etched in a particularly corrosive mixture containing nitric acid and hydrofluoric acid. In this case a film of silicon dioxide is first grown on the polycrystalline silicon. The silicon dioxide is patterned in the standard fashion and the photoresist is removed. The pattern in the silicon dioxide can now serve as a mask for etching the silicon film under it, because the oxide is attacked only very slowly by the acid mixture.

Photolithography is in many ways the key to microelectronic technology. It is involved repeatedly in the processing of any device, at least once for each layer in the finished structure. An important requirement of the lithographic process is that each pattern be positioned accurately with respect to the layers under them. One technique is to hold the mask just off the surface and to visually align the mask with the patterns in the wafer. The machine that holds the wafer and mask for this operation can be adjusted to an accuracy of one or two micrometers. After perfect alignment is achieved the mask is pressed into contact with the wafer. The mask is then flooded with ultraviolet radiation to expose the photoresist. The space between the wafer and the mask is often evacuated to achieve intimate contact; atmospheric pressure squeezes the wafer and the mask together. According to whether a high vacuum or a moderate one is used, the process is called "hard" or "soft" contact printing. In another variation, proximity printing, the mask is held slightly above the wafer during the exposure.

The variations in the masking process arise from the need to print very small features with no defects in the pattern. If the mask were to be positioned very far from the surface, diffraction of the ultraviolet radiation passing through the mask would cause the smaller features to blur together. Thus hard contact would be preferred. On the other hand, small particles on the wafer or the mask are abraded into the mask when it is pressed against the wafer. Hence the masks can be used for only a few exposures before the defects accumulate to an intolerable level. A masking technique is chosen that is appropriate to the particular technology. Depending on the flatness of the wafer and the mask, and on the type of mask employed, a technique is chosen that gives reasonable mask life and sufficient resolution to print the smallest circuit elements in the device.

A recent trend has been toward the technique known as projection alignment, in which the image of the mask is projected onto the wafer through an optical system. In this case mask life is virtually unlimited. It is only in the past few years, however, that optics capable of meeting the photolithographic requirements for fabricating integrated circuits have become available. The fact that the wafers increase in size every few years is a continuing problem, and the task of designing optics capable of forming an accurate image over the larger area is becoming more difficult. Recent projection aligners, however, circumvent the extreme difficulty of constructing a lens capable of resolving micrometer-sized features over an area of many square inches. A much smaller area, on the order of one square centimeter, is exposed, and the exposure is repeated by either stepping or scanning the image over the wafer.



CROSS SECTION of a 16,384-bit microelectronic memory circuit manufactured by means of the two-level *n*-channel polysilicon-gate MOS method is seen in this scanning electron micrograph. The structure corresponds to the final step in the illustration on the opposite page.

Active circuit elements such as metal-oxide-semiconductor (MOS) transistors and bipolar transistors are formed in part within the silicon substrate. To construct these elements it is necessary to selectively introduce impurities, that is, to create localized *n*-type and *p*-type regions by adding the appropriate dopant atoms. There are two techniques for selectively introducing dopants into the silicon crystal: diffusion and ion implantation.

If silicon is heated to a high temperature, say 1,000 degrees C., the impurity atoms begin to move slowly through the crystal. Certain key impurities (boron and phosphorus) move much more slowly through silicon dioxide than they do through silicon itself. This important fact enables one to employ thin oxide patterns as impurity masks. For example, a boat of wafers can be placed in a furnace at 1,000 degrees in an atmosphere containing phosphorus. The phosphorus enters the silicon wherever it is unprotected, diffusing slowly into the bulk of the wafer. After enough impurity atoms have accumulated the wafers are removed from the furnace, and solid-state diffusion effectively ceases. Of course, every time the wafer is reheated the impurities again begin to diffuse; hence all the planned heat treatments must be considered in designing a process to achieve a specific depth of diffusion. The important variables con-

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

trolling the depth to which impurities diffuse are time and temperature. For example, a layer of phosphorus one micrometer deep can be diffused in about an hour at 1,100 degrees.

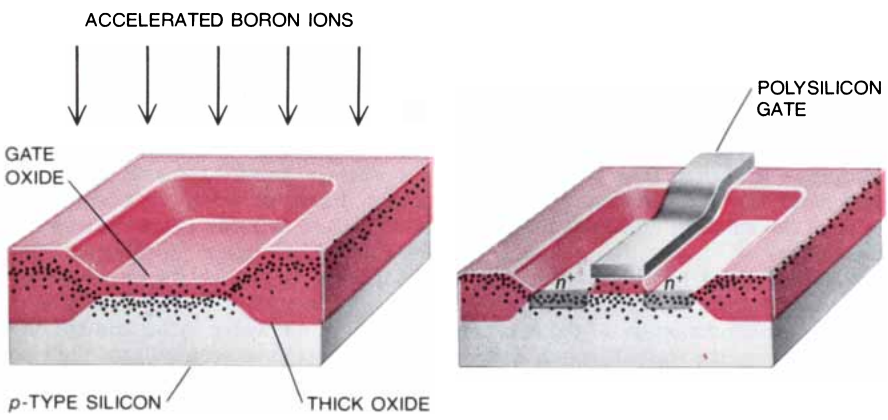
To achieve maximum control most diffusions are performed in two steps. The predeposit, or first, step takes place in a furnace whose temperature is selected to achieve the best control of the amount of impurity introduced. The temperature determines the solubility of the dopant in the silicon, just as the temperature of warm water determines the solubility of an impurity such as salt. After a comparatively short predeposit treatment the wafer is placed in a second furnace, usually at a higher temperature. This second heat treatment, the "diffusion drive-in" step, is selected to achieve the desired depth of diffusion.

In the formation of *pn* junctions by solid-state diffusion the impurities diffuse laterally under the oxide mask about the same distance as the depth of the junction. The edge of the *pn* junction is therefore protected by a layer of silicon dioxide. This is an important feature of the technique, because silicon dioxide is a nearly ideal insulator, and many of the electronic devices will not tolerate any leakage at the edge of the junction.

Another selective doping process, ion implantation, has been developed as a means of introducing impurities at room temperature. The dopant atoms are ionized (stripped of one or more of their electrons) and are accelerated to a high energy by passing them through a potential difference of tens of thousands of volts. At the end of their path they strike the silicon wafer and are embedded at various depths depending on their mass and their energy. The wafer can be selectively masked against the ions either by a patterned oxide layer, as in conventional diffusion, or by a photoresist pattern. For example, phosphorus ions accelerated through a potential of 100,000 volts will penetrate the photoresist to a depth of less than half a micrometer. Wherever they strike bare silicon they penetrate to an average depth of a tenth of a micrometer. Thus even a one-micrometer layer of photoresist can serve as a mask for the selective implantation of phosphorus.

As the accelerated ions plow their way into the silicon crystal they cause considerable damage to the crystal lattice. It is possible to heal most of the damage, however, by annealing the crystal at a moderate temperature. Little diffusion takes place at the annealing temperature, so that the ion-implantation conditions can be chosen to obtain the desired distribution. For example, a very shallow, high concentration of dopant can be conveniently achieved by ion implantation. A more significant feature of the technique is the possibility of accurately controlling the concentration of the dopant. The ions bombarding the crystal each carry a charge, and by measuring the total charge that accumulates the number of impurities can be precisely determined. Hence ion implantation is used whenever the doping level must be very accurately controlled. Often ion implantation simply replaces the predeposit step of a diffusion process. Ion implantation is also used to introduce impurities that are difficult to predeposit from a high-temperature vapor. For example, the current exploration of the use of arsenic as a shallow *n*-type dopant in MOS devices coincides with the availability of suitable ion-implantation equipment.

A unique feature of ion implantation is its ability to introduce impurities through a thin oxide. This technique is particularly advantageous in adjusting the threshold voltage of MOS transistors. Either *n*-type or *p*-type dopants can be implanted through the gate oxide, resulting in either a decrease or an increase of the threshold voltage of the device. Thus by means of the ion-implantation technique it is possible to fabricate several different types of MOS transistors on the same wafer.



ION IMPLANTATION is employed to place a precisely controlled amount of dopant (in this case boron ions) below the gate oxide of an MOS transistor. By choosing a suitable acceleration voltage the ions can be made to just penetrate the gate oxide but not the thicker oxide (*left*). After the boron ions are implanted polycrystalline silicon is deposited and patterned to form the gate regions of the transistor. A thin layer of the oxide is then removed, and the source and drain regions of the transistor are formed by the diffusion of an *n*-type impurity (*right*).

The uppermost layers of integrated circuits are formed by depositing and patterning thin films. The two most important processes for the deposition of thin films are chemical-vapor deposition and evaporation. The polycrystalline silicon film in the important silicon-gate MOS technology is usually laid down by means of chemical-vapor deposition. Silane gas (SiH_4) decomposes when it is heated, releasing silicon and hydrogen. Accordingly when the wafers are heated in a dilute atmosphere of silane, a uniform film of polycrystalline silicon slowly forms on the surface. In subsequent steps the film is doped, oxidized and patterned.

It is also possible to deposit insulating films such as silicon dioxide or silicon nitride by means of chemical-vapor deposition. If a source of oxygen such as carbon dioxide is present during the decomposition of silane, silicon dioxide is formed. Similarly, silicon nitride is grown by decomposing silane in the presence of a nitrogen compound such as ammonia.

Evaporation is perhaps the simplest method of all for depositing a thin film, and it is commonly employed to lay down the metallic conducting layer in most integrated circuits. The metallic charge to be evaporated, usually aluminum, is placed in a crucible, and the wafers to be coated are placed above the crucible in a movable fixture called a planetary. During evaporation the wafers are rotated in order to ensure the maximum uniformity of the layer. The motion of the planetary also wobbles the wafers with respect to the source in order to obtain a continuous aluminum film over the steps and bumps on the surface created by the preceding photolithographic steps. After a glass bell jar is lowered over the planetary device and a high vacuum is established the aluminum charge is heated by direct bombardment with high-energy electrons. A pure aluminum film, typically about a micrometer thick, is deposited on the wafer.

In the fabrication of a typical large-scale integrated circuit there are more thin-film steps than diffusion steps. Therefore thin-film technology is probably more critical to the overall yield and performance of the circuits than the diffusion and oxidation steps are. In a recent development a thin film is even employed to select the areas on a wafer that are to be oxidized. The compound silicon nitride has the property that it oxidizes much more slowly than silicon. A layer of silicon nitride can be vapor-deposited, patterned and used as an oxidation mask. The surface that results is

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

STEINWAY CONCERT GRAND – MODEL D

Steinway builds only one piano.
It is built in several models, several sizes and at various prices. All bear the Steinway name and trademark.
There is no second line.

STEINWAY GRAND – MODEL M

STEINWAY VERTICAL – HEPPLEWHITE

There is no lower level of finish – no technical compromise designed to "bring an instrument in" for a lower price.

The grandest grand and the smallest upright are built in the same factory by the same practiced hands, drawing on the same stock of raw materials.

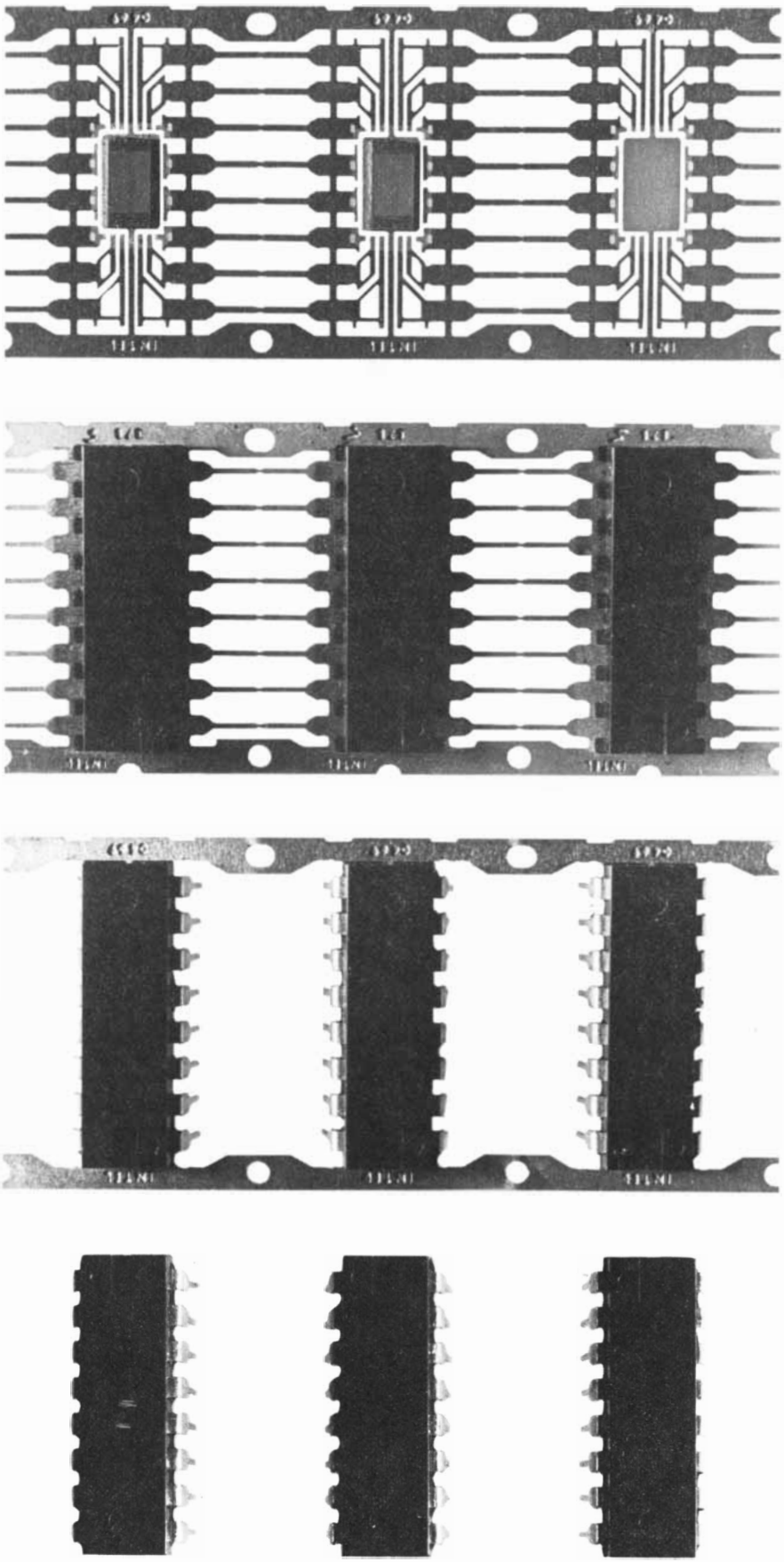
Biggest and smallest share the same patented features – features which cannot be found in other pianos.

From beginning to end every Steinway is created the equal of every other Steinway...which is to say that all Steinways are created superior to any other piano you can buy.

For literature about them write to one of them: John H. Steinway, Steinway & Sons, Steinway Hall, 109 W. 57th St., New York 10019.

All Steinways® are created equal.

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC



PACKAGING, the final step in the manufacture of a microelectronic circuit, is represented by this sequence of photographs. The dice bearing the finished circuits are first fastened to a metal stamping. Fine wire leads are connected from the bonding pads of the dice to the electrodes of the package; a plastic cover is molded around each die, and the units are separated. The components portrayed in the photographs were supplied by the Intel Corporation.

much flatter than the surface if the thick oxide is grown everywhere and selectively removed. For *n*-channel MOS devices there is the additional advantage that an ion-implantation step involving boron can be added just before the oxidation step, relying on the nitride pattern as a mask. This procedure results in a heavily doped *p*-type region located precisely under the oxide, which acts as an obstacle to the formation of channels from adjacent elements in the device.

This "channel stopper" diffusion step is necessary in high-performance *n*-channel MOS technology. Without selective oxidation a special masking step would have to be added. The spacing between elements would then necessarily be larger; hence selective oxidation leads to greater circuit density. Bipolar integrated circuits also benefit greatly from the use of selective oxidation. By replacing the conventional diffused isolation with oxide isolation the space taken up by one bipolar transistor is reduced by more than a factor of four.

The wafer-fabrication phase of manufacture ends with an electrical test. Each die on the wafer is probed to determine whether it functions correctly. The defective dice are marked with an ink spot to indicate that they should be discarded. A computer-controlled testing machine quickly tests each circuit, steps to the next one and performs the inking without human intervention. It can also keep accurate statistics on the number of good circuits per wafer, their location and the relative incidence of various types of failure. Such information is helpful in finding new ways to improve the yield of good circuits.

The completed circuit must undergo one last operation: packaging. It must be placed in some kind of protective housing and have connections with the outside world. There are many types of packages, but all have in common the fact that they are much larger and stronger than the silicon dice themselves. First the wafer is sectioned to separate the individual chips, usually by simply scribing between the chips and breaking the wafer along the scribe lines. The good circuits are bonded into packages, and they are connected to the electrodes leading out of the package by fine wires. The package is then sealed, and the device is ready for final testing. The packaged circuit goes through an exhaustive series of electrical tests to make sure that it functions perfectly and will continue to do so reliably for many years.

After the individual chips are obtained from the wafer the cost per manufacturing step rises enormously. No longer is the cost shared among many circuits. Accordingly automatic handling during packaging and testing must be introduced wherever possible. The traditional cost-saving technique has

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

CHALLENGE

The miracle of the microprocessor (MPU) lies in its performance, size, and price rather than its technology. It takes an effort of the imagination to realize that today's under $25 scientific calculator with memory can accomplish as much as the $1,000,000 vacuum tube computer of the early 50's. In addition, because of the MPU's small size and low price, it can be used in dedicated applications, which until now required costly interconnected and fixed hard-wired logic, difficult to modify. In this respect, the MPU is a whole new world. The Metamorphoses of Ovid can't hold a candle to the transformations of the MPU. Whatever the application, the MPU hardware remains the same, only the program changes.

"About half the world's scientists and technicians are today engaged in improving existing weapons and developing new ones."

This remarkable device is presented to the world at a time when there is reason to believe that we are moving away from a society in which status depends on what Thorstein Veblen called "conspicuous consumption" towards a society based on conspicuous conservation. The era of conspicuous waste, the so-called "throwaway society," has reached the end of its tether. (It's worthy of note that young people anticipated the new society by making old cars and used clothing "in" things. Jeans and work clothes are becoming "chic" and acceptable for all occasions.)

We know now that the energy resources stored in the earth are limited and not renewable in our lifetime or in the centuries ahead. Simple extrapolation indicates depletion of present domestic oil and gas reserves early in the next century. Water and air, once classified as free, have become precious commodities. A gallon of drinking water may soon cost more than a gallon of gasoline. Until recently, there was little economic reason to conserve or recycle our resources. But now it is no longer a question of dollars, it's a question of survival. A new perspective is taking over in assessing present energy usage, and from this perspective it is apparent that about 40% of all energy used is wasted. How to control, adapt, and cooperate in the use of energy may be the answer to our survival.

"Every home, factory, public building, as well as every automobile and appliance can be controlled efficiently with an MPU chip."

Which brings us back to the MPU, a flexible, economical, and practical tool that can help solve many of the problems associated with energy conservation. Every home, factory, public building, as well as every automobile and appliance can be controlled efficiently with an MPU chip. The result would be a huge saving in energy. Furthermore, the MPU is a dream product which defies inflation by going down in price almost monthly. It's a mistake to assume that conservation always implies cutting down or doing without. Not so. Ten years ago a 19" color TV set used 375 watts, today a 19" set consumes only 89 watts. Even our automobiles have upped their fuel mileage by almost 50% in just a few years. The MPU can function ideally by eliminating waste and retaining function.

What is most disturbing, even shocking, is the slowness of the scientific community to adopt the MPU in the battle to conserve energy. The greatest interest in MPU's has come from the non-scientific areas. The creative people in the entertainment and consumer fields have been among the first to recognize its potential and have flooded the market with MPU-based pinball games, TV games, microwave ovens, CB equipment, sewing machines, cash registers, etc. The use of MPU's in the industrial and scientific areas is shockingly lagging behind these other, aggressive fields.

The scientific community must take up the challenge and become the leader in the development of systems, projects, and products that control, monitor, manage, and conserve our resources. On noting that a recent winner in our MPU contest was an engineer turned farmer who designed a complete irrigation system based on an MPU, we

"A gallon of drinking water may soon cost more than a gallon of gasoline."

wondered when the creativity of the scientific community would surface. Perhaps one reason for science's lagging pace is contained in the statement of Olof Palme, former prime minister of Sweden: "About half the world's scientists and technicians are today engaged in improving existing weapons and developing new ones."

The world no longer expects scientists to devote themselves solely to the invention of atom bombs or rockets that can land a man on the moon, or even to circumvent nature by developing square tomatoes. We look to them now to solve our resource problems and to establish time-bound targets.

The last item Victor Hugo wrote in his diary was: "There is one thing stronger than all the armies in the world and that is an idea whose time has come."

The MPU is the idea, and the time is now. The challenge to the scientific community is to put the idea to work for now and for the future of all mankind.

Sincerely,

Seymour Schweber

Seymour Schweber
President
Schweber Electronics

For further information about microcomputer technology, write:
Seymour Schweber, President, Schweber Electronics, Westbury, New York 11590.

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

been to employ less expensive overseas labor for the labor-intensive packaging operation. As the cost of overseas labor rises and improved packaging technology becomes available, overseas hand labor is gradually being supplanted by highly automated domestic assembly.

A number of advanced processing techniques are now under development. For example, the simple wet-etching process in which films of aluminum or polycrystalline silicon are selectively removed is already being supplanted by dry-etching processes. Polycrystalline silicon can be "plasma-etched" in electrically excited gas of carbon tetrafluoride molecules (Freon). A high-frequency electric discharge at low pressure breaks the Freon molecule down into a variety of ions and free radicals (such as atomic fluorine). The free radicals attack the film but do not react with the photoresist mask. In addition to being a more controllable method for the selective removal of silicon, plasma-etching promises to be much less harmful to the environment. Instead of yielding large quantities of corrosive acids, the reaction products are very small quantities of fluorine and fluorides of silicon, which are easily trapped from the output of the system.

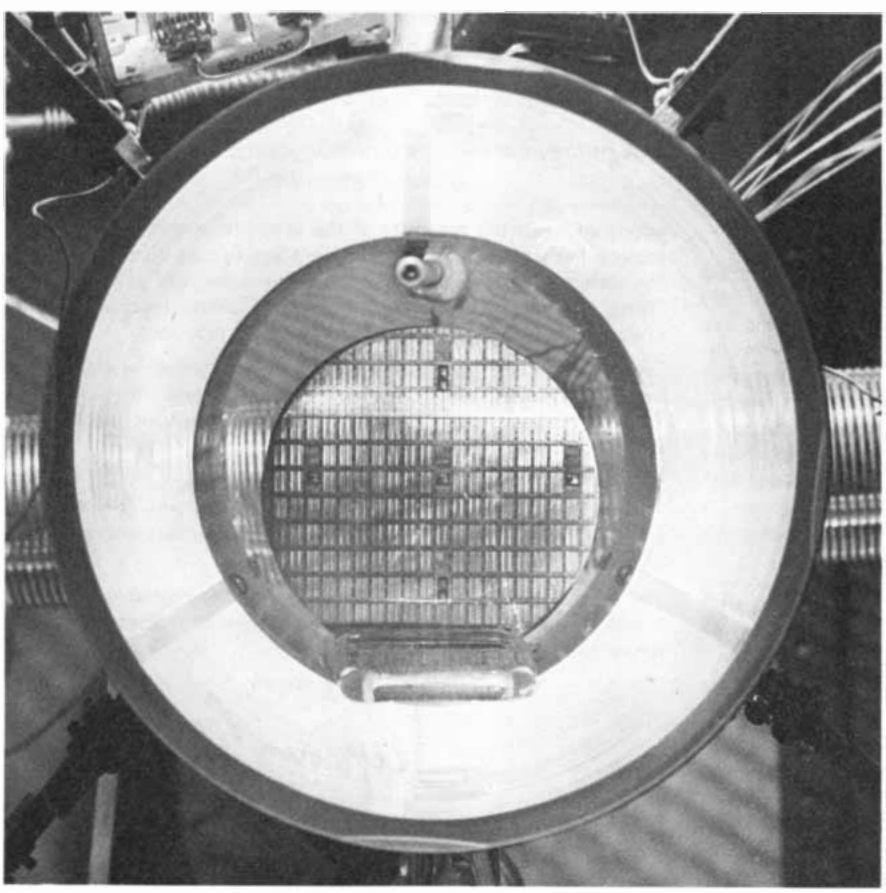
The technology of photolithography, which was stable for about 10 years, is also undergoing several changes. First, as projection lithography replaces contact lithography, the number of defects is decreasing. Second, the availability of masks of higher quality is steadily reducing the size and cost of microelectronic devices. Third, new methods of lithography are being developed that could result in a tenfold reduction in the size of individual circuit elements and a hundredfold reduction in circuit area.

The smallest features that can be formed by the conventional photolithographic process are ultimately limited by the wavelength of light. Present technology can routinely reproduce elements a few micrometers across, and it appears possible to reduce the smallest features to about one micrometer. Electron beams and X rays, however, have wavelengths measured in nanometers and smaller; hence they are capable of producing extremely fine features.

X-ray lithography is simply a form of contact photolithography in which soft X rays are substituted for ultraviolet radiation. The X-ray technique does indeed offer high resolution; simple structures less than a tenth of a micrometer across have already been produced. Because the entire wafer is exposed the process is also potentially quick and cheap. There are still many unsolved problems, however. X-ray masks, which consist of a heavy metallic pattern on a thin membrane such as Mylar, are fragile and difficult to make. It is also hard to align the mask with respect to the pattern on the wafer. Because of the attenuation of X rays in air, the wafer must be exposed in a vacuum or in an atmosphere of helium. Present-day X-ray sources are comparatively weak, and long exposures are required. As a result no commercial integrated circuits have yet been manufactured with the aid of X-ray lithography.

Electron-beam lithography is an older and maturer technology, having its basis in electron microscopy. Actually a system for electron-beam lithography is much like a scanning electron microscope. A fine beam of electrons scans the wafer to expose an electron-sensitive resist in the desired areas. Although impressive results have been demonstrated, the application of electron-beam lithography is limited by its present high cost. The machines are expensive (roughly $1 million per machine), and because the electron beam must scan the wafer rather than exposing it all at once the time needed to put a pattern on the wafer is quite long. The rate of progress in this area is rapid, however, and more practical systems are clearly on the way.

Although electron-beam lithography is currently too expensive to be part of the wafer-fabrication process, it is already a routine production technique for the making of photolithographic masks. With the aid of the electron-beam method it is possible to eliminate two photographic-reduction steps and write the pattern directly on the mask from the information stored in the computer memory. Masks can thereby be created in a few hours after the design is finished. The advantages of higher resolution, simplicity of manufacture and shorter production time may well result in the complete conversion of the industry to electron-beam mask-making. Gradually, as the cost decreases, electron-beam lithography will be introduced directly into the fabrication of wafers, and a new generation of even more complex microelectronic circuits will be born.



DRY PLASMA ETCHING, an advanced processing technique currently under development in the author's laboratory at the University of California at Berkeley, is viewed through a quartz window at one end of the reaction chamber. A gas of carbon tetrafluoride molecules (Freon) at a pressure of about a thousandth of atmospheric pressure flows through the quartz chamber, where it is ionized by a radio-frequency electric discharge. A perforated aluminum shield protects the polysilicon-coated wafers from the direct discharge. Free atomic fluorine, created in the discharge by the breakdown of the Freon molecules, diffuses to the surface of the wafers and reacts with the polycrystalline silicon wherever it is unprotected by a layer of photoresist. The process can yield finer patterns than the conventional wet-etching method.

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

Eaton Update:

1 Growing hydraulic power

Rugged hydraulic power by Eaton is improving the reliability and handling ease of many new agricultural machines. Our hydraulic motors and hydrostatic transmissions deliver power more smoothly, and stand up to dust, water and corrosive fertilizers better than any other form of power transmission.

Our Char-Lynn® hydraulic power steering, for instance, freed the designers of a new generation of combines from the restrictions of mechanical linkage, while giving the driver fingertip control of a seven-ton machine.

Eaton has been a leader in hydraulic power for thirty years. We saw the need, helped the agricultural revolution happen, and are growing with it.

2 Payoff at the truck stop

Meeting the urgent demand for improved fuel economy, Eaton's newly developed drive-train packages team our specially geared Fuller® transmissions with new low-ratio Eaton® axles. The result: definite fuel savings up to 10% in many cases.

These up-to-date economy combinations illustrate our commitment to maintain Eaton's important position in the truck market, which dates back 66 years. A commitment underscored by the construction of five new manufacturing facilities since 1970 and major capital expansion at seven others to serve our axle, brake and transmission customers.

3 Cutting the cost of moving things around

Eaton's response to the growing need for improved efficiency in materials handling has been the introduction of 23 new Yale® lift truck models in the last two years. This has made our line of industrial trucks the most up-to-date, as well as the broadest in the industry.

For more than 50 years Eaton has been the leader in what is now the fastest growing segment of the market—electric lift trucks. We stay ahead by anticipating the changing needs of various industries, where materials handling can account for as much as 40% of manufacturing or processing costs.

Eaton is a family of technologically related businesses with a balanced combination of manufacturing and engineering skills. We're always looking for new ways to use these skills in markets where needs are growing. This approach to the management of change has been achieving record sales and earnings. For the complete story, write to: Eaton Corporation, 100 Erieview Plaza, Cleveland, Ohio 44114.

EATON

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

Microelectronic Memories

Present memories based on transistors typically store some 16,000 bits (binary digits) on a chip. Magnetic-bubble and charge-coupled devices are providing an even higher density of information storage

by David A. Hodges

Modern information-processing and control systems call for the rapid storage and retrieval of digital information. The amount of information to be stored ranges from fewer than 100 bits (binary digits) for a simple pocket calculator to somewhere between a billion and a trillion bits for a large computer. The technology of digital storage is perhaps the most rapidly changing sector in all microelectronics. Over the past decade operating speed and reliability have increased by at least an order of magnitude as physical size, power consumption and cost per bit of storage have been reduced by factors ranging from 100 to 1,000. Improvements of comparable magnitude can be envisioned for the decade ahead before fundamental physical limitations enforce a slowdown.

In the context of electronics "memory" (or, in British usage, "store") usually refers to a device for storing digital information. Storage ("write") and retrieval ("read") operations are completely under electronic control. The storage of auditory or visual information in analogue form, which is commonly done on magnetic tape, is usually referred to as recording. In analogue recording the intensity of the "track" on the storage medium directly mimics the varying intensity of the input signal. Although there is some overlap between analogue and digital recording, I shall concentrate here on digital memory.

The most widely used digital memories are read/write memories, the term signifying that they perform read and write operations at an identical or similar rate. It is obvious that storage capacity, cost per bit and reliability are important characteristics for memories. Other important characteristics are speed of operation (defined in terms of access time), cycle time and data-transfer rate. Access time is simply the time it takes to read or write at any storage location. Some memories, such as random-access memories (RAM's), have the same access time to any storage location. Serial-access and block-access memories have access times that depend on the storage location selected.

Random-access memories can complete read or write operations in the specified minimum period known as the cycle time. Serial-access and block-access memories have a variable and relatively large access time, after which the data-transfer rate is constant. The data-transfer rate is the rate at which information is transferred to or from sequential storage positions.

Digital memories can be conveniently classified as either moving-surface devices or entirely electronic devices, with subdivisions in each category. Although moving-surface devices cannot really be considered microelectronic, microelectronic techniques are being fruitfully exploited to improve their performance. For many memory applications either a moving-surface system or an entirely electronic one is clearly superior, but in certain current and imminent applications the two systems are closely competitive. For this reason I shall briefly describe the characteristics of moving-surface devices.

Most commonly moving-surface memory devices provide information storage in localized areas of a thin magnetic film that is coated onto a nonmagnetic supporting surface. The magnetic material must be capable of holding a remnant magnetic flux in the absence of externally applied fields. The supporting surface can be flexible, in the form of a tape or disk made of plastic, or it can be rigid, in the form of a disk or drum made of aluminum or some other material. The magnetic film and the read/write head (a small electromagnet) move in relation to each other in order to bring a storage site into position for writing or reading of information. Information is stored in the form of tiny magnetized spots in the magnetic film. The stored information is sensed in the form of a weak current that is induced in the read/write head as the magnetic film moves under it.

The simplest digital magnetic-tape memories are adapted from audio cassette tape recorders. One cassette, or tape cartridge, is capable of storing 10^6 to 10^7 bits and can provide access time to any chosen storage location ranging from 10 to 100 seconds. The speed of the tape is limited by wear and heat because the tape is in frictional contact with the read/write head (or heads).

More sophisticated digital tape memory systems, and disk and drum memories as well, employ a laminar-flow air bearing to hold the read/write head a few micrometers above the magnetic surface. This stratagem makes it possible to have much higher surface velocities and improves the reliability of data storage.

Large magnetic-disk memories store 10^9 to 10^{10} bits on one or more disk surfaces mounted on a single spindle rotated by a single motor. Access to storage locations is achieved by moving one or more read/write heads radially across the spinning disk or disks. For typical systems the average access time is 20 milliseconds.

Moving-surface memories are block-accessed devices. After an access time determined by rates of mechanical motion and the location being sought, data is transferred at a rate determined by the surface velocity and the density of data storage on the surface. Typical transfer rates range from 10^6 to 10^7 bits per second.

Information stored in magnetic mediums is usually retained when the external power is turned off; such storage is said to be nonvolatile. It is normally feasible to remove the recording medium from tape and disk systems, making it possible to physically transfer information from one location to another and providing access to virtually unlimited quantities of information simply by the interchange of disks or reels of tape. These useful properties are rarely found in electronic memories.

Moving-surface memory devices serve widely as "file" memories in computer systems, where they store information that is changed much less often

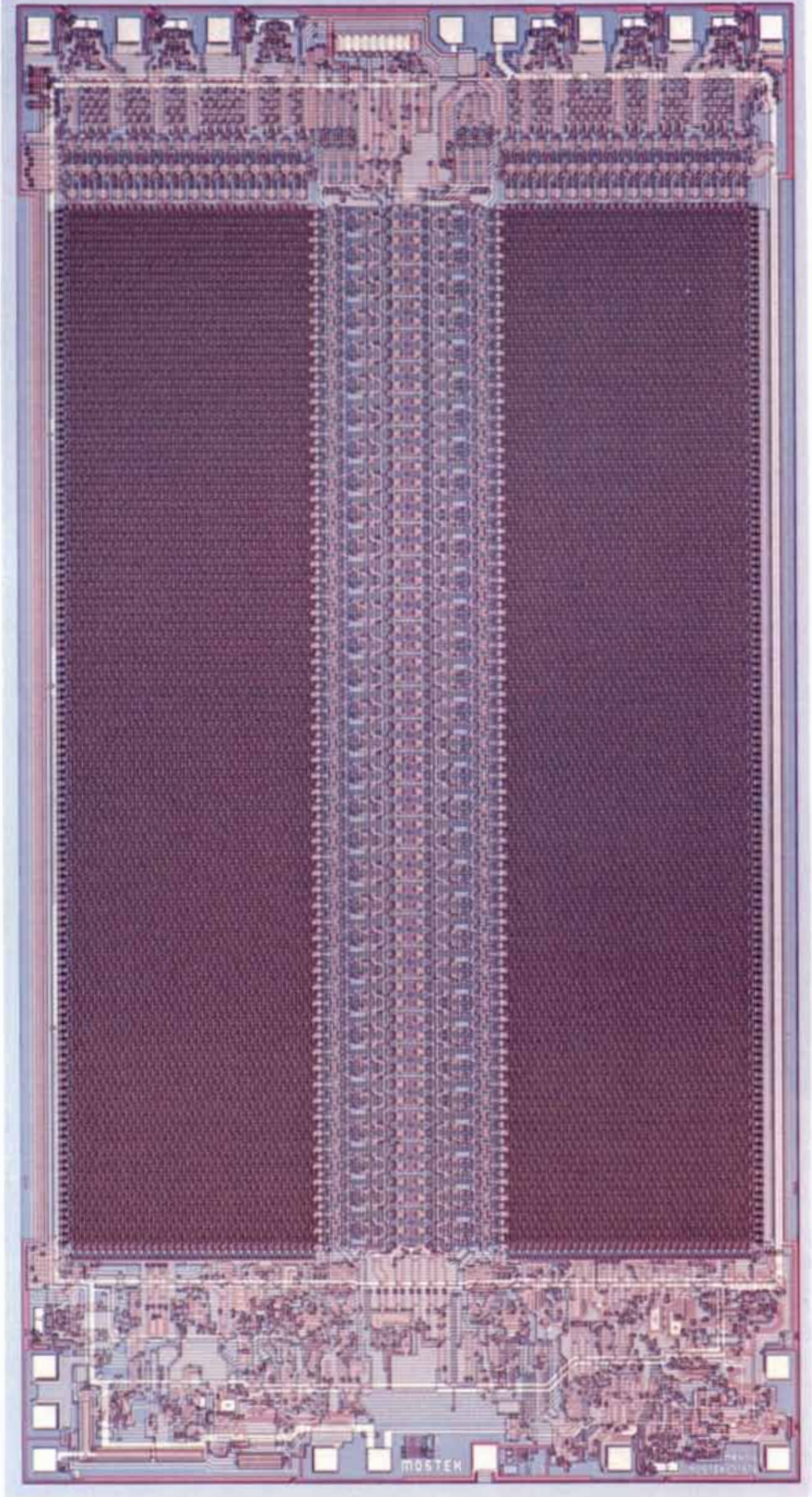
© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

mation stored in moving-surface memories is lower by one to four orders of magnitude than that of information stored in electronic memories (roughly 10^{-5} cent per bit for the least expensive magnetic-tape storage as against .1 cent per bit for the least expensive microelectronic memory). The nonvolatility of moving-surface memories is often an essential feature. On the other hand, the access time to electronic memories can be faster than 10^{-8} second, or six to eight orders of magnitude faster than the access time to moving-surface memories.

Continuing improvements are being made in the cost per bit, the data-transfer rate and the reliability of moving-surface memories. Microelectronic fabrication techniques are helping to shrink the size of read/write heads, yielding higher bit densities on the recording surface. Microelectronic circuits also serve to implement error-correcting codes in moving-surface memory sytems, substantially reducing the rate at which errors are made in the total storage and retrieval process. It is clear that for certain essential tasks of information storage moving-surface systems are not likely to be supplanted by electronic memories in the foreseeable future.

The newest electronic-memory systems have been made possible by modern semiconductor technology: the ability to emplace thousands of electronic elements on a tiny chip of silicon. In the 1950's and 1960's electronic memories were arrays of cores, or rings, of a ferrite material a millimeter or less in diameter, strung by the thousands on a grid of wires. Ferrite-core memories have now been largely succeeded in new designs by semiconductor memories that provide faster data access, smaller physical size and lower power consumption, and all at significantly lower cost. In the 1980's new memory technologies involving magnetic bubbles, superconducting tunnel-junction devices and devices accessed by laser beams or electron beams may come into play. I shall describe some of these devices below. The fact remains that because semiconductor memories are extremely versatile, are highly compatible with other electronic devices in both small and large systems and have much potential for further improvement in performance and cost, they are expected to dominate the electronic-memory market for at least another decade.

The smallest block of information accessible in a memory system can be a single bit (represented by 0 or 1), a larger group of bits such as a byte or character (usually eight or nine bits), or a "word" (12 to 64 bits depending on the particular system). Most memories are location-addressable, which means that a desired bit, byte or word has a speci-



RANDOM-ACCESS MEMORY (RAM) circuit provides storage for 16,384 bits (binary digits). Each bit is held in a single-transistor storage cell (*see illustration on page 136*). The time required to write one bit in any arbitrary location or to read it out is about 200 nanoseconds. RAM chip shown here, which is the MK 4116 manufactured by Mostek Corporation, measures 2.8 by 5.1 millimeters. Packaged, each chip sells for $30 in orders of 1,000 or more.

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

SX-70 telephoto lens for times like this.

Koala in eucalyptus tree 9 feet up.

There are times when you can't get your SX-70 close enough to your subject. ("Look where that darned Koala climbed!") And times when you don't *want* to get close enough. ("How hot does this geyser get?") And times when you *shouldn't* get close enough. ("I hope I can catch that expression before she sees me.")

Now there is a lens for all those times. It's a superbly sharp optical glass telephoto lens whose accuracy is precisely matched to the accuracy of the SX-70 lens. It

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

Aha!

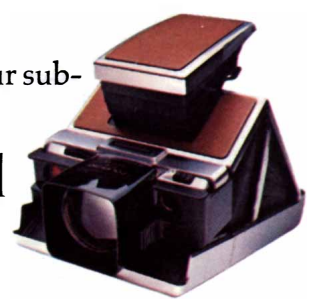
*For information on use with other SX-70 models call Polaroid Customer Service, toll free: 800-225-1384.
©1977 Polaroid Corporation
"Polaroid" and "SX-70" ®

Koala in eucalyptus tree, still 9 feet up.

magnifies your photo image by 50%. And it's called the Polaroid SX-70 Tele/1.5 lens.

Just snap it in place on any SX-70 Alpha Land camera* when you can't move close enough to your subject... and watch your subject move close enough to *you*.

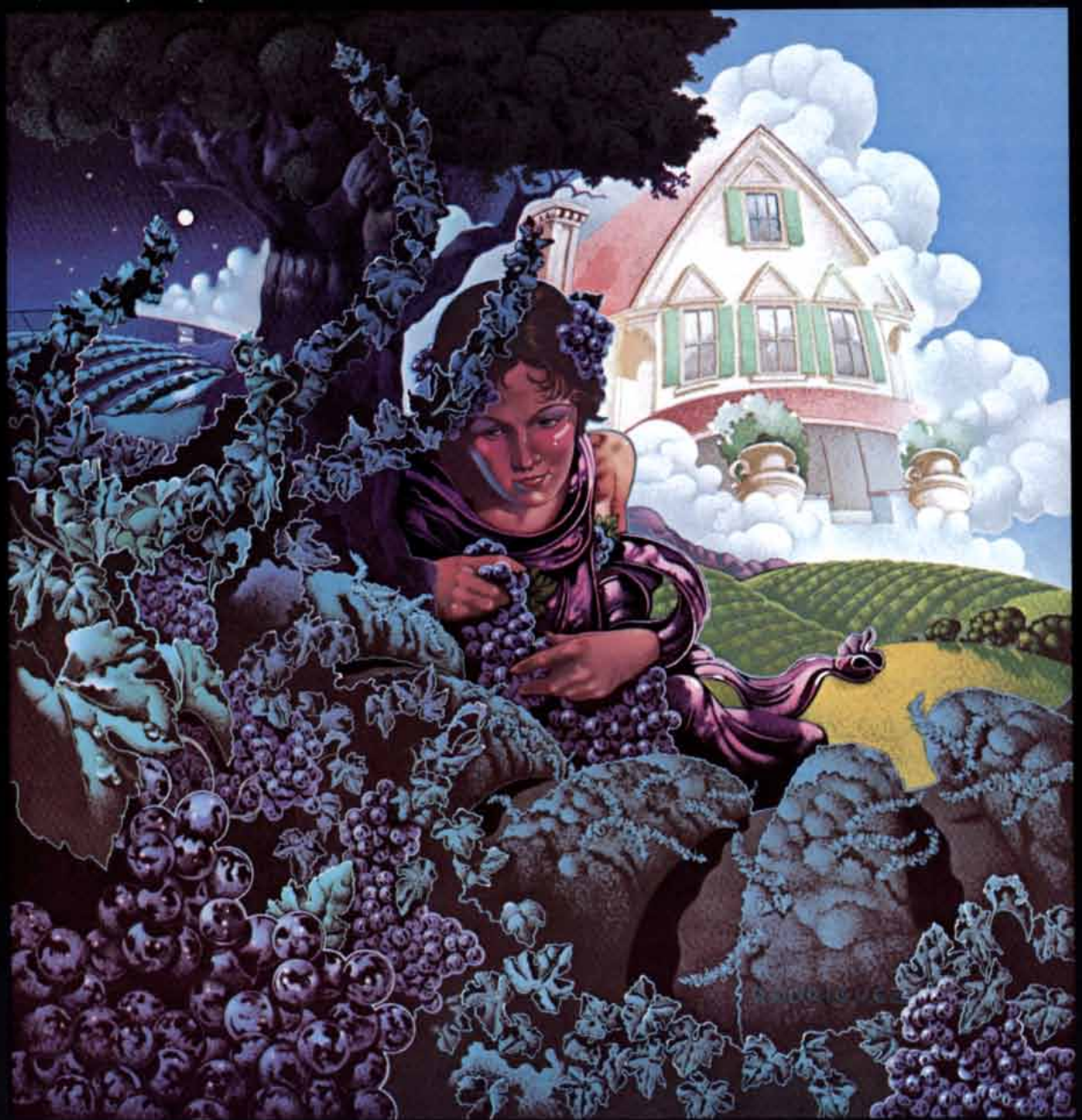
Introducing the Polaroid SX-70 Tele/1.5 Lens.



© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

Grapes, like children, need a good home.

They are so sensitive, our children, the grapes of Almadén.
So, we have taken special care to find them a home where the growing conditions are ideal. With warm sunny days, and nights that are cooled by the gentle breezes of the Pacific.
Nature rewards our thoughtfulness with consistently fine wines year after year.
Our Pinot Noir is but one example. Deep, rich, velvety soft. For decades distinguished by its balance and fruity grape aroma—truly a noble red wine.
Yes, we are proud parents.



Almadén

Almadén Vineyards. Los Gatos and Paicines, California

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

fied address, or physical location, to which it is assigned.

Content-addressable memories, in which partial knowledge of a stored word is sufficient to find the complete word, would be extremely useful in some applications. Electronic content-addressable memories have never been common because the cost per bit is far higher than it is for location-addressable memories.

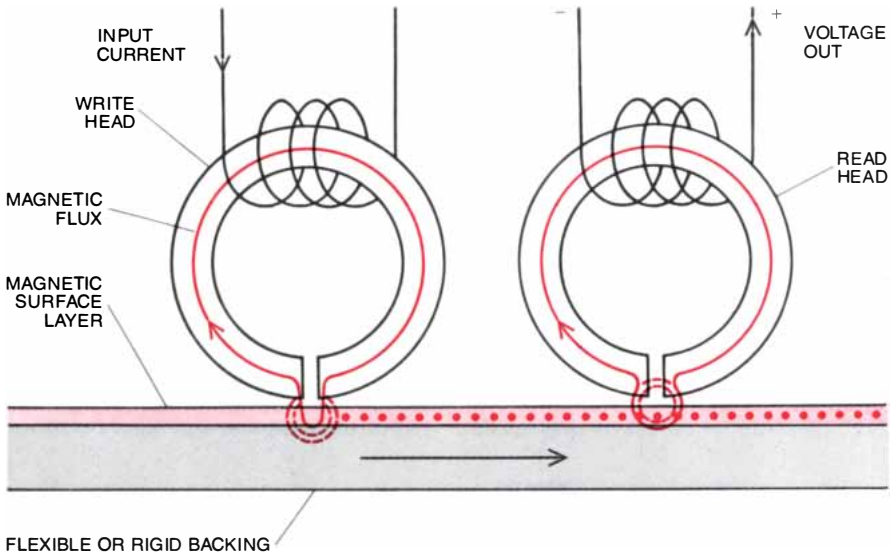
The most widely used form of electronic memory is the random-access read/write memory fabricated in the form of a single large-scale-integrated memory chip capable of storing as many as 16,384 bits in an area less than half a centimeter on a side. A number of individual circuits, each storing one binary bit, are organized in a rectangular array. Access to the location of a single bit is provided by a binary-coded address presented as an input to address decoders that select one row and one column for a read or write operation. Only the storage element at the intersection of the selected row and column is the target for the reading or writing of one bit of information. A read/write control signal determines which of the two operations is to be performed. The memory array can be designed with a single input-output line for the transfer of data or with several parallel lines for the simultaneous input or output of four, eight or more bits.

As William G. Oldham points out in the preceding article [see "The Fabrication of Microelectronic Circuits," page 110], the cost of a microelectronic circuit is proportional to the area on a wafer of silicon that it occupies. Accordingly much ingenuity has gone into the development of simple, small-area memory circuits. The individual circuit, or "cell," that stores one bit is a critical design element because it must be repeated thousands of times. Address decoders and other ancillary circuits can be more complex because they are employed only once per row or column or even less frequently.

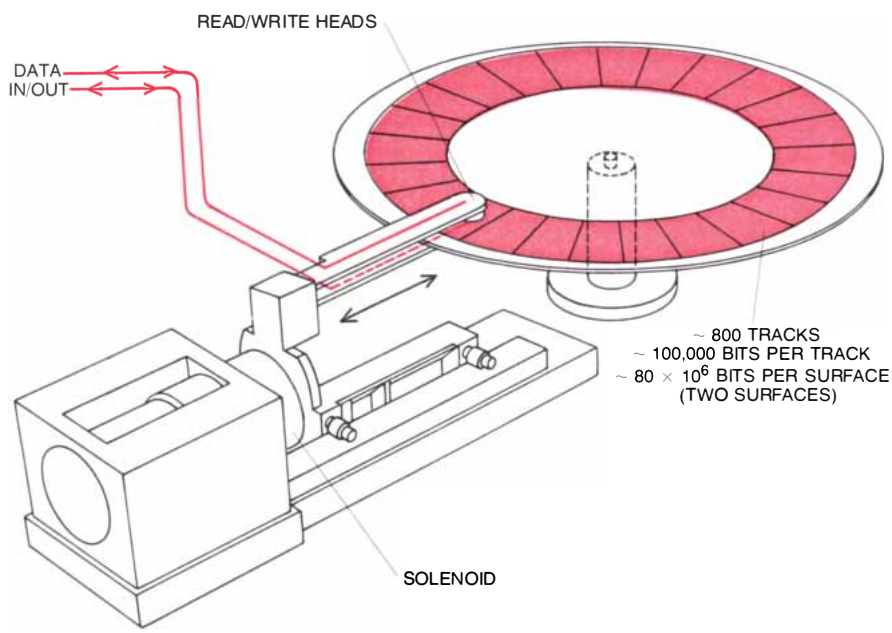
A simple one-transistor storage cell is widely used today in the most economical random-access read/write memory devices. Information is stored as an electric charge on a small capacitor. The value of the capacitance is on the order of 50 femtofarad (50×10^{-15} farad). For the representation of binary information two different levels of stored charge are needed. A binary 0 might be represented by zero charge and a binary 1 by a charge of 500 femtocoulombs (equivalent to 10 volts on the storage capacitor). Although this may seem like a tiny amount of charge, it is the charge on three million electrons. Reliable binary storage should ultimately be attainable with a charge 1,000 times smaller.

The transistor in the cell functions only as an on-off switch to connect the storage capacitor to the data line. The data line is shared by many identical cells, but only one cell is connected to it at any one time. The data line corresponds to a column in the memory array. Only one of the many selection lines, corresponding to the rows at right angles to the columns in the array, is activated at any one time. When a selection line is activated, it turns on all the transistor switches connected to it, but only one of these switches is on a simultaneously activated data line.

The capacitor storage cell can lose stored information in two ways. First, the capacitor itself has a significant leakage current. Through this process stored charge can be lost in as little as a few milliseconds. Second, when the cell is selected for a read operation, the charge stored in the cell is shared between the



MOVING MAGNETIC SURFACE stores binary information at lowest cost: 100,000 or more bits for a cent. The information is permanently retained unless it is intentionally erased. Binary digits are stored sequentially on a moving magnetic medium by the application of electric pulses to a tiny electromagnet, which serves as the "write" head. When the film passes below a "read" head of similar design, magnetized spots on film generate tiny electric pulses, which are readily amplified. One head can serve for both reading and writing on a time-shared basis.



MAGNETIC-DISK MEMORY SYSTEMS are widely used for large, frequently searched files, or information stores. The simple system shown here has only one disk, but multidisk systems are common. Information is stored on both sides of a disk by separate read/write heads. A typical modern system has about 800 tracks per side, with storage for 100,000 bits per track. The total storage capacity of both sides of one disk is therefore 1,600 × 100,000, or 160 million bits. Sequential information can be transferred into and out of system at rates of five million to 10 million bits per second. Average access time to a random location is 25 milliseconds.

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

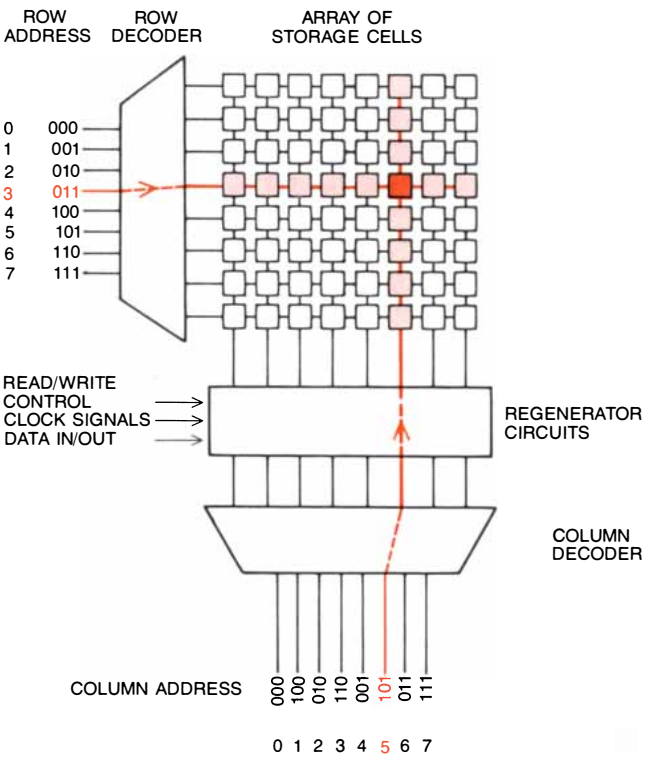
cell capacitor and the larger capacitance of the data line. In typical designs the data-line capacitance is 10 to 20 times larger than the cell capacitance because the data line is connected to many cells. As a result the voltage representing the stored information is attenuated by a factor of 10 to 20. The stored information that is to be retained must therefore be regenerated after every read operation.

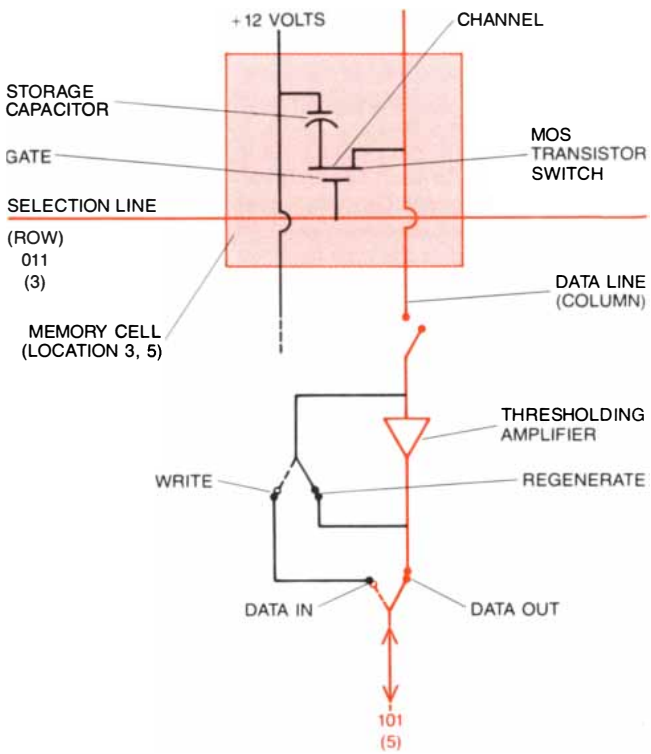
It is also necessary to regenerate the stored charge periodically, usually every two milliseconds, in order to compensate for leakage. The necessary regeneration functions are performed by a thresholding amplifier. A sampling switch takes a sample of the signal on the data line at precisely the right time: just after a chosen storage cell has been connected to the data line by a signal on the selection line. The sampled signal is compared with a threshold level that is chosen to be midway between the nominal binary levels for 0 and 1. The amplifier then regenerates the binary level.

There is only one thresholding amplifier on each data line. It is time-shared by all the storage cells connected to that line, typically 64 or 128 in present designs. If each cell requires a regeneration cycle every two milliseconds and a single cycle occupies 400 nanoseconds, the regeneration cycles for 64 cells will occupy 25.6 microseconds of every two-millisecond interval and the cycles for 128 cells will occupy twice that amount of time, or 51.2 microseconds. The requirement for "refresh," or regeneration, operations adds a complication to the design of memory systems. (Although there are ways to avoid refresh operations, as I shall explain, they add to the cost of the device.) The "write" function is performed simply by actuating switches that are under the control of a read/write input signal.

Additional circuits are needed to complete a useful semiconductor memory chip. Most important are the address decoders, which select a unique row and column for each unique address input. Address decoders can be implemented with logic gates that perform the logical "and" function. There is room for much ingenuity in striking a good balance among conflicting demands for high-speed operation, low power consumption and minimum chip area (lowest cost). A clever innovation in some recent designs involves using the address input connections to a component twice in succession on each memory cycle. First the row address is applied; then about halfway through the cycle the column address is presented. The advantage is that the number of external address connections is cut in half. The number of external connections (the "pin count") is a significant factor affecting the cost, reliability and size of microelectronic components, so that cutting it in half is highly advantageous. Other peripheral circuits usually included with a microelectronic memory chip are data buffers (which transform the levels of data signals entering and leaving the chip) and timing generators for the sequencing of functions.

The semiconductor memory chip with only a single transistor in each storage cell is just one of many designs. Storage cells with two, three, four, six and more transistors offer useful additional features but with the penalty of increased silicon area and cost. For example, in metal-oxide-semiconductor (MOS) technology storage cells with three transistors provide amplification





RANDOM-ACCESS MEMORIES are usually organized in rectangular arrays of rows and columns. The diagram at the left shows an eight-by-eight array for storage of 64 bits, one bit being stored in the cell at each intersection. To specify a particular memory location three binary digits are needed to indicate the row and another three to indicate the column. In this example row address 011 (binary for 3) and column address 101 (binary for 5) specify the memory location 3,5. (The locations start with 0,0 at the upper left and end with 7,7 at the lower right, specifying 64 locations in all.) The organization of a single one-transistor memory cell of the array is depicted at the right. Binary information is stored as a charge on a small capacitor. For example, zero charge might represent a binary 0 and a charge of 500 × 10^{-15} coulomb might represent a binary 1. When one of the selection lines, or rows, in an array is activated (here it is row 3), it turns on all the transistor switches connected to it. The transistor functions as an on-off switch to connect the storage capacitor to its particular data line, which corresponds to a column in the array. The simultaneous activation of a row and a column identifies the cell selected for reading or writing (here cell 3,5). Because the storage capacitor loses charge both by being read and by leakage it must be regenerated periodically, usually once every two milliseconds. The regenerated charge, which is supplied by the thresholding amplifier, is returned to the capacitor by the closing of the switch in the data line. All the switching in this type of memory device is accomplished by transistors.

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

How has Ireland acquired this leading name in high level electronics?

The same way as they acquired all the others.

ANALOG DEVICES
(C–MOS A/D CONVERTORS)
CENTRONICS
(MATRIX PRINTERS FOR THE COMPUTER INDUSTRY)
DATA PRODUCTS
(PRINTERS AND MEMORIES FOR THE COMPUTER INDUSTRY)
MEASUREX
(SYSTEM 2000 PROCESS CONTROLLERS)
TECHNICON
(COMPUTER CONTROLLED BIOMEDICAL ANALYSERS)
VARIAN
(ATOMIC ABSORPTION SPECTROMETERS)

For a growing list of major electronics manufacturers, the Republic of Ireland has become Europe's most favored location.

In its drive to expand its high technology sector as quickly as possible, Ireland has put together Europe's most persuasive package of location incentives.

Profit

These incentives have been assembled with one aim in view—to make it easier and quicker to be highly profitable in Ireland. The welcome includes non-repayable cash grants towards starting up cost, including free worker training. PLUS a tax package that includes no tax on export profits until 1990, and unrestricted repatriation.

Success

Latest US Department of Commerce figures of earnings by US subsidiaries in Ireland show the policy to be paying off. US investment jumped 35% in '75 (EEC average 8%). R.O.I. in Ireland averaged 29% against an EEC average of 10.7%.

And within the overall picture, sectors like electronics are doing even better, with an annual growth rate of over 40%; and individual companies expanding by almost 100% per annum.

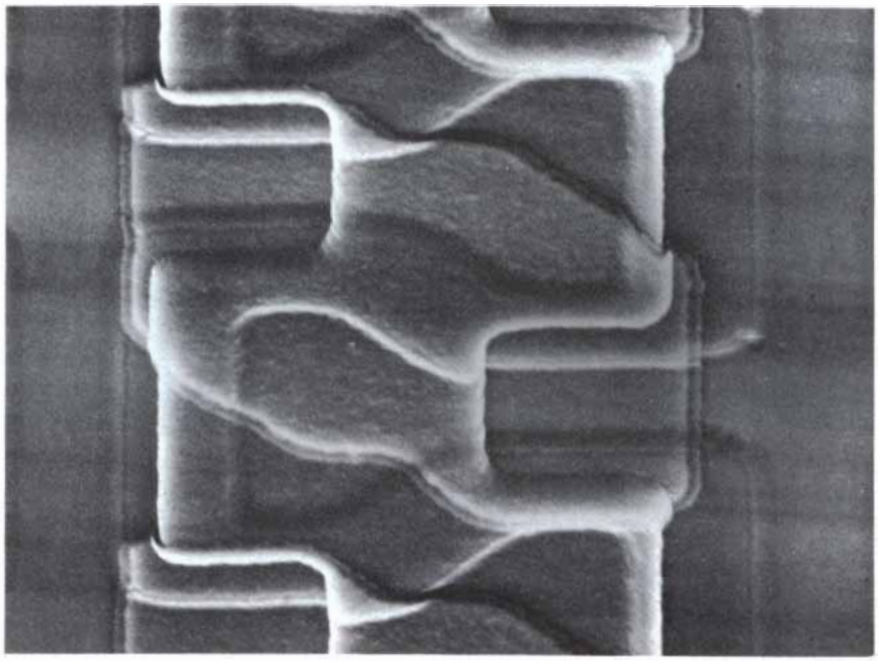
The Irish Government's one-stop development agency (IDA–Ireland) can provide a detailed comparative assessment of your company's prospects in the Republic. It could be a highly profitable enquiry.

REPUBLIC OF IRELAND

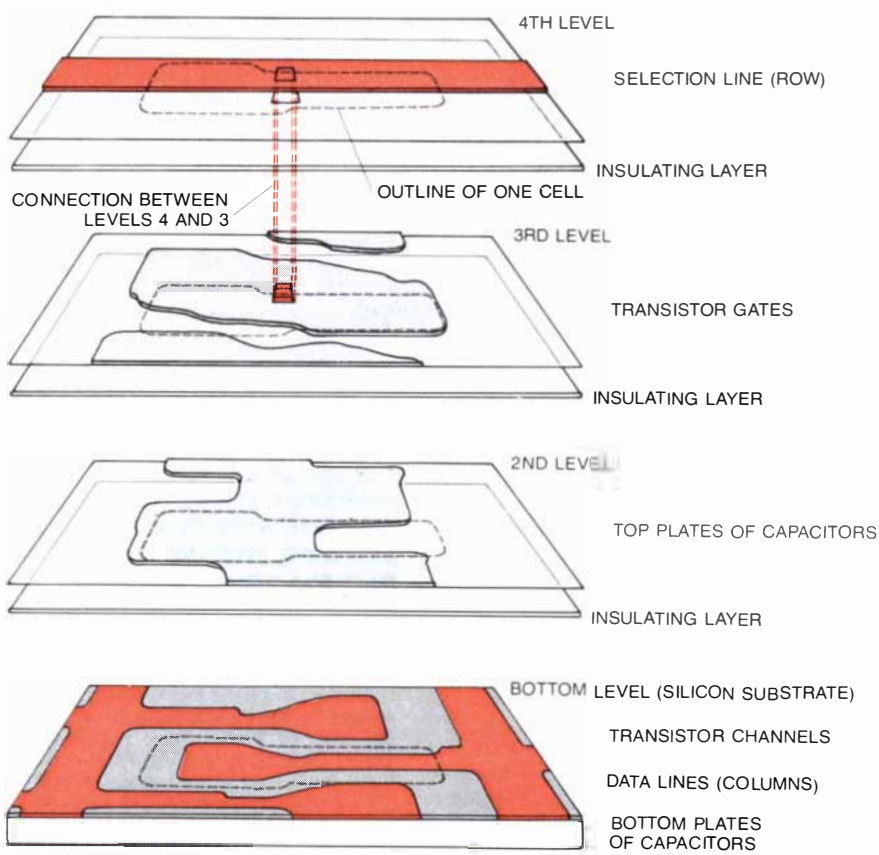
Contact Industrial Development Authority–Ireland at: 200 Park Avenue, NEW YORK, NY 10017/(212) 972-1000; 1 East Wacker Drive, CHICAGO, IL 60601/(312) 644-7476; Suite 2065, 1100 Milam Building, HOUSTON, TX 77002/(713) 658-0055; 515 South Flower Street, LOS ANGELES, CA 90071/(213) 624-1024. Overseas offices also in Toronto, Tokyo, Sydney, Brussels, Paris, London, Cologne, Stuttgart, Copenhagen, Amsterdam and Milan.

This announcement is published by IDA Ireland, 200 Park Avenue, New York, 10017, which is registered under the Foreign Agents Registration Acts, as amended, as an agent of the Government of Ireland. This material is filed with the Department of Justice where the required registration statement is available for public inspection. Registration does not indicate approval of the contents by the United States Government.

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC



TWO RAM STORAGE CELLS appear in this scanning electron micrograph made by the author. Each cell includes one transistor and one capacitor. For maximum clarity this picture of a circuit manufactured by the Intel Corporation was made after only three of the five major fabrication steps had been completed. The fourth step forms a series of small openings, one for each transistor, in the insulating layer that covers the third level. The last step creates the metallic pattern that is needed for the selection lines (rows) in the finished memory array. The metal makes contact with the transistor gates in third level, as is shown in the exploded view below.



CONSTRUCTION OF A RAM CELL begins with the creation of multipurpose structures (*color*) in the bottom level by "doping" certain areas of the substrate with arsenic, which converts those areas into *n*-type silicon. The undoped area is chemically transformed into silicon nitride, an insulator (*gray*). The second and third levels of the cell are formed by the deposition of polycrystalline silicon. Fourth level is formed by deposition of aluminum. Thin insulating layers of silicon dioxide are deposited between levels. This cell measures 15 by 30 micrometers.

of the stored signal, sharply reducing the problem of detecting the "read" signal on the data lines. Refreshing the stored signal every two milliseconds, however, is still required. Continuous refreshing within each storage cell can be achieved by adding from one transistor to three more transistors per cell, but in addition to taking up more silicon area the design demands that each cell consume power continuously.

Memories that do not require refresh operations are termed static memories. In spite of their higher cost per bit of storage they are favored for small memory systems because they call for a minimum of external support circuitry. At a further premium in cost the power consumption of static memories can be reduced to such a negligible value that small batteries will power them for days or weeks. Such memories exploit the "complementary" MOS (CMOS) technology; they are found in some pocket calculators that hold their data or their program even when the power switch is in the "off" position.

The memories with the highest speed of operation usually employ bipolar-transistor technology rather than the fundamentally somewhat slower MOS or CMOS technologies. The price paid for attaining the higher speed is a more complex manufacturing process and in most instances higher power consumption. A recently developed form of the bipolar-transistor technology known as integrated injection logic (I^2L), or merged transistor logic (MTL), has been widely discussed as a memory technology, but it has not yet proved to have advantages either in performance or cost over memories based on the older bipolar-transistor technologies.

Some applications require random-access memories containing permanently stored or rarely altered information. For example, the control programs in pocket calculators are usually permanently stored. Such storage is provided by read-only memories (ROM's). Information is placed in the storage array when the chip is manufactured. A read-only memory can be obtained by replacing the storage capacitor in a one-transistor memory cell with either an open circuit or a connection to ground, thus representing one or the other of the two binary states. As an alternative to forming this pattern of connections in the initial manufacture of the memory, the cells can be fabricated with a small fusible link from the transistor to the ground in place of the storage capacitor. A pattern of stored information can then be placed in the array simply by applying a pattern of electrical signals strong enough to blow out the unwanted connections. Of course, once a fusible link is blown it cannot be reformed. Fusible-link memories are one type of programmable read-only mem-

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

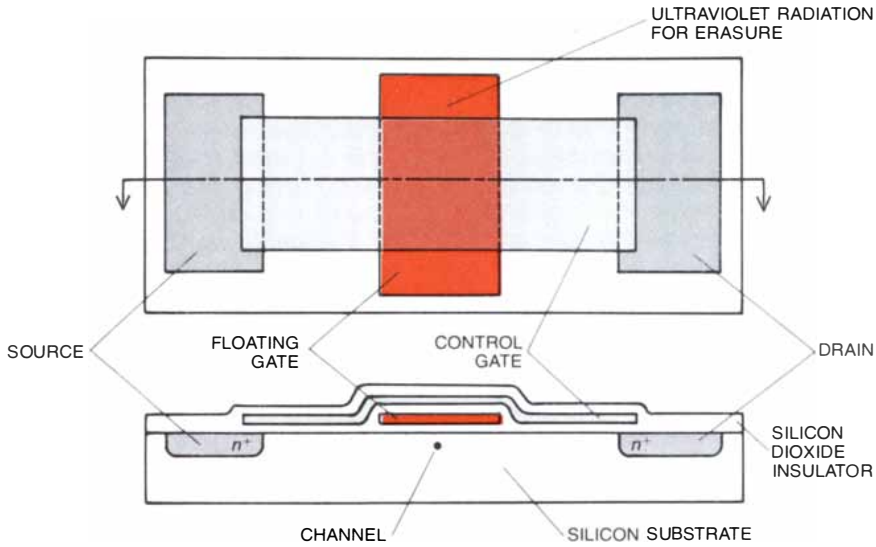
ory (PROM). Information stored in ROM's and PROM's is nonvolatile, that is, it is not lost when external power is removed.

Another variation on the read-only memory is the read-mostly memory, which is desired when read operations are far more frequent than write operations but for which nonvolatile storage is required. Read-mostly memories have two forms. The commonest is the optically erasable read-only memory. This memory is read and written by entirely electronic means, but before a write operation all the storage cells must be erased to the same initial state by exposing the packaged chip to ultraviolet radiation.

Each cell in the most modern form of such memory chips contains an MOS transistor with two gate electrodes, one above the other. The lower gate is a "floating" one totally surrounded by silicon dioxide, an excellent insulator, and is not connected electrically to anything. The turn-on threshold voltage of the transistor at the upper gate electrode is controlled by the charge on the floating gate. The insulated floating gate can be charged with electrons by applying a fairly high voltage (about 25 volts) at the gate and one of the drain electrodes while the *p*-type substrate material of the device is held at low voltage. This gives some electrons enough energy (about four electron volts) to cross the silicon dioxide insulating barrier and charge the floating gate. By doing this selectively in an array of cells one can store the desired pattern of information.

Because of the high quality of the silicon dioxide insulator the floating gate will remain reliably charged for years. To discharge the floating gate one exposes the entire memory chip to ultraviolet radiation, which makes the silicon dioxide sufficiently conductive to allow the charge on the gate to leak away. Because of the tiny size of the individual storage cells it is not practical to erase them selectively. Instead all the memory cells are erased simultaneously, after which a new information pattern is imposed.

An alternative form of read-mostly memory is the electrically alterable read-only memory (EAROM), which can be altered without the necessity of erasing the entire array. Its cell structure is roughly similar to the optically erasable cell except that the function of the floating gate is taken over by an interface between two dielectric materials, usually silicon dioxide and silicon nitride, which may be selectively charged and discharged by signals applied to a single overlying gate electrode. These read-mostly memories are called metal-nitride-oxide-semiconductor (MNOS) devices. A variant of the read-mostly memory is made from certain amorphous semiconductor materials, or semiconducting glasses, that hold a pattern of local charges until the charges are erased by a strong pulse of current, after which a new pattern can be electrically imposed. Although the potential usefulness of EAROM devices is large, they have not yet been endowed with the combination of low cost, fast writing, long-term retention and reliability after many erasures that is desired for most applications. As a result EAROM's have so far found only a few applications.



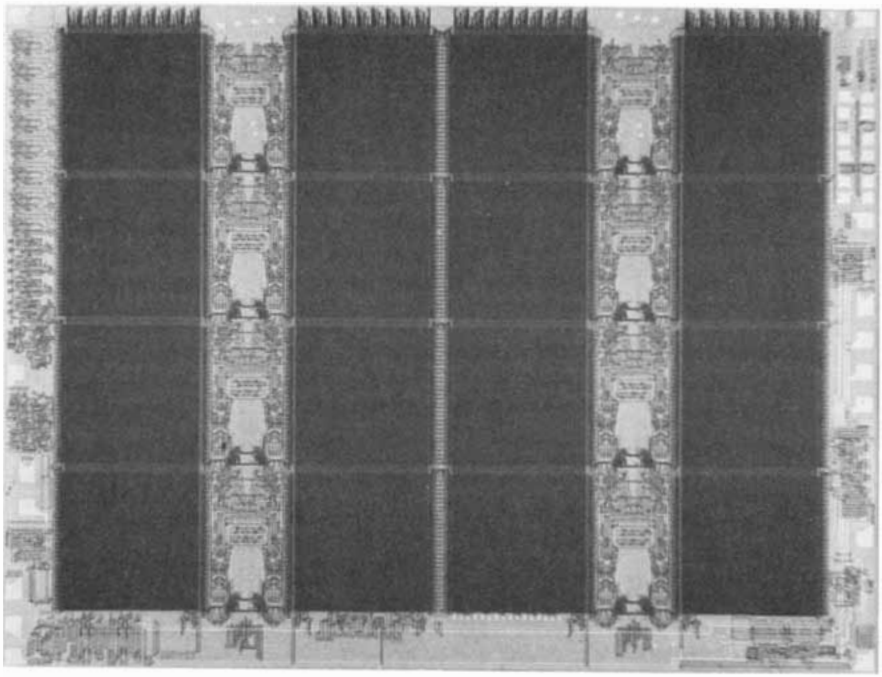
OPTICALLY ERASABLE READ-ONLY MEMORY CELL is shown in plan view and in cross section. The floating gate, which is not electrically connected to anything, holds a binary digit of information in the form of a stored charge that modifies the electrical characteristics of the device. Information is "written" (stored) in the floating gate by applying about 25 volts to the control gate and drain while the source and the substrate are grounded. The resulting high electric fields in the channel accelerate electrons to a considerable velocity. A small fraction of the electrons are able to cross the thin insulator and become trapped on the floating gate. The charge on the gate is not lost during "read" operations or when external power is removed. The stored charge can be erased, however, by exposing the cell to ultraviolet radiation, which temporarily makes the silicon dioxide sufficiently conductive for charge to leak away. All the cells in a memory are erased at one time, after which a new pattern can be written in.

All the electronic memories I have been discussing are designed for random access, that is, the time required for a read or write operation is independent of the physical location within the storage array of the cell being accessed. The access times of random-access memories are on the order of .1 microsecond to one microsecond. Substantial economies can be achieved in the design of memories if random access is not required. One alternative scheme of growing importance is serial access, in which the stored bits circulate as if they were in a closed pipeline.

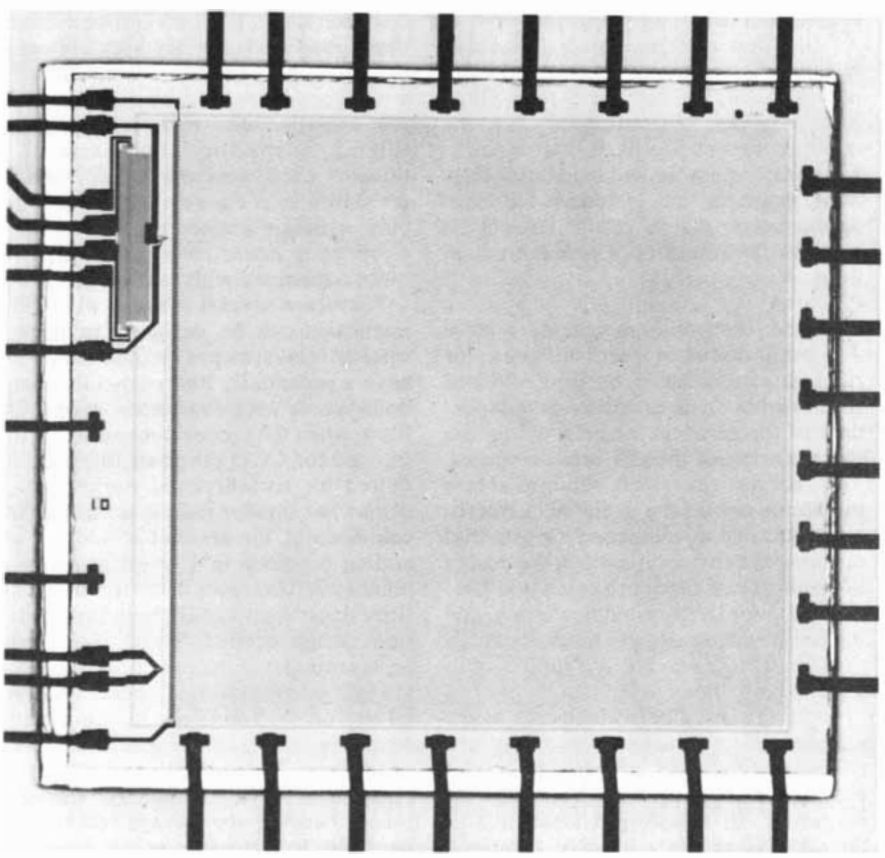
Leading examples of electronic memory devices organized in this way are charge-coupled devices (CCD's) and magnetic-bubble devices. Each bit that is stored is transferred sequentially through 64 or more storage locations between the time it is written into the memory and the first time it becomes available for reading. The rate at which bits are shifted from one storage site to the next in a CCD memory is about the same as the cycle time for a random-access memory. Thus the longest access time for a serial memory with 64 storage locations is 64 times the cycle time for a random-access memory. There are many applications where serial access is entirely satisfactory. For example, a memory used to refresh the information presented in a conventional video display, which is scanned point by point in a repeating linear pattern, does not require a memory with random access.

There are several reasons why CCD memories can be designed to have a smaller total area per bit (and hence can have a potentially lower cost) than random-access semiconductor memories. First, when the process technology is optimized for CCD purposes, the area required for an individual storage cell is somewhat smaller than it is for a RAM cell. Second, the amount of address decoding required in a serial memory is inherently less than it is for a RAM, since decoding to select individual locations is not needed. Third, the charge representing the stored information is always conveyed and held on tiny nodes, or intersections, in the circuit, which have very little capacitance. As a result the signal voltage in a CCD is not attenuated as it is when the signal is shared between the storage cell and the data line in a random-access memory. Therefore the amplifiers and refreshing circuits for the CCD memory can be somewhat simpler. The net result of these simplifications is that the total silicon area per bit for complete memory components is about a factor of two to

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC



CHARGE-COUPLED DEVICE (CCD) made by the Fairchild Camera and Instrument Corporation provides serial access to 65,536 bits of memory. The total number of bits is divided among the 16 square arrays, each of which therefore holds 4,096 bits. Since the bits in all the arrays are circulating continuously and synchronously, the time it takes to access any of the 65,536 bits is set by the circulation time of the 4,096 bits in any one array (*see top illustration on page 142*). The average access time is .5 millisecond. Chip measures 4.4 by 5.8 millimeters.



MAGNETIC-BUBBLE MEMORY made by Texas Instruments Incorporated provides serial access to 100,637 bits, with an average access time of four milliseconds. Magnetic bubbles are domains, or islands, of magnetic polarization embedded in thin magnetic films of the opposite polarization. The bubbles can be circulated along prescribed tracks at high velocity (*see bottom illustration on page 142*) and do not disappear when power is turned off. The density in present devices is about 150,000 bits per square centimeter, or somewhat less than in CCD's.

three smaller for a CCD memory than it is for a random-access memory. One of the latest designs of a CCD serial-access memory has storage for 65,536 bits on a chip measuring about 3.5 by five millimeters.

The other principal form of microelectronic serial-access memory exploits the mobility of magnetic bubbles, or microscopic domains of magnetic polarization, in a thin magnetic film of orthoferrite or garnet. In the presence of a steady magnetic field of the appropriate strength, with its lines of force perpendicular to the plane of the film, domains of one polarization (say upward) are stable within a larger area of the opposite polarization (downward). The domains can be moved in the plane of the film by applying weaker magnetic fields at right angles to the principal field. When the domains are appropriately organized, they can constitute a magnetic-bubble memory.

If a small domain with an upward polarization is used to designate a binary 1, the absence of such a domain can be considered as designating a binary 0. Domains can be formed or eliminated with single-turn electromagnetic loops on the surface of the magnetic film. Arrays of electrodes in the shape of chevrons, *T*'s or disks, made of another magnetic material, are used to create local variations in the magnetic field in order to localize and separate the individual bubbles. A rotating magnetic field in the plane of the magnetic film can be used to shift the domains along a line of fixed chevrons (or some other pattern).

A key feature of bubble memories is that stored information is retained when external power is interrupted, a valuable property that is exploited in most present applications. The polarization of the bubbles is preserved by using a permanent magnet to maintain the steady perpendicular magnetic field. Electronic circuits are required to drive the bubble-forming and -steering loops and to amplify the small output signal that is obtained by electromagnetic induction or a magnetoresistive effect when a bubble is passed under a sensing device. These circuits are powered during the read and write operations.

Bubble memories are inherently serial in organization, so that access time depends on the number of storage locations in a serial path and on the maximum shifting rate. In present devices serial paths range in length from about 10 locations to 1,000 or more; shifting rates range from a fraction of a microsecond to several microseconds. Like CCD memories, bubble memories cannot compete with random-access electronic memories in speed. Their most attractive potential application is the replacement of tape and disk memories with a capacity of between one million and 10 million bits. In such applications semi-

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

Opel, with the biggest engine (1800cc) of all five cars, showed 27 miles per gallon* (based on EPA combined estimates: 55% city/45% highway). But it wasn't good enough.

Opel's bigger gas tank helped it do well when we measured Range (or how far a car can go on a full tank of gas), but not as well as Subaru and Toyota, who tied for first. And when we compared recommended maintenance schedules for 37,500 mile d
Opel (8 recommended visits) finished behind Rabbit (6 visits), and Datsun and Toyota (7 each).

All of which adds up to a first-place tie between Toyota and Datsun, with Opel—ahem—bringing up the rear, and dropping to third overall after three showdowns.

As we said, this was not our favorite event.

Rabbit and Opel outrun the pack.

This, however, could very well be our favorite event. Because the first thing most people want to know about any car is, "What'll she do?"

How fast does it accelerate? How's it corner? How sensitive is the steering? And—for Opel—the answer to all of these questions is, "Quite well, you."

So well, in , that our surprising little Opel was barely nosed out by a car much ballyhooed for its prowess

and (2) calculating the resultant circle diameter (per 100 degree steering wheel angle @ 30 mph).

AND THE WINNER IS...!

Let's put it this way: we didn't win. Well, alright, if you insist, we'll put it this way: Rabbit won.

But not by much. As you can see in the final point totals, the VW only beat our Opel by three points (with Calif. emission equipped cars: four points). And Opel did finish ahead of three highly regarded opponents in the areas we tested.

So if the point of this whole 5-Car Showdown was to convince you that our Opel could hold its own against better-established competitors . . . that Opel should definite y e considered when you wander out to shop . . . well, we think we've made it.

Results will vary in California.

THE BUICK OPEL 5-CAR SHOWDOWN.

GENERAL MOTORS NAMES RABBIT BEST OF FIVE ECONOMY CARS TESTED.

When General Motors comes right out there and says the Volkswagen Rabbit is the best car they tested, it must be true.

They're the biggest car company in the world, so they ought to know.

Of the five cars GM tested, the Rabbit got the highest possible scores in all of these important categories:

1) Most interior room
2) Biggest trunk capacity
3) Least interior noise
4) Fewest needed maintenance stops
5) Best acceleration
6) Best hill climbing power
7) Best steering quickness

In short, the Rabbit won for just about every last thing you'd want a car to do: to hold lots of people and things, to go quietly like the wind, to handle superbly and to not need a lot of fussing over.

All in all, there is hardly anything you can ask of a car that the Rabbit can't deliver.

We are grateful to General Motors for proving what we suspected all along.

It takes a very big company to admit publicly that our car is better than their car.

And we want to take this opportunity to thank them publicly for saying so.

VOLKSWAGEN DOES IT AGAIN

©VOLKSWAGEN OF AMERICA, INC.

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

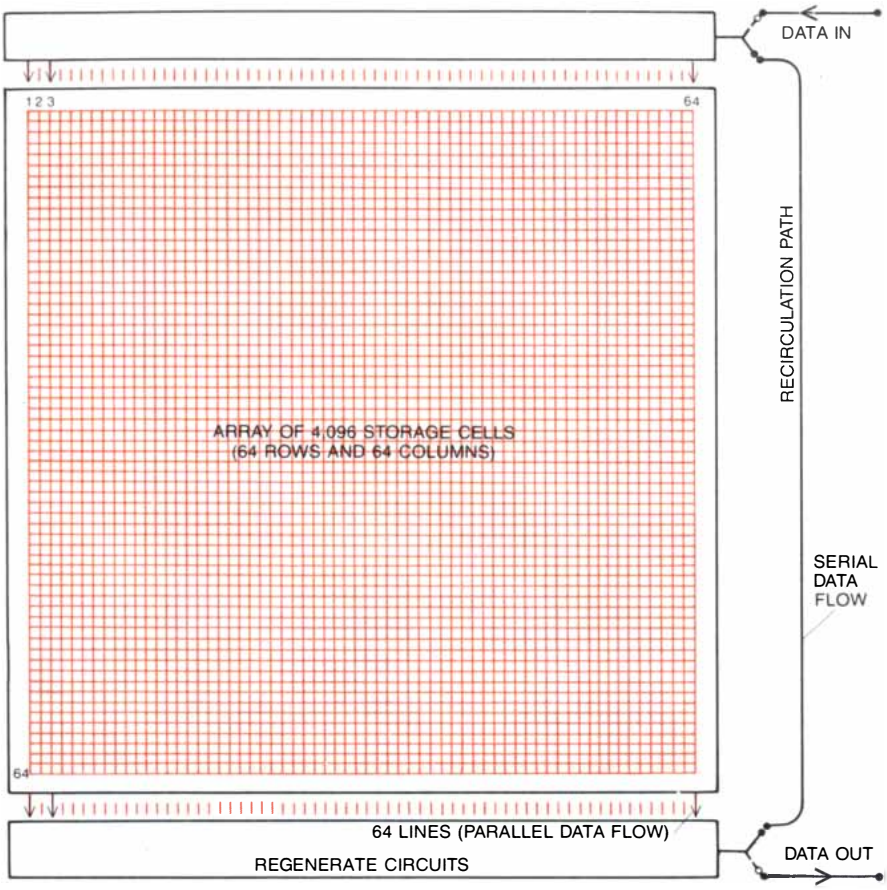


DIAGRAM OF CCD MEMORY depicts the circulation pattern of the 4,096 bits stored in each array of the 16-array, 65,536-bit memory device at the top of page 140. As in most random-access memory devices, the pattern of stored bits must be continuously regenerated, or refreshed. The regeneration cycle also establishes the access time for reading and writing. Here the 64 bits in each of the 64 columns shift downward synchronously into the regenerator along parallel lines at a rate of some 80,000 bits per second. The 4,096 bits (64×64) flow serially out of the regenerator at a rate 64 times higher (that is, at about five million bits per second) and reenter the top of the array, distributed along 64 parallel lines into their original columns. Since all 16 arrays operate in a similar fashion, the 65,536-bit device is externally indistinguishable from a single 4,096-bit serial shift register operating at five million cycles per second.

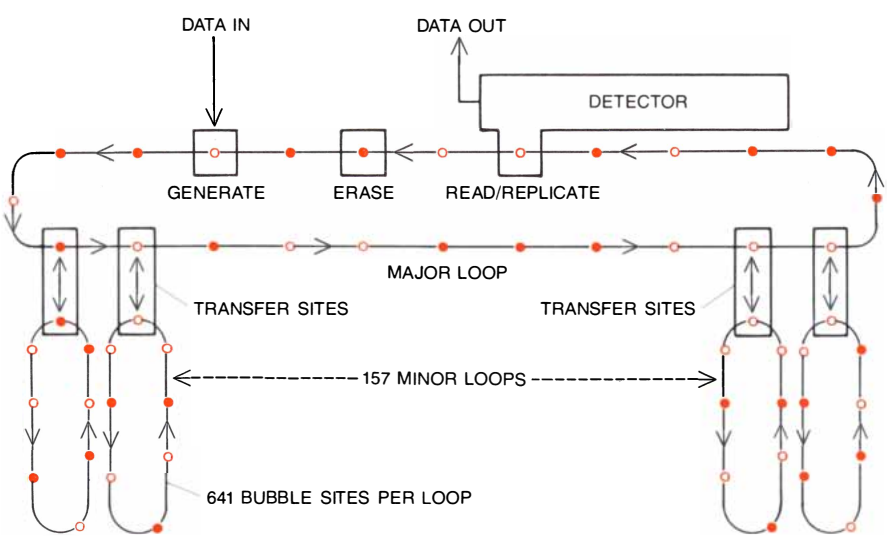


DIAGRAM OF MAGNETIC-BUBBLE MEMORY shows the pattern of circulation in the 100,637-bit memory. The major loop holds a single data block, consisting of 1's and 0's (bubbles or no bubbles) that are being written into the memory, read out, replicated or erased. In this particular device the data block contains 157 bits. In the writing cycle the 157 bits first enter the major loop, whence they are transferred simultaneously, at a signal, to the 157 minor loops, one bit per loop. Each minor loop in turn provides sites for 641 bubbles. Thus total capacity of device is 157×641, or 100,637, bits. In read cycle 157 bits are transferred simultaneously, at a signal, from minor loops into major loop, which carries them past read head.

conductor memories may be ruled out because their storage of information is volatile. At present the cost per bit of bubble memories, if they are produced in quantity, should be roughly comparable to that of moving-surface memories for storage capacities of up to about 10 million bits. For the storage of larger quantities of information moving-surface memories still have a major cost advantage.

A promising variation of the bubble memory, the bubble-lattice file or structureless bubble circuit, eliminates the requirement for one or two physically patterned surface electrodes per bit of information stored. The bubbles are packed tightly together; the distinction between binary states is determined by changes in the magnetization within the wall of a single domain rather than by the presence or absence of a domain. The successful development of bubble-lattice memories would overcome the limitations imposed by the techniques for defining patterns, which now determine the maximum storage density.

The device that offers perhaps the most dramatic potential for improving microelectronic memories, indeed a potential for creating a new generation of superfast computers, is the superconductive tunnel junction. Such junctions are multiterminal switching devices that harness the transition between a superconducting tunneling state and a normal tunneling state in response to a small change in a local magnetic field. "Tunneling" refers to the ability of electrons under certain conditions to penetrate energy barriers they would ordinarily lack the energy to surmount. In order for the tunnel junction to go into the superconducting state the device must be cooled to cryogenic temperatures by immersion in liquid helium.

Since tunnel junctions operate at temperatures close to absolute zero and at the very low voltages characteristic of the superconducting state, they are capable of performing switching operations one or two orders of magnitude faster than semiconductor circuits can perform, and they consume two or three orders of magnitude less power. The reduction in power consumption makes it possible to pack circuits very densely without creating problems arising from the necessity to dissipate heat. The signal-propagation times in a large system are in turn reduced because the interconnecting lines can be shorter. In view of these considerations one can foresee the development of cryoelectronic memories with extremely high component densities, operating at speeds 10 to 100 times faster than today's fastest electronic memories.

A number of difficult problems remain to be solved before cryoelectronic memories and computers become practical. The fabrication of tunnel junctions

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

NEW FROM IBM

Practical Solutions to Problems Involving Instrumentation

IBM's Instrument Systems Group is actively solving problems requiring interaction between analytical instruments and computers.

The Device Coupler (foreground) is the quickest, easiest, most economical way we know to couple analytical instruments to computers. It should be applied wherever productivity is improved by automating data handling and control tasks. With this product the technician, scientist, engineer or other end-user can set up and initiate within hours data acquisition and control functions involving virtually all analytical instrumentation.

In addition, the analog and digital capabilities of the Device Coupler permit the hookup to computers of most other types of instrumentation and devices such as temperature sensors, displays, scales and numerically controlled machine tools.

Device Coupler prices start at $3,050.

For the high-technology semiconductor industry, IBM has developed a unique solution, the Film Thickness Analyzer. The FTA automates the measurement, analysis and display of thickness data used to control semiconductor manufacturing processes.

Another product, the Textile Color Analyzer, improves repeatability, control and plant productivity for dyeing and printing operations in the Textile Industry by automatically computing color matches, production adds and least-cost color formulations.

The most recent offering, the Color Analyzer II, measures and analyzes color for industries such as paint and plastics. The Color Analyzer II helps match color automatically, increasing laboratory and plant productivity. In addition, optimum use of pigments can be calculated, thereby decreasing operating costs.

The work being done by IBM Instrument Systems promises to help serve both public and private sectors better than ever. To find out more about how these products can help solve your application problems, please drop us a line.

Please send me details about:

- ☐ The IBM 7406 Device Coupler
- ☐ The IBM 7840 Film Thickness Analyzer
- ☐ The IBM 7841 Textile Color Analyzer
- ☐ The IBM 7842 Color Analyzer II

My application is _____

NAME _____

TITLE _____

TELEPHONE _____

COMPANY _____

ADDRESS _____

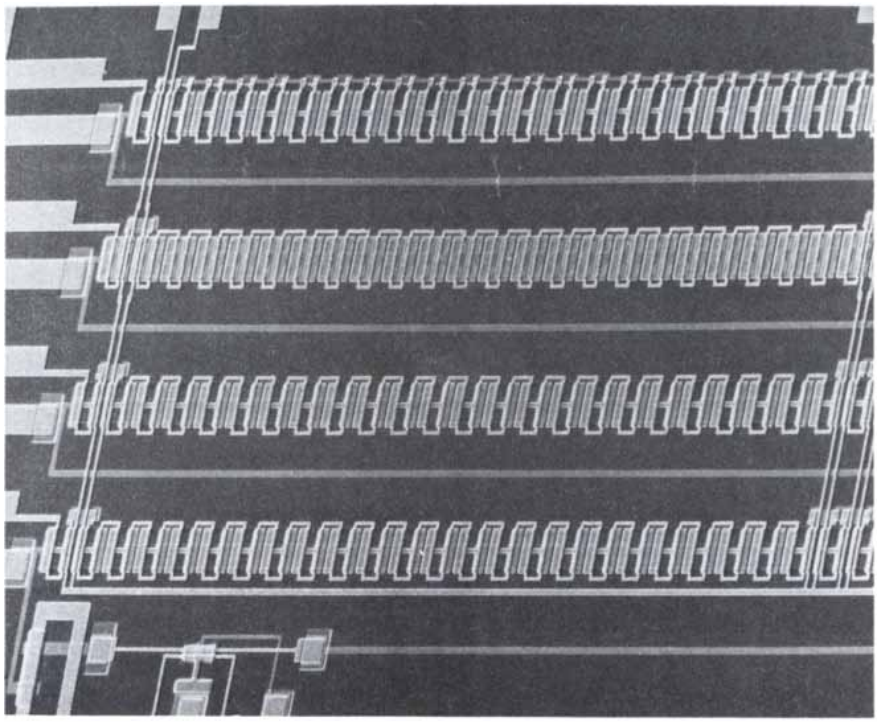
CITY _____

STATE _____ ZIP _____

IBM® Instrument Systems
System Products Division
1000 Westchester Ave.
White Plains, N.Y. 10604

SA1

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC



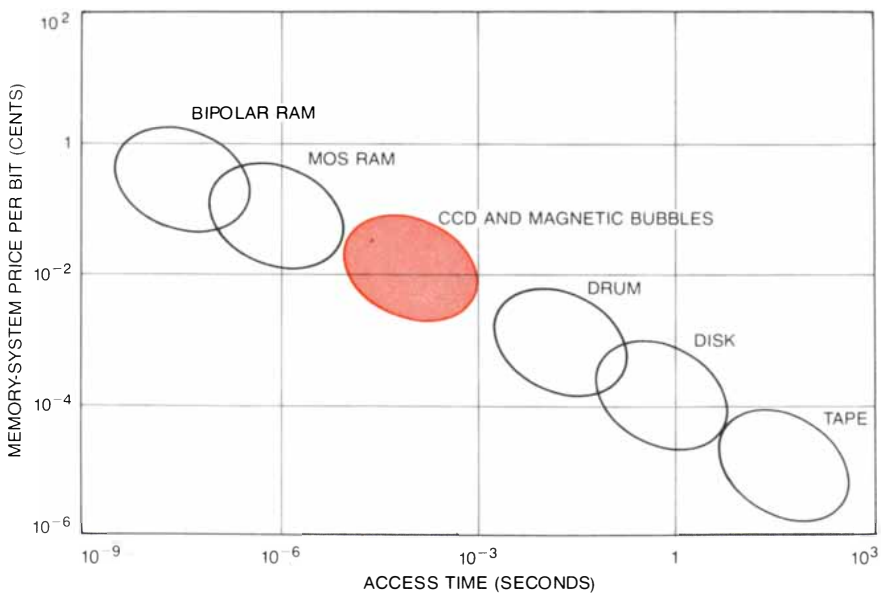
JOSEPHSON MEMORY CELLS, which operate close to absolute zero, can store information as a single quantum of magnetic flux, thereby achieving the ultimate energy economy attainable in a magnetic storage device. This experimental device, built by the Zurich Research Laboratory of the International Business Machines Corporation, has 392 Josephson memory cells arranged in four strings of 98 cells each. Test chip, only a section of which is seen here, was fabricated in part to see whether entering or removing information would disturb information stored in other cells. Results confirm storage of single quanta in closely spaced cells is feasible.

requires perfect insulating films (usually amorphous oxides grown in situ) with a thickness of about a two-hundredth the wavelength of blue light. New packaging and interconnection techniques are needed to achieve the high packing density required for minimum interconnection delays. Mechanical stresses generated by differing thermal-expansion coefficients must be dealt with in order to avoid damage when the temperature is reduced from room temperature to nearly absolute zero. Such considerations suggest that some years of work will be needed before cryoelectronic systems become available.

So far I have been describing mostly the functional features and high-speed performance of alternative memory technologies. At this point I should like to comment briefly on matters that may be the most important in the selection of a memory technology: the price per bit of storage capacity and reliability. Finally I shall touch on the prospects for further advances in the technology of moving-surface memories and all-electronic memories.

The price per bit of a memory system is roughly correlated with the complexity of the structure or system on a per-bit basis. For example, the highest-speed electronic memories require several transistors, resistors and interconnecting lines for each cell. In contrast, the simplest electronic memories require only one transistor and two interconnecting lines per bit. The fabrication of semiconductor memories calls for four to eight sequential pattern-transfer processes. Bubble memories are potentially cheaper than semiconductor memories because they require only one to three pattern-transfer processes in the fabrication of the storage-cell array.

Moving-surface memories are cheaper than electronic memories because there is no need to define individual physical patterns or structures for each individual storage cell. The minimum price of a moving-surface memory system, however, is relatively high because of the need for precision mechanical components to transport the magnetic storage medium. The economic attractiveness of the bubble-lattice memory is based on the fact that it requires neither moving parts nor the definition of features at each cell.



ACCESS TIME AND PRICE are compared for various memory technologies. The charge-coupled devices and magnetic-bubble memories are filling an important gap between ultra-high-speed, random-access memories and the much slower moving-surface magnetic memories. Cost for all memory systems should drop by a factor of 10 or more in coming decade.

One way to consider the prices of various forms of memories is to compare them as a function of average random-access time. In the currently available systems the access time ranges from about 10 nanoseconds for bipolar-transistor memories to 10 seconds or more for magnetic-tape memories. The corresponding cost per bit varies from about one cent for the bipolar memories to less than 10^{-5} cent for tape. Across a million-to-one range in price per bit the pattern is uniform: one must accept a two orders of magnitude increase in access time in order to obtain a one order of magnitude saving in price.

The reliability of memory systems is a function of both fundamental and practical problems. The fundamental problems have to do with phenomena such as corrosion. For the well-established memory technologies these problems are now quite well understood and typically are not the cause of many failures. The practical problems have to do with defective manufacturing, packaging or testing and with mistakes in the use and

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

maintenance of components and systems. Most of the failures in today's memory systems result from such practical problems. For example, in semiconductor memories failure rates in field service are better correlated with the number of separately packaged chips in the system than with the total number of bits the system stores.

For many years it has been empirically observed that the manufacturing cost of technologically complex products tends to decrease as accumulated production experience increases. A similar pattern is believed to exist in failure rates, which for a given electronic product seem to decrease with increasing manufacturing experience. This phenomenon, which is known in graphical representation as the learning curve or the progress function, creates a barrier to the introduction of new memory technologies. Over the past 20 years dozens of new memory technologies have fallen by the wayside in the face of continued improvements in established memory technologies. Moving-surface magnetic memories have improved steadily in this period. The success of semiconductor memories in overtaking ferrite-core memories as the dominant electronic storage technique is the only example that breaks the pattern. Many observers think this success resulted only from the fact that semiconductor microelectronic technology was already proceeding along a steep learning curve before it was employed for memory.

A number of promising memory technologies have not achieved commercial success in spite of intensive research and development and in some instances even limited production. Examples are the magnetic-film memories (such as plated-wire and planar-film memories) and the electron-beam and optical-beam memories. Often the investment required to bring a new memory technology to the stage of being manufacturable at low cost and with high reliability has been considered too great in relation to the risks and the potential rewards.

The next decade is likely to bring substantial improvements in the performance of both moving-surface and electronic memories, together with reductions in cost. There are no fundamental barriers to increasing the bit-storage density on moving magnetic surfaces a hundredfold, with little accompanying increase in the price of the system. The anticipated introduction of electron-beam and X-ray techniques in the fabrication of microelectronic circuits should also make it possible to increase the bit density of these devices by a factor of 100, again with only minor increases in price per component. Thus the expectation is that over the next 10 years there will be a reduction of more than an order of magnitude in the price per bit of all forms of digital memory.

WITHOUT THESE reliable Tennessee loggers, Jack Daniel Distillery would be in a fix.

These gentlemen live where there aren't many addresses. And you can hardly reach them by phone. But every November they'll arrive in our Hollow with truckfuls of upland hard maple. And we'll rickburn this wood to charcoal for mellowing Jack Daniel's. Charcoal mellowing (and pure limestone water) largely account for our whiskey's popularity. So, you can be sure, we're glad these loggers are so reliable.

CHARCOAL MELLOWED
DROP
BY DROP

Tennessee Whiskey • 90 Proof • Distilled and Bottled by Jack Daniel Distillery
Lem Motlow, Prop., Inc., Lynchburg (Pop. 361), Tenn. 37352
Placed in the National Register of Historic Places by the United States Government.

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

Microprocessors

A microprocessor is a computer central processing unit on a single chip. Currently it is associated with other chips in a microcomputing system. Now emerging, however, are complete computer systems on a single chip

by Hoo-Min D. Toong

A microprocessor is the central arithmetic and logic unit of a computer, together with its associated circuitry, scaled down so that it fits on a single silicon chip (sometimes several chips) holding tens of thousands of transistors, resistors and similar circuit elements. It is a member of the family of large-scale integrated circuits that reflect the present state of evolution of a miniaturization process that began with the development of the transistor in the late 1940's. A typical microprocessor chip measures half a centimeter on a side. By adding anywhere from 10 to 80 chips to provide timing, program memory, random-access memory, interfaces for input and output signals and other ancillary functions one can assemble a complete computer system on a board whose area does not exceed the size of this page. Such an assembly is a microcomputer, in which the microprocessor serves as the master component. About 20 U.S. companies are now manufacturing some 30 different designs of microprocessor chips, ranging in price from $10 to $300. More than 120 companies are incorporating these chips in microcomputer systems selling for $100 and up. The number of applications for microprocessors is proliferating daily in industry, in banking, in power generation and distribution, in telecommunications and in scores of consumer products ranging from automobiles to electronic games.

As in the central processing unit, or CPU, of a larger computer, the task of the microprocessor is to receive data in the form of strings of binary digits (0's and 1's), to store the data for later processing, to perform arithmetic and logic operations on the data in accordance with previously stored instructions and to deliver the results to the user through an output mechanism such as an electric typewriter, a cathode-ray-tube display or a two-dimensional plotter. The block diagram of a typical microprocessor would show the following units: a decode and control unit (to interpret instructions from the stored program), the arithmetic and logic unit, or ALU (to perform arithmetic and logic operations), registers (to serve as an easily accessible memory for data frequently manipulated), an accumulator (a special register closely associated with the ALU), address buffers (to supply the control memory with the address from which to fetch the next instruction) and input-output buffers (to read instructions or data into the microprocessor or to send them out).

Present microprocessors vary in their detailed architecture depending on their manufacture and in some cases on the particular semiconductor technology adopted. One of the major distinctions is whether all the elements of the microprocessor are embodied in one chip or are divided among several identical modular chips that can be linked in parallel, the total number of chips depending on the length of the "word" the user wants to process: four bits (binary digits), eight bits, 16 bits or more. Such a multichip arrangement is known as a bit-sliced organization. A feature of bit-sliced chips made by the bipolar technology is that they are "microprogrammable": they allow the user to create specific sets of instructions, a definite advantage for many applications.

The flood of microprocessors and microcomputers reaching the market, combined with the rapid rate of innovation, guarantees that any attempt to catalogue them will be instantly obsolete. A more fruitful introduction to the "micro" marketplace is to classify systems hierarchically according to their capability and function. Along these two dimensions there is a well-defined upward progression in both hardware and software. In hardware the levels are chips, modules, "breadboard" systems, small computer systems, full-development systems and multiprocessor systems.

This hierarchy is not absolute because the evolving technology creates ever more powerful chips, some of which can bridge two or three hierarchic levels. Chips are used to construct a module, modules to construct a small computer system (SCS) and small computers to construct a full development system (FDS). Multiprocessor systems can incorporate modules, SCS's or FDS's, depending on the application and complexity.

At the first level of the hierarchy are the microprocessor chips, representing the large-scale integration of tens of thousands of individual electronic devices: transistors, diodes, resistors and capacitors. At this level there are also more specialized chips: random-access memories (RAM's), read-only memories (ROM's), programmable read-only memories (PROM's), input-output (I/O) interfaces and others. The cutting edge of the technology works most directly at the chip level, providing, for example, RAM's of ever higher storage capacity. (Currently the most advanced commercially available RAM can store 16,384 bits; within a year or two the maximum storage capacity will be 64,536 bits.)

Generally the various kinds of chips are grouped into families that are compatible with particular microprocessors. The families will include a series of RAM, ROM and PROM chips to create a memory system, a series of interface chips capable of handling both parallel and serial input-output functions and miscellaneous chips to enhance system capabilities, such as high-speed arithmetic operations. Master-control chips are needed to establish priorities and to keep signals flowing smoothly through the complex maze of interconnections. The compatibility of chips and chip families made by different manufacturers varies widely. For example, the microprocessors of different builders are generally not physically interchangeable, whereas several types of memory chips often are.

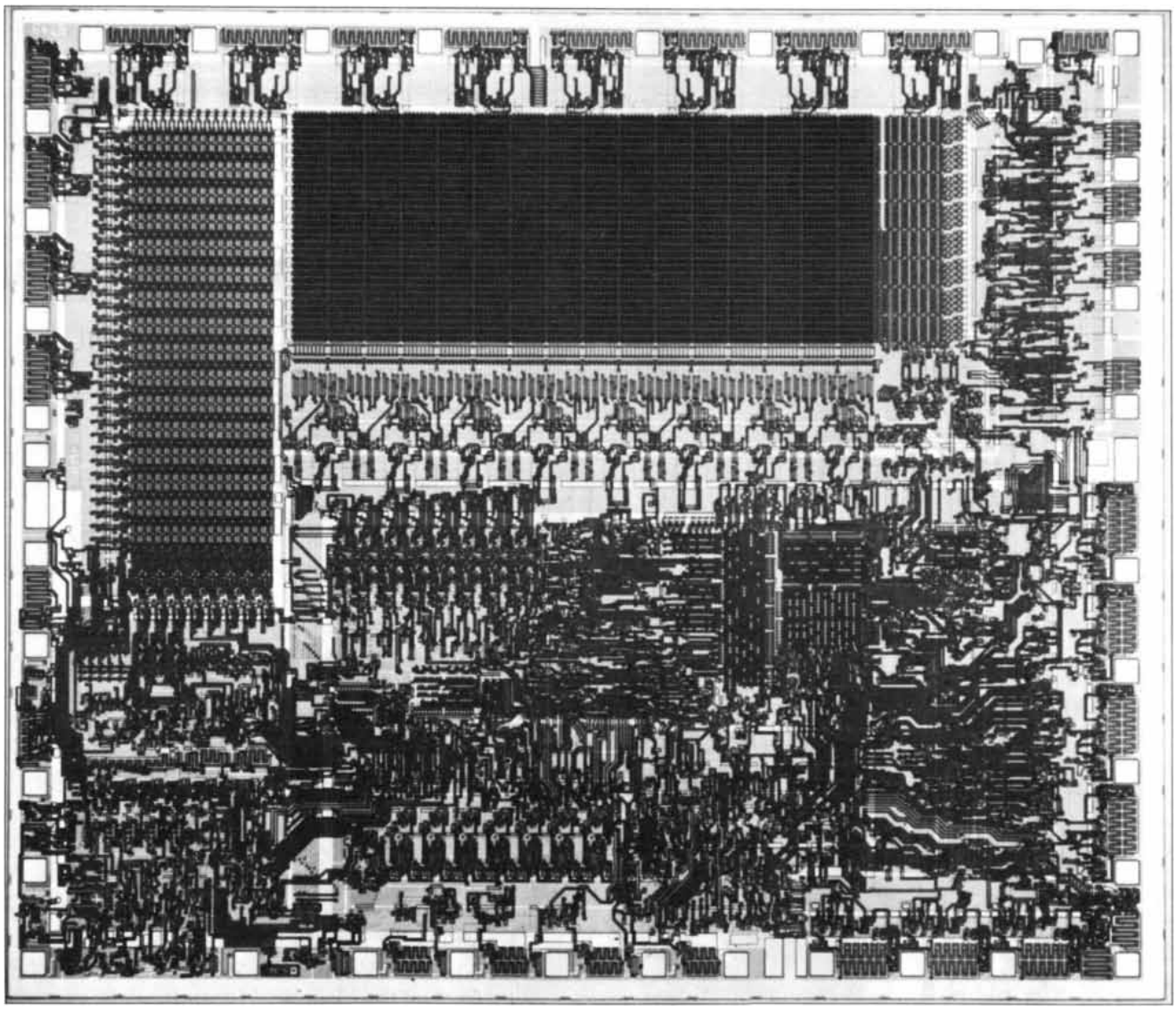
The second level of the hierarchy, the module and breadboard systems, represents the simplest true computer sys-

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

tems. They can be created by combining a microprocessor with a limited array of memory chips (RAM's and ROM's) and input-output chips. In order to communicate with such a minimal system the user will also need a simple device such as a numeric keyboard and a device capable of displaying or recording the computer output. Such single-board systems are useful for introductory teaching purposes or can serve as breadboard prototypes for more sophisticated systems. For a modest investment (usually under $300) a beginner can learn the fundamentals of microprocessor programming. Because of the system's limited memory, its lack of software-development tools and its crude interface with the user, however, even a novice is apt to outgrow a single-board system quickly.

At the next level in the hierarchy of capability and function are the small computer systems that are prepackaged as stand-alone units. Unlike the single-board modules, they have a self-contained power supply, the capability for memory expansion and room for a series of plug-in interface modules. Some of the more powerful single-board development modules can be expanded with the appropriate hardware to create such a single-box computer system. All the small computer systems have software capabilities that approach in sophistication those found in much larger conventional systems. They also provide an interface for a cathode-ray tube or a keyboard-display console. In addition many of the small systems can be interfaced to such peripheral devices as "floppy disk" memories, tape cassettes, paper tapes and line printers. With such enhancements a small computer system could serve as a full development system. For the most part, however, the single-box computers find their principal market today among computer hobbyists, who employ them for small programming tasks, word processing, general computation and game playing.

At the next level in the hierarchy we come to the FDS, or full development system. Perhaps its most important role is to provide a quick and efficient means for developing a low-cost microprocessor module that will later be manufac-

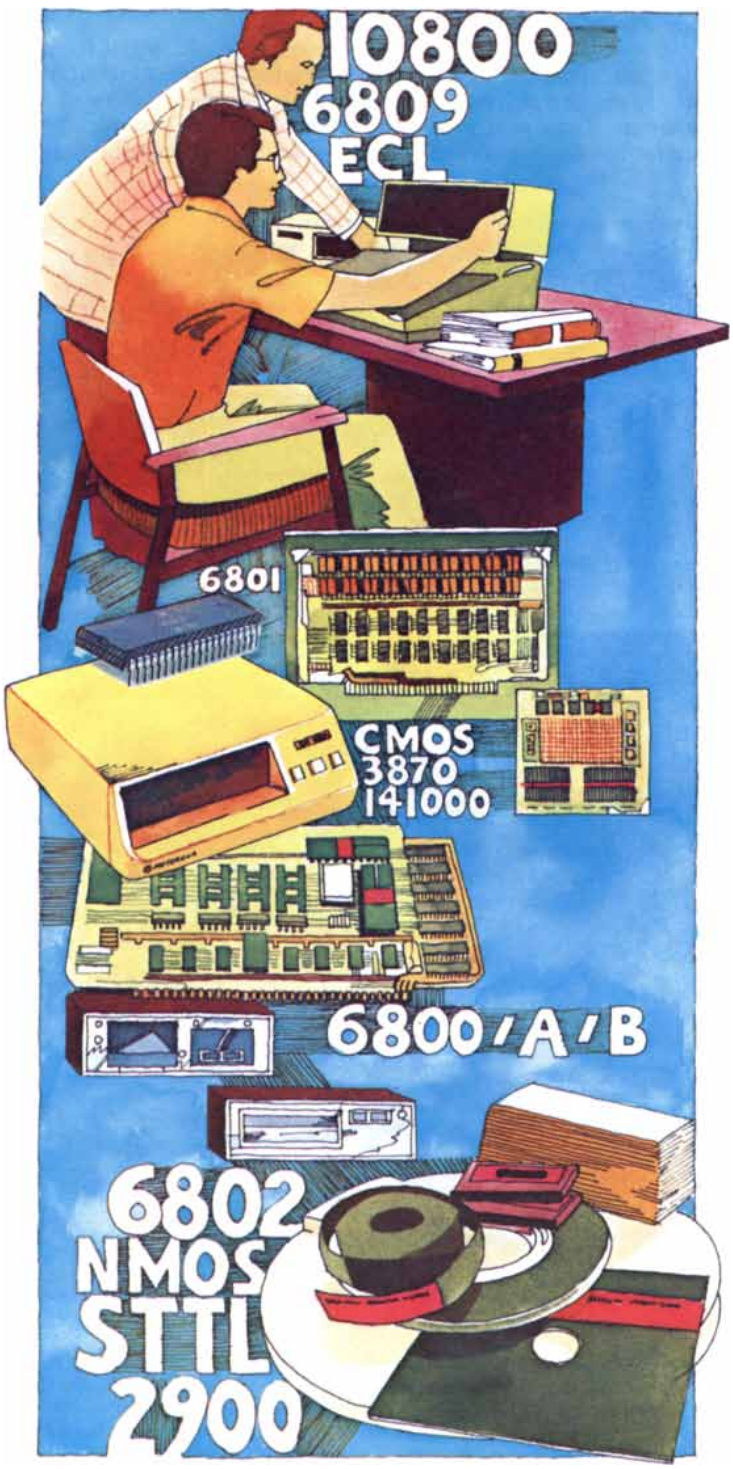


SINGLE-CHIP MICROCOMPUTER is a complete general-purpose digital processing and control system in one large-scale integrated circuit. The device combines a microprocessor, which would ordinarily occupy an entire chip, with a variety of supplementary functions such as program memory, data memory, multiple input-output (I/O) interfaces and timing circuits. The device shown, the 8748 made by the Intel Corporation, measures 5.6 by 6.6 millimeters. The program is stored in an erasable and reprogrammable read-only memory (EPROM), which has a capacity of one kilobyte, or 8,192 bits (binary digits). The program is erased by exposing the circuit to ultraviolet radiation, which causes the electric charges stored in the EPROM to leak away, after which a new program can be entered electrically. In volumes of 25 or more a packaged 8748 sells for $210. A functional map of chip appears in the illustration at bottom of page 151.

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

Don't settle for 2nd-best when you want your new microcomputer-

Specify Motorola:



#1 with impartial experts.

Of all industry-popular 8-bit microcomputer families, Motorola's fully-compatible M6800 ranks first in cost-effective performance. Most objective authorities agree, based on comparative analysis of architecture, instruction set, input/output, software, systems development support products, and the total family approach.

#1 with electronics buyers.

Motorola is #1, as determined by the latest-available independent study of "microprocessor" brand preferences, conducted among thousands of buyers in the electronics OEM industries.

Motorola came out first with buyers not only in microprocessors but also in overall preference of major suppliers of integrated circuits and discrete semiconductors.

#1 with 1977 microcomputer introductions.

Compare. In NMOS alone, Motorola is introducing over 100 compatible microcomputer family components this year. One-chip microcomputers. Simpler MPUs for lower-cost systems. More complex MPUs for dedicated applications. And all the needed LSI memories, input/output devices, and peripheral parts for your widest choice of system options.

Concurrently we are continuing to expand our bipolar microprocessor slice

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

controlled product to be #1. Your future depends on its success.

#1 in microcomputers.

families, our line of single-board and mix-and-match Micromodule subsystems and support products, our add-on memory systems, applications support and documentation, system design courses and seminars, and the industry's broadest range of associated discrete devices.

#1 in worldwide commitment.

It's an unparalleled marshalling of microcomputer resources: our massive new product introduction schedule which dwarfs anything you've seen; second-source agreements in the U.S., Europe and Japan; and manufacturing facilities in the free-world's major marketplaces.

Such commitment assures you the widest possible price/performance latitude in your choice of microcomputers and the freedom to build virtually any kind of system the most cost-effective way.

Be #1 in your market.

Obtain technical information and applications assistance on Motorola microcomputers from your nearby Motorola sales office or authorized distributor, or write us at 3501 Ed Bluestein Blvd., Austin, Texas 78721. You'll get a whole lot more than you bargained for . . . and your best shot at being #1 in your market.

MOTOROLA
Semiconductor Group
The mind to imagine . . . the skill to do.

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

Harris S-110 Computer System

Delivering Computer Power.

Access to big computers can be a problem, and minicomputers have limited power. Harris medium-scale computer systems put number crunching power at the fingertips of the people who need it. Economically.

Write: Harris Corporation, 55 Public Square, Cleveland, Ohio 44113.

HARRIS

COMMUNICATIONS AND INFORMATION HANDLING

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

tured in volume to solve a manufacturing, telecommunications or business problem. In other words, the FDS is a full-capability microelectronic system that can serve as a vehicle for helping to develop a smaller target system.

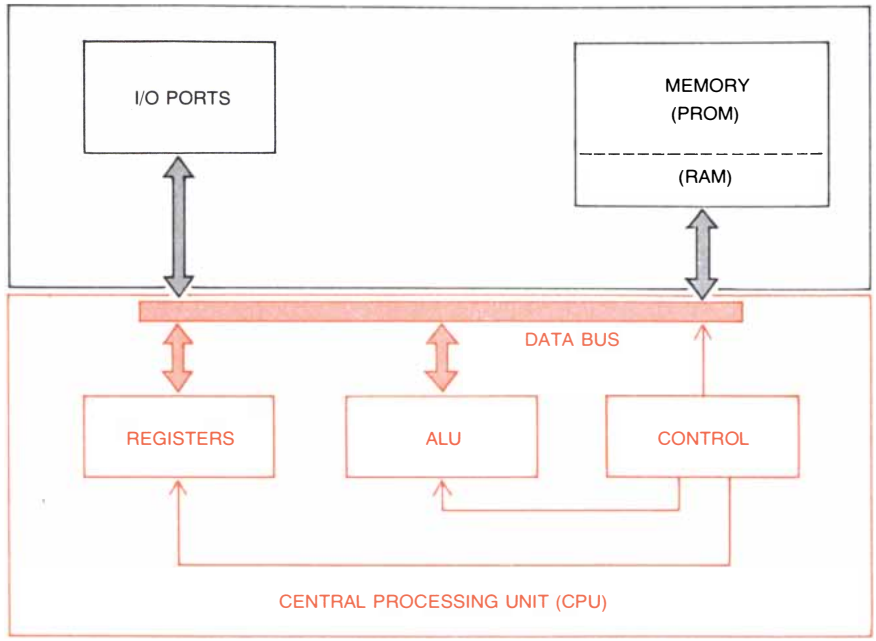
Whereas the FDS may represent an investment of some $15,000, counting both hardware and software, the target system will be a microprocessor or microcomputer costing perhaps $500, or even less when it is manufactured in volume. For example, if one wanted to develop a microprocessor to optimize the performance of an automobile engine (by continuously adjusting the amount of fuel, the ignition timing and the fuel mixture), the final unit might be a small integrated-circuit module affixed to each engine and costing well under $100. One would use an FDS to develop the programs that would ultimately be placed in the ROM and PROM memories of the target system. A full development system normally includes a small computer system, a dual floppy-disk drive with a controller, a line printer, a cathode-ray-tube display terminal or teleprinter console, a ROM or PROM programmer and possibly a few other specialized pieces of hardware.

The final level of microcomputer usage is the multiprocessor system. The microprocessor represents truly low-cost computing. Its economics are so compelling that microcomputers are serving not only in many applications where computing power was previously too costly but also in applications where several dozen dedicated microprocessor modules can now be teamed to monitor and control parts of existing industrial or commercial systems where computer control was formerly unthinkable. Such an assembly of microprocessors or microcomputers can be organized in two functionally distinct ways.

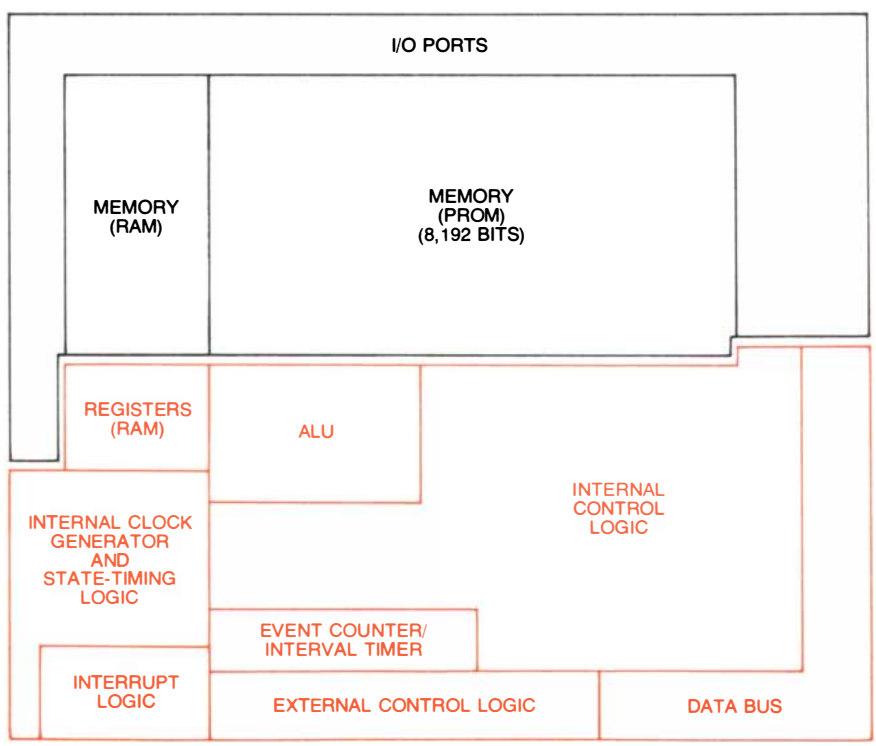
In the first type of organization a tightly coupled group of microprocessors is designed to exchange data at high rates over short distances with a high degree of parallelism to achieve a maximum of computational power. Such a system could be used to emulate a large computer, to provide high reliability or to handle a specific problem that can take advantage of several processors operating in parallel.

The second organization, with by far the greatest application potential, is a loosely coupled system in which several widely distributed microcomputers communicate at low data rates with little or no parallelism. Examples of such distributed systems would be applications to factory automation, the control of oil refineries and chemical plants and the control of electrical devices in a home. Distributed systems are approaching reality in sizable numbers.

As can be imagined, the design and



BASIC COMPONENTS OF COMPUTER SYSTEM can now be compressed onto a single chip, as in the Intel 8748. In this block diagram "control" includes control logic and instructions for decoding and executing the program stored in "memory." "Registers" provide control with temporary storage in the form of random-access memories (RAM's) and their associated functions. "ALU" (for arithmetic and logic unit) carries out arithmetic and logic operations under supervision of control. "I/O ports" provide access to peripheral devices such as a keyboard, a cathode-ray-tube display terminal, "floppy disk" information storage and a line printer. The functions that are in black convert a microprocessor (*color*) into a complete microcomputer.



MAP OF 8748 MICROCOMPUTER identifies the location of the various computer functions. The color scheme used in the preceding illustration is repeated here. Each function can be assigned to one of the five basic functional blocks: control, memory, registers, ALU and I/O ports. The portions of the chip outlined in black represent the functions that transform the 8748 from a simple microprocessor into a microcomputer. Device holds some 20,000 transistors fabricated by *n*-channel silicon-gate metal-oxide-semiconductor (*n*-MOS) technology. Eight-bit central processor responds to 96 instructions in average time of 2.5 microseconds.

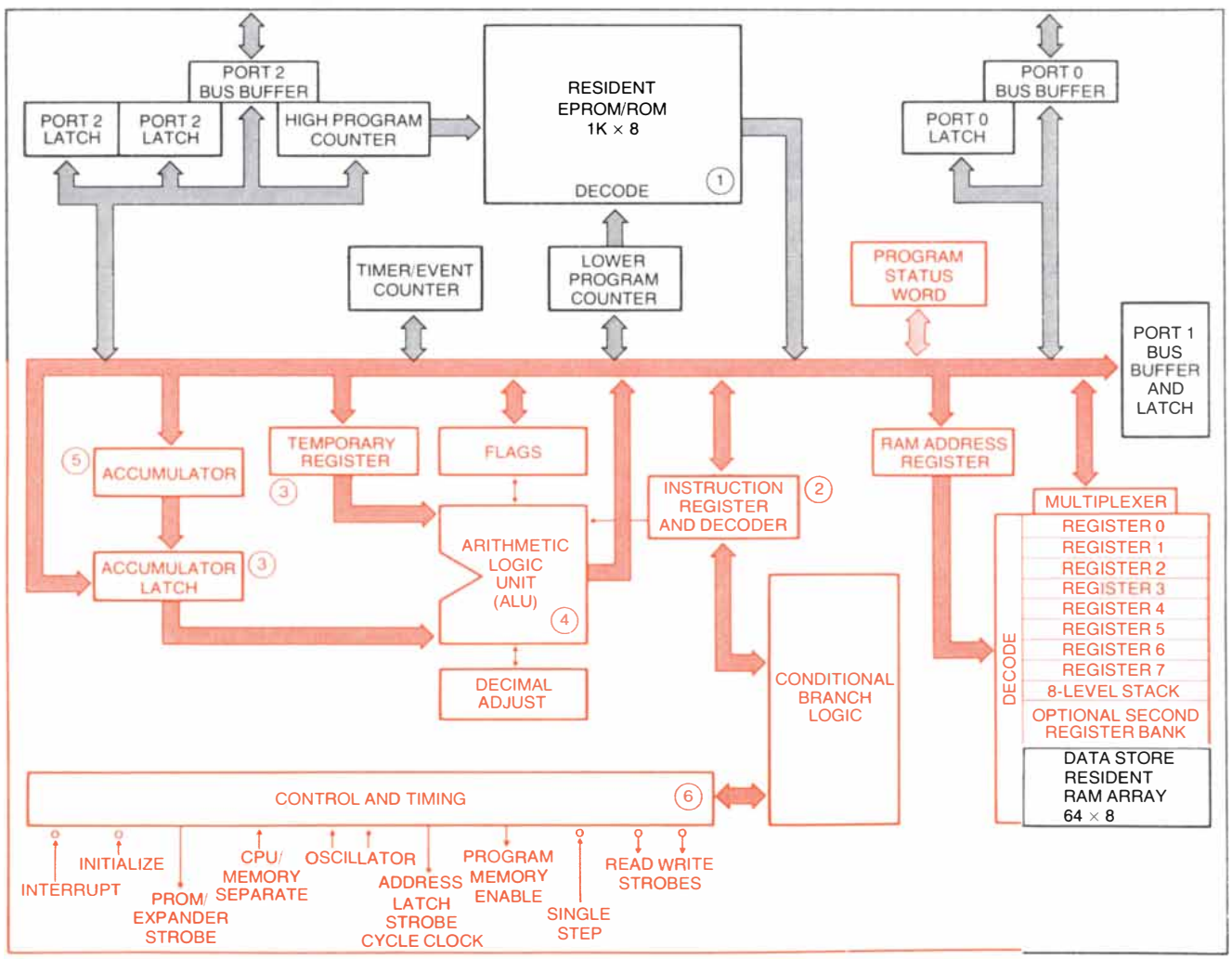
© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

development tools for multiprocessor systems are much more primitive than those for single processor systems. Software problems that are difficult enough to solve for one microcomputer expand almost geometrically in complexity as more units are added to the system. The problems include the organization of distributed files, or information-storage systems, process scheduling and achieving what programmers like to call "graceful" degradation, which means that the system should not merely "fail safe" but fail in gentle stages—gracefully. On the hardware side of the problem manufacturers have so far given scant attention to the configuration of microcomputers that would lend themselves efficiently to distributed installations.

So far I have used the term software without being very specific about its meaning. Since an understanding and a manipulation of software are fundamental to all computer usage, let me be somewhat more explicit. Like the hardware described above, software has its hierarchies. In the broadest sense software provides the means for telling a computer explicitly what to do through a step-by-step sequence of instructions that form a program. Each computer is provided with an "instruction set": a list of all the basic operations the computer is capable of performing. Each instruction is written in binary machine code: a sequence of 0's and 1's, typically eight or 16 bits long. Although a complete program could be written in this low-level language, the task is so tedious that an intermediate representation known as assembly language was developed and is currently the commonest language employed for programming microprocessors. Usually each symbolic instruction written in assembly language represents a single instruction in machine language. The translation is done by the computer itself with an "assembler" program.

To make programming still easier "higher level" languages were developed in which the instructions more nearly approximate ordinary English and the notations of mathematics. Examples are FORTRAN, ALGOL, COBOL and PL/1. One statement in such languages usually corresponds to many statements in machine language. The translation is done by the computer with the aid of a program called a compiler.

Even with such simplifications writing a program is arduous. Discovering the inevitable mistakes and correcting them is known as debugging. To simplify making changes in a program, the user



FUNCTIONAL BLOCK DIAGRAM of the 8748 microcomputer can be used to follow the sequence of steps involved in a simple operation, for example the addition of the contents of two registers, *A* and *R*, where *A* is the accumulator and *R* is any of the registers in the array at the lower right. The computer's first step (*1*) is to fetch the instruction from memory: "ADD A, R." The next step is to place the instruction in the instruction register and decoder (*2*), where the decoder finds that the instruction is to add *R* to *A* and to leave the result in *A*. In the next step the contents of register *R* are sent to the temporary register (*3*) and the contents of the accumulator to the accumulator latch (*3*). The ALU (*4*) then adds the contents of the two registers and the result is returned to the accumulator (*5*). Instruction ends and a signal is generated (*6*) to fetch next instruction. The 8748 microcomputer is capable of performing some 400,000 such additions per second.

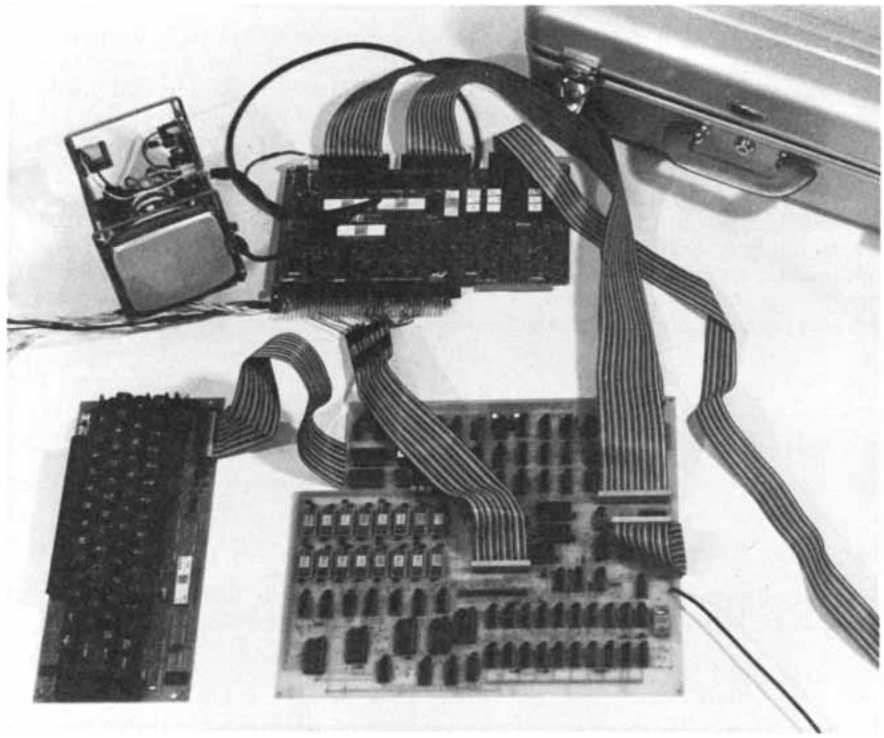
© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

can employ a special editing program, which facilitates the changing of individual instructions. Once the program is debugged it is usually stored in some nonvolatile memory device, such as a magnetic tape or disk. When the program is ready for the computer, it is rapidly transferred from the tape or disk into the computer's high-speed random-access memory. As we have seen, however, the usual goal of a full development system is to create a program that can be stored in the permanent (ROM or PROM) memory of a microcomputer targeted to solve a specific problem repetitively.

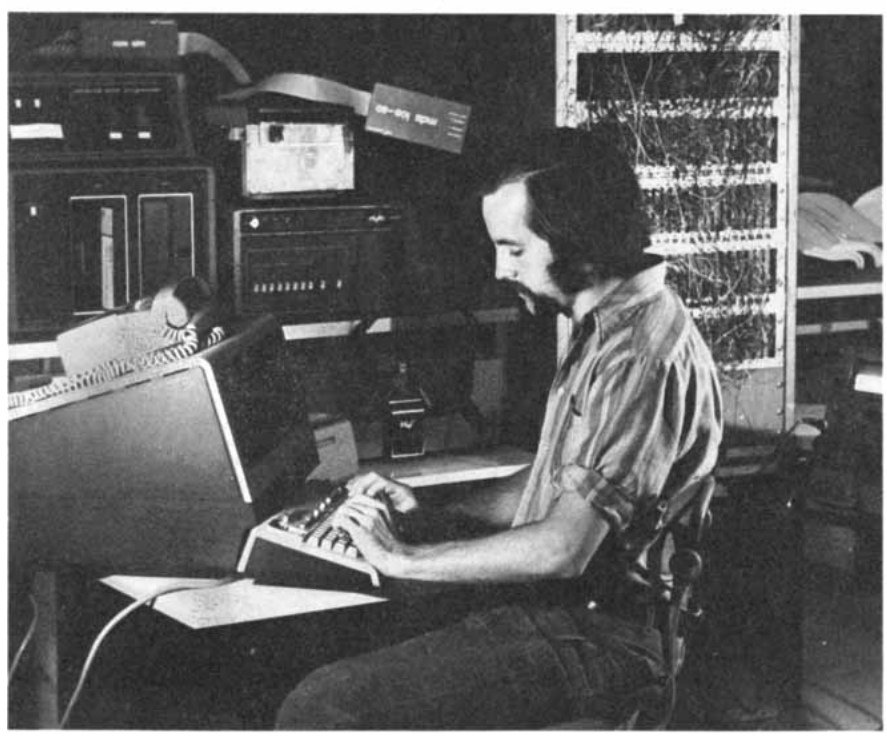
Over the years there has been a proliferation of symbolic and higher-level languages for special purposes, each with its own assemblers or compilers for making it intelligible to particular models of computers. As a result "cross software" systems have been developed to facilitate communication between computers. Thus users of large computer systems and time-sharing services have access to cross-software assemblers, compilers and simulators (programs that enable a computer of one make or model to duplicate the actions of another). At present this represents an expensive alternative to a full development system for creating microprocessor software. In addition software simulators do not readily duplicate real-time input-output and execution speeds of the target microprocessor.

In order to project the rate of introduction of future microprocessor applications it is helpful to understand the process by which applications are typically developed. Given an identifiable use for a microprocessor in a product or system, how does a manufacturing company go about developing a suitable device equipped with a suitable program? As I have indicated, the prospective user does not as a rule try to design a special microprocessor chip for his particular task. He starts with one of the chips already on the market and selects from the wide assortment of other available chips: RAM's, ROM's, PROM's, I/O interfaces or whatever may be needed to construct a module capable of carrying out the task he hopes to perform. In many cases commercially available general-purpose, single-board microcomputer modules will be satisfactory for his task. Microprocessors have become so inexpensive that it is usually cheaper to exploit as little as 10 or even 5 percent of the computing power of an existing chip or module than to invest in the design and programming of a special unit that would do the job with only the minimum number of electronic components. Given a sufficient volume of production, however, development of a special unit may be justified.

The process of developing a microprocessor application begins with the



SINGLE-BOARD COMPUTER MODULES provide a capability for the design and development of systems for special tasks. The photograph shows a briefcase microcomputer built by the author's group at the Massachusetts Institute of Technology. A commercial single-board module, an Intel SBC 80/10 (*nearest briefcase*), is combined with a custom-designed module (*lower right*) and two peripheral units: a keyboard and a display unit. The arrangement demonstrates how standard modules can be integrated with custom ones to solve a particular problem.



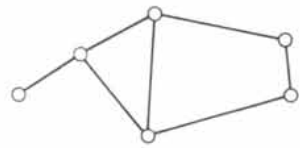
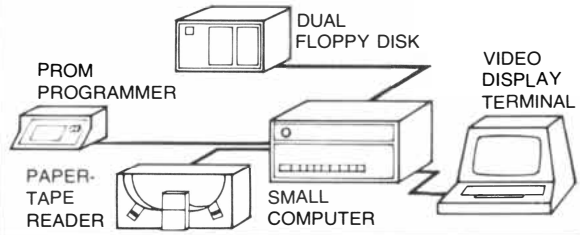
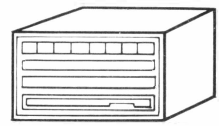
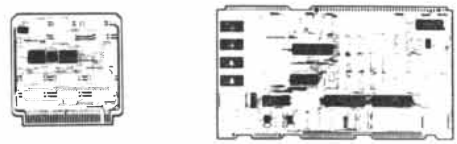
MICROPROCESSOR SYSTEM DEVELOPMENT is studied in the author's laboratory at M.I.T. The development engineer is working at a terminal tied into a full development system of the kind described in the illustration on the next two pages. The microcomputer itself, an Intellec MDS-80, is in the cabinet at the rear immediately to the left of the engineer's head. Directly under the microcomputer is a paper-tape reader. To the left of the microcomputer is a dual floppy disk, and above it is a PROM programmer. The software facilities available to the engineer can be extended beyond full development system to include complete software capabilities of a minicomputer in "Triad" system depicted in upper illustration on page 156.

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

identification of a need. Often the person in an organization who perceives the need is unfamiliar with the details of the new microelectronic technology. As a result in most cases the need is communicated to an engineering project manager, who makes an evaluation to determine whether the use of a microprocessor is justified. Such an evaluation would include an analysis to determine which, if any, of the available microprocessors have suitable capabilities and to estimate the time and manpower needed to develop the necessary software, by far the most time-consuming and costly part of the job.

If a microprocessor appears to be justified, the task is broken down into two distinct paths: the hardware requirement is turned over to a design engineer and the computation and control requirements are given to a software programmer. In the typical case hardware and software efforts are carried out in parallel by two separate groups. The key to a successful application is close communication between the two as the system evolves. Unfortunately there is no standard methodology for achieving a good design. As in all engineering, much depends on intuition, a good working knowledge of available products and past experience.

With "ad hoc" design procedures for both hardware and software a prototype system is developed. Hardware proto-

CAPABILITIES	TYPICAL USES AND USERS	MICRO HARDWARE HIERARCHY	
		LEVEL	REPRESENTATION
DISTRIBUTED COMPUTING TIGHTLY COUPLED PARALLEL PROCESSING	PROCESS AUTOMATION COORDINATION AND CONTROL ON A DISTRIBUTED AND LOCAL BASIS	MULTIPROCESSOR SYSTEM	 FDS, SCS OR MODULE
FULL SOFTWARE DEVELOPMENT HARDWARE DEBUGGING HIGHER-LEVEL LANGUAGE PROGRAMMING	SOFTWARE-APPLICATIONS PROGRAMMING DEBUGGING OF HARDWARE TARGET SYSTEM	FULL DEVELOPMENT SYSTEM (FDS)	
INTERMEDIATE-COMPLEXITY APPLICATIONS PROGRAMS (1–10 K) SOME HIGHER-LEVEL LANGUAGE CAPABILITY (E.G., BASIC)	PERSONAL COMPUTER HOBBYIST	SMALL COMPUTER SYSTEM (SCS)	
SMALL DEVELOPMENT SYSTEM FOR LEARNING MICROPROCESSOR CHARACTERISTICS SMALL-USER PROGRAMS (UNDER 1 K)	BEGINNING USERS OF MICROPROCESSORS ELEMENTARY PROTOTYPING USER EVALUATION OF MICROPROCESSOR	MODULES	
CUSTOM DESIGN OF A HARDWARE SYSTEM FOR PARTICULAR NEED	HARDWARE DESIGNERS	CHIPS	

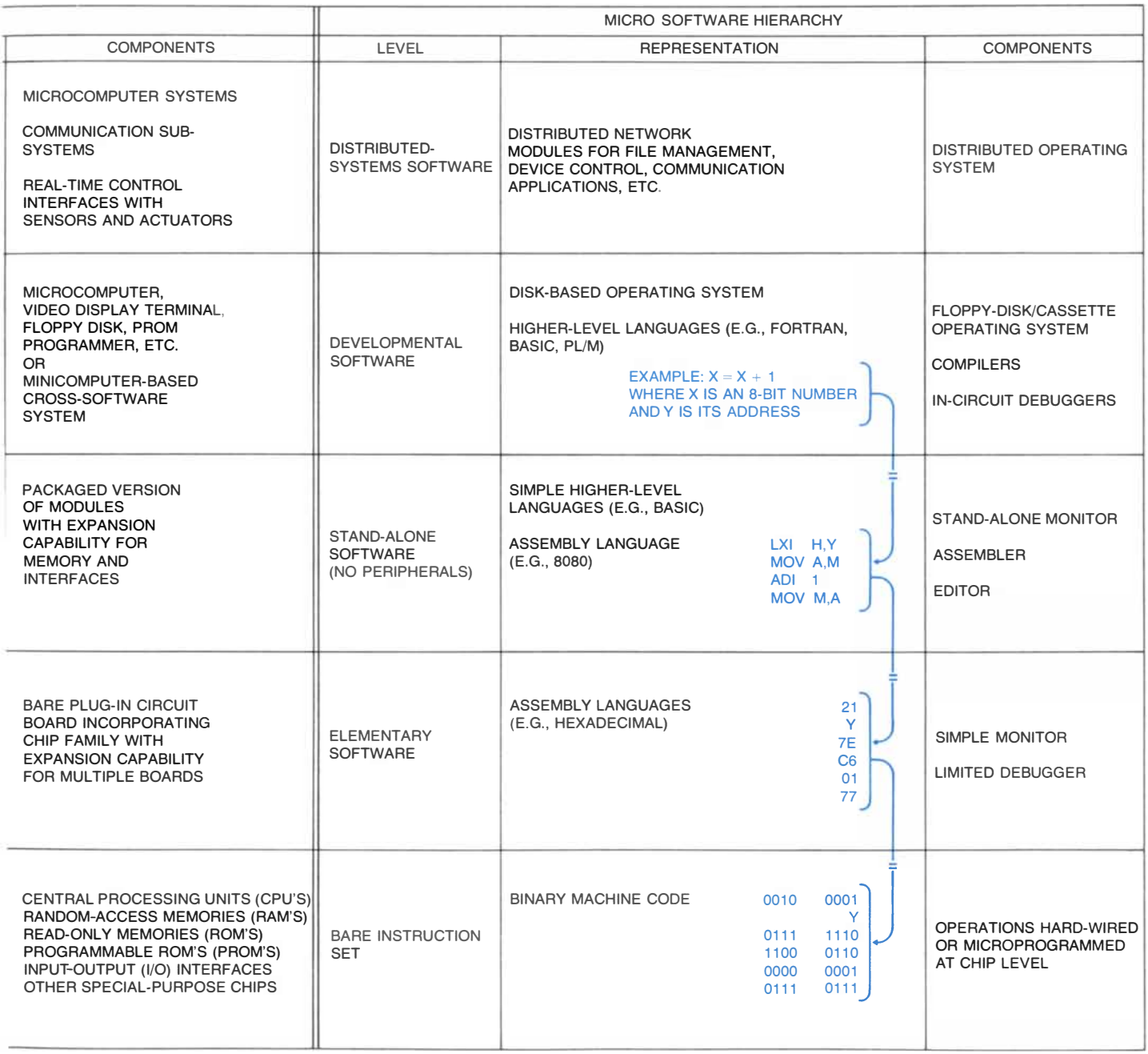
MICROPROCESSOR SYSTEMS can be arranged in an ascending hierarchy of hardware and software in which smaller components are assembled into successively larger systems with more powerful capabilities. The building blocks are the families of chips designed for various functions. To solve an application problem, for example the control system of an airplane, designers usually assemble modules or small computer systems and provide them with a suitable program for the task. Chips and modules have become so cheap (less than $30

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

typing mechanisms commonly include wire-wrap breadboard models, plugboard setups or printed-circuit prototypes. The corresponding prototyping system in software is a target, or object, program that can be derived from any of several translation mechanisms: hand assembly (by means of a code book), the use of a resident assembler on a full development system or the use of a cross assembler on a time-sharing system.

When prototypes of both hardware and software are sufficiently advanced, the two must be mated, a task usually performed by a systems engineer. The target program is loaded into the hardware prototype to see if the resulting system meets the original specifications of the program manager. Deficiencies in either hardware or software at this level must be fed back through the hardware and software "loops" in iterative fashion until satisfactory performance is achieved.

Now a major decision must be made: whether or not to put the microprocessor module into production. The length of time from the start of development to a successful prototype is often critical. Many prototypes are shelved at this stage because development has taken so long (it can take as long as two years) that the original problem requirements have changed, the perception of the problem has changed or a competitor may have reached the market first with



for a microprocessor and less than $300 for a single-board module) that a major cost in engineering an application is the cost of developing the software to create the final program for the "target" system. Improvements in semiconductor technology are steadily making it possible for systems at each level to include more of capabilities once assigned to level above. Symbols and characters in color show how the same instruction looks when it is written in different languages of an increasingly higher level, beginning with binary machine code.

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

The $422.50* Microprocessor. Complete.

Are we bugs?

The MMD-1 is your ticket to the world of microprocessors. It's a complete microcomputer system. And just as important, it comes with the industry's most advanced instructional software – 700 pages by Rony/Larsen/Titus, authors of the famous BUGBOOK® series.

Without any prior knowledge of electronics you can be up and operating in a matter of hours. Teaching yourself everything from fundamental logic to sophisticated interfacing.

And you'll be learning on the most complete hardware package of its kind. Direct Keyboard Entry of Data . . . Built-in Power Supply . . . Direct Access to Output Ports . . . Monitoring of Address and Data Busses . . . Unique Breadboarding Facilities for Interfaces . . . and . . . more.

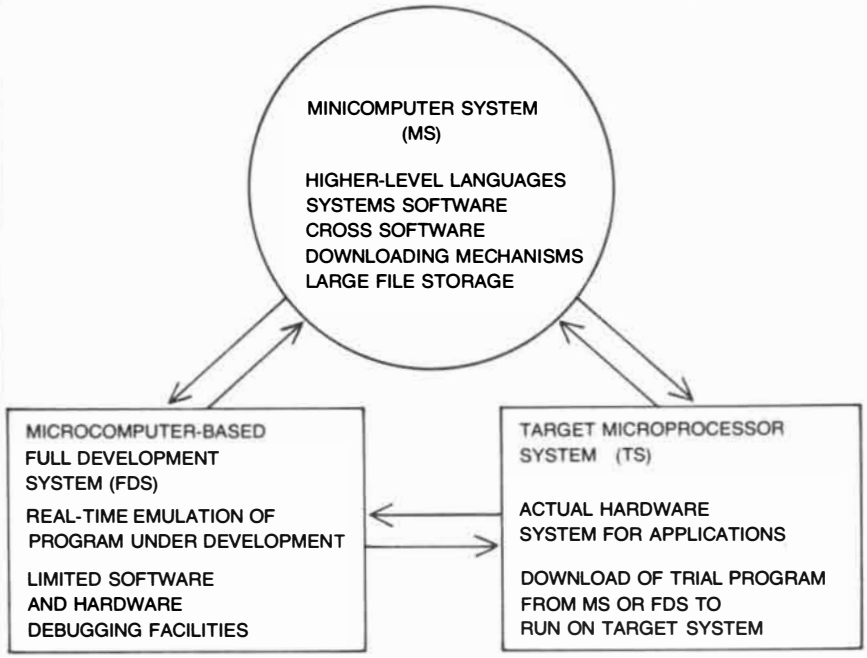
The MMD-1 is clearly the best buy in the industry. And it's available now at your nearest computer store. Stop in. Or write us for the store nearest you and a full 8 page illustrated brochure.

*Suggested resale price.

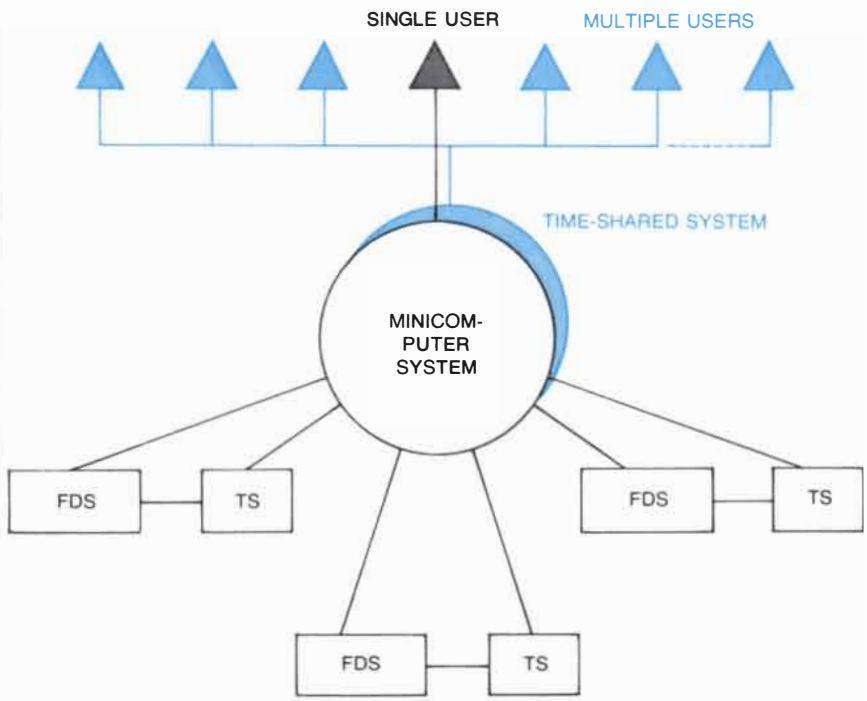
E&L INSTRUMENTS, INC.
61 First Street, Derby, Conn. 06418
(203) 735-8774 Telex No. 96 3536
DEPT. SA

an equivalent product, so that it is now necessary to come out with something better. Since time is often critical, software- and hardware-design groups have an urgent need for a development tool that is more powerful than those I have outlined and that will make it possible to compress the development time of prototype systems into a few weeks.

Let me describe such a tool. As we have seen, the development of a prototype microprocessor application obliges hardware designers and software programmers to work at nearly all levels of



"TRIAD" STRUCTURE has as its goal reducing the time needed to develop an applications program for a microprocessor module or a microcomputer. The use of the centralized minicomputer system greatly facilitates the task of the programmer in developing software for the target system. In addition microprocessor of target system is tied into effort from the outset.



ELABORATIONS OF "TRIAD" SYSTEM may be warranted in large organizations where a number of microprocessor applications are under development. The system entirely in black is designed to give one programmer access to several different Triads, each dedicated to a different microprocessor. In the more powerful time-sharing system (*color*) engineers and programmers can work simultaneously on development efforts involving different microprocessors.

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

Olympus re-invented the 35mm SLR camera.

Turned the camera world upside down. The OM-1 – smaller, lighter and quieter than conventional cameras – yet you could see more in the viewfinder.

Now other manufacturers are trying to do the same thing. But Olympus has a five year lead – and we didn't let the grass grow under our feet! We have steadily perfected our concept and developed a complete system with an amazing choice of accessories. Even if you're a rank amateur, you can start with an OM-1 and get wonderful pictures immediately. But – once you've learned the way – we have all the accessories the most demanding professionals need.

And while competition studied our OM-1, our engineers came up with an even more incredible camera, the OM-2, with an automatic exposure system so sensitive it measures light even during exposure!

For five years both amateurs and professionals have been testing Olympus in the field – really putting it through the paces – and today there is no enthusiasm anywhere compared to that of an Olympus owner. Ask one – he or she is our best advertisement.

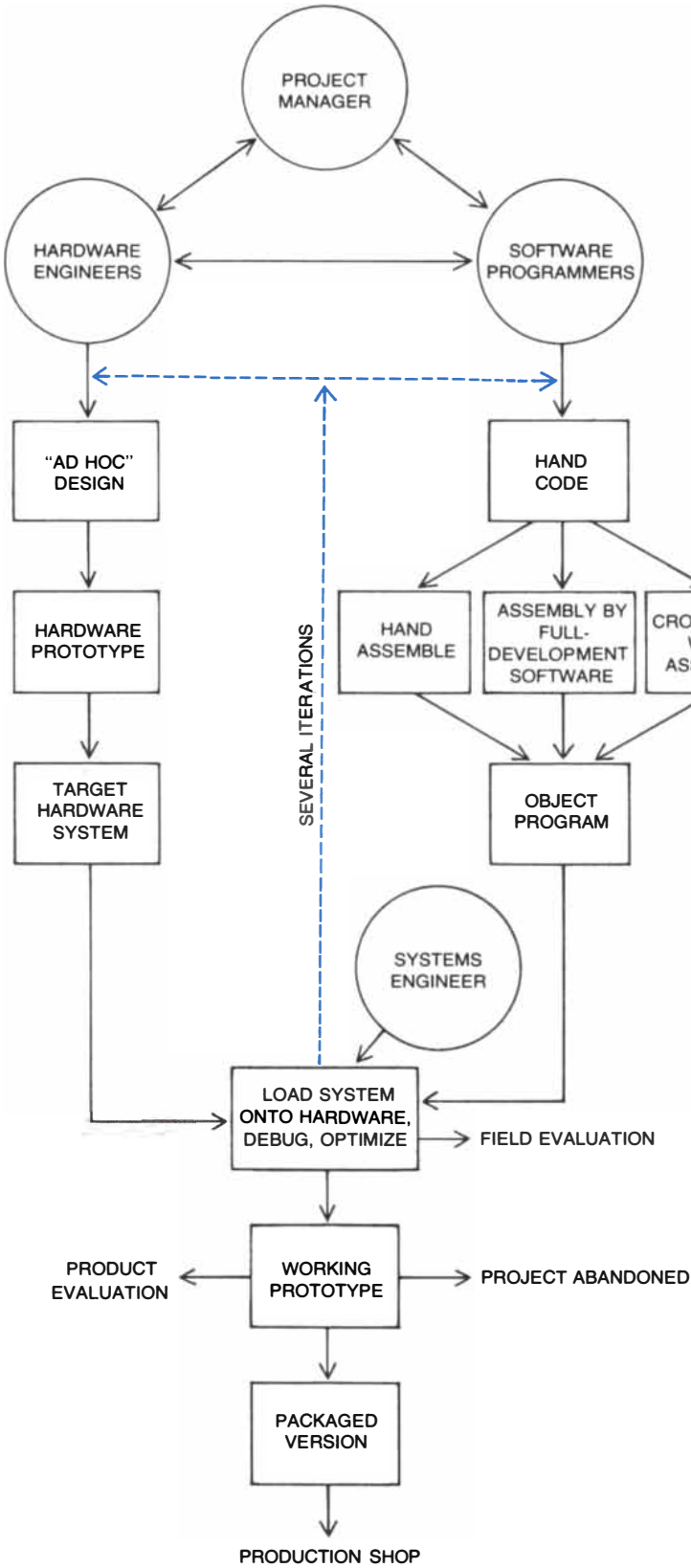
Then see an Olympus dealer – it's time you began to enjoy the finer things in photography.

OLYMPUS
the experts call it "incredible."

Marketed in the U S A by Ponder & Best Inc Corporate Offices 1630 Stewart Street Santa Monica, California 90406

©Ponder & Best, Inc., 1977

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC



TASK OF DEVELOPING APPLICATIONS FOR MICROPROCESSORS requires close cooperation between hardware engineers, concerned with the selection and interfacing of chips, and software programmers, whose job is to provide a "debugged" program that will meet the project objectives. Because the time needed for programming is often underestimated the original objectives are sometimes obsolete by the time prototype is debugged and ready for production. As a result many projects are abandoned at this stage. It is not unusual for development programs to take two years. Author believes the time can be greatly compressed with Triad.

the hierarchies that have been evolving in their respective disciplines. The hardware designers must work from the level of chips up to full development systems, and the programmers must work from the level of the computer's instruction set up to floppy-disk operating systems with the various compilers, assemblers and editors associated with a full development system. Moving from level to level in the two hierarchies is inevitably inefficient because of incompatibilities between levels and the difficulty of moving results upward or downward between levels.

It turns out that even the FDS does not provide all the development features that many system designers would like, such as large file-handling capabilities, quick response to system commands, powerful editing programs and a library of software for the microprocessors of different makers. Designers who require such features are finding it desirable to use minicomputers (the small but high-performance computing systems that first reached the market in the early 1960's) as a supplementary development tool.

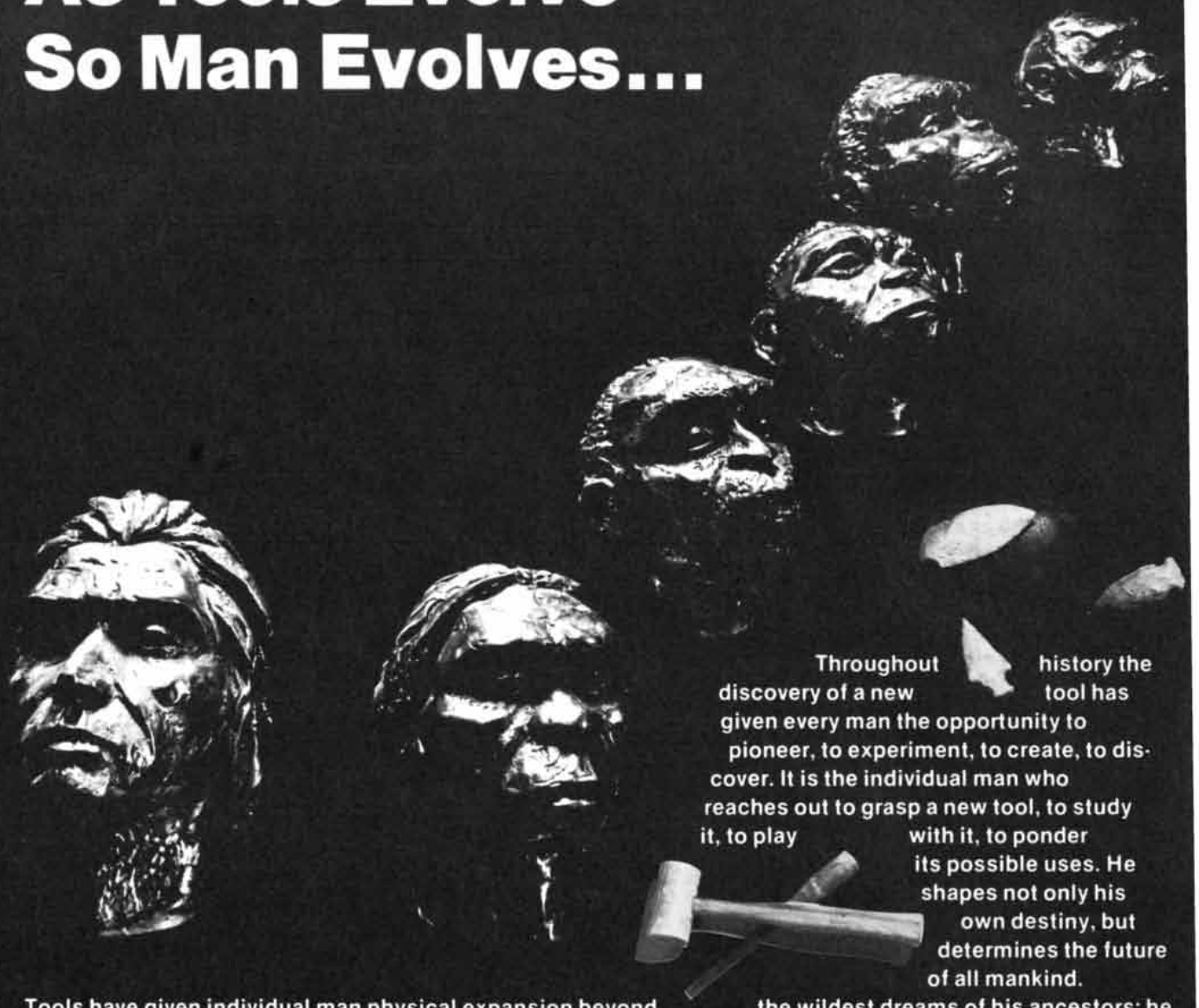
Although some cross-software packages exist for enabling minicomputers to develop microprocessor programs, there are very few systems for closely coupling minicomputers, FDS's and the microcomputer target system. Such coupling is desirable because it enables a development engineer to move easily within this hierarchy as well as to exploit the distinctive features of each system: the minicomputer to provide efficient editing, mass storage, documentation tools and shared data bases; the FDS to emulate the real-time performance of the microcomputer as programs are evolving and to debug the hardware, and the microcomputer target system itself to evaluate the final programs and control routines under the actual environmental and electrical constraints of the application setting.

The cleanest integration of these three systems is the "Triad," a recently developed research tool that enables the programmer or engineer to work at any level in achieving a desired program. The Triad closely couples three systems: the minicomputer, with its powerful software capabilities; the FDS, with its real-time emulation and hardware-debugging facilities, and the target system, with its application-defined construction. The Triad provides fast and direct access to all levels of the hierarchy.

The hardware designer and the software programmer would use the Triad as follows. The hardware engineer develops the target system, which might consist of a commercial general-purpose, single-board computer module in conjunction with an additional module of his own design that provides an inter-

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

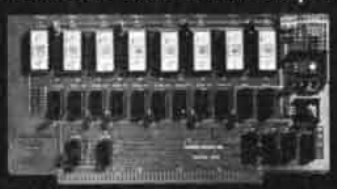
As Tools Evolve So Man Evolves...



Throughout history the discovery of a new tool has given every man the opportunity to pioneer, to experiment, to create, to discover. It is the individual man who reaches out to grasp a new tool, to study it, to play with it, to ponder its possible uses. He shapes not only his own destiny, but determines the future of all mankind.

Tools have given individual man physical expansion beyond the wildest dreams of his ancestors; he can soar like a bird, swim beside a fish in the sea, travel as the wind across the land; and now individual man is ready for a new frontier. Man has created a new tool, the personal computer, for exploring his next frontier. Now an individual man can input, store, manipulate, and display information with which he can model his environment, entertain and strengthen his mental capacity and create worlds beyond his present experience. The first man who grasped a sharp stone had at that moment the opportunity to create the wheel, a canoe, or a sculpture. The opportunity is there for each of us, the tools lie at hand, and discovery is inevitable.

Vector Graphic, Inc. offers a complete line of personal computers, and computer accessories. Vector Graphic's products are noted for exceptional ruggedness, built-in quality and the expandability to grow with you. Write today for additional literature and a copy of "Personal Computing for Personal Discovery."



VECTOR GRAPHIC INC.

790 Hampshire Rd., A + B, Westlake Village, CA 91361
Telephone: (805) 497-0733

Not affiliated with Vector General, Inc.

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

face to the larger system to which the microprocessor is being applied. In order to debug the target system he will need some test programs. Such programs can be quickly prepared with the editor on the minicomputer, cross-assembled into the machine code of the microprocessor and loaded directly into the undebugged target hardware. As the engineer works out the errors in his hardware he will continually update his test programs. It takes only a few minutes to reassemble and load each change.

Concurrently with the hardware development the programmer can be editing, assembling and simulating his programs on the minicomputer and on the FDS. He would maintain all his programs in the central file system of the minicomputer and share a library of applications software with other users of the Triad. System integration can proceed smoothly, because the same facilities the hardware engineer has been using to load test programs into the target-system hardware can also be used by the programmer to load the final applications program downward into the hardware. Changes at this stage are readily achieved by a simple process of re-edit, assemble and download. In this way the Triad system can sharply reduce the time needed for development of a microprocessor application.

Several Triad systems can be supervised simultaneously by a single central minicomputer system. Such an arrangement enables a user to develop application packages utilizing several different microprocessors while he is still maintaining all his programs, documentation and engineering reports within the file system of the central minicomputer. Moreover, other users can share his programs, thus making the development cycle more efficient. As the next step the minicomputer operating system could be rewritten to allow time-sharing among simultaneous users. This gives rise to the most powerful variation of the Triad concept.

The potential applications of microprocessor technology are so numerous that it is hard to visualize any aspect of contemporary life that will escape its impact. Here are some of the areas that will feel the effect soonest.

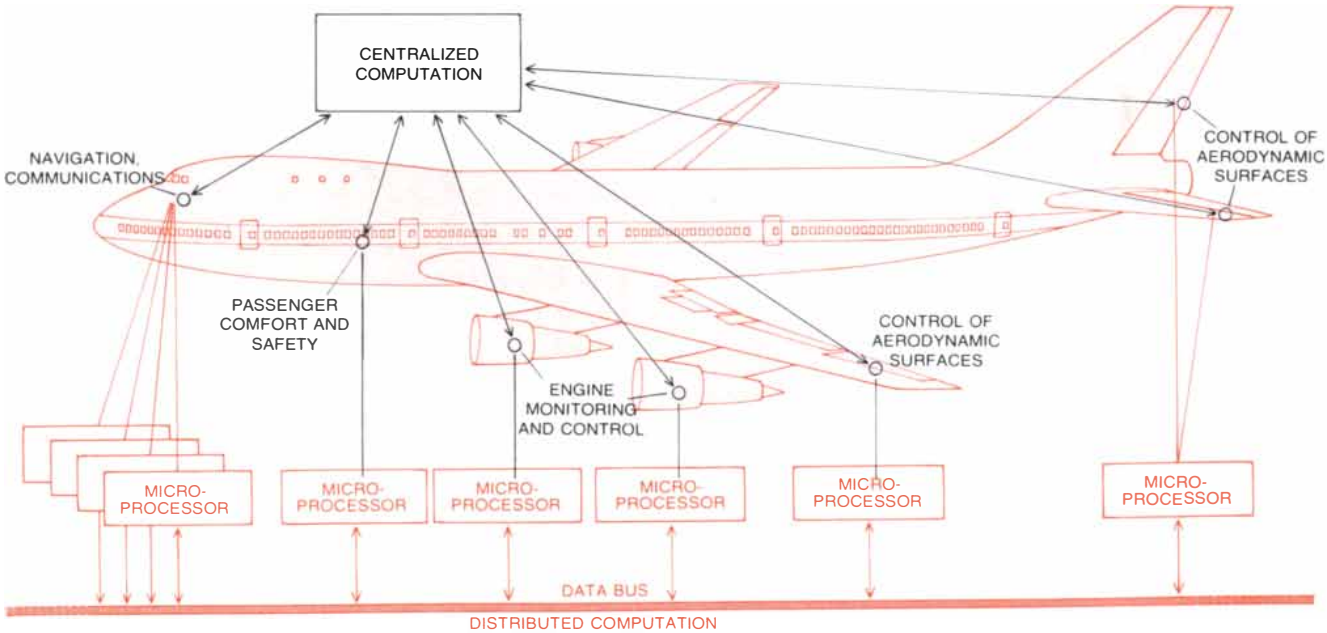
In automobiles a few 1977 models already employ microprocessors to meet Federal emission standards by controlling exhaust-gas recirculation systems. Many more 1978 models will include microprocessors both for emission control and for optimizing engine adjustments to improve gasoline mileage. In the near future microprocessors will also be connected to safety devices, such as sensors to prevent skidding on wet or icy surfaces.

In business offices among the first applications of microprocessors will involve the distribution and control of information. Desk-sized computers will become nearly as common as typewriters. They will handle small, specialized data bases appropriate to each person's job as well as accounting information and personnel data. The transfer of typewritten documents between offices will be largely replaced by electronic memorandums, relayed through the office computer system. Complete office systems are under development by major companies such as the International Business Machines Corporation and the Xerox Corporation.

In industry microprocessors are now used for such diverse tasks as machine-tool control and remote monitoring of oil fields. Microcomputers will also make possible a new generation of "intelligent" robot arms and hands capable of factory assembly operations heretofore too complex for mechanization.

In the home microprocessors have already appeared in a host of video games and such household appliances as microwave ovens and food blenders. They will rapidly be extended to temperature controls, refrigerators, telephones, solar-energy systems and to fire- and burglary-alarm systems. In time microcomputers linked directly to one's bank, and provided with multimillion-bit files for personal records, will be as commonplace as high-fidelity sound systems are today.

Devising a successful microprocessor application, however, is only the first step toward achieving its adoption and acceptance. The advent of the microprocessor presages more than just a technical revolution. It will probably touch more aspects of daily life than have been affected by all previous computer technology. In many instances society is neither aware of nor prepared for the microprocessor's nontechnical



MODERN JET AIRCRAFT depend on a variety of sophisticated systems for navigation, communication, passenger comfort and safety, engine control and the control of aerodynamic surfaces. At present the sensors that monitor these various systems transmit their data to a central computer, which generates the control signals needed to keep the systems working properly. The miles of cables required for such centralized systems have become a significant fraction of the total cost of modern aircraft. In principle various systems of aircraft could be controlled locally by microprocessors with a great saving in cable costs, increased reliability, increased computing power and lower maintenance costs. Such distributed computing networks are under active examination for a wide variety of similar applications.

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

The Christian Brothers Brandy. Traditional, contemporary and delicious.

The rich mellow taste of The Christian Brothers Brandy begins in the vineyards around Mount Tivy, our winery in the San Joaquin Valley.

Here, under the warm California sun, our specially selected grapes ripen to become the wine we use to make our brandy.

The taste of The Christian Brothers Brandy is distinctively American. Light, smooth and mellow from its patient aging in small oak casks.

Serve in a snifter or over ice and you will notice the rich aroma of our brandy.

Or, enjoy its light taste with oranges, lemons or limes. Since brandy is made from grapes it mixes naturally with other fruit juices.

And, our brandy adds a rich and mellow flavor to coffee, cakes, gravies and soups.

However you enjoy The Christian Brothers Brandy we are certain you will always recognize its consistently good quality.

Brother Timothy F.S.C.
Cellarmaster
The Christian Brothers

From The Christian Brothers of California.

WORLDWIDE DISTRIBUTORS, FROMM AND SICHEL, INC., SAN FRANCISCO, CALIFORNIA, U.S.A. BRANDY, 80 PROOF.

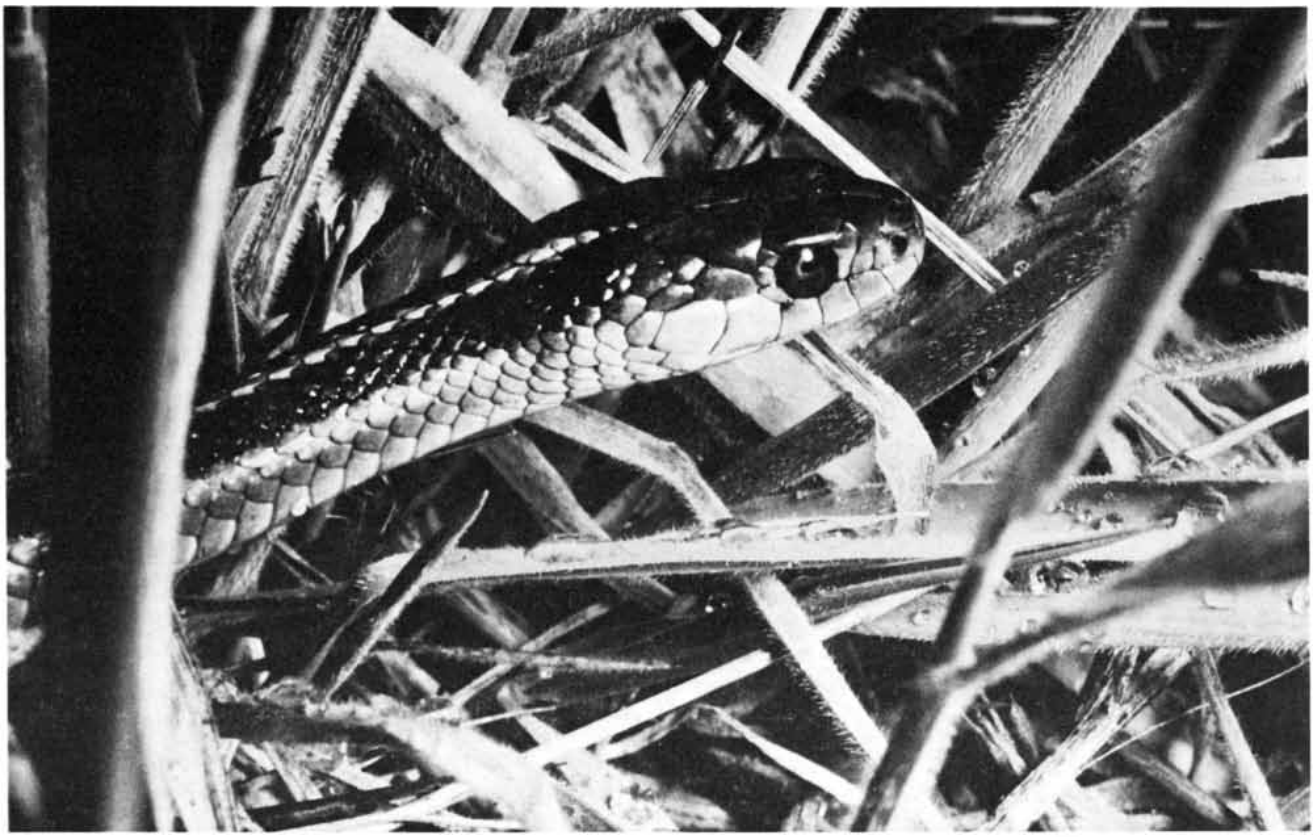
© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

A beautifully illustrated, authoritative source book

FIELD PHOTOGRAPHY

Beginning and Advanced Techniques

Alfred A. Blaker



Field Photography aims at nothing less than enabling photographers to produce professional-quality nature photographs. Author Alfred Blaker—former Director of the University of California Scientific Photographic Laboratory—shares the tricks of the trade acquired through many years of experience as a professional nature photographer.

Each book comes with a separate Field Supplement, containing excerpts of the charts, tables, formulas, and supporting data that the photographer needs to take into the field.

Field Photography is illustrated with 71 original photographs (18 in full color) and 85 drawings, and the entire book is printed on high-quality paper. The black-and-white photographs have been reproduced in a duotone process, giving them a quality similar to the original photographs.

1976, 451 pages, 156 illustrations (18 in color)
ISBN 0-7167-0518-4, $19.95

W. H. FREEMAN AND COMPANY
660 Market Street, San Francisco, CA 94104
58 Kings Road, Reading, England RG1 3AA

160 B

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

impact. For example, the introduction of microprocessors in automobiles to improve fuel economy and reduce exhaust emissions will have a profound effect on tens of thousands of small automobile-repair shops and hundreds of thousands of gasoline service stations. Literally millions of maintenance workers who at this moment may never have heard of microprocessors, much less seen one, must quickly become acquainted with them and become reasonably expert in their testing and replacement. Otherwise the entire network of automobile service will have to be drastically revamped.

In other areas microprocessor technology is likely to move more slowly than one might expect. For example, it would not be difficult to equip every gasoline service station with a microprocessor terminal that would record the details of every credit-card transaction. At the end of each day the recorded information could be transmitted rapidly by code over an ordinary telephone circuit to computers in the credit-card company's central office, speeding up by several weeks the billings on millions of dollars' worth of sales. Although such systems are eminently practicable, they have not been adopted. One can infer that the innovation is unwelcome because it threatens the existence of entire divisions of credit-card organizations: the optical-character-recognition (OCR) divisions that now transcribe into computer-usable form the transaction data from millions of separate pieces of paper filled out and mailed in by service-station attendants. Entire divisions of companies do not willingly disappear overnight.

These are just two examples of how thousands of business organizations and millions of individuals may be affected by what appears to be a straightforward engineering decision either to apply or to not apply the new microprocessor technology. Within the business organization itself the microprocessor and microcomputer are making more acute the already difficult question of how to distribute computing and information resources for maximum effectiveness. Although many companies are rapidly consolidating and centralizing all aspects of their computing resources, other companies are decentralizing with equal aggressiveness. The elusive "optimal" strategy involves delicate considerations of management control, strategies of system development and operational procedures. Business managers who had to penetrate the mysteries of the $250,000 room-sized computer barely 15 years ago and of the $25,000 minicomputer six or seven years ago must now try to weigh the costs and benefits of the $250 microcomputer and the $25 microprocessor.

The Affordable Programmable

Never Before A Fully Programmable Calculator Available To The Scientific Community At Such A Low Cost!

by Mail Order Only

$59.95

SUMMARY OF SPECIFICATIONS:

- 12 DIGIT RED L.E.D. DISPLAY – Display entries or results in 3 modes, scientific, fixed point or engineering
- PROGRAMMABLE – 72 Keystroke program storage
- TRIG FUNCTIONS – Calculates in radians or degrees or grads
- HYPERBOLIC FUNCTIONS
- Ln, log, e^x, 10^x
- POWERS Y^x: Roots $\sqrt[x]{Y}$
- FUNCTIONS OF X – 1/x, $\sqrt{\ }$ X
- LINEAR REGRESSION: TREND ANALYSIS: SLOPE AND INTERCEPT
- STATISTICAL: $\Sigma+$, $\Sigma-$, averages, standard deviation, variance, permutations, combinations
- PERCENTAGE CALCULATION – addon/discount/yield/percentage
- π AND CHANGE SIGN KEY
- 10 MEMORIES – 7 functions – M+, M–, MR, M×, M÷, STORE, 9M
- DEGREES/DEGREE, MINUTE, SECONDS CONVERSION
- RADIAN/DEGREE CONVERSION
- POLAR/RECTANGULAR CONVERSION
- 8 METRIC CONVERSIONS
- SPHERICAL/CARTESIAN CONVERSIONS

The Commodore PR (Personal Resource) 100 – Allows You To Personally Program According To Your Own Problem-Solving Needs!

WHY A PROGRAMMABLE?
The Commodore PR-100 Programmable Calculator introduces a new, innovative dimension in highly sophisticated mathematical and scientific problem-solving. It decentralizes and personalizes the decision-making power of the computer, bringing to you what was never before available in a programmable calculator with such features, yet at an amazingly affordable price.

Method of Entry: The Commodore PR-100 is designed for "Think and Touch" operation utilizing an algebraic mode of entry. You can enter equations which have up to **4 levels of parenthesis.** Add to these features the **10 memory registers,** and you can work the most complicated mathematical, scientific, engineering, business, statistical and combinational functions. Furthermore, you can also perform unit conversions: metric to English and English to metric.

Keyboard: The keyboard consists of 40 keys and 2 switches. 35 keys are for number and function entry. 10 of these keys are dual function (shifted keys).

SPECIALIZED FUNCTIONS:
Most of the important functions found on large scale computer systems are finally now available to you on the ultimate hand-held programmable calculator: iterative and recursive problem solving techniques; looping; conditional and unconditional branching.

ADVANTAGES OF THIS PROGRAMMABLE:
Consider for a moment the advantages of the Commodore PR-100. In terms of increased productivity you can now achieve the capability of: optimizing mathematical and scientific models; making trend and risk analyses; projecting and forecasting more accurately; performing statistical reductions; automating time-consuming "number-crunching."

The PR-100 is also a pre-programmed calculator that can achieve a multitude of functions: Basic + – × ÷ and = functions; clear entry or the entire calculation; Hyperbolic functions include: sinh, cosh, arc cosh and arc tan; Trigonometric functions include: sin x, cos x, tan x, arc sin x, arc cos x, and arc tan x. Calculates in radians, degrees or gradians. Enter x 0° to 360° (0 to 2π) or multiples of 360° (2π). Natural Log (Ln x), Common Log (log x), Exponential (e^x), Antilog (10^x); Algebraic Functions include: x, x^2, 1/x. Powers: (Y^x); π (pi). Change Sign (+/–); x↔y exchange function; Parenthesis ( ) enter equations that contain up to 4 levels of parenthesis without using temporary or intermediate storage.

Memory Functions: The PR-100 has 10 separate memory registers. For each memory there are 7 operations that can be performed: memory storage and clear, recall, addition, subtraction, multiplication, division and performs the desired functions on each memory.

NO LANGUAGE TO LEARN
Truly this programmable calculator is a powerful personal scientific and mathematical computing resource. And you don't need to know programming to make it work for you. There is no special language to learn. The entry system is so easy and flexible to use that you can apply it quickly to your own personal problem-solving techniques and style.

Special Functions of the PR-100: To allow you greater flexibility in programming, there are 3 special functions: 1. HALT – The program will halt and allow the user to read or enter data. 2. GOTO – Allows branching from one section of a program to another. 3. SKIP – Allows conditional flow of a program on an intermediate result; that is – the program goes one way if an answer is negative and another way is positive.

Loading, Editing and Modifying Programs: You can single step through a program to check it out, backstep through a program, easily read entered steps and modify a single step of a program.

Now personal programming is here. A step-function increase in capability over sophisticated slide-rule calculators. Capability you won't fully discover until you own a PR-100 yourself. Fill out the coupon below or call our toll free number for your two week trial.

The Commodore PR-100 is powered by rechargeable NiCad batteries and is furnished with an AC adapter/charger, leatherette carrying case and full instruction booklet. One year manufacturer's warranty.

Dimensions. 3¼" x 6½" x 1⅛" Weight: 4 oz.

Compute With It For Two Weeks – No Obligation

Please send _____ Commodore PR-100 Calculator(s) at the introductory price of only $59.95 (plus $3.95 shipping and insurance) each. If not completely satisfied, I can return it within two weeks for a prompt refund.

☐ Instead, I/we would like to take advantage of your quantity price offering of $54.95 (plus $3.95 shipping and insurance) each. OFFER GOOD ONLY ON QUANTITY ORDERS OF 6 UNITS OR MORE! You can save $30.00!

☐ Check or M.O. Enclosed (Ill. residents add 5% sales tax)
☐ Please charge my credit card checked below:
☐ American Express ☐ BankAmericard ☐ Carte Blanche
☐ Diners Club ☐ Master Charge

Credit Card # _____

Master Charge Bank # ____ Exp. Date _____

Name _____

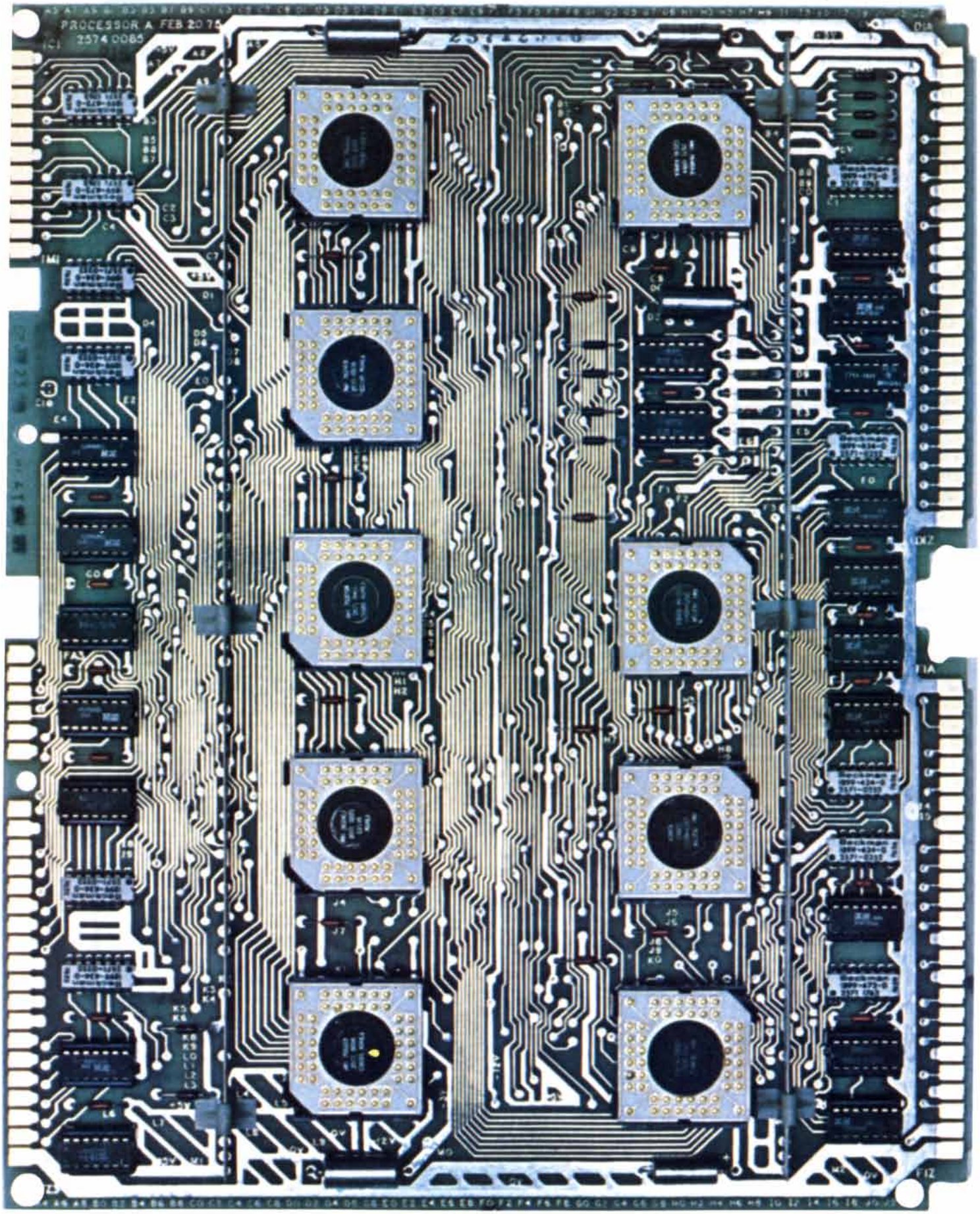
Address _____

City _____ State _____ Zip _____

Signature _____ SCA9/77

Send Coupon To:
Contemporary Marketing, Inc.
790 Maple Lane, Bensenville, Ill. 60106
Call Toll Free: 800-621-8318 Ill. call: 312-595-0461

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC



© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

The Role of Microelectronics in Data Processing

Large modern computers could not exist without microelectronic components. Microelectronics has also led to the rise of smaller computers able to perform tasks that do not call for larger ones

by Lewis M. Terman

Modern computers and microelectronic devices have interacted so closely in their evolution that they can be regarded as virtually symbiotic. The first large stored-program digital computers were based on vacuum tubes; their successors were based on discrete transistors. Such elements could not be used to build computers with the capabilities of those we have today. They would be too costly and too unreliable, and they would require too much power. Above all, they would be too large and too slow. The number of operations per second a computer can perform depends on the speed with which the computer's active elements communicate with one another, and that speed depends on how fast the active elements operate and how close together they are. Computer technology has demanded microelectronics, and microelectronics has evolved largely in response to that demand.

Computers themselves have evolved largely in response to the demand for the processing of data: large quantities of characters, such as numbers or letters, representing information of almost every conceivable kind. In science computers digest and analyze masses of measurements, such as the sequential positions and velocities of a spacecraft, and solve extraordinarily long and complex mathematical problems, such as the trajectory of the spacecraft. In commerce they record and process inventories, purchases, bills, payrolls, bank deposits and the like and keep track of ongoing business transactions. In industry they monitor and control manufacturing processes. In government they keep statistics, analyze economic information and bill people for taxes. Today it would be difficult to find any task that calls for the processing of large amounts of information that is not performed by a computer. Moreover, many lesser tasks, requiring comparatively small amounts of data processing, are also being taken over by computers.

Although a large computing system is expensive, it can perform millions of operations a second; even a small computing system can perform 100,000 operations a second. Therein lies the fundamental reason for the growth of data processing by computer: a computer can perform so many operations in so little time that the cost of each operation is very low.

Perhaps the key element in the growth of data processing by computer is the fact that with the advent of microelectronics the cost of computer hardware has steadily decreased as capacity and performance have steadily increased. Since 1960 the cost of a computer divided by its computing power (measured in millions of operations per second) has dropped by a factor of more than 100. In the same period the cycle time (the time it takes to do an operation) of the largest machines has decreased by a factor of 10. The increase in the performance of computer hardware has been important for the development of "high end" or "mainframe" computers: the largest and fastest machines. It has been even more important for the development of low-end computers: the smaller and slower machines. Many tasks do not require the great processing capability, flexibility and speed of even a small mainframe computer system. In the 1960's advances in microelectronic components led to the development of the minicomputer, followed more recently by the even smaller microcomputer. Both have filled a need for small but relatively flexible processing systems able to execute comparatively simple computing functions at lower cost. Moreover, with the development of the microprocessor there has been an almost Darwinian speciation of computers into machines of different sizes and organizations, each tailored to a different range of functions. The progress toward smaller computers is likely to continue; there is already talk of nanocomputers and picocomputers.

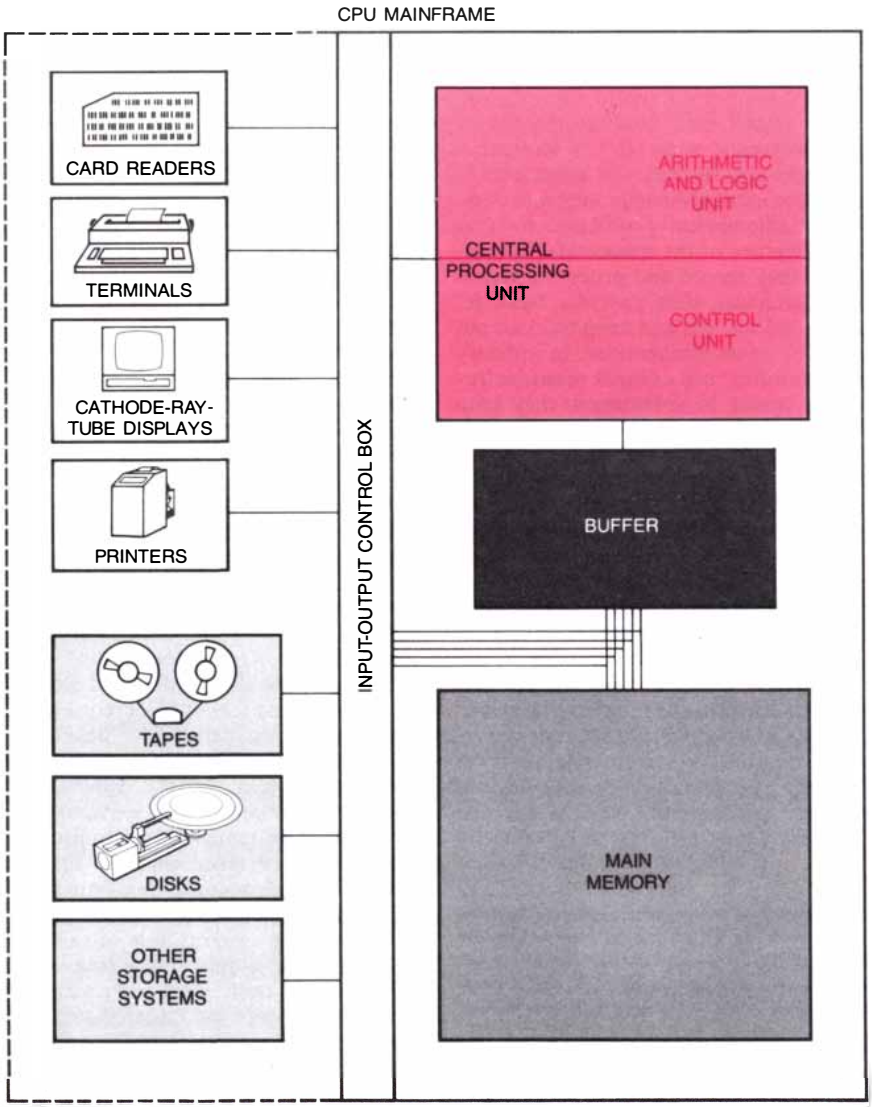
Today a large mainframe computer system may consist of 100,000 logic circuits and between four million and eight million bytes of memory. (One byte is either eight or nine bits; a bit is a binary

PROCESSOR BOARD of a Burroughs B 80 small "mainframe" computer contains the decision logic for the entire computer: it is responsible for executing the programs entered into the machine. The actual processor board measures 10 inches by 12½ inches. The logic components are nine metal-oxide-semiconductor (MOS) large-scale integrated-circuit chips, each housed in one of the nine white-and-gold packages. On this board the logic functions, instead of being executed by logic circuits, are stored as permanent bit patterns in small read-only memories, which are contained in the top, middle and bottom white-and-gold packages in the left column. The second and fourth packages in that column house working-register chips, which store data for execution in the processor. The top chip in the column at the right controls the operation of the input-output devices of the computer. The second chip in that column is the main-memory address register, which holds the address of the bit word currently being accessed from the computer's main memory. The chip next to the bottom in the right column is a microstack, another type of memory-address register. At the bottom of that column is the "timing-machine-state" chip, which controls the timing and the sequence of operations executed by the entire processor board. The remaining components on the board have no logic functions. The black rectangles are amplifiers. The white rectangles and the tiny striped cylinders are resistors. The red sausage-shaped components, the black cylinders and the large silver cylinders are capacitors. The two white bars running the entire length of the board are busbars, which distribute power and ground across the board. All the components are interconnected by soldered tracks. Board is inserted into computer by way of gold connectors along the edges.

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

digit.) A small mainframe system might have 20,000 logic circuits and 128,000 bytes of memory. A typical minicomputer system might have between 5,000 and 10,000 logic circuits and between 16,000 and 32,000 bytes of memory. A microcomputer system might have some 1,000 to 2,000 logic circuits and a few hundred to a few thousand bytes of memory. There is a corresponding range in the cost of such systems: the largest mainframe computers cost several million dollars, and a complete microcomputer system costs as little as a few hundred dollars.

Most computer systems, regardless of their size, consist of three basic elements: the input-output ports, the memory hierarchy and the central processing unit. The input-output ports are the paths whereby information (instructions and data) is fed into the computer or taken out of it by such means as punch cards, magnetic tapes and terminals. The memory hierarchy stores the instructions (the program) and the data in the system so that they can be retrieved quickly on demand by the central processing unit. The central processing unit, which consists of a control logic unit and an arithmetic and logic unit, controls the operation of the entire system by issuing commands to other parts of the system and by acting on the responses. It reads information from the memory, interprets instructions, performs operations on the data according to the instructions, writes the results back into the memory and moves information between memory levels or through the input-output ports. The operations it performs on the data can be either arithmetic, such as addition or subtraction, or logical, such as the comparison of two fields of numbers to determine whether or not they are equivalent.



MAINFRAME COMPUTER SYSTEM concentrates most of the computer's data-processing capability in the computer's central processing unit, or CPU (*color*). Physically the CPU mainframe of a large computer system holds the central processing unit itself, the high-speed buffer memory and the main memory, and it may also hold several of the input-output ports. The central processing unit itself consists of one unit that executes the arithmetic and logic operations in the computer program, and another unit that controls the operation of the entire computer system. The computer program and the data in active use are stored in the buffer memory (*dark gray*), where they can be accessed by the central processing unit at high speed. Behind the buffer is a larger and slower main memory (*medium gray*). Away from the CPU mainframe itself are disks, tapes and other memory-storage systems (*light gray*), which are the largest and slowest of all. The input-output devices are tape readers, card readers, keyboards, cathode-ray-tube displays, disks, tape drives, teletypewriters, high-speed printers and so forth.

The memory organization of a computer is hierarchical in terms both of speed and of cost. Interacting directly with the central processing unit is a buffer memory, which transfers information into the central processing unit at high speed. Speed is expensive, however, and the cost per bit of storing information in the buffer memory is high. Below the buffer memory in the hierarchy is the computer's main memory, which is larger and slower than the buffer and costs much less per bit of information stored. Below the main memory are storage systems such as magnetic disks and tapes, which are larger and slower still and cost even less per bit. Hence the memory levels further removed from the central processing unit are progressively larger, slower and cheaper.

The information that is currently in active use is moved to the fastest memory (the buffer) for ready access; the less active or inactive information is placed in the low-cost-per-bit storage. The central processing unit thus finds in the buffer the information it needs for immediate processing, and only occasionally does it have to retrieve information in the lower levels of the hierarchy. The performance of the entire computer system is determined by the speed of the buffer memory, whereas the system's capacity and cost per bit is determined by the number and the size of the storage levels.

The impact of microelectronics on computer memories has been different at the different levels in the hierarchy. From the first the buffer memory has consisted of purely electronic circuits. With the advent of microelectronics the circuits have become smaller and faster than their predecessors of five or 10 years ago and have contributed to the increase in the speed of high-end computers.

The structure of the main memory has been transformed to an even greater degree by microelectronic devices. From the mid-1950's through the 1960's the individual information-storage element in the main memory of a computer was the magnetic "core," a small toroid of ferrite material in which one bit of information was stored as the direction of magnetization around the toroid. Each core was fabricated individually, and millions of them were strung to-

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

View from the pack.

The Jaguar S-Type.
Perhaps the best-handling four-passenger car in all the world.

Being in the vanguard is always an honor. Leading it is an uncommon distinction. Jaguar has earned this distinction in forty years of building superb high-performance motorcars. And, while Jaguars have always been known for their extraordinary handling ability, the S-type stands out dramatically, even among Jaguars.

Car and Driver says: "The suspension is amazing. It is taut but not hard, and the geometry is accurate. The car seems immune to the laws of physics."

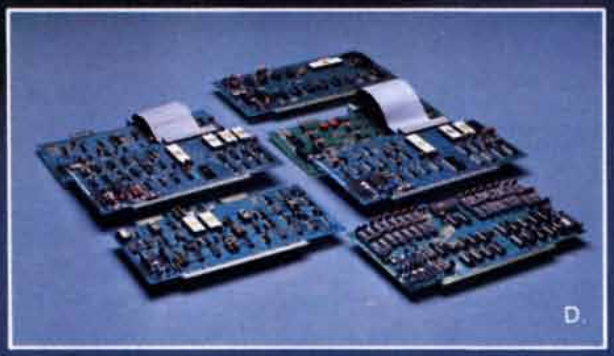
The superb handling of the S-type is matched by its depth of quiet luxury. *Road & Track* says: "The emphasis is on refinement, complete silence, luxury, comfort and general opulence, and it will run the pants off a 450 SLC."

The S-type is powered by the smooth, silent but amazingly powerful, electronically fuel-injected V-12.

The S-type is, indeed, the ultimate Jaguar—the best-handling Jaguar ever built. For the name of the Jaguar dealer nearest you, call these toll-free numbers: (800) 447-4700, or in Illinois, (800) 322-4400. British Leyland Motors Inc., Leonia, New Jersey 07605.

BRITISH LEYLAND

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC



A. VDP-80 Computer with 300 lpm printer

B. PCS-80 with CRT, dual floppy disk & Intelligent Keyboard options

C. Peripherals—(clockwise from left) 45 cps daisy-wheel printer / terminal, 24x80 CRT terminal, 45 cps daisy-wheel printer, Intelligent Breadboard, 44 col. alphanumeric line printer

D. Processor, Memory & Interface boards—shown MPU-A, 65K RAM, and floppy disk, line printer and serial I/O's

E. PCS-80 System—sample component configurations

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

Microcomputers: Just Ask IMSAI.

If you wonder who leads the way in technology, look into IMSAI's list of industry firsts—IMSAI 8048, first complete control computer on a board; IMSAI 65K RAM Board, first to offer four times the memory capacity previously available on one board; IMSAI printers, first with high-speed direct memory access.

If you wonder why IMSAI products have gained the reputation for the standard of excellence in microcomputer systems, check with any one of the more than 10,000 IMSAI owners.

If you wonder who offers the broadest line of hardware, software, and peripherals, visit any one of the more than 275 IMSAI dealers around the world.

If you wonder how microcomputing can fit your specific needs, ask IMSAI. Because when it comes to microcomputers, we have the answers.

An IMSAI Product to Answer Every Microcomputing Need:

Let's start with our product line. In all, IMSAI offers more than 120 high quality, completely integrated systems, components, peripherals and software. Here's just a sampling:

Single Board Central Processors:
- MPU-A (8080 based)—Industry standard.
- MPU-B (8085 based)—50% faster 8080.
- 8048—Programmable control computer.

Interfaces:
- Video I/O—24x80 CRT. Edit & data entry.
- Serial I/O—2 port I/O, all std. protocols.
- Parallel I/O—4 & 6 port TTL level I/O.
- Multiple I/O—2 cassette, 2 parallel, 1 serial & 1 control I/O.
- DMA—For floppies & line printers.

Peripherals:
- Printers—40/80/132 col. 30 cps-300 lpm.
- Video displays—Large assortment.
- Tape Drive—9 track, 800 bpi, 25 ips.
- Floppy Disks—Single/double density.

Memory Expansion Boards:
- 4K RAM—Programmable memory protect.
- 16/32/65K RAM-16K paging option for virtual memory addressing.
- Intelligent Memory Mngr.—Handles up to 1 megabyte.

Self-Contained Systems:
- VDP-80—Computer/terminal/mass storage unit. Assembled & tested.
- PCS-80—Integrated component system.

Software:
- DOS—Enhanced CP/M.
- BASIC—Interactive or compiler with scientific and/or commercial features.
- FORTRAN IV—Level 2 ANSI compiler.
- Self-contained Systems:
  SCS 1 & 2/TCOS—Assembler/line editor/debugger.
  4 & 8K BASIC—Optional cassette support.

Compare IMSAI. You'll realize that ours is the most complete product line available. Whatever your needs, you can get them from one source. IMSAI.

A wide selection of components is only the beginning. IMSAI offers much more. Just ask.

Answers For Businessmen:

Announcing IMSAI's VDP-80. This totally self-contained unit includes a megabyte of disk memory via floppy disk, 32K computer memory (expandable to 256K), 12" CRT and 62 pad main keyboard with 10 pad numeric keyboard. Several printer options available.

If you want speed and accuracy in high volume work such as word processing, or business data collection and analysis, the VDP-80 is your cost effective answer.

Answers For The Personal User & Educators:

Introducing IMSAI's new PCS-80 System, the fully integrated microcomputer component system, configurable to your exact needs. The basic system consists of our Intelligent Keyboard and the PCS-80 which houses an 8085 based CPU, 16K of RAM, intelligent ROM monitor, serial I/O port, 24x80 CRT, with an extra 7 slots in the chassis for expansion.

System component options include single or dual mini and standard floppy disks. The choice is yours, configure the system as you like.

IMSAI has answers for the educator, too. Take the basic PCS-80, add 8K of PROM, 4K of RAM and our self-contained 8K BASIC software, and you have a complete operating system your entire department can use to teach anything from elementary programming to advanced computer science.

Require a bit less sophistication? Use our Intelligent Breadboard system for learning, designing and building microcomputer assemblies.

Rather do it from scratch? Start with our single board MPU-B central processor, the heart of the PCS-80 System. It has a 1K ROM monitor, 256 bytes of RAM and serial and parallel I/O.

Since the MPU-B is 8085 based, you can run all programs previously developed for the 8080, 50% faster. Without requiring faster memory.

Answers For Industry:

IMSAI products provide the expandability and flexibility manufacturers demand for microcomputing applications.

We offer rack mountable components for the standard 19" RETMA racks, powerful MPU boards, I/O and memory boards for easy system expansion and configuration, and a broad line of peripherals and subsystems fully integrated and ready to go to work.

IMSAI has what you need to make tomorrow's design today's reality.

Answers For Current IMSAI Users:

There are over 10,000 of you. And, we haven't forgotten. You might say that we thought of you before you even thought of us.

That's why every new product is designed to accommodate expansion, rather than outdate equipment.

For example, our new PCS-80 retrofit kit comes complete with MPU-B, replacement front panel photomask and additional hardware bracketing. So you can enjoy a single cabinet PCS-80 computer, with your choice of integrated component configurations.

The Answer For Everyone:

Dial (415) 483-2093, Ext. ACT. That's IMSAI's action hotline. Designed to answer the thousands of questions we didn't have a chance to answer in the space of this ad.

Call us. We'll assist you in putting together a system, direct you to your nearest IMSAI dealer, and send you our new catalog with all the details.

In short, if you have any questions at all regarding microcomputers, put us to the test.

Just ask IMSAI.

IMSAI®

The Standard of Excellence in Microcomputer Systems.

IMSAI Manufacturing Corporation
14860 Wicks Blvd., Dept. S-9
San Leandro, CA 94577
(415) 483-2093 TWX 910-366-7287

Features and specifications subject to change without notice

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

Introducing The Bose Model 601.

The new Model 601 loudspeaker from Bose looks, works, and sounds very different from any conventional floor-standing speaker.

Like the world-renowned Bose 901® Series III, the Model 601 is a Direct/Reflecting® speaker, designed to recreate the impact and presence of a live performance with a quality of realism that no conventional speaker can match.

The Model 601's unique configuration of six drivers—four tweeters and two woofers—spreads a balance of reflected and direct sound to every corner of the room.

From virtually any listening position, the sound is open and spacious, full of the feel and ambience of a live performance, and with none of the harshness so characteristic of conventional high-fidelity speakers.

The Model 601 is also highly efficient (minimizing amplifier power and expense) and exceptionally versatile (allowing superior performance in a wide range of speaker positions).

For a more complete introduction to the Model 601, visit any authorized Bose dealer or write for a full-color brochure to Bose, Dept. SA9, The Mountain, Framingham, Mass. 01701.

BOSE®

Better sound through research.

Patents issued and pending. Cabinets are walnut veneer.

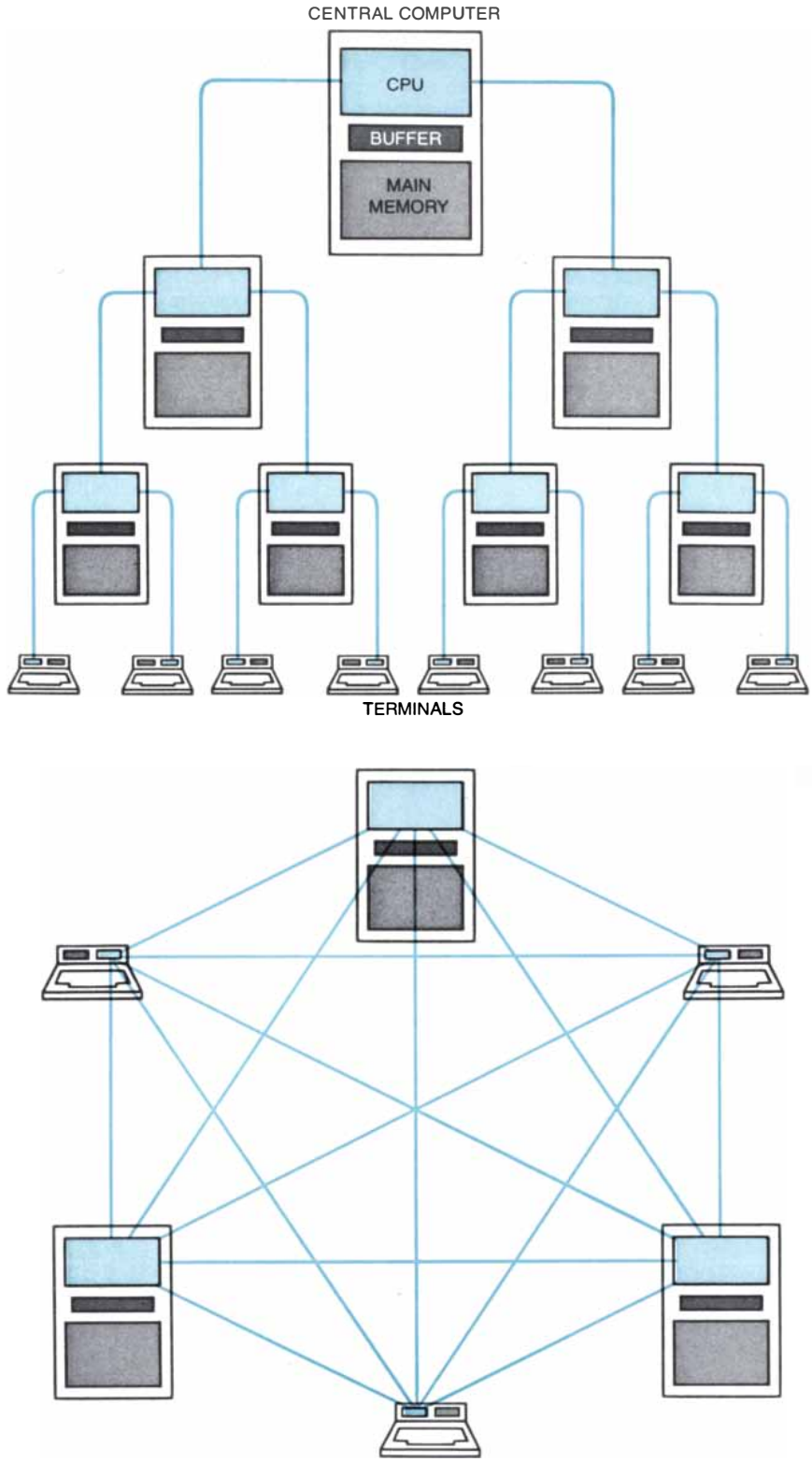
© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

gether in large arrays by wires passing through the hole in each of them. Information was written into the cores and read out of them by electronic support circuits. Because of the characteristics of the cores and the weak magnetic coupling between the cores and the wires on which they were strung, the support circuitry required for writing the information into the cores and reading it out was complex, and neither it nor the cores were amenable to being fabricated as integrated circuits.

In the early 1970's semiconductor memory cells that served the same purpose as cores were developed, and integrated memory circuits began to be installed as the main computer memory. In an integrated memory circuit the information-storage mechanism (the memory cell) is not a passive piece of material but is itself a semiconductor circuit. Moreover, the support circuits required for writing information into the memory cell and reading information out of it are much simpler than what was required for writing and reading with cores. Thus both the memory cell and the support circuits could be combined on the same silicon chip. Microelectronic semiconductor devices are found in the main memory of the bulk of computers being built today, although magnetic cores are still being manufactured for some purposes.

One particularly valuable characteristic of a main computer memory consisting of microelectronic devices is that the cost per bit of the memory is more or less independent of the memory's size. With core memories the support circuitry was complex and expensive no matter how large the system was, making the cost per bit of a computer with a small core memory far higher than the cost per bit of a computer with a large core memory. With microelectronic memories the cost of the system is primarily in the memory chips and their packaging, not in the support circuits. Hence the cost of a computer system is proportional only to the size of the memory, and the memory's cost per bit remains the same. In other words, the user of a low-end minicomputer or microcomputer system who requires only a small amount of memory no longer has to pay a substantial penalty in the system's cost per bit. This factor has been quite important for the growth of low-end computer systems.

Microelectronics has not penetrated very far into the construction of storage devices such as magnetic disks and tapes and probably will not penetrate much further in the foreseeable future [see "Microelectronic Memories," by David A. Hodges, page 130]. There are several reasons. First, the disks and tapes themselves are inexpensive. The electrical



DISTRIBUTED-PROCESSING COMPUTER SYSTEM distributes processing capability throughout a network of computers instead of concentrating it in one central processing unit. Physically that allows the network to be spread over a wide geographic area and enables each local processor (*small boxes in color*) to handle information independently before transmitting it to one or more other elements in the network. The two basic forms of a distributed-processing system are the hierarchical structure (*top*) and the peer structure (*bottom*). In the hierarchical structure there is one central computer, which communicates with smaller computers on a lower level, each of which communicates with computers on a next lower level, and so forth. In the peer structure all the elements are on the same level and each element can communicate with every other element. In practice the two forms are often combined into a hybrid system.

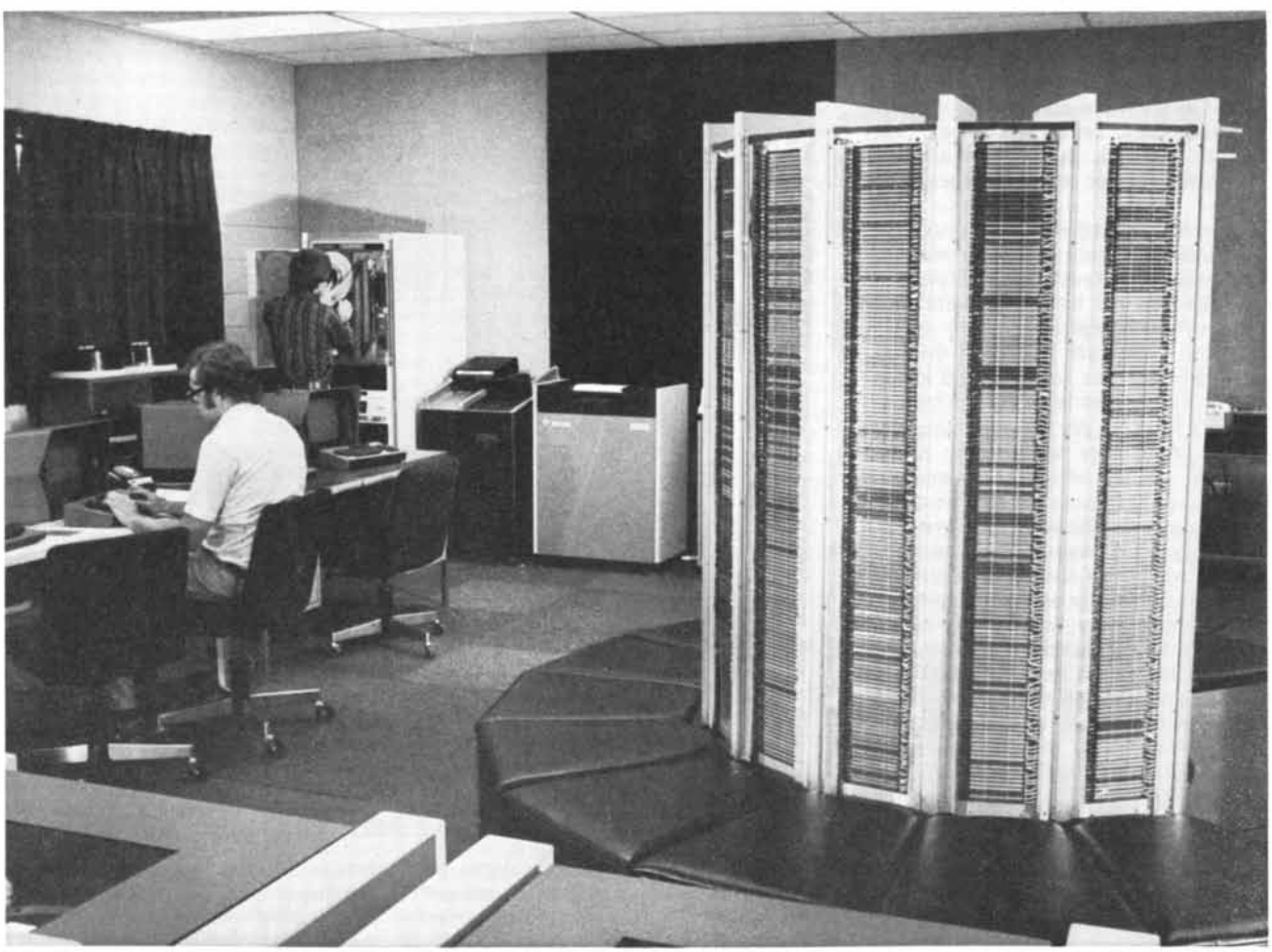
© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

and mechanical machinery required for writing information into them and reading it out, however, is quite costly. Therefore the cost per bit of such storage systems is a strong inverse function of the size of the system, and the lowest cost per bit is obtained with the very largest systems. For example, a disk-storage system capable of retaining 100 million bytes of memory costs only a few thousandths of a cent per bit. For a large computing system the cost per bit of microelectronic storage methods could not compete with the cost per bit of storage by disk or tape.

Second, disks and tapes are designed to be nonvolatile: if the power fails in the computer system, the information stored on the disk or tape remains intact. Information stored in a microelectronic memory would be lost if the power failed. Third, disks and tapes are relatively compact, and for some purposes it is important to have the physical convenience of being able to transport them or to store them apart from the computer.

For a small computer system the requirements are quite different. For example, the user of a minicomputer does not need anywhere near the full capacity of a large disk-storage unit, and he certainly would not want to pay the cost of it. He is quite happy to get a smaller system at a lower overall cost even though the cost per bit may be higher. Thus microelectronics may penetrate into the area of storage devices with a smaller capacity. Semiconductor storage mechanisms such as charge-coupled devices will become cheaper than main semiconductor memory technologies, and their cost should become competitive with, or even lower than, the cost of small magnetic disk or tape storage systems. Since a semiconductor storage system would be accessed electronically instead of physically, as tapes or disks must be, the time required to enter or retrieve information in a semiconductor storage system would be much shorter. Even if the semiconductor storage system cost more per unit, the user might feel that it would be desirable to accept higher cost for higher performance. It is still too early to determine how successful microelectronic storage devices may become.

In the memory and storage hierarchy of a computer information is stored passively and is retrieved unchanged. In the central processing unit of the computer information is operated on actively. The elements out of which the processing portions of the computer system are made are logic circuits. Logic circuits are distinctly different from memory circuits. In a microelectronic memory each memory cell retains one bit of information. Only a small fraction of the bits in the memory system are being accessed at any particular moment, so that the standby power needed to keep the memory functioning properly can be low. The energy required by the support circuits needed to write information into the memory or to read information out of it is supplied on demand by circuits



SUPERCOMPUTER CRAY-1, made by Cray Research, Inc., of Minneapolis, Minn., is a powerful high-speed scientific digital computer for executing highly complex tasks. The CPU mainframe of the CRAY-1, the cylindrical structure in the center of the room, is composed of more than 1,000 modular logic boards inserted horizontally into 24 vertical chassis. The CPU mainframe holds the central processing unit and the computer's memory. Benches around the base of the CPU mainframe are cabinets housing the computer's 12 power supplies. At left an operator is seated at the keyboard of a terminal of a minicomputer that functions as a maintenance control unit for the CRAY-1 computer. Beyond him another operator is loading a magnetic tape onto a tape drive of the maintenance control unit. Cabinets in foreground are disk-storage devices. This CRAY-1 computer is at research laboratory of Cray Research in Chippewa Falls, Wis.

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

outside the array of memory cells. In a computer processor, however, every logic circuit is in continuous operation. Only a few circuits may be in the process of switching at any particular instant, but every remaining circuit is giving an output corresponding to its input and must be ready to switch at any moment if the input should change.

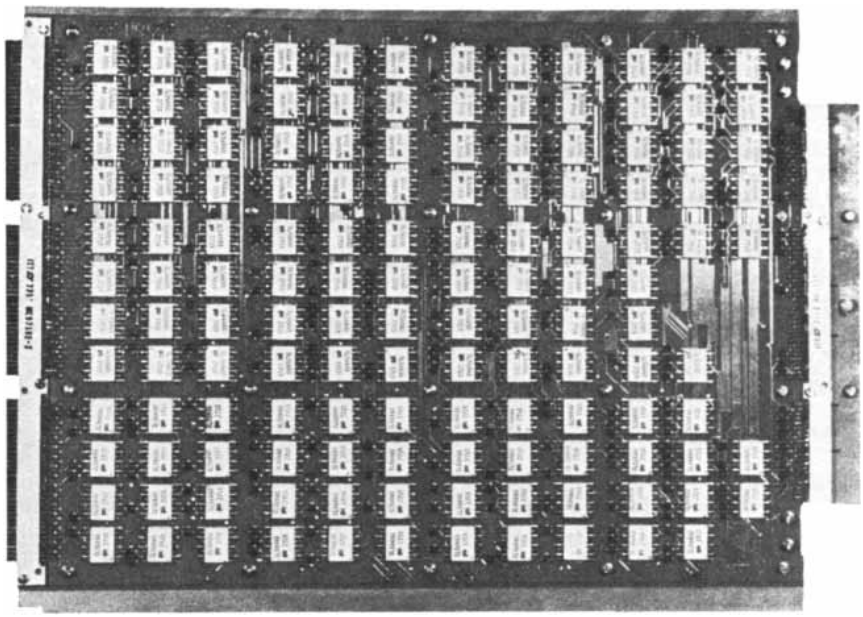
A logic circuit essentially consists of a comparatively high-impedance load device (such as a resistor) connected in series with one or more switching devices that are connected in parallel. Each switching device has an impedance that depends on the strength of the input voltage. When the input voltage is high, the impedance of the switching device is comparatively low; current flows through the switch, and so it is "on." When the input voltage is low, the impedance of the switching device is essentially infinite; no current flows through the switch, and so it is "off."

A typical kind of logic circuit is the negative-or (or "nor") circuit. A common "nor" logic circuit has three inputs, three switching devices (each of which is associated with an input) and one output, which is located between the load device and the three switching devices connected in parallel. One "nor" circuit is incorporated into an assembly of circuits (as in a processor) by connecting its output to an input of one or more similar circuits, and by connecting each input to the output of one or more other circuits. If the voltage on any one of the inputs to the logic circuit is high (corresponding to a binary 1), its switch will close, and the output will be low (corresponding to a binary 0). If all the inputs of the circuit are low (0), all the switching devices are essentially open circuits, and the output will be high (1). It is quite possible to design the logic of an entire computer with nothing other than "nor" circuits.

A logic circuit dissipates power and has a small but significant switching delay, caused by the fact that the output cannot respond immediately to a change in the inputs. Both the amount of power dissipated and the length of the switching delay depend on the impedance of the load device. A high-impedance load yields a smaller current and so will dissipate less power, but a smaller current requires more time to open or close the switch. In fact, for any particular design of circuit, the product of the power dissipation and the switching delay (the power-delay product) is a constant over a fairly broad range, and one disadvantage may be traded off in favor of the other.

The power-delay product of logic circuits has been considerably improved with the advent of microelectronic devices. Smaller devices are inherently faster than larger ones. A logic circuit that has smaller dimensions presents a lighter load to the switching device, and the current can switch the lighter load faster. It is interesting to note exactly how much the switching delay has improved as circuit technology has progressed. In the mid-1950's a large vacuum-tube logic circuit had a switching delay of one microsecond (one millionth of a second). In the early 1960's a printed-circuit card several inches on a side with discrete transistors and other components mounted on it had a typical switching delay of 100 nanoseconds (100 billionths of a second). A typical contemporary logic integrated-circuit chip for a mainframe system is less than a tenth of an inch on a side, has between five and 10 circuits and has an average switching delay of less than five nanoseconds. Even faster logic circuits are possible.

In the semiconductor logic circuits of today two basic types of devices are in use: bipolar devices and metal-oxide-semiconductor field-effect transistor (MOSFET) devices [see "Microelectronic Circuit Elements," by James D. Meindl, page 70]. Circuits made with bipolar devices are more complex to fabricate and require a larger area on a



LOGIC BOARD FROM CRAY-1 supercomputer is one of 1,056 such boards in the central processing unit. Each board measures six by eight inches. On it can be mounted up to 288 integrated-circuit chips, 144 on each side; on the side of the board shown here there are 137 of them. Entire CPU of the CRAY-1 is built up of only six different types of elements: four types of integrated circuits (*large white packages*) and two types of resistors (*small dark components*).

			CRAY-1
CENTRAL PROCESSING UNIT	NUMBER OF LOGIC CHIPS		278,000
	CPU CYCLE TIME		12.5 NANOSECONDS
MEMORY	BUFFER	TECHNOLOGY	—
		CAPACITY	—
		CYCLE TIME	—
	MAIN	TECHNOLOGY	BIPOLAR SEMICONDUCTOR
		CAPACITY	UP TO 1,048,576 64-BIT WORDS
		CYCLE TIME	50 NANOSECONDS
OTHER	SIZE OF CPU		9-FOOT DIAMETER BASE 4.5-FOOT DIAMETER CENTRAL PART 6.5 FEET HIGH
	WEIGHT OF CPU		5.25 TONS
	BASIC PURCHASE PRICE		$8,000,000

TABLE OF INFORMATION gives a few pertinent statistics about the CRAY-1 computer. CPU cycle time is the pulse rate of the clock in the CPU. The CRAY-1 has only one memory. The memory is divided into 16 independently operating banks that can be accessed one after another in an interleaved fashion at intervals of 12.5 nanoseconds. Cycle time of 50 nanoseconds for the memory is the time required to access one word of information from one bank; because consecutively located words can be stored and retrieved from successive banks in a fourth of the time, memory's effective cycle time is 12.5 nanoseconds. Number of chips in the CPU is only a rough approximation of size of a computer as each chip may have many or few logic circuits.

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

chip. Bipolar devices have a low impedance and are inherently fast. They are installed in the logic of mainframe computers and in the buffer memory, where the emphasis is on high speed and good performance. Circuits made with MOSFET devices are simpler to fabricate and more compact. They are relatively slow, but they cost less because they can be packaged quite densely. MOSFET devices are generally found in the main memory of computers and in microprocessors, where the emphasis is on low cost and lower performance is acceptable. They are also widely used for low-cost logic in a variety of applications.

The reduction in switching delay with the introduction of microelectronic devices is reflected in the improved performance of data-processing machines of all sizes. For example, the cycle time (the time required to execute an operation) of a high-end computer system has dropped from 150 nanoseconds in the early 1960's to 10 or 20 nanoseconds today, and the cycle time of a microprocessor has fallen from about two microseconds in 1971 to half a microsecond or less today.

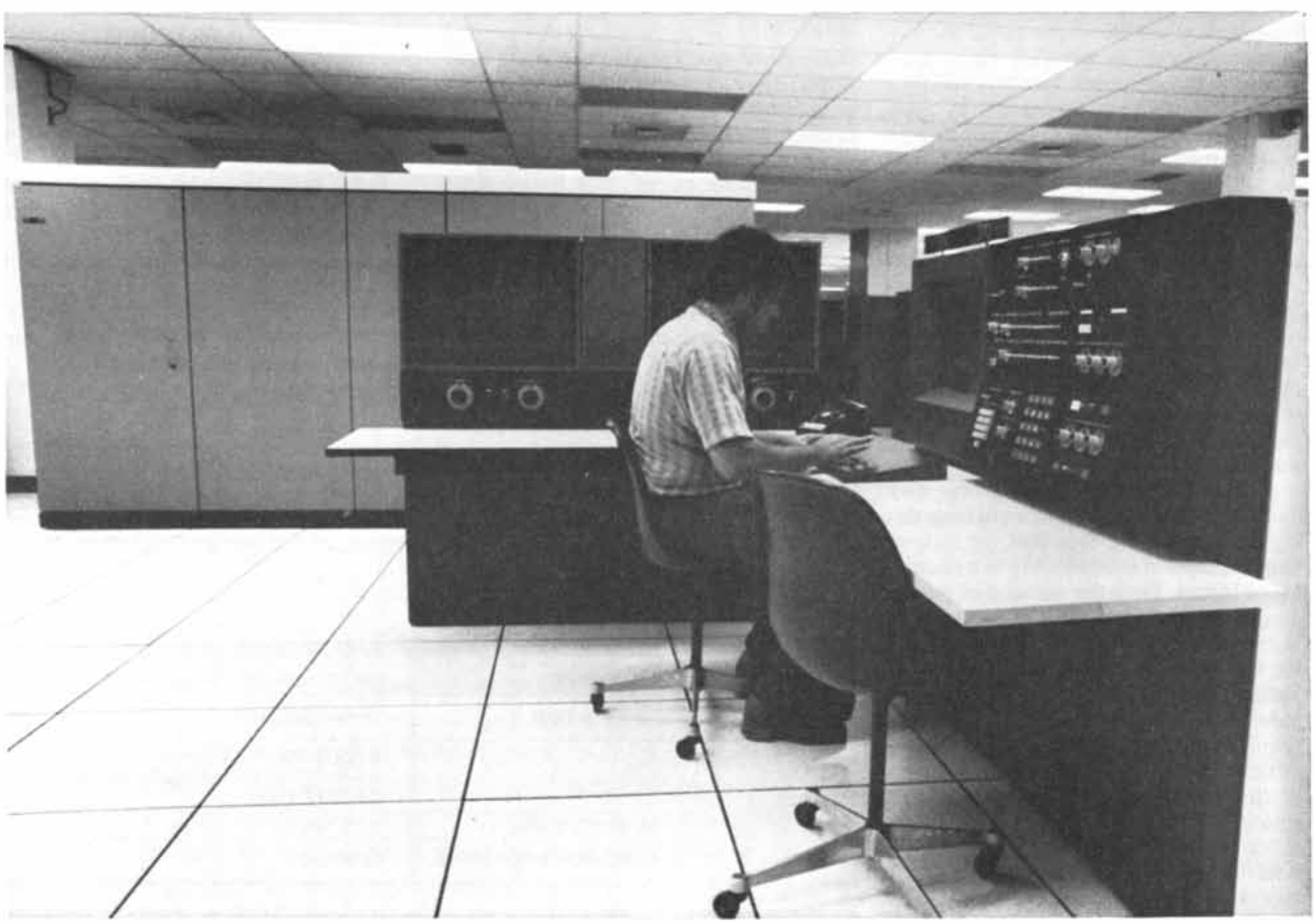
Not only do smaller circuit elements have a better power-delay product but also more of them can be placed in a given area on a chip. Increasing the number of circuits on a single chip is a more efficient way of fabricating the computer; fewer chips are required, and the connections between the circuits on a chip are shorter and less of a load on the system than the interconnections between chips. When the circuits on one chip must drive circuits on other chips, the switching delays are longer.

What limits the size of individual circuit elements and chips is the "yield" of the fabrication process. First, if the chip is to be a good one, all the elements on it must function properly. A single defect in a critical area will spoil a circuit and make the entire chip worthless. A larger chip will have more critical area, and the probability is higher that it will have a defect that will spoil a circuit.

Second, in logic chips there is a practical limit to the number of random logic circuits it is worthwhile to put on a single chip. A memory chip is a regular array of cells and support circuits. The basic function of all memory chips is the same. The input-output connections are simple. A specific type of memory chip is repeated many times in a single memory system, and it may be found in the memories of other computer systems as well. The result is that one type of memory chip is widely utilized, and the cost per chip is low.

The situation is quite different with logic circuits. Logic is much more random. A particular configuration of logic circuits may appear only once in a machine, and it may not be repeated in that machine or any other. The situation gets worse as the number of circuits on a chip increases. The result is that particular types of random logic chips are not widely utilized, and the cost per chip is high.

In addition, as more logic circuits are put on a chip it becomes more difficult to design the chip. This is a problem not only in initially designing the chip but also in redesigning it to modify it or to correct errors in the initial design. Redesigning a random-logic chip can be quite expensive if the number of circuits on



LARGE MAINFRAME COMPUTER, the IBM System/370 Model 168, made by the International Business Machines Corporation, is the biggest member of the family of IBM 370 computers. It is designed to handle high-speed large-scale tasks for either business or science. The big set of cabinets in the rear holds the central processing unit, the main memory and power supplies. The desk with cathode-ray-tube screen, keyboard and switches is the operator's console. Machine shown is at IBM headquarters in White Plains, N.Y.

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

Delta is an air line run by professionals. Like John Riley. He's been with Delta for almost 9 years. And he's just about done it all. He's worked on the baggage ramp, at the ticket counter, the boarding gate. Now he's a Passenger Service Agent.

John is all over the Delta terminal. Answering a question here, checking a ticket there, lending a hand everywhere. And keeping an eye out for a passenger who has to make a tight connection. John knows every second counts when he's got just minutes to get that passenger on her flight.

When it comes to people, John Riley—like all 28,000 Delta professionals—couldn't care more.

Delta is ready when you are.®

This is Delta's Wide-Ride® L-1011 TriStar, a $21 million superjet. Cabins are almost 19 feet wide. All seats are two-on-the-aisle.

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

Authors...
LOOKING FOR A PUBLISHER?
Learn how to have your book published.

You are invited to send for a free illustrated guidebook which explains how your book can be published, promoted and marketed. Whether your subject is fiction, non-fiction or poetry, scientific, scholarly, specialized, (even controversial) this handsome 52-page brochure will show you how to arrange for prompt publication.

Unpublished authors, especially, will find this booklet valuable and informative. **For your free copy, write to: VANTAGE PRESS, Inc. Dept. F-53 516 W. 34 St., New York, N.Y. 10001**

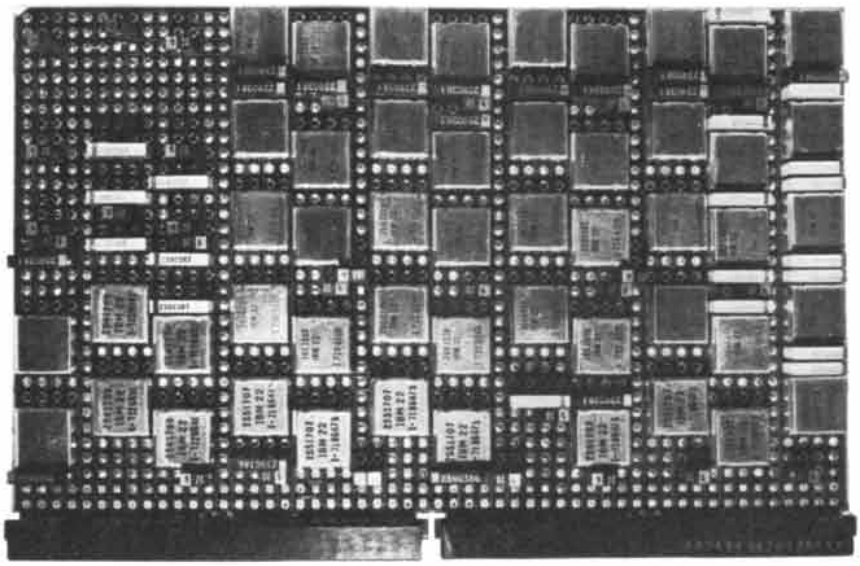
PUBLICATIONS FROM UNITED NATIONS

World Statistics in Brief
Prepared by the Department of Economic and Social Affairs Statistical Office, this handy reference gives important and frequently consulted demographic, economic and social statistics for 139 countries (furnished by the countries themselves) as well as regional aggregates.

Order No. E.76.XVII.6

$3.95

United Nations Publications
Room LX-2300
New York, N.Y. 10017
or
United Nations Publications
Palais des Nations
1211 Geneva 10, Switzerland



LOGIC CARD FROM IBM 370/168 computer is one of several hundred such boards in the central processing unit. Each board measures $4\frac{1}{2}$ inches wide by $6\frac{7}{8}$ inches long. On it are mounted integrated-circuit modules (*square silver packages*) and other electronic components.

the chip is very large. Moreover, as more logic circuits are put on a chip the number of input-output connections increases significantly, making it more difficult to package the chip in the computer. Thus increasing the number of logic circuits on a chip is not an unmixed blessing.

A designer developing the logic circuitry for a computer can choose among several alternative approaches. The first is that each circuit can be custom-designed and individually placed on a chip as needed in order to achieve optimum performance. Custom-building computer logic has all the drawbacks mentioned above, but it provides the best performance and the highest density of circuits. It also can have the lowest cost if the individual chips are in sufficiently high demand to amortize the cost of designing them.

The second approach is that each circuit can be custom-designed and placed on a chip in a regular array, like squares on a chessboard, with wiring tracks provided for connections between the circuits. Such an arrangement eases the difficulty of designing the entire chip but still retains a degree of versatility for different functions. It is less efficient in density and in performance because the circuits can no longer be organized in the most effective way for each individual function. Moreover, in general only a fraction of the circuits on a chip are actually used.

The third approach is that a number of small functional circuit units known as "macros" can be custom-designed. Such a unit might be an adder, a Bool-

			IBM-370/115	IBM-370/168
CENTRAL PROCESSING UNIT	NUMBER OF LOGIC CHIPS		1,800	20,000
	CPU CYCLE TIME		480 NANOSECONDS	80 NANOSECONDS
MEMORY	BUFFER	TECHNOLOGY	—	BIPOLAR SEMICONDUCTOR
		CAPACITY	—	32,768 BYTES
		CYCLE TIME	—	80 NANOSECONDS
	MAIN	TECHNOLOGY	MOSFET	MOSFET
		CAPACITY	UP TO 393,216 BYTES	UP TO 8,388,608 BYTES
		CYCLE TIME	480 NANOSECONDS	320 NANOSECONDS
OTHER	SIZE OF CPU		2.5 FEET LONG 5 FEET DEEP 5 FEET HIGH	13 FEET LONG 10 FEET DEEP 6.5 FEET HIGH
	WEIGHT OF CPU		1,800 POUNDS	5,100 POUNDS
	BASIC PURCHASE PRICE		$175,000	$4,500,000

TABLE OF INFORMATION gives a few pertinent statistics about the smallest member (the Model 115) and the largest member (the Model 168) of the IBM 370 family, showing the range that is available today in the computing power of both small and large mainframe computers.

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

New Sinclair Cambridge Programmable.
An astonishing $29.95!

How pocket calculators grew up

A couple of years ago, calculators took a step forward. Programmability transformed the slick slide-rule calculator into an advanced scientific machine.

Sadly, it also transformed a cheap little calculating aid into a piece of capital investment.

Now the all-new Sinclair Cambridge Programmable puts programmability where it belongs: in the palm of your hand, for less than $30.

The features of the Sinclair Cambridge Programmable

The Cambridge Programmable is genuinely pocketable. A mere 4½" x 2", it weighs about 2oz.

Yet there is absolutely no compromise in the package of functions it offers.

Because the Cambridge Programmable is both *a scientific calculator* with memory, algebraic logic and brackets (which means you enter a calculation exactly as you write it), and a *programmable calculator* which offers simple, flexible through-the-keyboard program entry and operation.

The Cambridge Programmable has a 36-step program memory, and features conditional and unconditional branch instructions (*go to* and *go if negative*).

There is also a step facility, which allows you to step through the program to check that it has been entered correctly. If there is any programming error, the learn key allows you to correct single steps without destroying any of the remainder of the program.

To achieve this, each program key-stroke has an identifying code, or 'check symbol'. (The symbols for the digit keys are the digits themselves, while the symbols for the operator keys are letters printed beside the keys.)

The check symbol for ⊟, for example, is F. So if, as you step through the program, the display shows

it means that ⊟ is programmed as step 26. If step 26 should have been ⊞, all you have to do is press

learn

puts machine into 'learn' mode. — the correct step

It's as simple as that!

These facilities make the Cambridge Programmable exceptionally powerful, whether it's running programs you devise for yourself or the programs in the Program Library.

Use the 294-program library to tailor the machine to your own specialty

Like a full-size computer – and *unlike* far more expensive specialist calculators – the Sinclair Cambridge Programmable can be programmed to handle calculations concerned with *any* specialty.

And of course, whatever it's doing the Programmable is error-free – in fact, once it's programmed, it can even be given to an operator who doesn't understand the program!

To save you time, and to help inexperienced programmers, Sinclair have produced a library of 294 programs ready to be entered straight into the calculator.

Using these standard programs, the Cambridge Programmable solves problems from quadratic equations (where the program gives both real and imaginary roots) to twin-T filter design, and from linear regression to bond yields. It even plays a lunar landing game! To realise the full power of the Cambridge Programmable, the Program Library is a must.

(The calculator is supplied with 12 sample programs, and full instructions for entering your own program. The four books in the program library are available at $4 each, or $10 for the complete set.)

Why the Cambridge Programmable costs so little

The Sinclair Cambridge Programmable uses the Sinclair talent for miniaturisation to the full – as you'd expect from the company that pioneered the truly pocketable pocket calculator, and recently introduced the world's first pocket TV.

Chip and circuitry design are unique to Sinclair, and the Cambridge Programmable is assembled by Sinclair's own staff at their headquarters plant. Shipped direct, and sold to you direct, the Cambridge Programmable accumulates no middleman's profits on the way.

The result is a pocket programmable calculator of advanced design, sold by the manufacturer with the manufacturer's own 1-year comprehensive guarantee, at a price unmatched by any comparable calculator.

10-day no-obligation offer

There's a lot more to this remarkable calculator than a brief written description can cover.

You need to see it and handle it... to program it yourself in a few seconds to save you hours... to check its performance against tables and graphs... to test the full range of programs available... to evaluate, perhaps, its use as an educational aid in developing a student's computer understanding.

So we're offering a 10-day trial. Send your check or money order with the order form below, and you'll receive a calculator direct. Use it for 10 days, and if you don't feel it's the finest $29.95 you've ever invested, send it back. We'll refund your money without question.

There's nothing to lose, and so much calculating power to gain.

Post your order today.

sinclair

Sinclair Radionics Inc., Galleria,
115 East 57th Street, New York, N.Y. 10022 USA
Tel: (212) 355 5005.

To: Sinclair Radionics Inc., Galleria, 115 East 57th Street, New York, N.Y. 10022, USA. SA9

Please send me_____(qty) Sinclair Cambridge Programmable(s) at $29.95 each, including full instructions, and sample programs. $_____

_____ (qty) ACline adaptor(s) at $4.95 $_____

_____ (qty) Program Library **Book 1** at $4 **General/Finance/Statistics** (percentage, metric system, memory, games, dates, finance, mortgages, statistics) $_____

_____ (qty) Program Library **Book 2** at $4 **Mathematics** (algebra, calculus, geometry, trigonometry, number theory, transcendental functions) $_____

_____ (qty) Program Library **Book 3** at $4 **Physics and Engineering** (astronomy, statics and dynamics, relativity, mechanics, properties of matter, fluids, structures, thermodynamics) $_____

_____ (qty) Program Library **Book 4** at $4 **Electronics** (networks, circuits, filters, electrodynamics, radiation and propagation) $_____

_____ **(qty) complete set(s) of 4 books at $10 per set** $_____

Sales tax (NY residents) $_____

Post and packing $ 2.50

Total $_____

Enclosed is check/MO payable to Sinclair Radionics Inc.

Name_____

Address_____

_____

City_____

_____

State_____

Zip_____

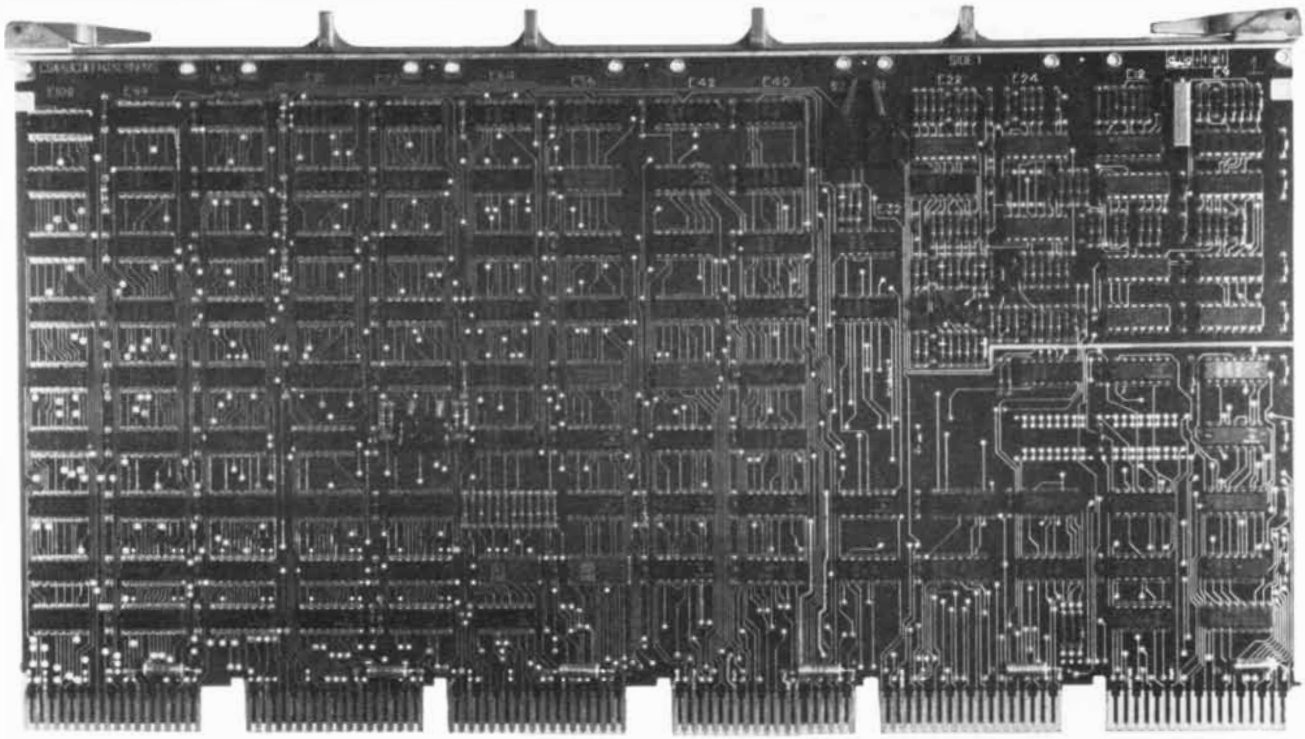
(PLEASE PRINT)

I understand that you will refund purchase price in full if I return calculator(s) and accessories in saleable condition within 10 days of receipt.

Signature_____

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

MINICOMPUTER PDP-11 Model 60, made by the Digital Equipment Corporation and photographed in one of their testing laboratories in Marlborough, Mass., is one of the middle-range members of the family of PDP-11 computers. The PDP-11/60 shown here consists of a central processing unit (*middle control panel on large cabinet*) with two disk units flanking it and an operator's console (*keyboard in foreground*). Operator at right is holding a disk cartridge for the computer. Operator at left is testing computer with an oscilloscope.



LOGIC BOARD FROM PDP-11/60 minicomputer is one of six similar boards in the central processing unit. The board measures $8\frac{1}{2}$ inches wide by $15\frac{1}{2}$ inches long. It contains 107 integrated circuits (including two read-only memories) and some discrete components.

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

ean-logic unit or a register stack. In this way a "library" of macros can be built up. When a chip is designed, it is constructed of a number of macros connected together by a minimum of custom-designed logic.

The fourth approach has to do with the fact that it is possible to facilitate the design of logic chips by making the logic resemble memory. The commonest way is to use a read-only memory. A read-only memory differs from a read/write memory in that the information is written into it when it is fabricated, and it cannot be changed. In such a memory the sequence of logic operations is stored as bit patterns in a sequence of bit "words"; when the words are accessed, the bit patterns are decoded and the logic operations are carried out. Only a relatively small amount of logic is needed to decode and utilize the bit patterns. The read-only memory cell is smaller than a read/write memory cell, and it is nonvolatile. Between 10 and 20 bits of read-only memory is generally equivalent to a single logic circuit. The logic of the chip can be changed simply by altering the read-only memory bit pattern; no new circuit design or layout is required.

The fifth and last approach to designing logic circuitry is to implement the logic functions by a microprocessor. The microprocessor is the least efficient alternative in terms of performance and density, but it is the most flexible and the easiest to use. Its functions can be changed simply by reprogramming it. The same chip can perform many different functions, so that it is in high demand and is relatively inexpensive. A single microprocessor chip today costs as little as $10 to $20.

The versatility and convenience of the microprocessor has altered the entire architecture of modern computer systems. No longer is the processing of information carried out only in the computer's central processing unit. Today there is a trend toward distributing more processing capability throughout a computer system, with various areas having small local processors for handling operations in those areas.

For example, an input-output port may have a controller to regulate the flow of information through it. At times the controller may accept commands from the central processing unit and send signals back in order to coordinate its operations with those of the rest of the system; at other times the controller may operate independently of the central processing unit. Another example of a local processor is what is usually called an intelligent terminal. At a terminal an operator is connected to the computer and time-shares the computer with other operators. Originally terminals were "dumb": they simply sent inputs from the operator to the central processing unit of the computer and displayed outputs on a screen. Today increasing numbers of terminals are "smart": they are capable of doing some preliminary and independent processing on the operator's input before communicating with the computer's central processing unit.

			PDP-11/03	PDP-11/70
CENTRAL PROCESSING UNIT	NUMBER OF LOGIC CHIPS		4	600
	CPU CYCLE TIME		3.5 MICROSECONDS	300 NANOSECONDS
MEMORY	BUFFER	TECHNOLOGY	—	BIPOLAR SEMICONDUCTOR
		CAPACITY	—	2,048 BYTES
		CYCLE TIME	—	240 NANOSECONDS
	MAIN	TECHNOLOGY	CORE OR MOSFET	CORE
		CAPACITY	UP TO 57,344 BYTES	UP TO 4,096,000 BYTES
		CYCLE TIME	CORE: 1.15 MICROSECONDS MOSFET: 750 NANOSECONDS	1.26 MICROSECONDS
OTHER	SIZE OF CPU		19 INCHES LONG 13.5 INCHES DEEP 3.5 INCHES HIGH	21 INCHES LONG 31 INCHES DEEP 6 FEET HIGH
	WEIGHT OF CPU		35 POUNDS	500 POUNDS
	BASIC PURCHASE PRICE		$2,000	$63,000

TABLE OF INFORMATION gives pertinent statistics about both the smallest member (the Model 03) and the largest member (the Model 70) of the family of PDP-11 minicomputers. The PDP-11/70 can be considered a small mainframe computer. It has a high-speed buffer memory. It and PDP-11/60 are only members of PDP-11 family that have two memories.

In many computer systems today a number of processors are connected together to form a distributed-processing network. Most commonly the network consists of a number of minicomputers, but mainframe computers and microcomputers can also be incorporated into it. Input-output ports and data-transmission hardware are considered an active part of the network only if they are able to process information. Parts of a task are distributed among the elements of the network. Each element works independently for some period of time, communicating as necessary with other elements.

There are a number of advantages to distributed processing. First, since many elements of the computer can be working on different portions of the same task, the work may be done faster. Second, if one element in the network malfunctions, its work load can be shifted to another element or shared among several elements, so that the entire network is relatively immune to failure. Third, the network can be small enough to be contained within a single laboratory or building, or it can be spread out over a wide area, as in various branches of a bank. The ease or difficulty with which each element can communicate with another will affect how much the data are manipulated before they are transmitted through the network. A major obstacle to designing an effective distributed-processing system is the difficulty involved in writing the system's software, which must enable the various elements of the network to operate and interact efficiently.

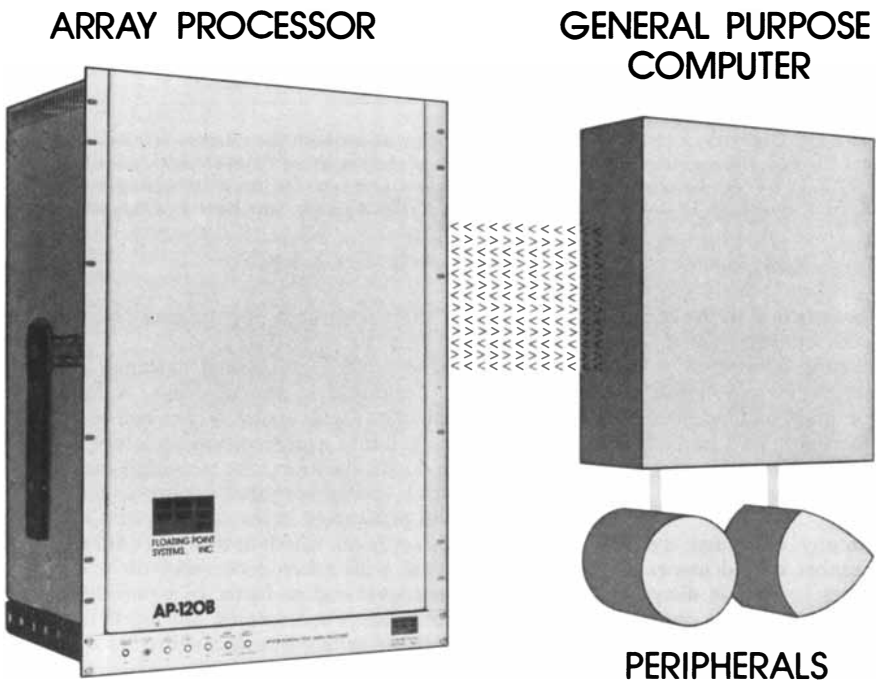
Distributed-processing systems can be organized in several ways. A large distributed-processing system can be organized into a hierarchical structure. At the top of the hierarchy is a single mainframe computer that communicates with processors in the network at a secondary level, which in turn can communicate with other processors on a tertiary level and so forth. In a pure hierarchy the processors on any particular level cannot communicate directly with one another. Instead communications must be routed through the next higher level.

Alternatively a distributed-processing system can be organized into a peer structure. All the computers are on the same level and can communicate with one another on an equal footing. Except for very small networks, however, it seldom happens that every element in the network can communicate with every other element. Instead the hierarchical structure and the peer structure can be combined into a hybrid system in which the processors on a particular level can communicate with one another and with processors on the next higher level.

Microelectronics and data processing are inextricably linked. The hardware in data-processing machines, from the largest to the smallest, is built out of microelectronic devices. Advances in microelectronic devices have both increased the performance and lowered the cost of data-processing machinery. These advances will continue into the foreseeable future, although there is some indication that as the industry matures the rate of advance will decrease. And as computing continues to become faster and cheaper, data processing will continue to penetrate further into the activities of everyday life.

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

A new advance in scientific computing



A breakthrough in computer architecture, the Array Processor is bringing unparalleled computational power to continually growing numbers of applications in **research, engineering,** and **signal processing.**

The Array Processor is **a computer in its own right,** specifically designed **for extremely efficient processing of large vectors or arrays** of data. Although fully capable of working in an independent system, the Array Processor is typically implemented as a powerful complement to a host computer (which acts primarily as a controller), greatly increasing the computational power of the entire system.

The Array Processor **takes blocks of data and instructions** from the complementary CPU or other device and **performs the computations** called for **at speeds of 100 to 200 times greater than** a stand-alone computer. This means that **a minicomputer** based system can have its computational throughput increased to a degree only available on the largest, and most expensive mainframe computers. It also means that a **large mainframe can have its throughput increased up to 20 fold.** The rationale is simply this: if massive computations are required to effect a simulation or algorithmic model, why not design a programmable processor to handle these tasks efficiently. FPS has pioneered this approach by designing extremely efficient, cost effective Array Processors, interfacing them to all popular computers and providing a package consisting of software development programs, diagnostic programs, and an extensive math library. All documentation and support are provided to bring the systems promptly on line. The significance of this approach becomes evident when one realizes that for **less than $50K** he can have the power of a multi-million dollar CDC 7600 immediately available to implement his scientific analysis programs. Hundreds of FPS Array Processors are in use today.

Time and again the Array Processor has allowed significant research to be accomplished where before budgets did not allow access to the computational power required. This accessability has also produced a catalytic effect allowing new research ideas to come forward for implementation.

Architecturally, Floating Point Systems' Array Processors consist of fast registers, program memory, data memory, **a pipelined floating-point adder,** and **pipelined floating-point multiplier**—all interconnected by **seven parallel synchronous data buses.** These features are combined with a fast **(167 nanosecond)** instruction cycle. While the conventional computer instruction word can only specify a single operation, such as a **multiply, add, memory fetch, decrement, or test, the FPS Array Processor can do all of these operations in a single 167 nanosecond cycle.** The result is the ability to do the reiterative computations required on large vectors or arrays of data in a very short time.

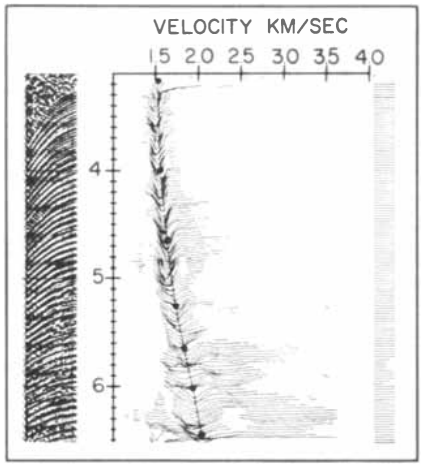
There is another "unexpected" benefit from this kind of computer architecture. Most algorithms used to implement scientific models and their associated data sets are naturally structured in vector (array) form. While the conventional computers of today require restructuring of the models, the design of the architecture and instruction set of FPS Array Processors is virtually congruent to the mathematical models. Researchers using Array Processors find that they **can readily write new program routines** either in **FORTRAN IV** through their host computer or in **the Array Processor's own assembly language.**

Powerful models can be readily implemented through the extensive FPS Scientific **Math Library (SML) of more than 250 routines** callable through the host FORTRAN. New programs can be added to the SML using the assembly language of the Array Processor.

For example, **Peter Buhl** of the **Lamont Doherty Geological Observatory of Columbia University** applied these techniques to the analysis of **marine seismic reflection data.**

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

...the Array Processor

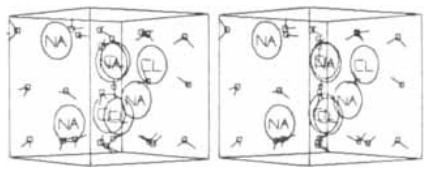


The above data is a plot of the earth's response due to an air gun source at 24 locations along the earth's surface. The vertical scale is propagation time in seconds. Sound velocity in the earth is determined by fitting one-sided hyperbolas to the data. This fitting is done in the Array Processor by multiple cross-correlations of short time windows of the 24 traces. The strength of the correlation as a function of propagation time and assumed velocity is plotted in the center graph as a downward deflection. A line through the deflection troughs defines velocity vs. depth. **The center graph requires 100 million multiply-adds.**

Sound velocity data as a function of depth of the earth provides valuable information about the nature of the strata. A single velocity analysis via a multiple cross-correlation (or semblance) technique required **six hours with conventional computational equipment.** Utilizing an **FPS Array Processor reduced this time to three minutes,** (a 120X throughput improvement) thereby allowing these velocity analyses to be done at closer spacings along the line of profile, **adding an extra dimension to earth cross sections.**

Floating Point Systems' Array Processor also forms part of a system used to process nuclear reactor operating data generated by **reactor safety experiments.** The portion of that system developed by **Sam Sparck, Senior Development Engineer at the Time/Data Division of GenRad, Inc.** is a real-time multi channel **digital filter subsystem.** Input data arrives in buffers of variable length at rates from 50 to 650 buffers/sec. Maximum throughput requirement is 131,000 words/sec. The Array Processor program performs data demultiplexing into separate channel buffers, digital filtering/decimation, bounds checking, and remultiplexing of the decimated data into output buffers. **Decimation ratios of 3:1 to 6,000,000:1** are attained. Certain **selected parameters are tested in real-time** for bounds exceedance, and when exceedance conditions are detected, an audible and visual alarm is generated to alert system operators.

In the area of pure science, a Floating Point Systems' Array Processor is used by researchers at the **University of California, San Diego** to integrate **several hundred coupled differential equations** in the study of the **molecular dynamics of chemical reactions.** A dynamic display system then processes the vector positions of the atoms and shows them in 3D moving images. Chemistry is a field with obvious needs for large increases in computer power. Its fundamental axioms are well known, but the computations involved in applying these axioms are so extended that as yet only relatively simple systems have been studied from first principles



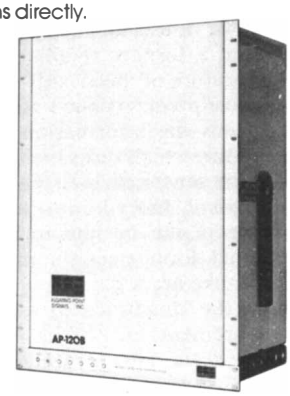
Hard copy output of single time step in the dissolution and solvation of a salt crystallite in water is shown here. You can see this stop-action in striking depth if you fuse the two pictures together into a single stereoscopic image with a slight crossing of your eyes. The experimenters actually have moving 3D pictures literally at their fingertips. The calculations are aimed at a deeper understanding of molecular processes in terms of the motions of the atoms involved.

While the computational limitation of this generation of Array Processors does exist, its potential contribution to technology has yet to be discovered in many areas of scientific analysis. Every day numerically intensive array processing techniques are applied to new areas of research and engineering.

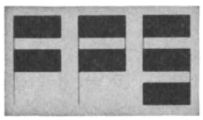
Today **Array Processors can be found** in the calculation, reconstruction, and enhancement of **images** (X-ray, satellite, and seismic)... **the conversion of speech** signals into compressed digital data and the subsequent resynthesis... the composition of images in **radio astronomy**... the statistical analysis of the data affecting **economic models**... the **simulation of mechanical systems,** airframes, and environments... and more.

The Array Processor has literally created a new era in signal processing and scientific computation. An FPS Array Processor interfaced to a **minicomputer** provides the computational power of a megadollar mainframe at a fraction of the cost...combined with a **major mainframe,** it brings the user the computational ability previously available only at tremendous cost.

To learn more about Array Processors... use the coupon below or contact Floating Point Systems directly.



The age of Array Processing is here...and Floating Point Systems is the Array Processor company.



FLOATING POINT SYSTEMS, INC.

CALL TOLL FREE 800-547-9677 or 800-547-1445
P.O. Box 23489, Portland, OR 97223
(503) 641-3151, TLX: 360470 FLOATPOINT PTL

Please send additional information.

Name _____ Title _____

Company _____ Phone _____

Address _____

City _____ State _____ Zip _____

My Computer System is _____

My application is _____

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

The Role of Microelectronics in Instrumentation and Control

Microelectronics enables measuring instruments not only to make measurements but also to analyze them. It has also brought closer the fully automatic control of industrial processes and machinery

by Bernard M. Oliver

Science and technology alike depend on the ability to measure an enormous variety of phenomena the unaided human senses cannot measure with precision and in many instances cannot even detect. Without instruments to make such measurements there can be no efficient analysis and prediction; without devices responding to the readings of instruments there can be no automatic control. Today a new generation of powerful measuring instruments and control devices is beginning to emerge. The high performance of its members is largely the result of incorporating, as an integral part of each instrument or control device, a microprocessor and some digital memory.

The underlying principle of any control system is the feedback loop. A classic example is the household thermostat, where the loop consists of a furnace, the air in the house, an air-temperature sensor and a furnace regulator. When the temperature of the air falls below or rises above predetermined points, the sensor feeds the information back to the regulator, which turns the furnace on or off. The sensor is in effect a measuring instrument. Indeed, most measuring instruments can be said to be part of a feedback loop, since the measurements they make are a guide for action modifying the quantities measured. Many measurements are not simple to make or to integrate into a feedback control loop. It is here that new measuring instruments based on microelectronic devices such as the microprocessor have come into their own.

To appreciate how profoundly measurement technology has changed over the past four decades let us look into a large communications development laboratory in the mid-1930's. A new repeater, or amplifier, for radio-network telephone lines is being tested. Its amplification is being measured over the frequency range of music and speech.

The test signal is generated by a tunable oscillator, and the output of the repeater is measured by a thermocouple meter. The output power of the oscillator varies with frequency and must be manually reset for each new frequency to some desired value, as read on the thermocouple meter. After each resetting the output of the oscillator is fed to the repeater through a calibrated attenuator, and the repeater output is read on the same thermocouple meter. Next the attenuator is adjusted, reducing the input from the oscillator until the attenuator loss cancels the repeater gain and the thermocouple reading is the same as before. The attenuator reading is equal to the amplification the repeater provides at that specific frequency.

The test continues. Each new oscillator frequency setting must be read off a calibration chart. This setting and the corresponding attenuator reading are entered in a notebook. After lunch the results will be plotted and examined to see if there are problems with the frequency response. If not, the next day can be devoted to a further test of the repeater, this time its harmonic distortion with respect to frequency.

How would we test the same repeater today? The venerable device is dusted off and cables from an automatic test set are connected to its input and output. The test conditions are typed in at a console, and a "RUN" key is pressed. In 10 seconds a video terminal displays a graph plotting the gain of the repeater across the entire range of frequencies. Pressing another key changes the display to a similar plot of distortion with respect to frequency. No dials have been turned and no meters have been read, but two days' worth of data has been obtained in a few seconds. In four decades instrumentation has progressed from the performance of the Conestoga wagon to that of the jet airplane.

It is worth noting a few of the major milestones in the development of instrumentation from the 1930's to the present, because without them the microprocessor would not be able to play an effective role in an instrument. The first milestone was the stabilization of the analogue circuits in instruments. By applying automatic gain-control circuits to oscillators and negative feedback to amplifiers it was possible to construct signal generators and voltmeters with a constant output and sensitivity over a wide range of frequencies. It was not necessary to use a substitution method and to adjust attenuators for each reading; instead a dial could be set to each new frequency and the variations in amplification could be read directly.

Digital technology, which had been evolving in computers, was first applied to instrumentation in the digital frequency counter. Earlier methods of measuring frequencies were quite time-consuming; a digital frequency counter displayed the answer in a fraction of a second and in an easily readable numerical form. Frequency measurement became almost overnight the fastest and most accurate of all electrical measurements. An immediate demand for digital readouts in other instruments followed, and soon the analogue readout—the pointer—of the traditional voltmeter was replaced by a digital display.

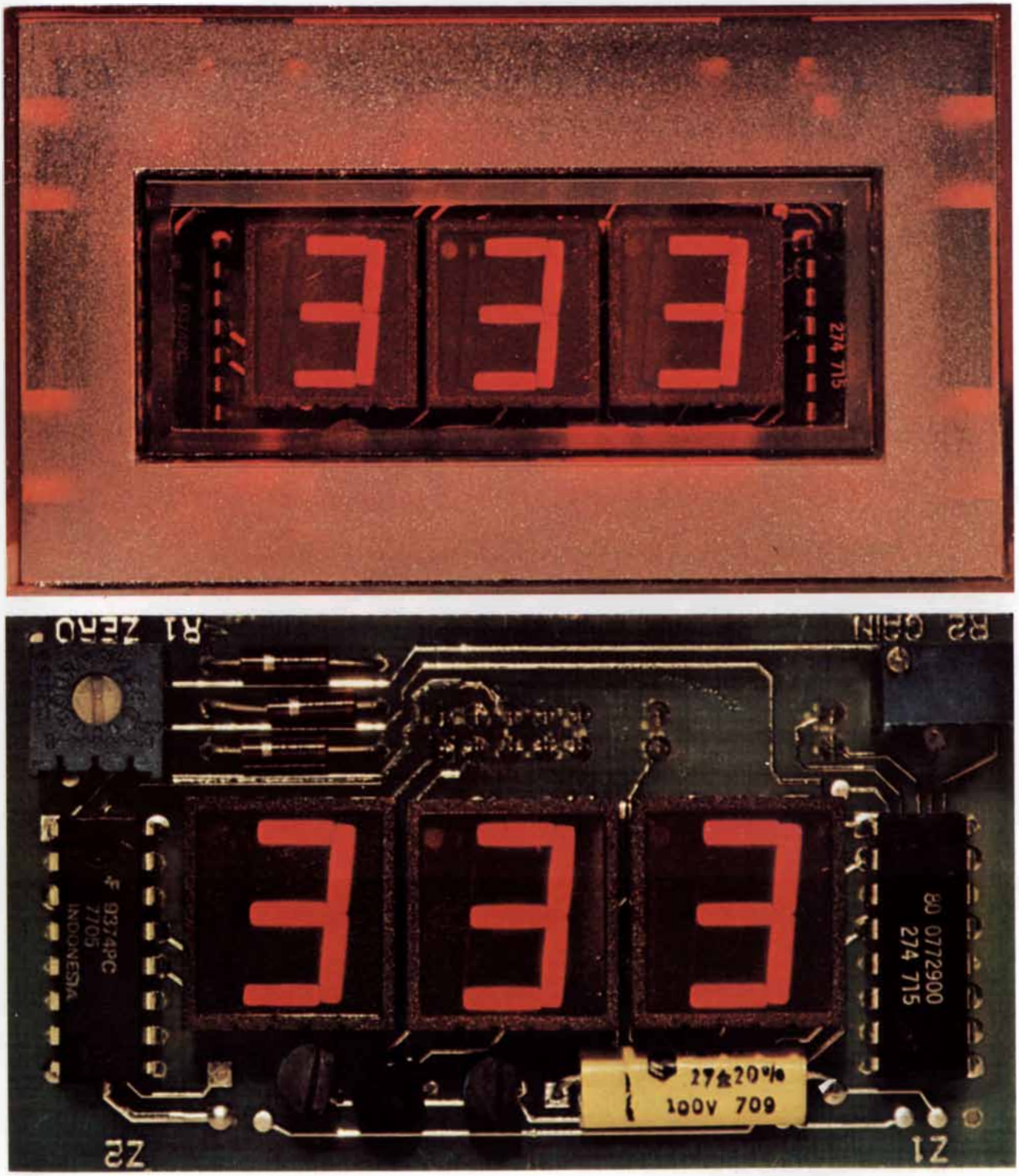
The replacement of analogue readouts by digital ones led in general to fewer human reading errors. More important, it led to instruments that could be read quickly, tirelessly and totally without error by computers. Computers were already in service for recording the results of expensive, one-of-a-kind tests: a nuclear explosion, say, or a rocket firing. With the aid of devices that converted analogue signals into digital ones computers stored the output of hundreds of instruments simultaneously, enabling the testers to review and rereview the test measurements at their convenience. These early computerized facilities were the precursors of today's automatic measuring systems.

The advent of digital-output instruments brought automatic measuring

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

systems one step closer. The next step was to develop digital-input instruments: instruments that are set digitally and can therefore be controlled by computer. The frequency counter was matched by the frequency synthesizer, the digital voltmeter by the digitally adjustable power supply. One by one signal sources became computer-controllable, and together with the computer-readable instruments they formed the basis for a wide variety of automatic measuring systems.

Such systems speed up electronic measurements by one or two orders of magnitude and improve the accuracy of measurement to a like degree. They are particularly advantageous for the testing of manufactured products, where routine but often complex tests must be repeated over and over again, and where



DIGITAL METER of unusual simplicity instantaneously presents in numerical display the value of any analogue signal input it receives in the form of a voltage or a current, such as the signal from a sensing transducer. Preceding generations of digital meters incorporated 10 times as many components as the 15 in this AD2026 panel meter, made by Analog Devices Inc. of Norwood, Mass. Most of the components drive the light-emitting diodes of the display (*top*). Two others are input controls and one is an integration capacitor. Some 120 components in earlier meters are replaced here by one large-scale-integrated chip (*bottom*) of the integrated-injection-logic (I^2L) type.

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

SMOKEHOUSE® SATURDAY NIGHT

Company's coming. The fire's going nicely. There's plenty of ice. You take one last look around the room before your friends arrive, snitching a Smokehouse® almond from the bowl on the table. Remember what a hit those almonds were the last time? Everytime you turned around, the dish was empty. Fantastic flavor! No wonder they say, **"One Nibble is Never Enough."** It's true.

Smokehouse® Almonds, one of seven different snack almonds from

the Almond People®

California Almond Growers Exchange
P.O. Box 1768, Sacramento, CA 95808

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

there is infrequent need for reprogramming.

Automatic test systems have many advantages in addition to relieving workers of monotonous tasks. The automatic system can compensate for its own systematic measuring errors by making measurements on a reference standard and storing in its memory the difference between these measurements and the known values. The differences, which represent errors, can then be subtracted when a device on the production line is measured. The result is a tenfold to hundredfold reduction in the level of measuring error.

To get a new reading an automatic measuring system need wait no longer than the time it takes for the device being tested and the associated instruments to settle down. This time may be only milliseconds or microseconds and so is orders of magnitude faster than it would be for a human tester. The computer exercises the system thousands of times harder than a human being could and gets correspondingly more data per hour from the test equipment.

The automatic system has inherent data-processing capability. Out of the thousands of measurements that are made every minute only those that show some anomaly need to be presented to the human monitor, and they can be displayed complete with error information. Test data on different production runs can be stored for later reference, reviewed item by item and analyzed statistically to determine if the manufacturing processes are under control.

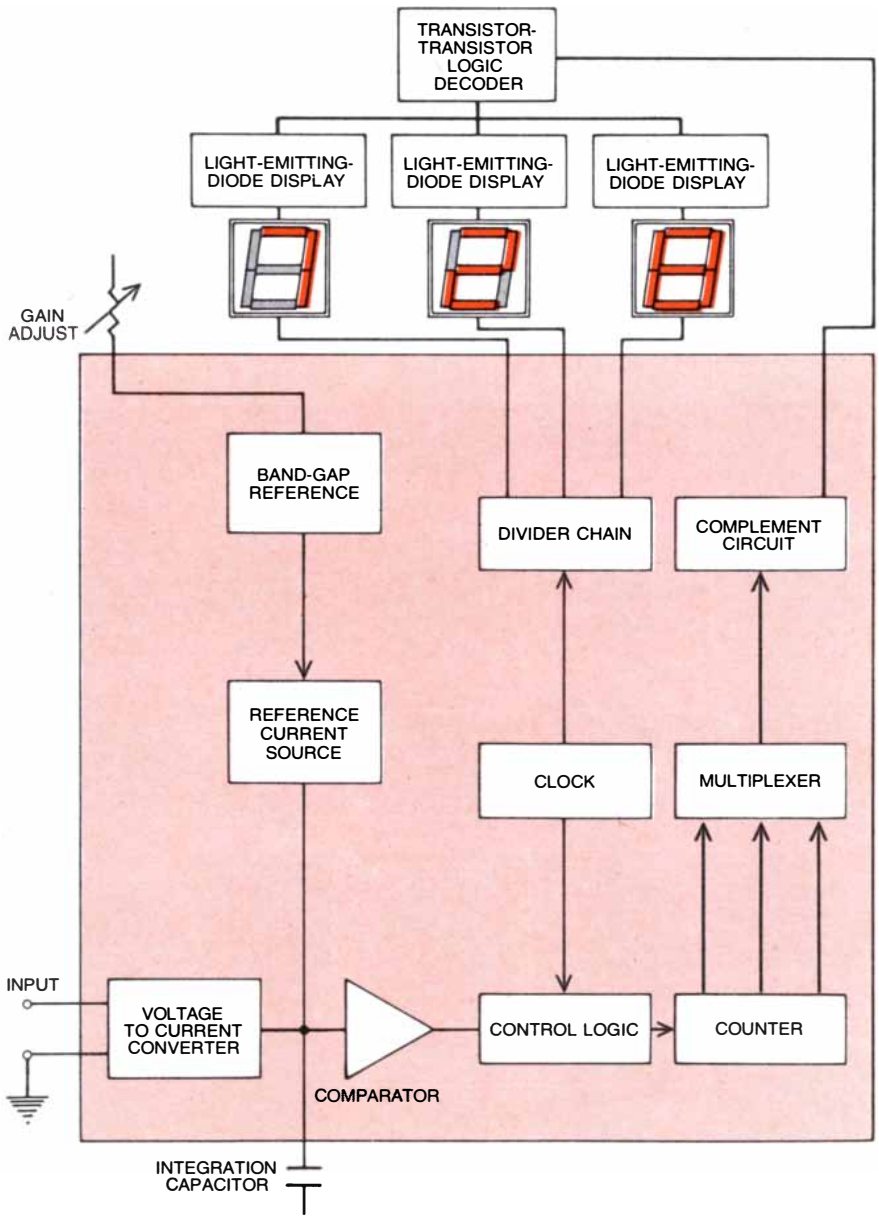
Automatic test systems do not fudge the data or make mistakes in recording it or get tired or omit tests or do any of the dozens of troublesome things human beings are apt to do. Whatever tests the program specifies will be made regardless of the time of day or the day of the week; no front-office pressure to ship goods by a certain date can compromise the computer's inspection.

What happens after the next step is taken, when each instrument incorporates its own computer in the form of a microprocessor? A host of new capabilities and modes of performance become possible; what we now have is "smart" instrumentation. To gain an understanding of what smart instruments can do let us consider some specific examples.

Compare a traditional spectrum analyzer with a smart one. A spectrum analyzer measures the power of a signal as a function of frequency over some specified portion of the frequency spectrum. Essentially it is a narrow-band receiver that repeatedly sweeps a selected part of the spectrum and displays any signals it receives as peaks with heights proportional to the power of the signal. If the sweep rate is too high, however, the receiver cannot respond fully to the signals it detects; if the sweep rate is too low, the display may be intermittent and may flicker, and changes in the signal may be missed.

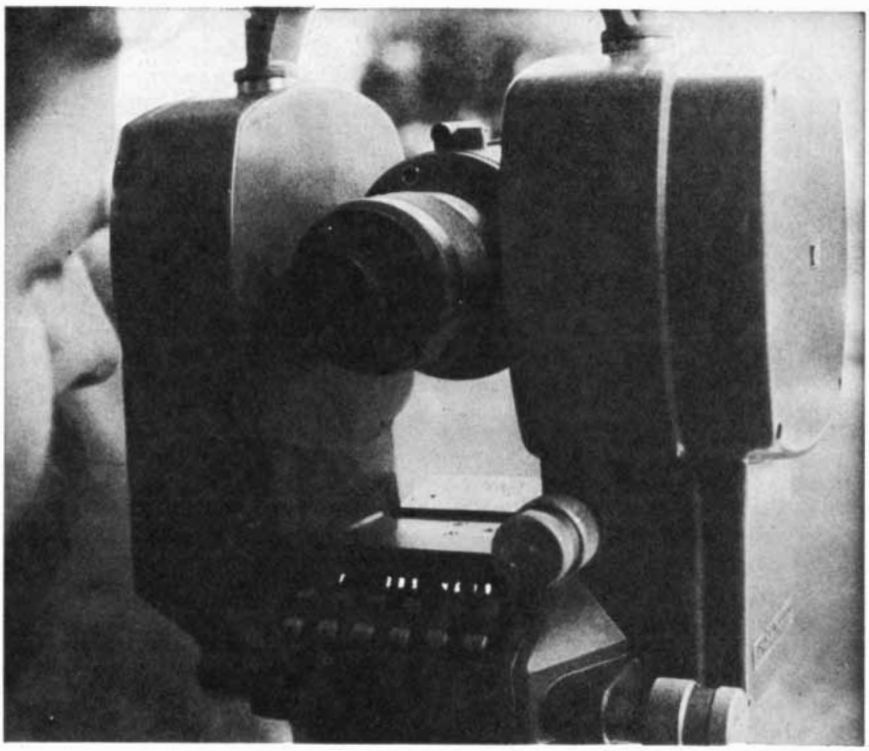
To get the highest repetition rate possible without sacrificing either detail or accuracy in the display three interrelated factors must be optimized: the width of the spectrum selected, the resolution within the spectrum and the sweep rate. In the days before microelectronics the task of optimization was left to the operator, and only a careful and knowledgeable one could get consistently accurate and complete results.

In today's analyzers the microprocessor automatically adjusts the spectral resolution to present as much detail as the display can show and then selects the highest sweep rate that will still allow an accurate, full response to each signal detected. Even when the sweep rate is very low, the display will not flicker; it is stored in digital memory and presented to the operator 60 times per second. The microprocessor puts on the display not only the signal peaks themselves but also all other pertinent data: the sweep time, the bandwidth of the receiver, the span of the spectrum, the strength of the signal and the minimum, maximum and center frequencies of the signal. Monitoring photographs of the display make it possible to record the entire story at any time. Instead of having to contend with the shortcomings of the conventional spectrum analyzer the operator finds himself actively helped. The controls are simplified and entire settings

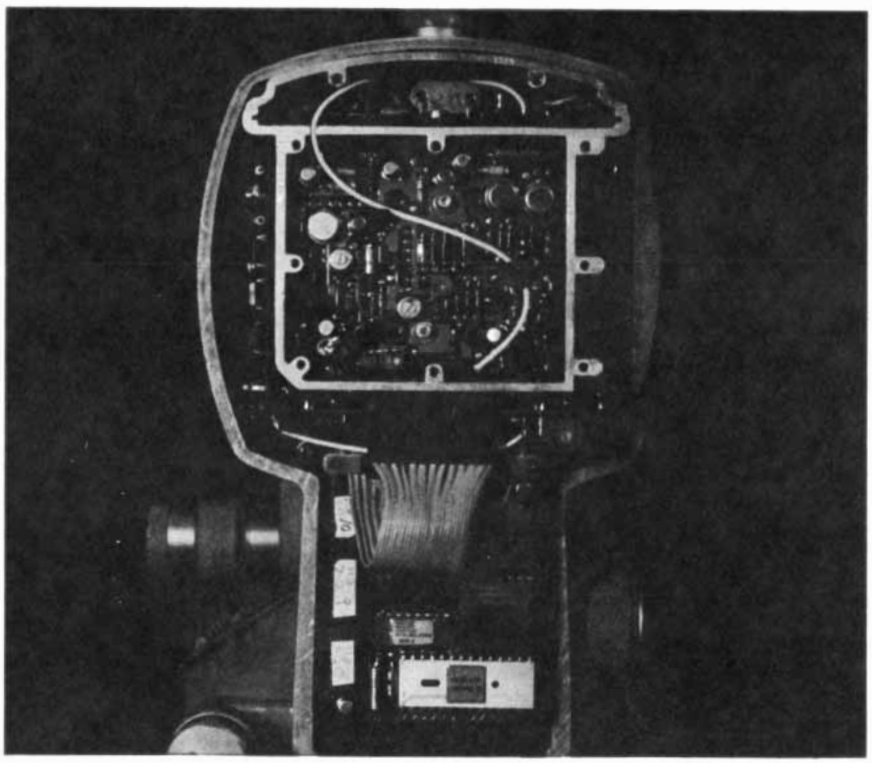


DIGITAL-METER CIRCUITRY includes the I^2L chip elements enclosed within the colored box and 14 additional components, most of them related to the numerical display seen at top.

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC



"SMART" SURVEYING INSTRUMENT combines the angle measurements of a theodolite with distance measurements obtained by microelectronically processing reflected waves of laser light. A microprocessor in the instrument presents azimuth and elevation angle readings in degrees, minutes and seconds of arc. An internal sensor detects any leveling errors and corrects the angle readings accordingly. With distance measurements of up to five kilometers the microprocessor converts slant-range readings into their horizontal and vertical components while correcting for the curvature of the earth. The instrument is the Hewlett-Packard 3820A.



OPENED CASE exposes to view part of the circuitry of the 3820A. By plugging in a solid-state memory the surveyor can record a day's field observations for transfer to a computer at headquarters directly or by telephone. The computer-held data in turn can be fed to a plotter that will automatically convert days of field observations into a standard surveyor's plat.

can be stored in memory to be recalled later if the measurement needs to be repeated.

A second example has to do with the combination of two instruments of chemical analysis: the gas chromatograph and the mass spectrometer. When a sample of unknown composition passes through the column of a gas chromatograph, each component of the sample travels at its own characteristic rate, so that two components rarely reach the end of the column at the same time. The arrival of each component at the end of the column is sensed in any one of several ways and is quantitatively recorded as a peak on a strip chart. Such a chart is the chromatogram. For example, a drop of gasoline will produce a chromatogram with a different peak for each hydrocarbon present. The chemist can then determine the percentage of each hydrocarbon in the sample by integrating the area under each peak, a laborious process.

Procedures for gas chromatography were greatly accelerated a few years ago by converting the output of the detector from analogue to digital form and storing the chromatogram in computer memory: the area of each peak could then be integrated numerically with the aid of a suitable computer algorithm to mark the beginning and end of each peak. Today, with microprocessors, each chromatograph can be a self-contained quantitative instrument with its own internal calibration and self-testing routines and its own internal integrator.

In the mass spectrograph a sample of unknown composition is injected into a vacuum and is ionized by a stream of electrons. Ions of differing mass separate in accordance with their ratio of mass to electric charge, and the result is recorded as a series of separate peaks analogous to the peaks of a chromatogram. These multipeaked spectra represent a series of "signatures" uniquely characteristic of individual elements and compounds. Libraries of signatures have been compiled to aid in the identification of samples of unknown composition. The flaw in the system is that with a mixture of compounds the spectra overlap and the identification of the component spectra becomes very difficult and uncertain.

In contrast, each peak in a chromatogram almost always represents a single substance, and so the notion of harnessing the two instruments in tandem arose. The chromatograph would separate the unknown sample into its constituents, and the mass spectrometer could then identify each constituent singly.

The combination is a powerful analytic tool. It is also a complicated system requiring daily correction and recalibration to compensate for drift resulting from contamination by past samples.

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

How to get the seven things Kodak® leaves out of their top XL sound movie camera. For about the same price.

Get a Minolta XL-660 super-8 sound movie camera, and you'll be getting all the features you'd find in a Kodak* at about the same price, *plus* these seven:

1. *Viewing through the lens that's taking the picture.* With the XL-660, you see exactly what the film sees all the time. So you're not likely to cut off people's heads in close shots. And in group shots, you'll always be sure that you've got everybody you want in the picture.

2. *Close-ups right up to the front of the lens.* The XL-660 gives you magnificent close-ups of objects as small as flowers and coins. Great for interesting titles—using postcards, for instance.

3. *Professionally smooth power zooms from 7.5mm wide-angle to 45mm telephoto.* That's a 6-to-1 zoom range. And it's electric, so all you do is push one button to zoom in or out.

4. *Automatic fade-in and fade-out of both picture and sound.* Another feature that contributes to professional-looking movies. Just push a button.

5. *Sound recording up to 50 feet away without wires between camera and subject* with the XL-660's FM wireless microphone kit.*

6. *Recording from a second microphone, phonograph, tape recorder or TV directly onto your soundtrack.* A special attachment* lets you mix sounds from two sources. Not available from Kodak. Not even as an option.

7. *Boom or zoom mikes to capture far-away sounds.* The XL-660 system has two special-purpose microphones: a zoom mike* that can be removed from the camera and used hand-held. And a boom mike* to follow distant sounds.

Now that you know the difference in features, you should really compare the Minolta XL-660 and the similarly priced Kodak in person at your photo dealer. You'll see and feel the total difference between them.

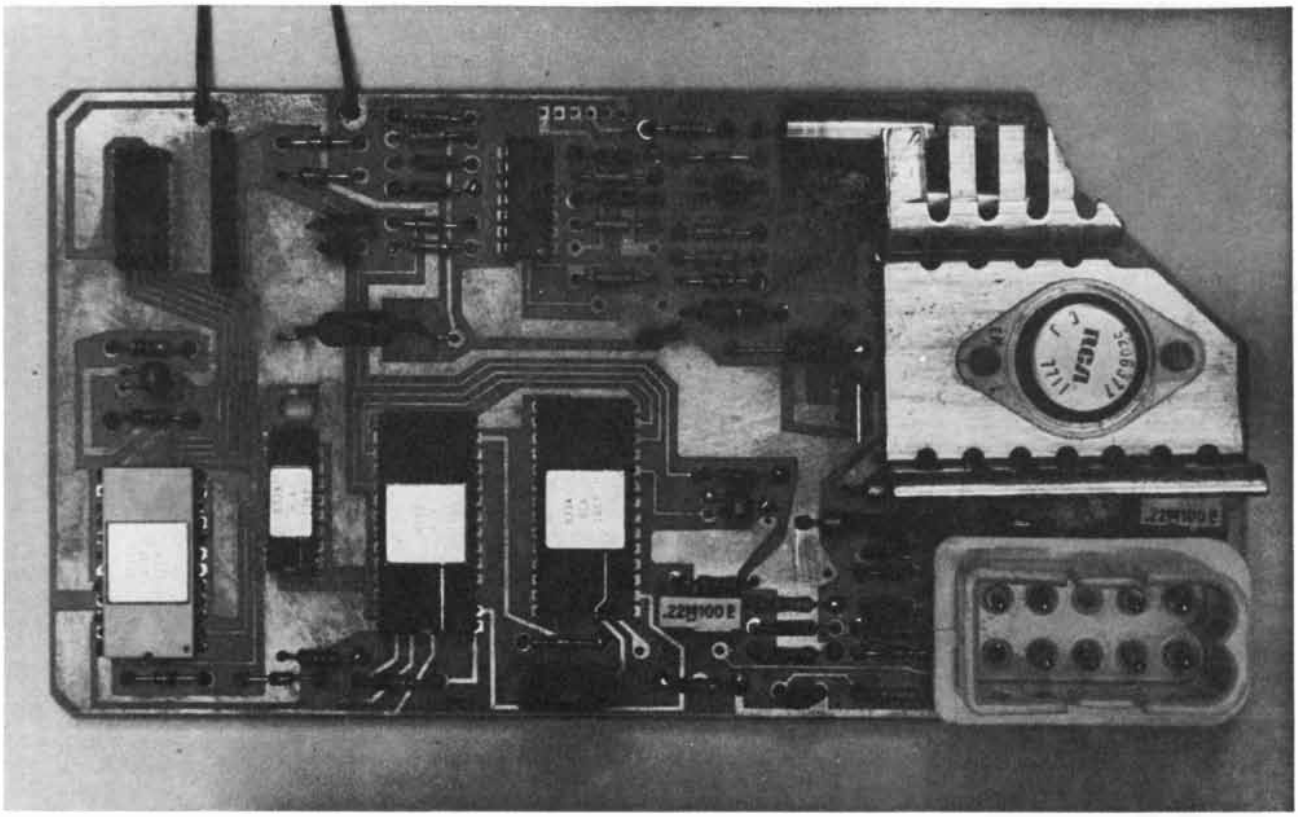
For more information, see your photo dealer or write Minolta Corporation, 101 Williams Drive, Ramsey, N.J. 07446.

*Optional, extra-cost accessory.
®Kodak is a registered trademark of the Eastman Kodak Company.

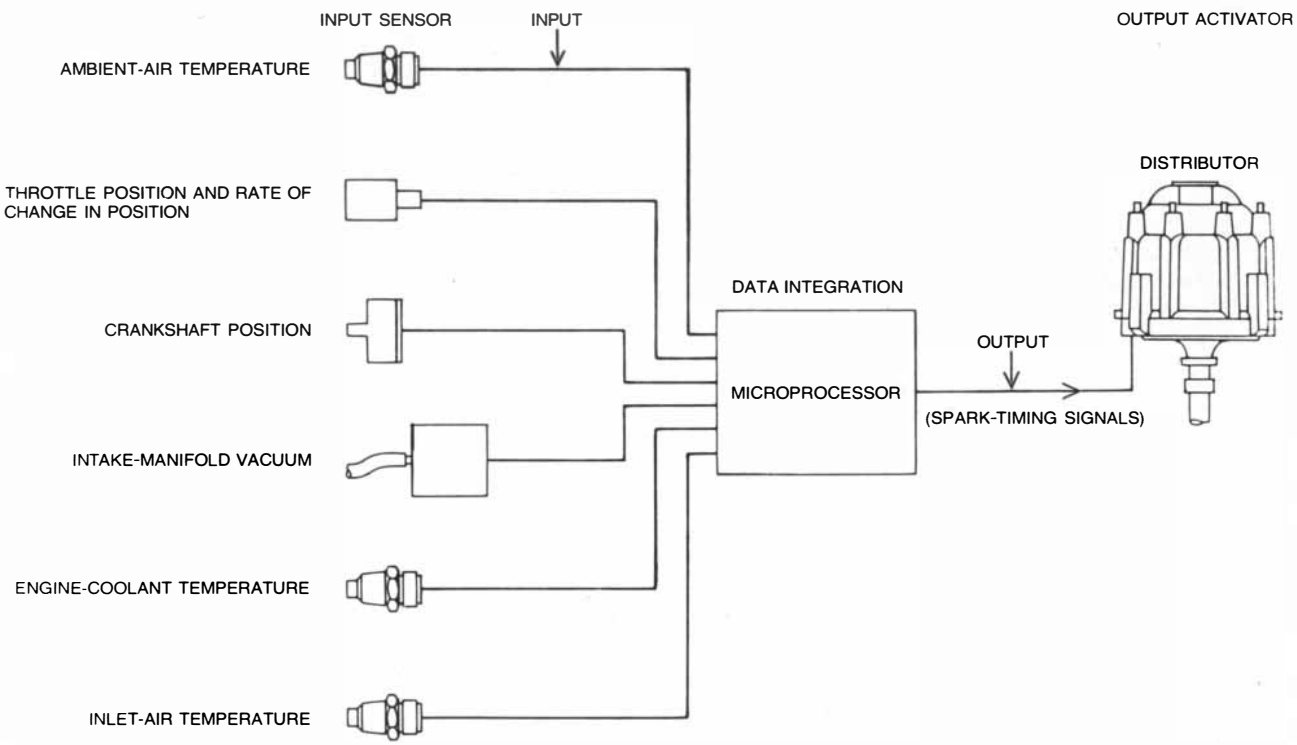
Look how much more you get with a

MINOLTA

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC



AUTOMOBILE-ENGINE CONTROL incorporates a microprocessor to integrate readings from six sensing instruments and determine the optimum time of ignition at any of a wide range of engine speeds and loads. The control, which is under development by the Chrysler Corporation, uses a microprocessor chip produced by RCA Corporation. Details of the control are shown in illustration below.



SEVEN INPUTS FROM SENSORS in the Chrysler engine-control monitoring network include the ambient-air temperature, the inlet-air temperature, the engine-coolant temperature, the intake-manifold vacuum, the crankshaft position, the throttle position and the rate of change of the throttle position. The best engine performance with the fuel-to-air ratio kept lean to minimize pollution depends on selecting an optimum instant of ignition with respect to sensed variables. Microprocessor sends these timing signals to the distributor.

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

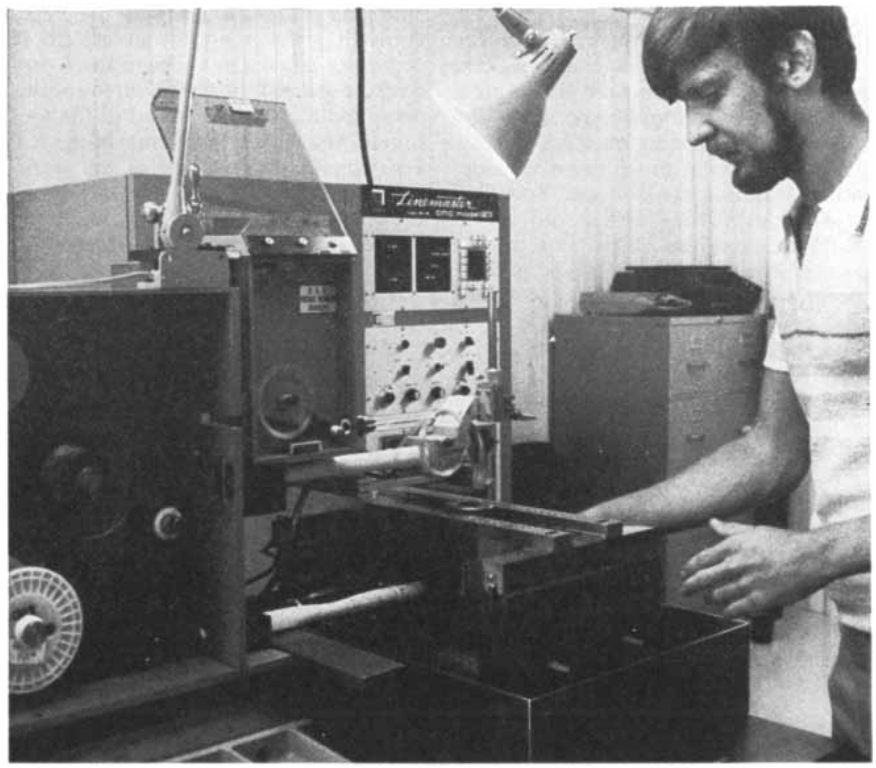
When the combined instrument is put under microprocessor control, not only is the task of calibration reduced from hours to minutes and the task of monitoring for drift greatly simplified but also a large number of samples can be analyzed automatically.

The mass spectrometer can be directed to generate spectra for every chromatogram peak or to analyze only those spectra that meet predetermined criteria. The tandem machine can work overnight, producing successive chromatograms and checking their mass spectra with the signatures stored in its memory. If so directed, it will even print out or store in memory the top 10 "hits" in each comparison for review by the operator in the morning. This is almost completely automated analytical chemistry of a very sophisticated kind that can be set to detect trace amounts of anything from narcotics in urine to contaminants in lemon oil. All that is required for such automation is the provision of appropriate microprocessors and memories.

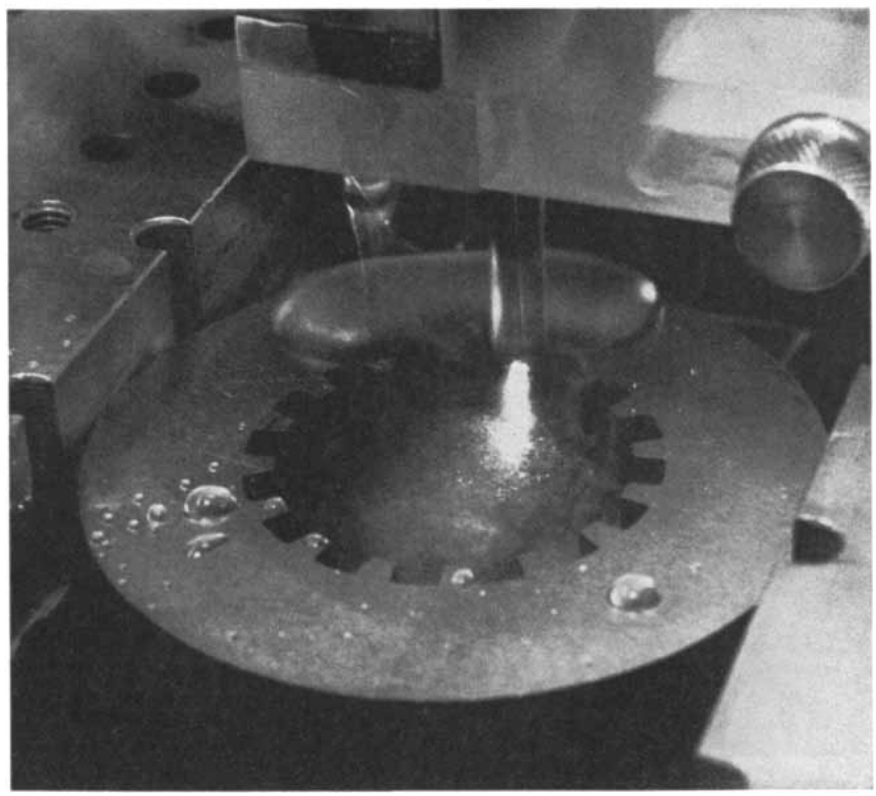
For decades the automatic factory has been forecast as imminent, and yet it never arrives. The basic reason is that automation involves far more than the development of sequential machines. It calls for feedback mechanisms that sense anomalies in the system, analyze them and take the appropriate corrective action. In the motion picture *Modern Times* Charlie Chaplin is fed lunch while he is at work by an automaton that keeps putting the food everywhere but where his mouth is. Charlie was a little short for the machine, and it could not adapt. In a large manufacturing process thousands of things can go wrong and send a nonadaptive system into a spin.

It will be a long time before the majority of production processes can be truly automated. Nevertheless, as individual machines are made smarter we can expect them to cope successfully with an ever widening range of problems. A good example is the evolution of traffic-signal systems. The first automatic traffic signals were purely sequential; they were fixed in their timing and were independent of one another. The flow of traffic was greatly aided many years ago by synchronizing the system and also by changing its timing to accommodate such variations in traffic flow as occur during rush hours. Even so, anomalous local traffic flows often called for manual intervention.

Traffic signals today can be made to sense and count the number of cars in the main stream of traffic and even the accumulation of cars in access lanes. They can be programmed to adjust their own timing to keep traffic flow at an optimum; adaptive control of this kind is a trivial task for a microprocessor. Moreover, once the microprocessor has been



NUMERICALLY CONTROLLED MACHINE TOOL (*foreground*) is computer-programmable. In the background is the keyboard and memory component; programs for various tasks are entered and called up as needed. Seen at work at the Wilsey Tool Company, Inc., of Quakertown, Pa., the tool does electric-discharge machining; a moving wire is the electrode. It is made by Andrew Engineering of Hopkins, Minn. Its cutting face appears in the photograph below.



TYPICAL TASK for a traveling-wire EDM is cutting gear teeth; in this instance the teeth are on the inside face of the gear wheel. For most kinds of inside cuts the traveling wire first has to be manually threaded through a starter hole. Thereafter the EDM needs no supervision. When a slow and complex series of cuts is programmed, it can run unattended for 60 hours.

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

incorporated into the traffic signal, it simplifies communication with a central controller. When smart traffic signals become ubiquitous and are linked to a control center, the traffic cop at the intersection will become obsolete.

An evolution of much the same kind can be seen in machine tools. Such devices as turret-head lathes and screw machines have performed complex sequential operations for a long time. The "program" was part of the hardware: cams and ratchets sequenced the machine through a series of steps to manufacture a particular part. The variety of sequences was necessarily limited, however, and the cost of new hardware programs was high.

In the early 1960's numerically controlled machine tools made their appearance: machines coupled to what came to be called a minicomputer. Such machines could mill, drill, bore and tap holes anywhere and at any angle on a workpiece of almost any shape. The appropriate toolhead was selected automatically by a punched-paper-tape program that was read by an electronic computer-controller. The same program positioned the tool in three coordinates and dictated the speed of the tool spindle and the depth and rate of the cut. To revise the final shape of the workpiece or to make an entirely different one it was necessary only to amend the old punched tape or to provide a new one.

Numerically controlled machines of this kind filled an important need in intermediate-volume production, where the output of workpieces is substantial but not high enough to warrant a mass-production line (where each of a series of machines performs only one operation). The computer-coupled machines were quite expensive, however, and a substantial fraction of the cost was in the computer-controller. Today microprocessor-based controllers no larger than desktop calculators are taking the place of the larger first-generation controllers, and tape cassettes are replacing the rolls of punched paper tape. Microelectronic controllers add relatively little to the cost of the machine tool.

Controllers based on microprocessors also allow keyboard access to the machine tool. When a future shop is equipped with machines of this kind, each with stored programs that can be keyboarded remotely, it will be possible for a central computer to preside over truly automatic production. About the only human intervention required will be the loading of stock at one end, the hauling away of finished workpieces at the other end and the periodic replacement of dulled cutters.

We can expect to see further progress in electronic controls for automobiles. The microprocessor is now making it economically feasible to extend electronic controls to such functions as ignition timing and carburetion. The motivation to develop such systems is now strong: they not only promote fuel economy but also aid in the meeting

CONTINUOUS CASTING OF STEEL SLABS calls for a complex automatic routine of water-cooling. This machine is the constant-radius continuous-strand caster at the Burns Harbor, Ind., complex of the Bethlehem Steel Corporation; the slab is more than six feet wide and can range from eight inches to a foot in thickness. Water temperature, valve pressure and rate of flow at successive stages are held within predetermined limits by the Foxboro Company's SPEC 200 system, a 200-loop feedback control utilizing microprocessors.

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

Mill to mil... nobody makes microelectronic components like Allegheny Ludlum Industries.

Nobody can.

And the reason is control.

Our Arnold Magnetics and Electronics Materials Group maintains precise, total control of the entire manufacturing process from the first melt to delivery.

As a member company of Allegheny Ludlum Industries, Arnold has on tap the research, resources and technology of one of the world's largest specialty metals organizations. In addition, Arnold has totally integrated capability in both the precision stamping and chemical milling of lead frames. And only Arnold has the expertise to offer a choice of either production method in a single facility.

Arnold's expertise extends, too, to such critical areas as precious metal plating and aluminum vapor deposition, measured against rigid quality control. Microelectronic technology is Arnold's strength throughout its organization, which includes Arnold Engineering, Andvari, Inc., Burton Silver Plating, F. W. Bell, Inc., Ogallala Electronics and Eriez, S.A.

Arnold's scope in the area of microelectronic components typifies the unique position each Allegheny Ludlum company occupies in its particular field. Since a whole is made up of its parts, it's our very special members that make Allegheny Ludlum Industries a very special company.

Allegheny Ludlum Industries

Two Oliver Plaza, Pittsburgh, PA 15222

A VERY SPECIAL COMPANY.

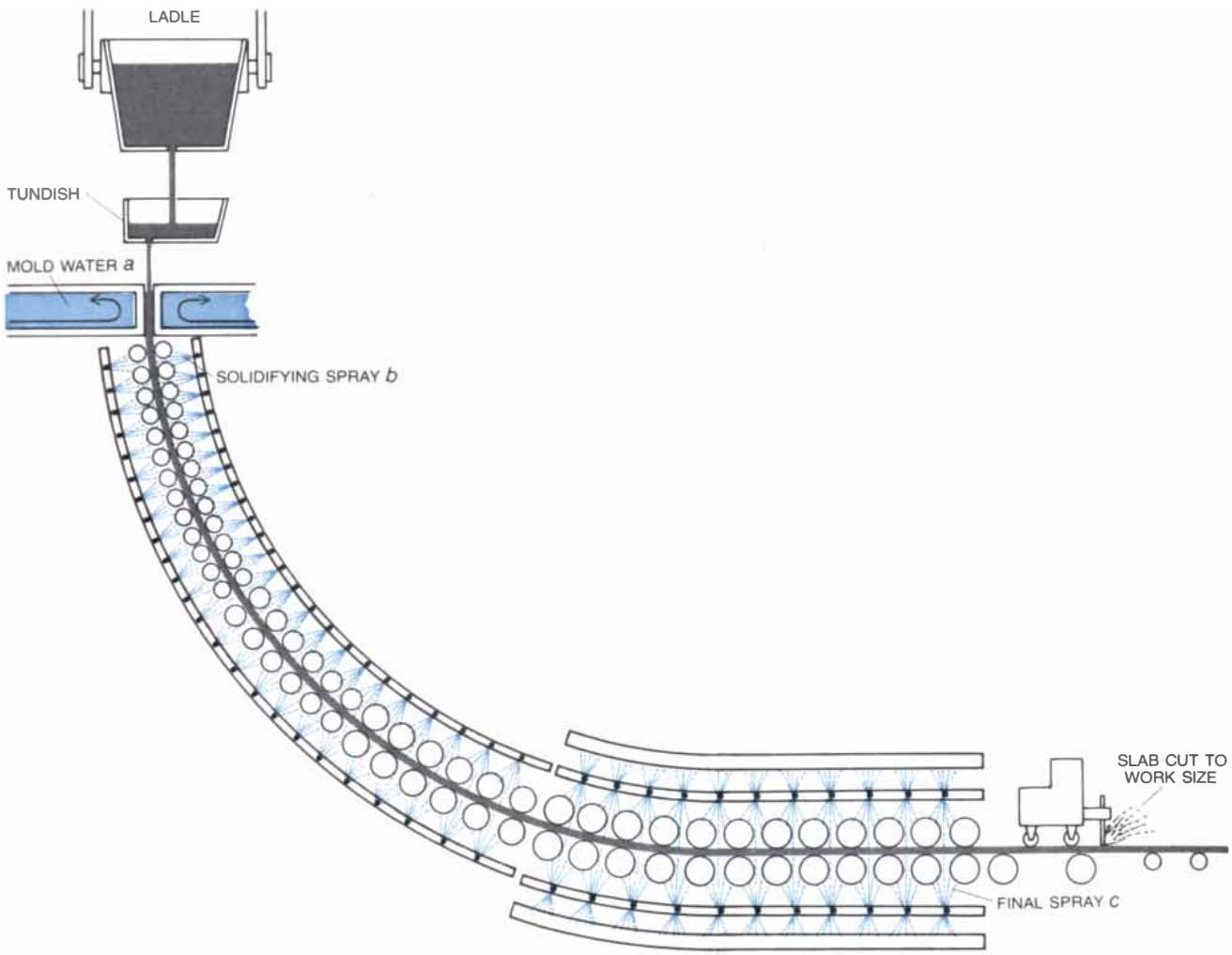
© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

of Federal engine-emission standards.

Good ignition timing is a function of the speed of the engine and the vacuum in the intake manifold. The mechanisms used in today's cars can only approximate the optimums, whereas the application of microprocessors can ensure correct timing at all speeds and loads. Ideally these devices should play the role of monitors and not be responsible for delivering each charge of fuel and firing each spark. Such a monitor would compare actual performance with ideal performance and make the necessary adjustments to the existing basic systems. If the microprocessor were used in this way, it would have the advantage of a greatly reduced data rate, ordering only a few corrections per second. Furthermore, it would fail safe: if the microprocessor were to go out, the engine would still operate, its performance simply being reduced to the level that prevails today. The same microprocessor could continuously monitor the health of the vehicle and report in plain English on a LED display any troubles such as low fuel, overheated engine or overheated or worn brakes. The cost of such systems lies not so much in the microelectronic components as in the sensors needed to feed the data to the microprocessor and the actuators needed to carry out its instructions.

It appears that control systems and their associated sensing components are increasingly coming to resemble the human nervous system. Microprocessors in satellite controllers, by enabling "intelligence" to be distributed broadly throughout the control system, greatly reduce the amount of data that must be transmitted over data links and handled by the central computer. In the human nervous system much control is also at the local level and much processing of input data is done in ganglia. The nervous system is a network of sensors and microprocessors connected by data links to a central computer. Both the satellite processors and the central computer have a lot of firmware: subroutines that enable us to do 99 percent of what we do without "thinking," that is, without invoking our highest control centers. Here too microelectronic control systems resemble the human control system: the central computer merely has to order that an operation be done, not tell every smaller machine every step of how to do it.

The examples I have cited are only a few of literally hundreds of ways in which the microprocessor will improve and simplify the operation of the machines that serve us daily. Integrated-circuit technology has so reduced the cost of computation and of logical systems that most of the devices we use can now be much more cooperative and intelligent than they have been in the past. These decades will be recognized in the future as the beginning of the robotic revolution.



STEEL SLAB IS FIRST COOLED in the mold (*a*) where the molten steel starts to solidify. The descending slab is then further cooled by spraying water on its sides (*b*). Both the main frame and the rollers of the final flatbed component (*c*) are also water-cooled. Temperature, pressure and flow sensors supply the input data for the SPEC 200 feedback-control loops that adjust valve settings as necessary.

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

13 ways to reduce waste from slice to circuit.

All with Zeiss optics.

Zeiss has a lucky 13 microscopes for the electronics industry, and a new brochure that describes them. Between its covers you'll find money-saving, waste-cutting applications described for every step from slice to circuit.

The microscopes range in size from the small, economical Standard T for the daily routine of the production line to the Novascan 30 Scanning Electron Microscope.

Along the way you'll find such unique instruments as the revolutionary Axiomat that sets new standards of stability and image quality for microscopes, and the Light-Section Microscope that cuts a profile, non-destructively.

Optics and versatility

Two invaluable characteristics distinguish all Zeiss microscopes, large and small:

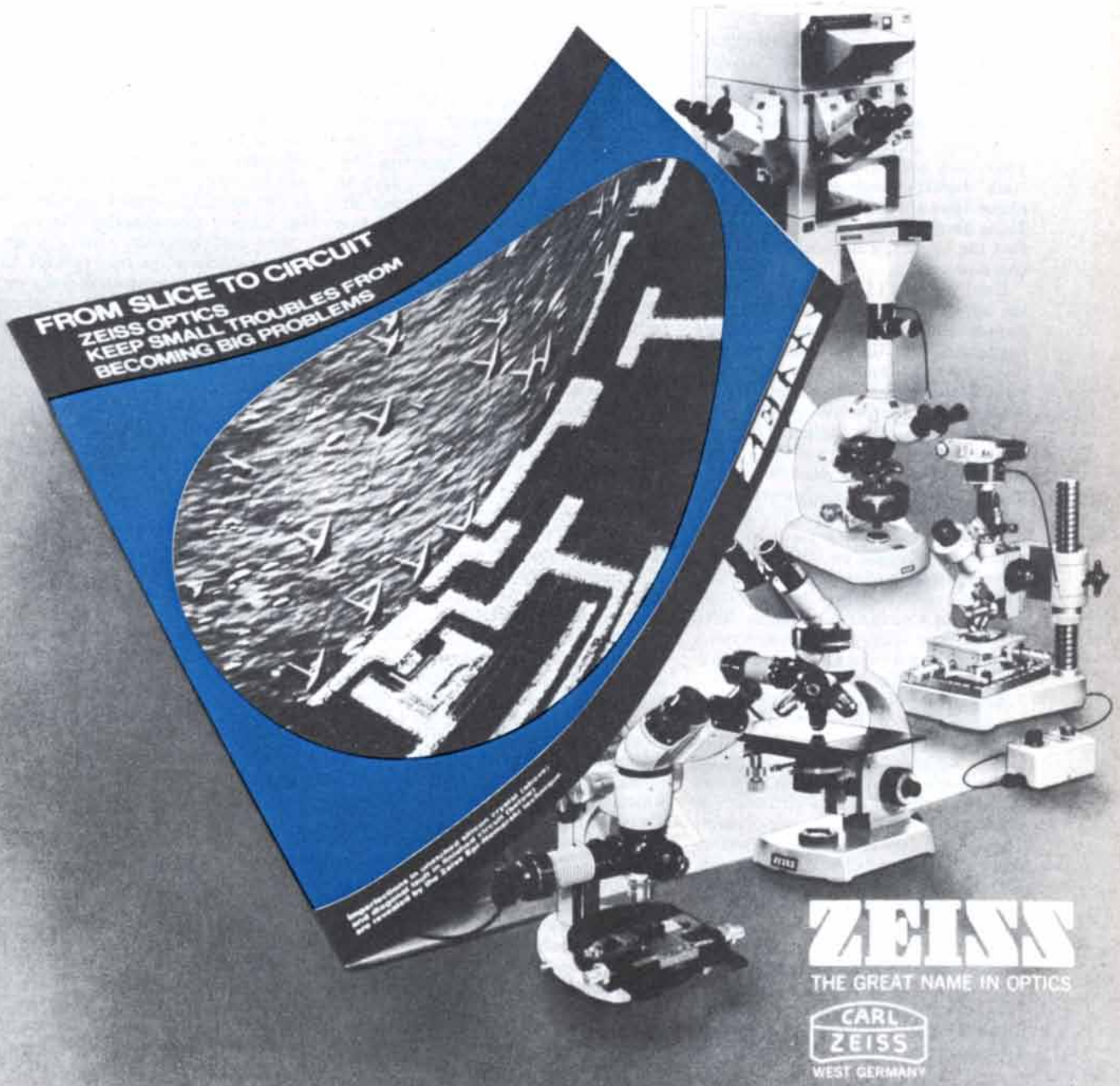
1. superior performance of Zeiss optics for brightfield, darkfield, Nomarski differential interference contrast, polarized light, photography;

2. easy switching from one technique to another.

Send for this 10-page brochure with many striking photomicrographs and details on all 13 microscopes.

Nationwide service

Carl Zeiss, Inc., 444 5th Avenue, New York, N.Y. 10018 (212) 730-4400. Branches in: Atlanta, Boston, Chicago, Columbus, Houston, Los Angeles, San Francisco, Washington, D.C. In Canada: 45 Valleybrook Drive, Don Mills, Ont., M3B 2S6. Or call (416) 449-4660.



© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

The Role of Microelectronics in Communication

The essence of systems such as the telephone, radio and television is signal processing. The large capacity, high reliability and low cost of microelectronic devices make them ideal for such purposes

by John S. Mayo

It is possible now to have a telephone that "remembers" frequently called numbers, any one of which can be reached by pushing a single button. On television one can frequently see events in Europe and other areas overseas while they are happening. Computers "talk" digitally to one another over telephone lines at remarkably high speeds. These developments and many more reflect the impact of microelectronics on communication.

Until perhaps 15 years ago the vacuum tube was the dominant active component of the electronic circuits that are fundamental to the operation of telecommunication systems. Its limitations were made evident by the rapid growth of communication by telephone, radio and television. The vacuum tube was too large, required too much power and was too unreliable to meet the need of those systems for large numbers of signal-processing devices clustered in complex circuits and required to operate with extreme reliability. The alternative came in the form of the transistor, which provided electronic gain in a semiconductor and was small and reliable. It led to the silicon integrated circuit, a revolution in electronics and a vast improvement in telecommunication.

Today, as preceding articles in this issue have shown, millions of circuit elements are simultaneously fabricated on a thin "wafer" of silicon. Typically the wafer holds several hundred copies of the same circuit and is divided into small chips holding one circuit each. The chips are usually packaged individually as integrated-circuit components. The designer of communication equipment employs these components to build complex systems, usually by placing a number of integrated circuits on a circuit board containing the printed wiring necessary to interconnect them.

A typical communication system requires a number of circuit technologies. For example, signals transmitted with high power or at high frequency often call for currents and voltages that cannot be handled by conventional integrated circuits. Some circuits require highly stable components; often they are best provided by thin-film techniques, which involve depositing conductors, insulators and resistive films on a ceramic substrate. To properly describe the role of microelectronics in communication I shall discuss several of the more important circuit technologies, with primary emphasis on silicon integrated circuits because they have had by far the greatest impact on modern telecommunication.

Microelectronics in the form of integrated circuits is an important factor in telecommunication largely because of the combined effects of low cost, high reliability and wide applicability. As increasing numbers of circuit elements are fabricated on a silicon chip, the cost of a basic circuit function decreases markedly. A circuit function of outstanding importance in communication systems (and also in computing systems) is the digital logic "gate." It controls the flow of information, providing an output signal only when the input signals are in prescribed states. From this basic element large digital signal-processing systems can be built. Hence the cost of a logic gate has a considerable influence on the cost of communication equipment: on terminals, which provide the interface between people or machines and communication channels; on switching machines, which establish communication paths, and on the equipment that processes signals so that they can be transmitted over wires and cables, by radio and by light waves.

Digital technology has progressed rapidly from the logic gate consisting of vacuum tubes to the logic gate consisting of transistors to the integrated logic gate and now to thousands of logic gates within a single integrated circuit. During this evolution the cost has gone from about $10 for the vacuum-tube gate to about one cent per gate in an integrated circuit incorporating many gates. The cost will soon reach .1 cent. With the cost of such a crucial circuit declining more than a thousandfold equipment involving complicated signal processing, as the telephone with a memory does, has become economically feasible.

Low cost, however, is not enough. A communication link may call for thousands of circuit elements all working together. The failure of any one element may break the link. Reliability is therefore as important as cost.

Again the logic gate serves as an example. The vacuum-tube logic gate was distinctly unreliable. A logic gate consisting of discrete transistors proved to be about 1,000 times more reliable than the equivalent vacuum-tube gate. A modern integrated-circuit gate is at least 100 times more reliable than the gate consisting of discrete transistors. In the progression from vacuum tubes to integrated circuits, then, the reliability of the logic gate has improved by a factor of 100,000.

The switching machines that control the routing of telephone calls provide an example of what this enhanced reliability means to a communication system. Such a machine handles up to 100,000 telephone lines simultaneously. It scans the incoming lines and detects when a customer is calling for service (having lifted his telephone off the hook). Then it collects the dialing information, connects the caller with the person he is calling, records the information needed for billing and disconnects when the caller hangs up.

The "brain" of the machine is an electronic processor consisting mostly of a central control and components that store data. The processor also handles numerous other chores, including the diagnosis of faults and failed circuits. Since the processor is crucial to the op-

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

eration of as many as 100,000 telephones, it must have a high degree of reliability. The objective set for it is that it have no more than two hours of "down" time in 40 years. (Most of that time is expected to be the result of inadvertent mistakes by operating and maintenance workers rather than of the failure of electronic components.)

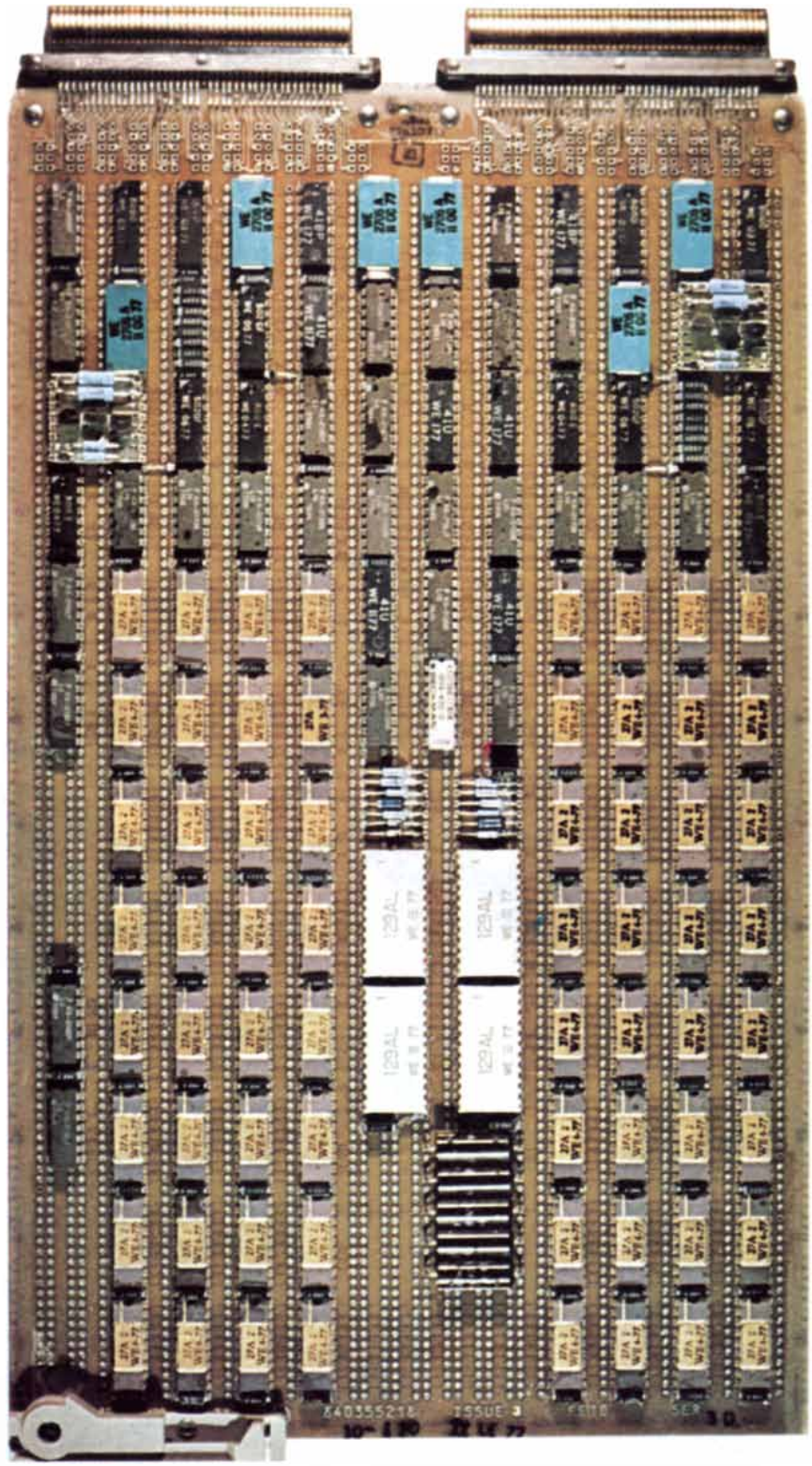
The unit of measurement of the failure rate of an electronic component is the FIT: one failure in 10^9 operating hours. Consider the processor of a large switching machine. Its central control may have 40,000 gates. If it can be repaired in half an hour, it could fail once in 10 years and still meet the objective. Circuit failures are random events, not easily predicted, and there are other sources of failure in any large system. Allowing a reasonable margin for these factors, the acceptable mean time to failure per gate in the processor is about 10^{11} hours: a failure rate of approximately .01 FIT per gate.

Such a rate cannot be achieved easily. Large-scale integrated circuits almost achieve it, however, and they have the added advantage of low cost. The cost makes it possible to provide redundancy that further reduces the possibility of outage and also protects against failure in other elements, such as wiring and the power supply. Redundancy keeps the system functioning, and the low failure rate of the gates makes redundancy work and keeps the cost of maintenance at a reasonable level.

The size of equipment is almost always important in telecommunication, particularly with satellites and spacecraft. Even on the ground electronic equipment that is small is easier to handle and ship and takes up less space in buildings. All these benefits lead to lower costs. The memory portion of a processor for a large electronic switching system provides an example of what developments in microelectronics have done to size.

With the technology of the early 1960's the memory for a local electronic switching system required a lineup of equipment racks 104 feet wide. Data storage was on sheets of magnetic material. By the 1970's the same amount of memory could be loaded into small, tightly packaged toroidal ferrite "cores" in a lineup of equipment racks about eight feet wide. Then came integrated circuits and semiconductor memories that could provide first 1,000 bits and then 4,000 bits of storage on a single silicon chip. In a circuit consisting of 4,000-bit chips the memory for the same switching system was packaged in a single rack 2.2 feet wide. Now integrated circuits with 16,000 bits per chip are available, making it possible to put the memory in about a quarter of a rack.

Communication systems of the future



CIRCUIT PACK for the memory unit of a telephone-switching system illustrates how microelectronics has made it possible to greatly diminish the size of communication equipment. The pack is approximately 13 inches long and eight inches wide; 161 such packs in a rack 2.2 feet wide handle the switching for up to 100,000 telephones. As recently as 15 years ago a comparable memory unit for a local electronic switching system would have required a lineup of equipment racks 104 feet wide. Here the gold rectangles are *n*-channel metal-oxide-semiconductor (*n*-MOS) memory devices. Most of the black rectangles near the top of the pack are decoders. The four white rectangles at the lower center are hybrid integrated circuits embodying the program for the memory unit. The memory unit for a local switching center stores not only permanent information needed for the computer-controlled operation of the switching machine but also transient information such as numbers dialed, duration of calls and billing data.

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

VERY LARGE SCALE INTEGRATION

for not so everyday RF and Digital applications

Back in the early 60's TRW patented the very popular Transistor Transistor Logic (TTL). Since then we have done a lot more than collect royalties. Today, the Microelectronics Center of TRW has four major technologies in development or production. They are now serving some of the most advanced commercial, military and space systems ever conceived.

Very Large Scale Integrated (VLSI) circuits with densities of 50,000 components per square centimeter are now in high volume production. An outstanding example of this VLSI technology is our bipolar triple diffused 16 by 16 bit multiplier. Performing over 5,000,000 multiplications per second, it contains over 18,000 components on a silicon chip that measures only 250 mils square.

For high-speed military applications, we have another bipolar LSI technology designated Oxide Aligned Transistors (OAT). This exclusive TRW process provides the ultimate in VLSI circuit performance with silicon technology. One result is a family of high-speed analog-to-digital converter circuits that operate at speeds up to 250,000,000 bits per second. Radars and weapons systems have been greatly improved with this precision silicon technology.

Digital processing in space has long been a problem because of hardware size and power. TRW has taken a unique approach to produce very low power, high-density digital circuits. Charge coupled devices are now being developed by TRW into a full family of pipelined digital functions. These CCD digital devices include multipliers, digital signal correlators, adders, and all of the basic logic building blocks formed into sophisticated digital signal processors for voice, TV, and radar signals. Since CCDs use a charge transfer concept, they consume very little power — about 1/10 that of N-channel MOS and CMOS. At the same time, CCDs offer equal performance.

At TRW, we are developing two RF/LSI technologies that are finding communications applications in the range from 100 MHz to 10 GHz. The first uses the OAT technology and is being used to produce revolutionary receiver monolithic functions such as phase lock modulators and demodulators that operate in the 100 to 200 MHz range.

The second RF/LSI technology uses Gallium Arsenide instead of silicon and has been advanced by TRW to a point where we now can produce integrated circuits operating in the 5 to 10 GHz range. TRW combines field effect transistors, transferred electron devices, capacitors, resistors, and coplanar transmission lines on these GaAs chips to achieve previously unattainable performance at these frequencies.

These are a few of the LSI microelectronic technologies that TRW is actively pursuing. We are continuing to push forward the frontiers of the amazingly versatile and limitless field of solid state integrated circuits. We didn't stop with TTL — we are moving ahead with the most advanced technologies and products in VLSI, RF/LSI, GaAs, and CCD/LSI. This capability is helping us form the foundation for some of the most advanced systems ever conceived.

If you have a not so everday application for one of our microelectronic technologies and you would like more information, write on your company letterhead to the TRW Microelectronics Center, Defense and Space Systems Group, E2/9043, One Space Park, Redondo Beach, California 90278.

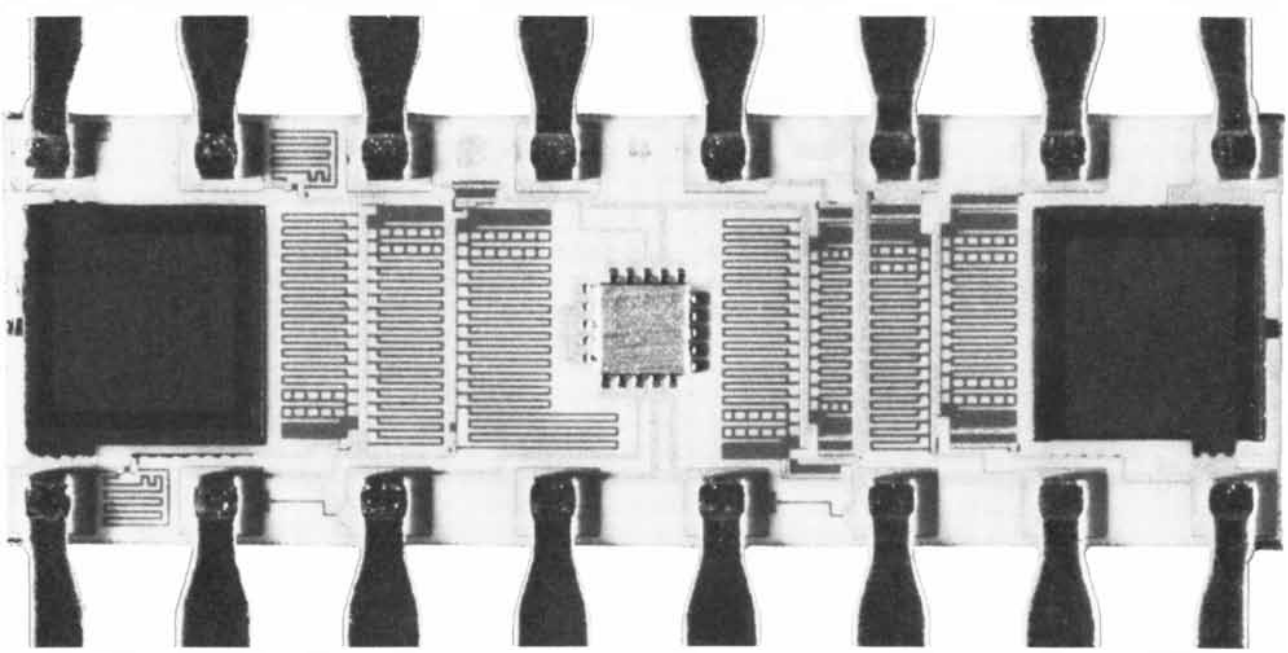
Microelectronics

FROM A COMPANY CALLED

TRW

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

TELEPHONE WITH MEMORY is now in service in parts of the U.S. as a result of advances in microelectronics. With the three small buttons at the top one can record a number that is called frequently. Each such number can then be reached by pushing one of the buttons below the top three. The button at the bottom right, next to the label that reads "Last number dialed," is for times when one gets a busy signal. The telephone "remembers" the number, which the caller can try again (without the need of redialing) by pushing only that button.



VOICE-FREQUENCY ELECTRICAL FILTER, which is one of the most basic circuits in telecommunication, demonstrates the effect of microelectronics in making components of telecommunication systems smaller and more reliable. The role of the filter is to select one audio communication band and exclude interference from it, which is particularly important when several voice signals are being multiplexed onto a single wire. The filter consists of a silicon integrated-circuit amplifier (*square at center*), precision-film resistor networks (*meandering lines*) and precision-film capacitors (*large squares at each end*). The filter is fabricated by thin-film techniques on a ceramic substrate 1.93 centimeters long and .66 centimeter wide. The integrated-circuit filter replaces the bulky and expensive devices, consisting of many large inductors and capacitors, that were required to build a comparable filter before the advent of microelectronics.

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

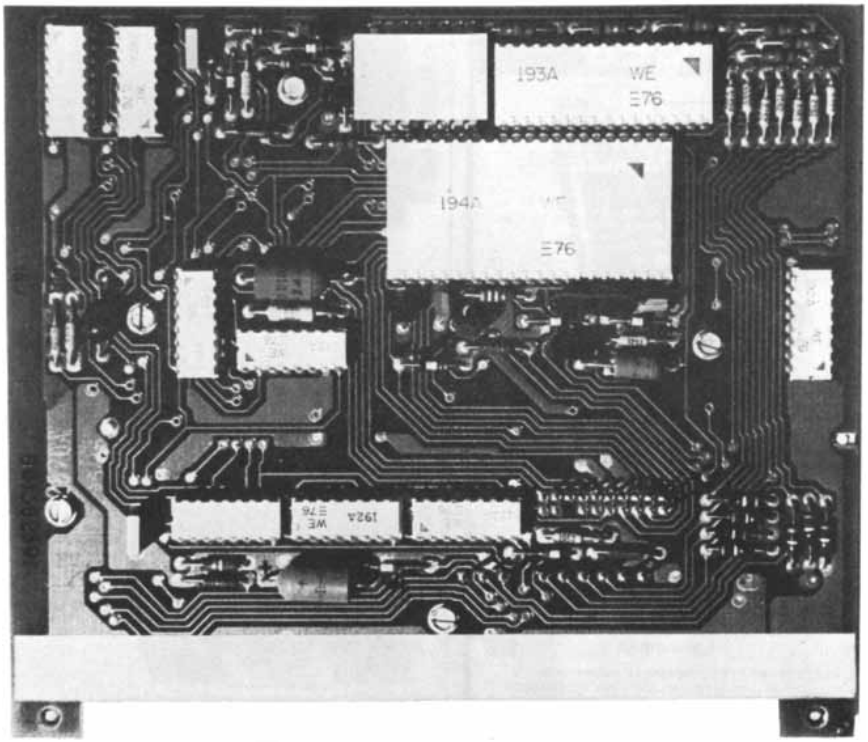
are sure to use more memory and logic. The prospect would have been forbidding when the memory required a lineup of equipment racks 104 feet wide. Now it is easy to conceive of systems employing tens of times more memory than the systems of today have. Memory is only one example of ways in which microelectronics is making new concepts in communication systems possible.

Microelectronics has also had a significant impact on analogue circuits, although the results are not as dramatic as they have been with digital logic and memory. Consider the circuit perhaps most basic to telecommunication: the voice-frequency electrical filter, which can select one audio band and reject all interference from outside the band. Such filters are particularly important in systems that multiplex a number of voice channels onto a single wire; the filter confines each voice channel to a certain frequency band and thereby prevents the channels from interfering with one another.

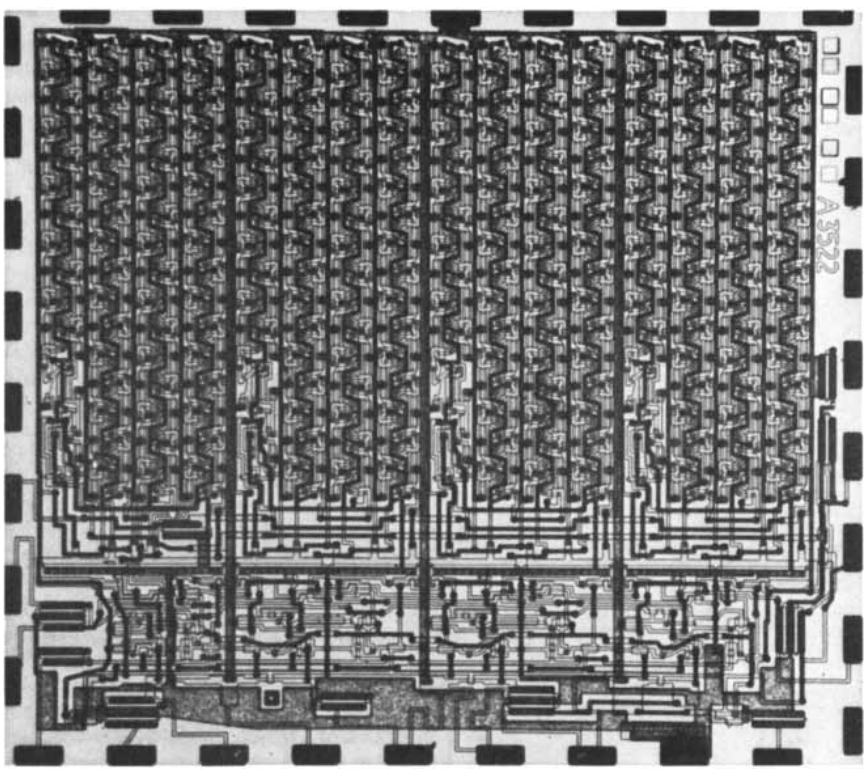
For almost 50 years the filters were made from large inductors and capacitors. Over the period from 1920 to 1970 designers succeeded in making the inductors and capacitors progressively smaller, but the filter was still bulky and expensive. By 1969 progress in stabilizing resistance and capacitance elements against the effects of time and temperature and in making amplifiers inexpensively with integrated circuits led to an equivalent filter that was somewhat smaller and cheaper. The use of integrated amplifiers (built on a single silicon chip) enabled the designer to build the equivalent of the large inductors and capacitors with small capacitors and resistors. Success in this endeavor required the small resistors and capacitors to be highly stable against time and temperature.

This requirement happened to mesh neatly with the development of microcircuits on a different front, which involved work on thin conducting and insulating films on ceramic substrates. From this work came the thin-film integrated circuit I have mentioned. Film circuits made of tantalum are both cheap and highly stable. For this reason they have been employed for some time as audio filters in the tone-generating circuit of the push-button telephone, to mention just one application. The tones generated by the circuit must be extremely stable over long periods of time, since the frequencies of the tones identify the digits of the number being called.

By 1973 this technology had advanced to the point where the equivalent of the old voice-band filter made of large inductors and capacitors could be fabricated on a small ceramic substrate. By 1975 the size of the substrate had been reduced enough to make the filter appear externally to be one small com-



CIRCUIT BOARD for the telephone with a memory carries out the recording and "memorizing" functions of the telephone. The board is mounted on the back side of the memory section and is oriented here as one would see it by turning over the white board on the telephone so that the three top buttons are at the left. The two white rectangles at the top left are memory units, as are the six similar rectangles elsewhere on the board. Each unit is an integrated circuit that can retain four telephone numbers. Larger white rectangles at the right center are also integrated circuits that contain the program for the system and handle the dialing operation.



MEMORY CHIP for the "Touchamatic" telephone is shown as one would see it by opening up one of the memory units in the photograph at the top of this page. The chip is normally mounted in the center of a white ceramic substrate and contains the circuitry for storing and retrieving four telephone numbers. It is linked with four of the buttons on the front of the telephone.

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

WHOLESALE PRICES

Texas Instruments
electronic calculators

TI-57	$ 69.00	SR-40	$24.90
TI-58	99.95	SR-51II	46.95
TI-59	249.95	TI-1750	17.95
SR-60	1695.00	TI-5050M	84.95
TI-5040	94.95	TI-5015	67.95

HEWLETT hp PACKARD
We are franchised H-P dealer
All accessories at discount

HP-21	$ 64	HP-27	$140
HP-22	100	HP-80	236
HP-25	100	HP-67	360
HP-25C	128	HP-97	599
HP-10	145	HP-91	275

All units shipped in original factory cartons with accessories according to manufacturers' specifications. Above prices are for cash only. Credit card prices may differ. **BankAmericard and Master Charge accepted on most sales.** Send money order. Pers. ck (2 wks to clear); In Illinois, add 5% sales tax. Add $3.50 min. shipping charges. WE SHIP UPS. Subject to availability Send mail orders.

Nabih's Inc.
1609 CHICAGO AVE. EVANSTON, ILL. 60201
TEL: 312-869-6140

PROFESSIONAL DISCOUNTS

Texas Instruments
electronic calculator

TI-1750 LCD	$19.95	SR-40	$24.95
TI-2550 III	24.95	SR-51 II	49.95
Little Prof.	12.95	TI-57 **NEW**	64.95
Dataman **NEW**	22.50	TI-58 **NEW**	99.95
TI-5100	44.95	TI-59 **NEW**	249.95
TI-5015 **NEW**	65.00	PC-100A	147.00
TI-5050 M	84.95	Money Mgr.	17.95
TI-5040 PD	95.00	Bus. Anylst.	29.95
TI-30 SP	17.95	All Libraries Available	

HEWLETT hp PACKARD
We are franchised H-P dealer
All accessories at discount.

HP-10 **NEW**	$139.00	HP-27	$140.00
HP-19O **NEW**	299.00	HP-29C **NEW**	159.00
HP-21	64.00	HP-80	235.00
HP-22	100.00	HP-67	360.00
HP-25	100.00	HP-91	275.00
HP-25C	128.00	HP-92	515.00
		HP-97	599.00

Also SCM, Olivetti, National Semiconductor, Casio, Canon, Corvus, APF, Sharp, Craig, Sanyo, Record-A-Call and more. ALL AT GREAT PRICES!

FAIRCHILD Programmable Video Game $135.00 (2000 games possible)
Cartridges 17.95
Also Fairchild Watches!

WE WILL BEAT OR MEET ANY COMPETITORS' PRICE IF HE HAS MERCHANDISE ON HAND. *All units shipped in original factory cartons with accessories according to manufacturers' specifications.* In Calif. call (213) 370-5795 or **CALL (800) 421-0367** (other than CA). Above prices are for cash only. Credit card prices differ. **BankAmericard/Visa & Master Charge accepted.** Send money order. Pers. ck (2 wks to clear); In CA add 6% sales tax. Add $3.50 min. shipping charges. WE SHIP AIR on request. Subject to availability. Send mail orders to DEPT. SA-I

Two locations in So. California
tk enterprises
BETTER BUSINESS PRODUCTS
16611 Hawthorne Blvd., Lawndale, Ca. 90260
(213) 370-5795 **(800) 421-0367**

SOLID-STATE TELEVISION CAMERA manufactured by the Fairchild Camera and Instrument Corporation is representative of the effect that microelectronics has had on television cameras. The key unit of such a camera is an imaging device of the type shown in the photograph on page 200. Because of its solid-state components this camera (6.5 inches long including the lens) is much smaller than a television camera made with a standard vidicon camera tube.

ponent, quite like a standard integrated-circuit package. It is expected that soon the tantalum film will be placed directly on the surface of the silicon amplifier chip. The entire filter will be microscopic. This is not the limit, however, of the capability of microcircuits in filtering analogue signals. Time-shared digital integrated circuits and charge-coupled devices (CCD's) both show great promise in extending the improvement of electronic filters, and they may be even smaller than the thin-film filter.

Size is particularly important in communication terminals. Telephones of all kinds, private branch exchanges (the interior switching system that many large organizations have for handling telephone traffic in and out), terminals that couple computers and sensors to communication channels, and radios of all types are handled by people and occupy space in offices, homes, automobiles and many other places. The small size and other desirable features of microcircuits open new vistas in terminal equipment. Such a terminal can be amazingly "smart" while being small and compact. It is not unusual for a terminal of this kind to contain a microprocessor, which, as is indicated elsewhere in this issue, is a small computer on a silicon chip. The microprocessor in a communication terminal costs tens of dollars and yet can do computations that a decade ago would have required a large computer costing hundreds of thousands of dollars.

Size and weight are closely related. They are both extremely important in space communication. It is hard to see how the space program could have been accomplished without the smallness, lightness and reliability provided by solid-state circuits.

From the space program came the ability to launch communication satellites. When a satellite handles commercial traffic, it must be competitive with ground-based systems. Cost is important and is strongly influenced by the size and weight of the electronic gear on the satellite. The requirements of frequency and power do not allow such gear to be made entirely of integrated circuits, but circuits of that type play an important role in the economics of communication-satellite systems. Moreover, without the reliability of the solid-state components it would have been difficult to make satellite systems viable at all.

What I have said so far indicates that modern communication equipment requires a good deal of built-in intelligence. Many examples can be cited, including telephones that handle cash transactions, data terminals that send information at prodigious rates, electronic switching machines with built-in diagnostic capability, private branch

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

The quickest way to find a nurse is to ask an LSI-11 microcomputer.

When GTE Sylvania was looking to design the most advanced computerized hospital communications system on the market, they looked no further than our LSI-11 — the highest performance microcomputer you can buy.

Sylvania's System Twenty-One is designed to handle all of a hospital's nurse/patient communications through one central operator — to speed response and free up nurses from handling calls.

The LSI-11 that runs it is used to store personal patient information, keep track of patient requests, set priorities, locate nurses and aides, and generate hard copy reports of all system operations.

For GTE Sylvania, anything less than the LSI-11 wouldn't have been enough.

According to Product Marketing Manager Bob Brilliant, "We had to get to market fast. The LSI-11 saved us all the time it would have taken to design our own micro from chips. And to top it off, we got a nationwide service and spare parts network thrown into the bargain."

Software development was also an important issue. Bob Brilliant comments: "With the LSI-11, we were able to do most application software in FORTRAN, instead of the assembly-level language other micros require. This meant faster, easier programming and debugging."

To sum up, Bob Brilliant told us: "The LSI-11 gave us the size and price of a micro, with the power, the software, and the backup of a full-blown OEM mini."

The customer is always right.

For our new brochure of microcomputer case histories, just call toll free 800-225-9220 (in Mass. 617-481-7400, ext. 5144), or write Digital Equipment Corporation, One Iron Way, Marlborough, MA 01752.

Bob Brilliant, Product Marketing Manager at GTE Sylvania, Waltham, MA

digital
COMPONENTS
GROUP

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

Send a FREE copy of the NC Flasher

Please print

Name _____

Address _____

City _____

State _____ Zip _____

Send to: National Camera
2000 West Union Ave., Dept. JAG
Englewood, Colorado 80110

LUMISCOPE

Illuminated 30-power microscope system

Your first look through **Lumiscope** will evoke gasp of surprise and disbelief. Because now, in brilliantly illuminated field, you will discover mini-structure of inanimate and living things. Discern undreamed-of new detail in stamps, coins, fibers. Have you ever observed life teeming within a drop of water; the awesome finesse in the wing of a moth; or the intricate structure of a simple aspen leaf? **Lumiscope** will unfold all this for you and much more. Exquisite German optical system consists of microscope, light source (with batteries) and stand, in fitted case. Order **Lumiscope** today, for entire new look at "mini-world" around you!

779 Bush St., Box 7584, San Francisco, CA 94120 **hennikers**

Hennikers, 779 Bush St., Box 7584, San Francisco, CA 94120

Yes, subject to 2-weeks return privilege and one year guarantee for parts and workmanship, please send me:

- ☐ **Lumiscopes** @ $29.95 ea.
- ☐ Save: Three (3) **Lumiscopes** for just $84.95.
- ☐ My check for this amount, plus $1 per shipment for post./ins. (plus tax for CA deliv. only) is enclosed.
- ☐ Charge my BA/MC account:

_____ Exp. _____

or for fastest service call TOLL FREE (800) 327-8912
[IN FLA (1-800) 432-5024] IN SF BAY AREA CALL: 433-7540

My name is _____

I live at _____

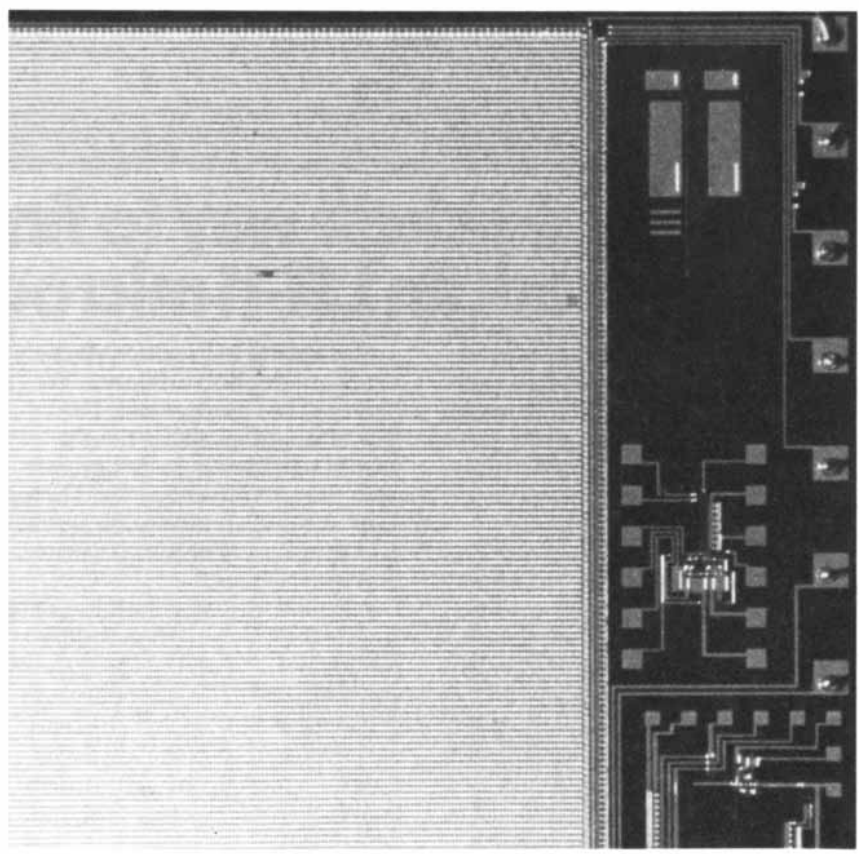
In _____ State _____ Zip _____ SA0977

exchanges with tailor-made capabilities, radios with clever frequency control, television sets that tune themselves, high-fidelity audio equipment with highly specialized features and so on.

A feature of integrated circuits that offers both benefits and problems in these applications is their limited power-handling capability. A benefit is that signal-conditioning circuits can be built at quite low power levels. A problem is that integrated circuits do not interact well with the hostile environment of the real world. Circuits connected to cables and antennas are not easily protected from lightning strokes, and integrated circuits do not readily ring telephones or provide strong radio signals for communication through the atmosphere.

Intelligence does not require a specific level of power. A circuit performing an intelligence function can often operate at a power level just sufficient to drive circuit nodes to voltages a few times greater than the voltage of any inadvertent noise on the circuit. In integrated circuits much of the circuit wiring is on the silicon chip and the circuit nodes are small, so that little power is required. As the scale of integration of circuits has increased it has been both necessary and possible to decrease power levels in order that complex circuits on a single chip can be operated at acceptable temperatures. Only a few input and output leads that connect to other components must be driven with sufficient power to deliver strong signals.

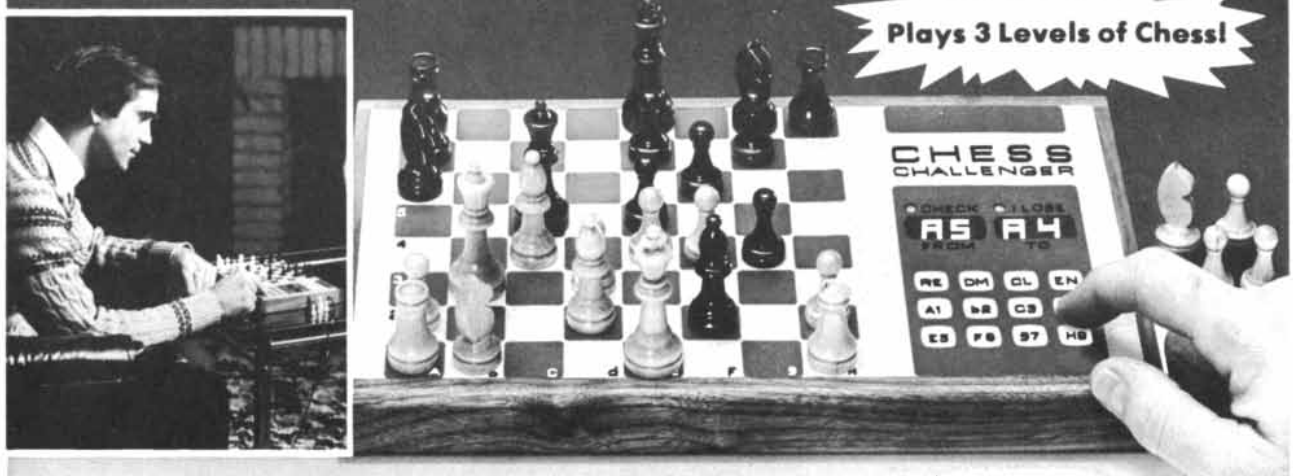
It is often possible to reduce power levels still further by choosing a technology that does not require much power in its active circuit elements. One such technology is represented by complementary-metal-oxide-semiconductor (CMOS) circuits. A microprocessor employing about 8,000 transistors has been designed in this technology on a chip that is less than a quarter-inch on a side. It is specifically designed as the control element for communication equipment. The chip can execute 434 different instructions, operates at speeds of up to two megahertz (two million cycles per second) and yet consumes less than .1 watt of power. A system that provides such a large amount of intelligence with such low power consumption enables communication equipment to be operated in places that have either no commercial power supply or an unreliable one. It allows complex remote equipment connected to long wires or cables to be



PORTION OF IMAGING CHIP for the solid-state television camera is characterized by a fine array of sensors consisting of charge-coupled devices, which release charge carriers in proportion to the light energy reaching them. The chip contains 185,440 such sensors, about a fourth of them visible in the lighter portion of the photomicrograph, and other circuitry.

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

For the game of your life . . .
Take on Computer Chess Challenger II!



Play chess when you're ready, day or night, without the bother of finding a chess partner! Sharpen your chess skills without embarrassment!

Whether you're a beginning, average, or advanced chess player, you'll have the game of your life taking on the computerized Chess Challenger from Chafitz!

The Chess Challenger is totally unlike any other electronic game. Its advanced minicomputer provides the Chess Challenger with a memory and high-level thinking ability. The Chess Challenger responds to your every move quickly and aggressively like a skilled human opponent and, if you're not careful, you'll wind up checkmated in very short order!

READY WHEN YOU ARE

Because the Chess Challenger serves as your chess partner, it is ready to play whenever you are, day or night. And it eliminates the age-old problem of chess players—finding someone who wants to play chess! This is especially important for beginning players, who may be too embarrassed by their lack of skill to challenge a better player. By practicing with the Chess Challenger, a novice quickly learns to plan upcoming moves and cover the board positions.

EASY TO PLAY

If you know the basic chess moves, which can be learned in 10 minutes, you can take on the Chess Challenger a few minutes after reading its simple directions.

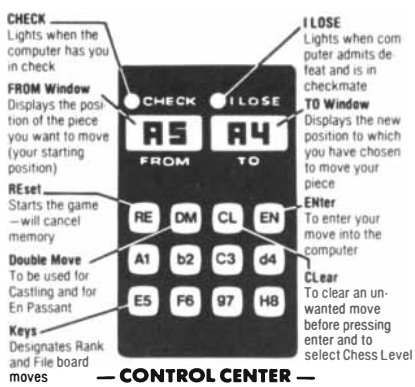
Set up both sides of the chess board with the included wood pieces (you can play white or black) and make your first move. Enter your move into the Chess Challenger mini-computer by touching a couple of keys on the Control Center.

Seconds later, Chess Challenger responds with its move, which is displayed in standard chess alpha-numeric notation in the FROM and TO windows on the Control Center. You move the Chess Challenger's piece on the board to match the display. Make your next move, enter it, take note of the Chess Challenger's response and move its piece to the appropriate square on the chess board. That's all there is to it!

TOUGH TO BEAT

Winning, however, isn't so easy. Chess Challenger is programmed for aggressive play and works to control the chess board. It castles (so can you, and you can make en passant moves) when appropriate. Special lights on the Control Center tell you if you've managed to checkmate the Chess Challenger.

You control Chess Challenger's level of play. Turn on Chess Challenger and it plays Chess Level I, an average game. If Level I is too easy, press the **CL** (clear) button and call up Level II, a tougher game. If you master Level II, you can play Level III, an extremely difficult chess game. These varying games make Chess Challenger an ideal opponent and a perfect teacher for aspiring chess masters.



— CONTROL CENTER —

A MAP IF YOU'RE LOST

Let's be honest. The first game or two you play against the Chess Challenger could be a little frustrating and confusing to you. The Chess Challenger, after all, is unlike any other game. But there's no need to worry. If you forget to record your move or move the Chess Challenger's piece to the incorrect square, the Chess Challenger's Position Verification system will inform you of the exact position of each piece on the board anytime during the course of the game. If you change your mind about a move, you can clear it before entering it in the computer by touching the **CL** (clear) button.

TOP QUALITY PRODUCT

When you challenge the Chess Challenger, you're not taking on just another electronic game or a kid's mechanical toy. The Chess Challenger incorporates a sophisticated and reliable microprocessor as its brain. Microprocessors represent the highest state of the art in advanced computer technology. The Chess Challenger's microprocessor has been loaded with an enormous logic program that enables it to respond with its best possible counter move, just like a skilled human opponent.

Chess Challenger is manufactured for Chafitz in the U.S., and comes with a 90-day limited warranty on parts and labor. Service is available if necessary after the warranty expires.

NO-RISK TRIAL

Try the Chess Challenger for 10 days on a Chafitz no-risk trial. If you're not totally satisfied, return the Chess Challenger to Chafitz for a prompt and cheerful refund of your $275.00 purchase price.

ORDER YOURS TODAY

Because of its sophistication and abilities, we expect the Chess Challenger to be this year's hottest consumer electronic product. Limited quantities are being manufactured and will sell fast, so order yours today. Remember, there's no risk.

ORDER NOW TOLL FREE
800-638-8280

(Md., D.C., No. Va., call (301) 340-0200)
Credit cards fine
Available exclusively by mail and phone from

Chafitz

Department 526 • P.O. Box 2188
856 Rockville Pike
Rockville, Maryland 20852
© Copyright 1977, Chafitz

Please send ____ Chess Challenger(s) at $275.00 each $ _____
Maryland residents add 5% sales tax $ _____
Shipping and handling, $3 first unit, $1.50 add'l units $ _____
Total $ _____
( ) Enclosed is check or money order for $ _____
Charge to my ( ) BAC ( ) MC ( ) AMEX ( ) CB ( ) DC
MC Int # __ __ __ __ Card Exp. Date _____
Card # _____
Name _____
Street _____
City _____ State _____ ZIP _____
(No P.O. Box or COD's, please) Dept # 526

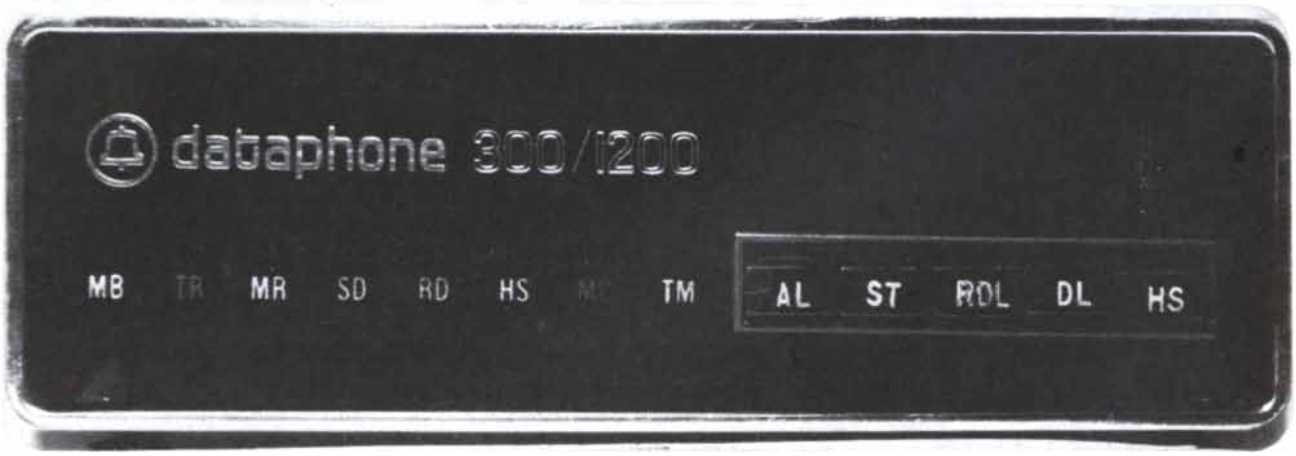
© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

supplied with power over the same small conductors that carry the signals.

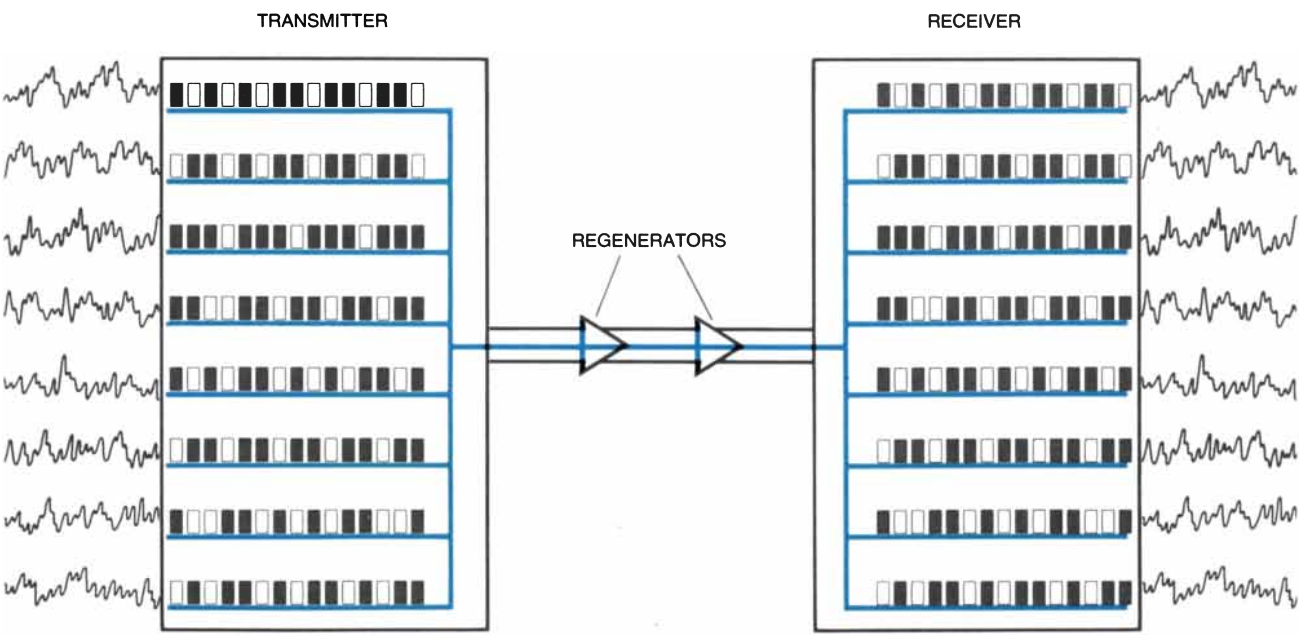
Progress in microelectronics has been much slower in the areas of communication that call for high power. A circuit's ability to handle power is limited by the maximum temperature at which the semiconductor chip can be operated. A chip containing many transistors will become hotter than a chip containing only one transistor.

Solid-state devices can be employed in radio-frequency circuits of modest power, but usually they must be in the form of discrete transistors. At audio frequencies integrated power amplifiers have helped to reduce the cost and size of radios and recording equipment. Solid-state switches of modest power are beginning to replace electromechanical switches in large communication systems. In power-conversion equipment solid-state components are of increasing help in improving efficiency and lowering costs.

The pressure to expand the capability of microelectronics to serve communication circuits of higher power is considerable. Circuits able to withstand hundreds of volts would be needed to hold off surges of lightning on exposed cable systems and to transmit even the moderate amount of power required to actuate the bell on a telephone. It is unlikely that integrated circuits will ever be available for these purposes at the scale of integration now found in circuits handling intelligence. High voltages can break down any material of sufficiently small dimensions and can impair the reliability of the device in other ways. A high-



MODULATOR-DEMODULATOR made by the Bell System serves to transmit digital data, as from a computer or a business machine, over an analogue circuit of the type that carries most of the voice traffic over the telephone network in the U.S. The device is known as a modem (a contraction of modulator-demodulator) or a data set. At the receiving end a similar instrument makes the signals digital again.



DIGITAL TRANSMISSION of voice signals is done increasingly in the U.S. telephone system as a result of developments in microelectronics. Sound waves (*left*) generated by voices are sampled at a high rate and the samples are converted into digital signals, which are transmitted over telephone lines as either "on" pulses (*white*) or "off" pulses (*black*). Periodically the signals are regenerated during transmission. At the receiving end the digital signals are reconverted into voice signals. Microcircuits play an important role not only in converting speech into digits but also in multiplexing a large number of conversations onto a cable and in regenerating signals during transmission.

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

You've always wanted to climb a mountain.
You've always wanted to sail the ocean.
You've always wanted to fly an airplane.

For $10 you can TakeOff

Spread your wings!

Participating Cessna Pilot Centers invite you to take a $10 Discovery Flight. This can be the start of a lifelong love affair with the sky.

After a unique audio-visual presentation and preflight orientation, you will take the controls and be guided through basic flight maneuvers by an instructor.

And when you're back down on earth, you'll get all the answers to your questions about the Cessna Pilot Course. Since you know you're going to love it, you should know that more people earn their license in less time at Cessna Pilot Centers. And time is money.

When you become a private pilot, you're eligible to enter the "$300,000 TakeOff" Sweepstakes.*

But first things first. TakeOff!

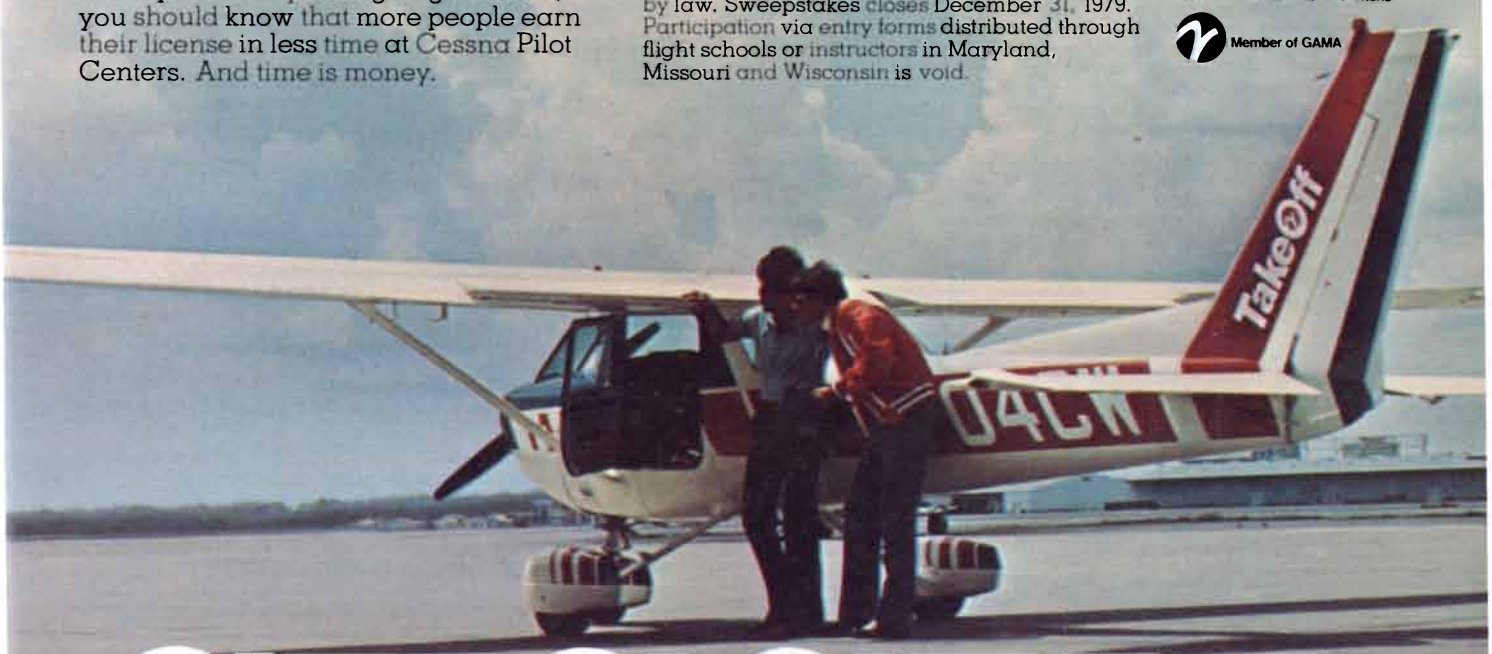
Call 800/447-4700 toll free and ask for the Cessna "TakeOff" operator. She'll give you the location of your nearest participating Cessna Pilot Center. In Illinois call 800/322-4400. In Canada call 800/261-6362. In Toronto call 445-2231.

*No purchase necessary. Void where prohibited by law. Sweepstakes closes December 31, 1979. Participation via entry forms distributed through flight schools or instructors in Maryland, Missouri and Wisconsin is void.

Cessna PILOT CENTER
Discover Flying
Learn from the leader
Professional Pilot Course

Cessna
AIRCRAFT COMPANY / WICHITA, KANSAS

Member of GAMA



CESSNA

Number one in pilot education for some very down-to-earth reasons.

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

Meet The Digital Group

Clockwise from top left: Impact Printer, CPU, 9" Video Monitor, Cassette Storage System with Four Drives, Keyboard, Dual Floppy.

If you are seriously considering the purchase of a microcomputer system for personal or business use . . . or just beginning to feel the first twinges of interest in a fascinating hobby . . . the Digital Group is a company you should get acquainted with.

For many months now, we've been feverishly (and rather quietly) at work on our unique, high-quality product—a microcomputer system designed from the inside out to be the most comprehensive, easy-to-use and adaptable system you'll find anywhere. And our reputation has been getting around *fast*. In fact, you may have already heard a little something about us from a friend. We've found our own best salesmen are our many satisfied customers.

There's a good reason. Simply, the Digital Group has a lot to offer: state-of-the-art designs, a totally complete systems philosophy, unexcelled quality, reasonable software, affordable prices and the promise that our products will not become rapidly obsolete, even in this fast-moving, high-technology field.

The Advantages

Here are a few specific advantages of our product line:

- We offer interchangeable CPUs from different manufacturers (including the new "super chip"—the Z-80 from Zilog) which are interchangeable at the CPU card level. That way, your system won't become instantly obsolete with each new design breakthrough. The major portion of your investment in memory and I/O is protected.
- Digital Group systems are complete and fully featured, so there's no need to purchase bits and pieces from different manufacturers. We have everything you need, but almost any other equipment can be easily supported, too, thanks to the universal nature of our systems.
- Our systems are specifically designed to be easy to use. With our combination of TV, keyboard, and cassette recorder, you have a system that is quick, quiet, and inexpensive. To get going merely power on, load cassette and go!
- Design shortcuts have been avoided—all CPUs run at full maximum rated speed.
- All system components are available with our beautiful new custom cabinets. And every new product will maintain the same unmistakable Digital Group image.

The Features

Digital Group Systems—CPUs currently being delivered: Z-80 by Zilog, 8080A/9080A, 6800, 6500 by MOS Technology.

All are completely interchangeable at the CPU card level. Standard features with all systems:

- Video-based operating system
- Video/Cassette Interface Card
  512 character upper & lower case video interface
  (1024 optional)
  100 character/second digitally synthesized audio cassette interface
- CPU Card
  2K RAM, Direct Memory Access (DMA)
  Vectored Interrupts (up to 128)
  256 byte 1702A bootstrap loader
  All buffering, CPU dependencies, and housekeeping circuitry
- Input/Output Card
  Four 8-bit parallel input ports
  Four 8-bit parallel output ports
- Motherboard

Prices for standard systems including the above features start at $475 for Z-80, $425 for 8080 or 6800, $375 for 6500.

More

Many options, peripherals, expansion capabilities and accessories are already available. They include rapid computer-controlled cassette drives for mass storage, printers, color graphics interfaces, memory, I/O, monitors, prom boards, multiple power supplies, prototyping cards and others. Software packages include BASICs, Assemblers, Disassemblers, Text Editors, games, ham radio applications, software training cassettes, system packages and more (even biorhythm).

Sounds neat—now what?

Now that you know a little about who we are and what we're doing, we need to know more about you. In order for us to get more information to you, please take a few seconds and fill in our mailing list coupon. We think you'll be pleased with what you get back.

---

the digital group

P.O. Box 6528
Denver, Colorado 80206
(303) 777-7133

OK, I'd like to get to know you guys better. Send me the whole package!

Name _____

Address _____

City/State/Zip _____

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

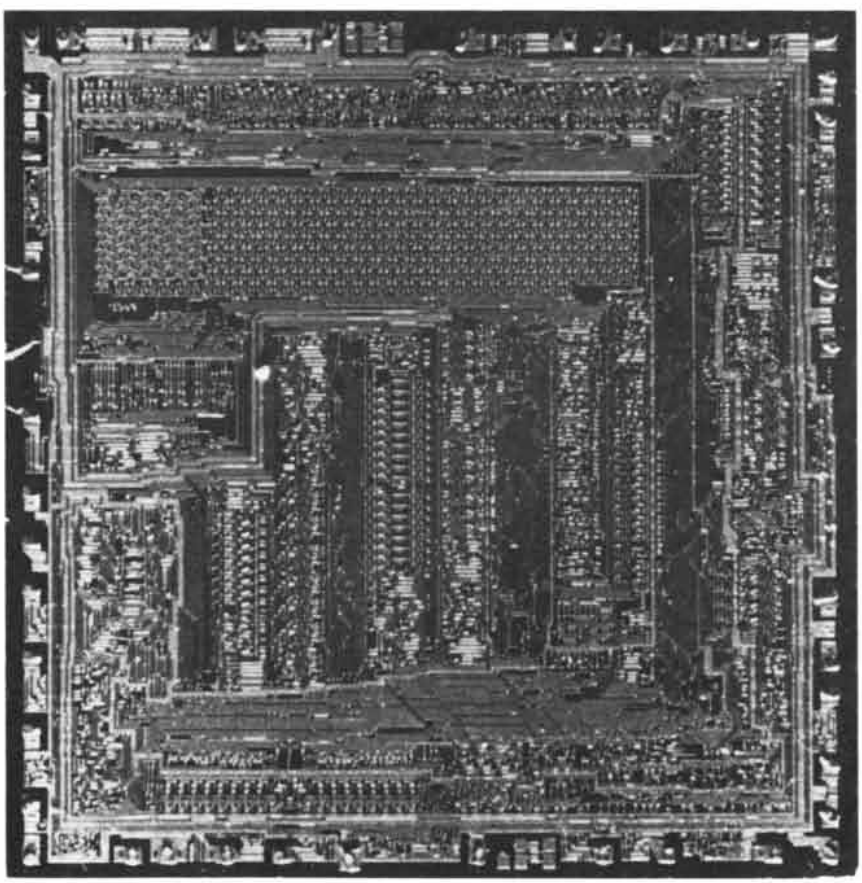
voltage circuit must therefore have relatively wide spacing between its elements.

Many communication needs can best be met with digital technology. Signals transmitted as digits are not degraded as long as the digits are correctly received. A large amount of noise or "cross talk," which would be objectionable in an analogue signal of the type that usually carries the human voice, may have no degrading effect whatever on digital signals. As long as the noise or cross talk is somewhat weaker than the digital signal the presence of each binary digit can be detected and the digit can be regenerated fully. The signal is therefore stripped of noise and cross talk. This is a powerful advantage when the signal is being transmitted through a noisy medium.

A digital communication system is likely to operate at a high pulse rate and to employ a large number of digital logic gates. Such circuits are small and well matched to modern microelectronics technology. Voice signals have been transmitted as digits in parts of the U.S. telephone system since 1962. The transmissions employ pulse-code modulation, wherein the voice signals are repeatedly sampled at a high rate and the samples are coded into a stream of binary numbers. The binary numbers are transmitted as digital signals, which are periodically regenerated along the route to remove noise, cross talk and distortion. At the receiving end the binary numbers are converted back to signal samples from which the voice sound can be reconstituted.

The advantages of digital communication have been known for some time. The extent of its application has been controlled mostly by the relative economics of digital and analogue circuitry. The development of integrated circuits has greatly changed the economics, tipping the scale in favor of digital operation in many domains.

A disadvantage of digital signals is that they require more bandwidth for transmission than analogue signals. Therefore analogue techniques remain attractive in well-shielded mediums of limited bandwidth, such as coaxial cables, and in radio propagation where the bandwidth is limited by the available spectrum. Much work, embodying a



MODEM CHIP is central to the operation of the modulator-demodulator shown in the upper illustration on page 202. The chip is a large-scale integrated circuit that turns the digital, or square-wave, signals from a computer or some other data-processing machine into the modulated-wave format required on most of the telephone lines in the U.S. It is likely that over a number of years the telephone lines will be modified to carry even voices as digital signals.

WORLD DISCOVERER CRUISES

ANTARCTIC ADVENTURES

...aboard the beautiful M.S. WORLD DISCOVERER Cruising from Argentina, we visit the Islas Malvinas (Falkland Islands) and the scenic ANTARCTIC PENINSULA.

The M.S. WORLD DISCOVERER comfortably accommodates 120 passengers in 75 outside cabins, each with private facilities.

With the guidance of our naturalists, we will be enlightened in this unspoiled world of natural history.

Departure dates December 10th, and 30th, 1977. December 7th, 1978 and January 1st. 1979. Cruise rates from $1765.00 per person

W DAVID CAMPBELL TRAVEL, LTD
527 Madison Avenue, Suite 1207
New York, New York 10022, U S A
Phone (212) 752-8908

Please send me your full color cruise brochure

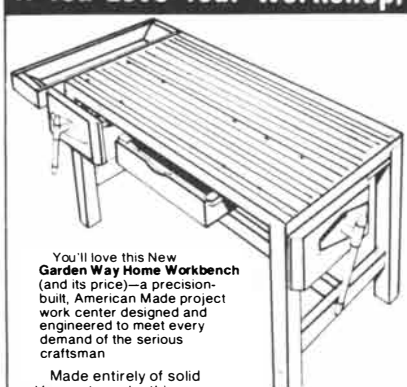
Name

Street

City State Zip SA

MS World Discoverer is registered in Singapore. Cruises operated by Neckermann Cruises, Frankfurt, West Germany

If You Love Your Workshop.



You'll love this New **Garden Way Home Workbench** (and its price)—a precision-built, American Made project work center designed and engineered to meet every demand of the serious craftsman

Made entirely of solid Vermont maple, this extremely versatile bench offers you a massive multi-laminated, 2 inch thick 12½ sq. ft. (30x60) work surface. Bench comes with 2 extra large capacity vises with patented double-position design. Has a unique metal-to-metal fastening system which will hold bench rigid over years of hard use, yet can be disassembled in 15 minutes should you ever need to move it.

Options include extra large capacity tool well and tool drawer.

Please clip and mail now!

TO: Garden Way Research Dept. 74409W
Charlotte, Vermont 05445

Please send me your FREE CATALOG all about the New Garden Way Home Workbench, including details on your easy-to-build kits.

Name

Address

City

State Zip

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

COMMUNIQUÉ

A competition of scientific works, destined to encourage the study of the evolution of the Universe and of its consequences on our planet has recently been created under the name:

Louis Jacot Prize

This prize is of the value of:

150,000 French Francs

of which the first prize is of the value of 50,000 Francs.

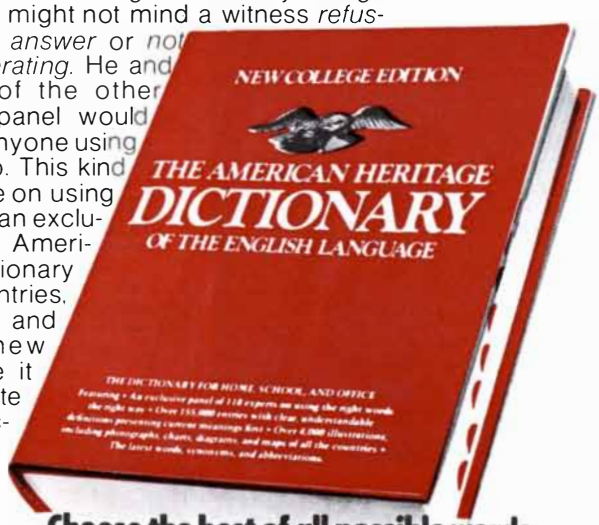
The jury is chaired by Mr. Pierre AIGRIN, and has as members Messrs. Robert CLARKE, Jean-François DENISSE, Jacques LABEYRIE, Xavier LE PICHON, Jacques LEVY, LICHNEROWICZ, Jean-Claude PECKER and Ichtiak RASOOL.

All submissions must be made before 31 December 1977.

Do not make any submission without full knowledge of the rules governing the competition. These are to be obtained on simple demand addressed to the FONDATION LOUIS JACOT, Éditions de la Pensée Universelle, 3 bis, quai aux Fleurs, 75004 PARIS FRANCE.

Would you stonewall a committee? Not Senator Hayakawa's.

S. I. Hayakawa, a freshman U.S. senator and a long-time member of The American Heritage Dictionary Usage Panel, might not mind a witness *refusing to answer* or *not cooperating*. He and 69% of the other members of the panel would object strongly to anyone using *stonewall* as a verb. This kind of up-to-date advice on using words effectively is an exclusive feature of The American Heritage Dictionary And its 155,000 entries, 4,000 illustrations, and thousands of new words help make it America's complete contemporary dictionary as well From $9.95



Choose the best of all possible words.

Published by Houghton Mifflin Company • Two Park Street • Boston, Mass. 02107

wide variety of approaches, has been directed at reducing the bit rate required for transmitting voice communication digitally. The low cost of microelectronics is essential to almost all of them. The channel rate per voice ranges from about 2,400 bits per second in systems that are sophisticated but of low quality to some 64,000 bits per second in pulse-code-modulation systems of high quality. The lower rates inevitably introduce degradation of the signal, which may or may not be acceptable in a given application.

An approach that is of particular interest at present is the time-assignment-speech-interpolation (TASI) concept originally developed by Bell Laboratories for cable circuits carrying voice signals overseas by analogue techniques. The concept exploits the brief silences in ordinary conversations to take a channel away from a momentarily silent speaker and assign it to someone who is speaking. The juggling is so swift and accurate that the speakers are unaware of it. The concept can now be executed with microcircuits and digital techniques, converting a large number of voice signals into digits in such a way as to considerably reduce the effective bit rate per voice channel.

Another concept that has been enhanced by microelectronics is stored-program control. First in the form of powerful processors associated with large equipment such as switching machines and more recently in the form of microprocessors embedded in all types of equipment, microelectronics has brought to communication a rapidly expanding array of programmable devices. The service and operational features of many large systems can now be altered by rewriting or adding to the program stored in the memory.

Until recently a communication system had to be either rewired or replaced to change the type of service offered. With stored-program control the old hardware can be programmed to perform new functions, which relate just as much to more efficient use of the people who operate and maintain the system as to service features seen by the user. The systems are almost always digital, employing a great deal of logic and memory. Microelectronics has vastly expanded the horizons of stored-program control by offering logic and memory circuits that are inexpensive and highly reliable.

Although stored-program control is a simple concept, the development of a program that is free of "bugs" is difficult. It is not unusual for the development of a program for a small microprocessor of the type that might be used in communication terminals to cost $100,000. The cost of developing a program for large equipment, such as an

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

Now! Commodore Improves its Best Selling Scientific!

A little over a year ago, Commodore introduced the SR4190R, a compact rechargeable scientific calculator with more preprogrammed features (almost one hundred) than any other general purpose scientific. At an exciting price, in keeping with Commodore's policy of value.

It became Commodore's best-selling scientific ever. And Commodore is one of the world's largest and oldest producers of electronic calculators.

Now Commodore introduces a brand new version called the SR9190R. Again at a very exciting price. A little bit handsomer. With all the features of the super-popular previous model. Plus these significant improvements.

- **Expanded memories:** Up to nine user memories and three levels of parenthesis; add-to-memory key and multiply-by-memory key as well.
- **Gaussian distribution** rather than just Gaussian density.
- The new SR9190R now can both **preserve the data base and delete erroneous entries in linear regression** . . . things that neither the 4190 nor virtually any other calculator can do.
- **The Log of the Gamma function** . . . a complicated procedure simplified in the SR9190R by just touching a single key.

And there is ever so much more:

Poisson, binomial probability and gaussian distribution • Mean and standard deviation • Linear regression analysis • Numerical integration . . . allowing calculation of area beneath a curve • Permutations and combinations . . . with no overflow limitations • Factorial computations and log of the Gamma function.

Complex numbers arithmetic • Hours-Minutes-Seconds mode . . . for time and motion study • Polar/rectangular, rectangular/polar conversions in all quadrants • Percent and Delta percent.

Log and antilog . . . base e and base 10 • Direct and indirect hyperbolic functions • Xth root, Xth power, square root, reciprocal.

11 back-and-forth British/metric conversions.

The bright red LED display has 14 characters: 10 mantissa, 2 exponent, 2 signs. The exponents may be entered by the entry key (or automatically, of course).

The SR9190R is fully rechargeable; the nickel-cadmium batteries and the adapter/recharger are included.

Truly the perfect calculator for any student, advanced or beginning. Perfect, really, for anybody who must use mathematics in his or her work. All this for just $49.88.

Handsome and compact, too. 5¼" long by 3" wide by 1½" high with 49 keys and an on/off switch and over 100 keyboard functions. All in handsome black with silver accents.

We're so sure the Commodore SR9190R is exactly right for you that we offer this extraordinary double guarantee:

1. Use it for 10 days. If it's not exactly what you want, return it to us for full refund. No questions asked.
2. Once you decide to keep it, your SR9190R is **guaranteed unconditionally** for one full year. **Regardless of defect,** we will replace it with a brand new one if you return it to us within the year.

Special Order Division, MR. CALCULATOR
39 Town & Country Village, Palo Alto, CA 94304

Please send me_____SR9190R calculator(s) by Commodore at only $49.88 each complete with adaptor/recharger. (Plus $2.50 each for shipping, handling and insurance.)

☐ I'm enclosing check or money order payable to **Mr. Calculator** for:
$_____

☐ I'd like to use my charge card:
☐ Master Charge ☐ BankAmericard
☐ American Express

Card No. _____

My credit card expires _____

I understand I can return the SR9190R calculator(s) in 10 days for full refund or credit if I'm not happy with it (or them).

Signature _____

(Please Print)
Name _____

Address _____

City _____

State, Zip _____

Calif. residents: please add 6% ($3.00 ea.); Santa Clara Cty. CA add 6.5% ($3.25 ea.)

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

Shopping for a computer at the ByteShop is almost as much fun as building one.

Computers are fun. And affordable. Thousands of people are already using personal computers for TV games, video color graphics, digital music and lots of things nobody ever dreamed of —till now.

Until we came along the toughest part about getting started with computers was shopping for one. Now you can visit a Byte Shop and put your hands on a wide variety of personal, hobby and business computers.

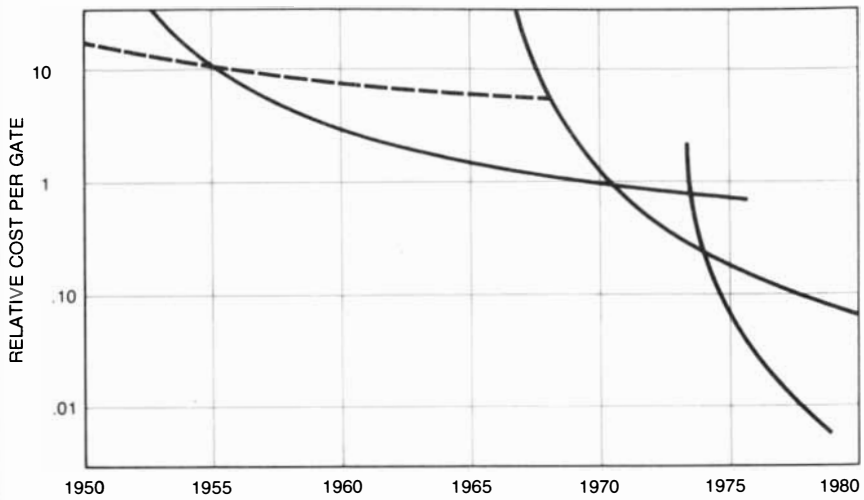
Arizona
Phoenix–East
813 N. Scottsdale Rd.
Phoenix–West
12654 N. 28th Drive
Tucson
2612 E. Broadway
California
Berkeley
1514 University Ave.
Burbank
1812 W. Burbank Blvd.
Campbell
2626 Union Ave.
Diablo Valley
2989 N. Main St.
Fairfield
119 Oak Street
Fresno
3139 E. McKinley Ave.
Hayward
1122 "B" Street
Los Angeles
3030 W. Olympic Blvd.
Lawndale
16508 Hawthorne Blvd.
Long Beach
5433 E. Stearns St.
Marina Del Rey
4658 B
Admiralty Way
Mountain View
1063 W. El Camino Real
Palo Alto
2233 El Camino Real
Pasadena
496 W. Lake Ave.
Placentia
123 E. Yorba Linda
Sacramento
6041 Greenback Lane
San Diego
8250 Vickers-H
San Fernando Valley
18424 Ventura Blvd.
San Francisco
321 Pacific Ave.
Santa Barbara
4 West Mission
Stockton
7910 N. Eldorado St.
Thousand Oaks
2707 Thousand Oaks Blvd.
Ventura
1555 Morse Ave.
Westminster
14300 Beach Blvd.
Colorado
Arapahoe County
3464 S. Acoma St.
Boulder
2040 30th St.
Florida
Cocoa Beach
1325 N. Atlantic Ave., Suite 4
Ft. Lauderdale
1044 E. Oakland Park
Miami
7825 Bird Road
Indiana
Indianapolis–North
5947 E. 82nd St.
Kansas
Mission
5815 Johnson Drive
Minnesota
Eagan
1434 Yankee Doodle Rd.
Montana
Billings
1201 Grand Ave., Suite 3
New York
Levittown
2721 Hempstead Turnpike
Rochester
264 Park Avenue
Ohio
Rocky River
19524 Center Ridge Rd.
Oregon
Beaverton
3482 SW Cedar Hills Blvd.
Portland
2033 SW 4th
Pennsylvania
Bryn Mawr
1045 W. Lancaster Ave.
North Carolina
Raleigh
1213 Hillsborough Street
South Carolina
Columbia
2018 Green St.
Utah
Salt Lake City
261 S. State St.
Washington
Bellevue
14701 NE 20th Ave.
Canada
Vancouver
2151 Burrard St.
Winnipeg
665 Century St.
Japan
Tokyo
Towa Bldg., 1-5-9
Sotokanda

BYTE SHOP™
the affordable computer store

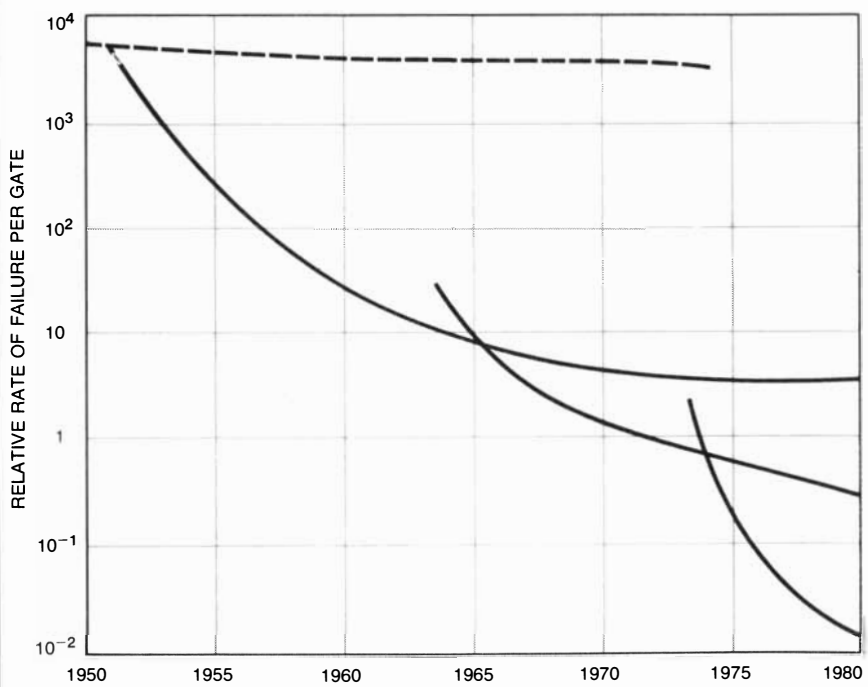
electronic switching system, runs to millions of dollars.

Silicon is to the electronics revolution what steel was to the Industrial Revolution. Seldom, however, can a communication system be built entirely of silicon circuits. Several other microelectronic technologies are important.

For example, a number of semiconductor materials (gallium arsenide and gallium phosphide among them) emit light when they conduct current. Light-emitting diodes serve widely as indica-



REDUCTION IN COST of components of communication systems is one of the major effects of microelectronics. It is illustrated here for the logic gate, which is a key element of communication and computing systems. The curves, read from the left, represent respectively vacuum-tube logic gates, gates made with discrete transistors, gates embodying small-scale integration (a few gates on each chip) and gates embodying large-scale integration (thousands of gates per chip). In each instance the device represented is a digital logic gate of the best quality.



GAIN IN RELIABILITY of electronic components is another major effect of microelectronics on communication. The two developments (reduced cost and increased reliability) together have had a profound impact on communication. In this diagram as in the upper one on this page the curves represent high-quality logic gates based respectively on vacuum tubes, discrete transistors, small-scale integration and large-scale integration. A logic gate is an organizer, providing an output signal only when the input signals it receives are in prescribed states.

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

How Conrail is building a better railroad for 45,000 steel-consuming industries in the Northeast

Thirty-one percent of America's industries depend on steel for their very survival. Many are in the dynamic Northeast where Conrail® delivers much of their steel. Here's what we're doing to make sure they get all they need—when they need it.

On April 1, 1976, Conrail took on an awesome task.

We began consolidating six bankrupt, deteriorating railroads in the Northeast. Our goal: to rehabilitate the railroads, to improve service—in effect, to build an entirely new railroad. And to operate at a profit.

A firm grip on the reins

We aren't content with the old ways of doing things. We're asking, "How can we do it *better?*"

Here are some of the ways this attitude is paying off:

More efficient routing. We've consolidated routes and started running "through" trains using the best parts of our system. (This slashed 40 hours off a freight run from Allentown, Pennsylvania, to Albany, New York.) Our customers like what we're doing.

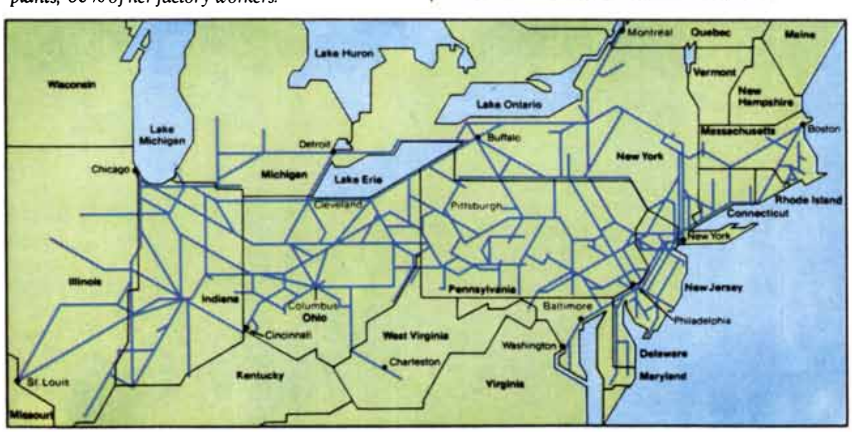
More efficient maintenance. We're using only our most productive maintenance facilities—to get *better* maintenance at lower cost.

Stricter quality control. On work performed and on purchased goods. In 1976, we rejected millions of dollars' worth of material that didn't measure up to our standards.

More efficient use of cars. We want to increase the amount of time our freight cars produce revenue. By making each car work harder, we can avoid buying thousands of new freight cars over the next 10 years. Savings: tens of millions of dollars.

Better budgeting techniques. We're using zero base budgeting which allows us to reexamine each and every expense with a fresh eye *every year.*

Many of America's steel industries are in the bustling Northeast. This year, Conrail expects to carry 32.5 million tons of iron and steel over our network.



Conrail network covers 16 states in the Northeast, the District of Columbia, two provinces in Canada. Area contains 55% of America's manufacturing plants, 60% of her factory workers.

Vital to the Industrial Heartland of America

We're a key lifeline to the economy of 16 states and the District of Columbia.

We deliver raw materials and finished goods to the bustling Northeast which has nearly 55 percent of America's manufacturing plants and almost 60 percent of her factory workers.

The alternative

If Conrail should falter or fail, nationalization could become a reality. And that would cost Americans millions of dollars annually in extra taxes. No one wants that.

We've got to succeed.

We're *going* to succeed.

We've got a better way to run a railroad.

CONRAIL®

"A better way to run a railroad"

Consolidated Rail Corporation, Philadelphia, Pa.

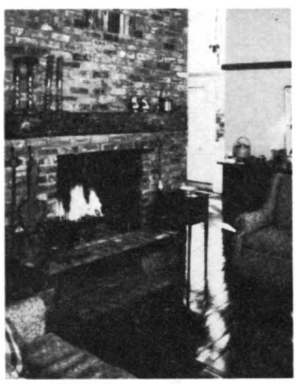
© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

How to make your fourth most important decision one you can live with.

Choosing a home is a decision you'll come home to every night.

You'll live with its look. You'll live with its feel. And you'll live with its costs.

As you search for a house you'll enjoy living with, you'll find that a lot of builders know just what your ideal home looks like. Theirs. But what we've found is that most home buyers have a very good idea of what they want in their homes. And what they need is someone with the inclination and the ability to help them put it together.



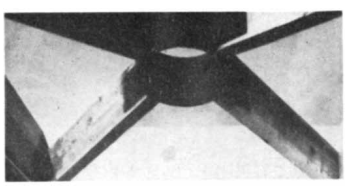
Few can do that like Acorn.

The Design Options

Acorn gives homebuyers a choice of 30 design approaches. Each is a contemporary, architect designed house. And each is a jumping off point for developing a personal home that combines interesting exterior shapes with attractive, functional interior spaces.

The key to building a home you'll enjoy living with is the ability to put yourself into it before you build. Our design department can help you do this by going over your ideas, giving advice and showing you how personal modifications will look and feel through drawings and models.

We encourage your participation in the process. After all, who are we to tell you your floor should be parquet if you want fieldstone?



The Quality Factor

There's a lot you should know about what's going on under the surface of your apparently beautiful home. The quality of the materials, the quality of workmanship and the way pieces fit together.

Acorn's technique of manufacturing homes has proven superior to total on-site construction in this respect. In our plant, where the materials are in stock, conditions are stable, proper equipment is on hand and quality is strictly controlled, the components of the homes are built to exact specifications. And attention is paid to each detail.

So when an Acorn home goes up, it goes up right.

The Control Element.

Unfortunately, cost overruns are commonplace in the home building industry. It's simply very difficult for most builders to account for the kind of modifications we do accurately, within an estimate.

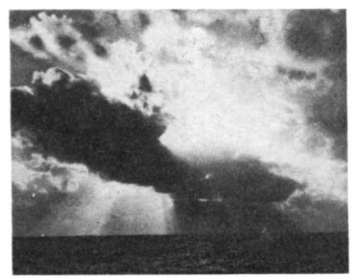
Acorn, however, enjoys a reputation for completing homes, with or without modifications, right on quote. We've achieved this by maintaining a controlling hand throughout the process. We purchase materials in quantity. We manufacture in our plant. Our own authorized builder/dealers carry out on-site construction. And since we've pretty much done it all in our years of building, we and our builder/dealers know precisely what effects particular modifications will have on the final price. Before we build.

Consequently, you do too.

The Energy Considerations

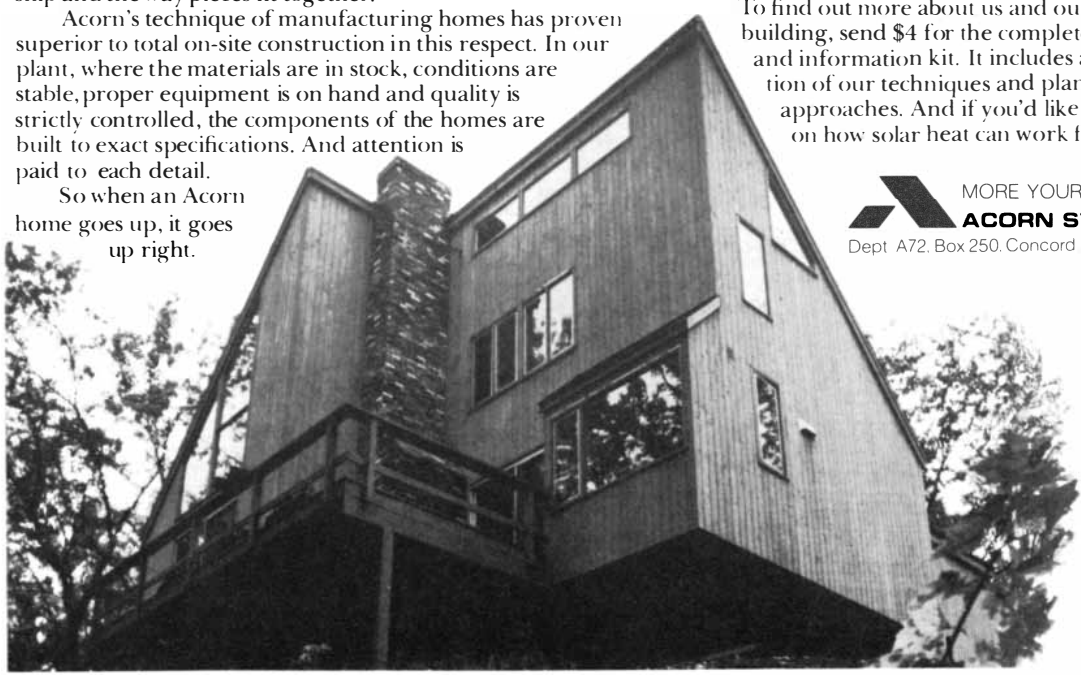
Energy consumption, both in terms of comfort and as a continuing financial factor has become a serious consideration in recent years. For obvious reasons.

Acorn combines elements from the past and present to diminish the effects of rising energy prices. Many designs can minimize unfavorable exposures of wall and roof. Windows, purposefully arranged, and fireplaces, properly located, are used to maximize heat efficiency. Zone controlled heating, full insulation, weatherstripping and insulating glass are standard.



As one of the pioneers in the field of solar heat, having studied its potential in an experimental unit for a number of years, we can offer the alternative of providing much of your own energy. Independently. Adapting nicely to existing homes as well as fitting several of our own designs, there are many Acorn solar energy packages already in use today.

To find out more about us and our approach to building, send $4 for the complete Acorn planning and information kit. It includes a complete explanation of our techniques and plans for all 30 design approaches. And if you'd like more information on how solar heat can work for you, just ask.



MORE YOUR HOME THAN OURS.

ACORN STRUCTURES, INC.

Dept A72, Box 250, Concord MA 01742 (617) 369-4111

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

tors and illuminators. They also display in numerals and letters the readout of digital signals. Such devices are extremely important in communication because they provide the translations required to couple electrical signals to the human brain without the necessity of printing the results on paper.

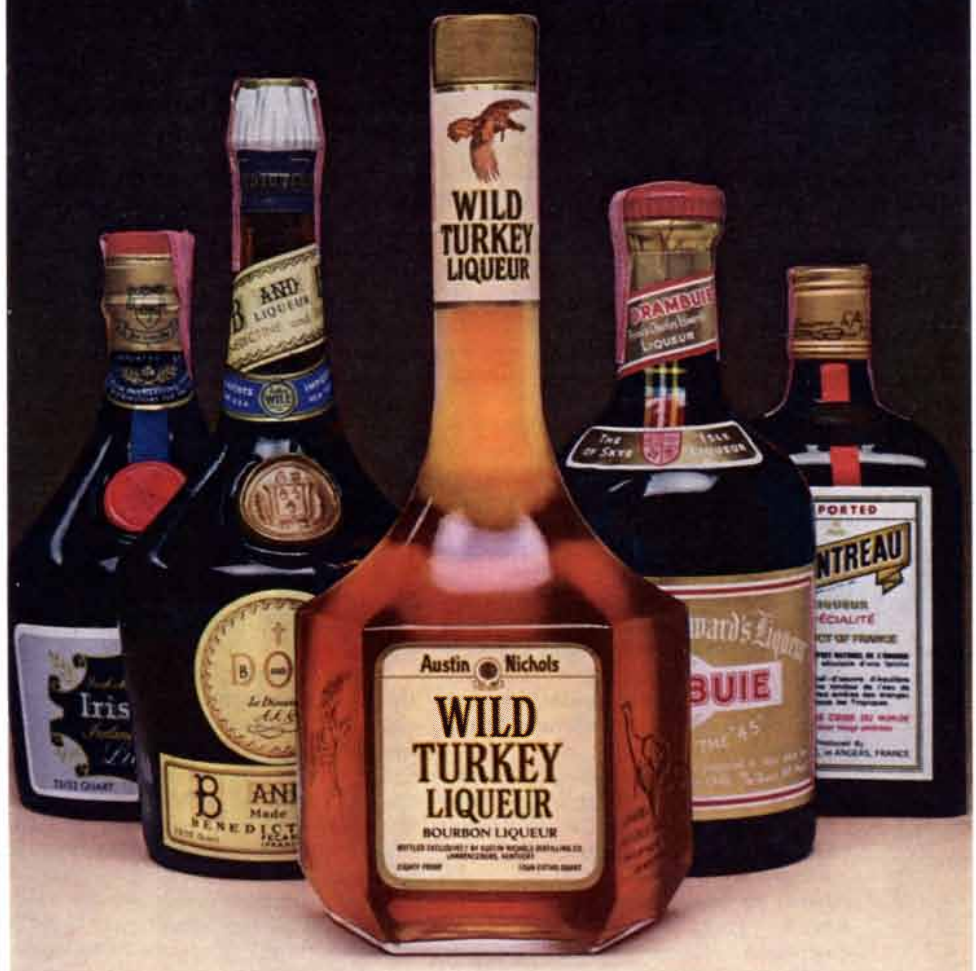
Of even greater potential importance to communication is the solid-state laser. It is a sophisticated cousin of the light-emitting diode, being basically a complex structured diode that emits a highly collimated and monochromatic beam of light. It will be particularly useful in light-wave communication systems. The problem has been with the laser's reliability. Just five years ago the best solid-state lasers failed after only a few hours of operation. Now such lasers can be made to last a million hours, which is enough to make the device an attractive element in the telecommunication network.

Magnetic-bubble circuits are another promising product of communication research. Magnetic bubbles are small, cylindrical magnetic domains that can persist and move about in certain materials. A garnet of special composition has been fabricated to support magnetic bubbles that are a few micrometers in diameter. Indeed, the highest scale of circuit integration yet achieved has been by means of magnetic-bubble memory devices. Garnet chips with up to 64,000 bits of memory per chip can be fabricated routinely, and 256,000-bit chips have been made on an exploratory basis. Magnetic-bubble devices with four 64,000-bit chips per package are now providing service in the telephone network in the form of a machine with no moving parts that delivers recorded announcements. Magnetic bubbles have the highly desirable characteristic of not disappearing when power to the circuit is interrupted.

A functionally similar semiconductor arrangement is the charge-coupled device. It can transfer a chain of electric charges across a semiconductor in a way much like the motion of a train of magnetic bubbles in a garnet. Unfortunately the charge in a CCD does disappear when power is interrupted. The CCD has the advantage of using processing and lithographic techniques essentially the same as those employed for the fabrication of integrated circuits. Indeed, it is an integrated circuit of a special configuration. It offers the additional advantage of high mobility of charge carriers, leading to devices that are many times faster than the magnetic-bubble device. The technology of the charge-coupled device has been applied in the solid-state television camera and in serial memory devices. It also shows promise as a vehicle for integrated electronic filters in communication systems.

Of the 5 Great Liqueurs in the world only one is made in America.

Wild Turkey Liqueur.



Scotland has Drambuie. Ireland has Irish Mist. France has Cointreau and B&B.

Now America can boast its own great native liqueur: Wild Turkey Liqueur created in Kentucky by the originators of America's finest native whiskey, Wild Turkey.

Wild Turkey Liqueur is the "sippin' sweet cream" of liqueurs. It's made to be savored slowly after dinner. Or as a mellow accompaniment to an evening's conversation. You've tasted the great liqueurs of Europe. Now taste America's great one—Wild Turkey Liqueur.

NOTICE: SUPPLY WILL BE LIMITED. IF NOT IN YOUR STORE, PLEASE CONTACT AUSTIN, NICHOLS & CO., LAWRENCEBURG, KY. 80 PROOF © 1977

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

Microelectronics and Computer Science

The functional architecture of the computer has traditionally been shaped by the size of specialized components and concepts of how people think. Microelectronics is now eliminating these constraints

by Ivan E. Sutherland and Carver A. Mead

Computer science has grown up in an era of computer technologies in which wires were cheap and switching elements were expensive. Integrated-circuit technology reverses the cost situation, making switching elements essentially free and leaving wires as the only expensive component. In an integrated circuit the "wires," actually conducting paths, are expensive because they occupy most of the space and consume most of the time. Between integrated circuits the wires, which may be flat conducting paths on a printed circuit board, are expensive because of their size and delaying effect. Computer theory is just beginning to take the cost reversal into consideration. As a result computer design has not yet begun to take advantage of the full range of capabilities implicit in microelectronics. As we learn to understand the changed relative costs of logic and wiring and to take advantage of the possibilities inherent in large-scale integration we can expect a real revolution in computation, not only in the forms of computing machines but also in the theories on which their design and use are founded.

Why is it that computation theory needs to be revised? Suppose one sets out to develop some theories of computation, hoping to put them to work toward two ends: to establish upper bounds on what is computable and to serve as a guide to the design and use of computing machines. Such theories would presumably also advance understanding of computation processes and perhaps shed light on the nature of knowledge and thought. The theories might be based purely on mathematical reasoning or might also be based on fundamental physical principles. By mathematical reasoning alone one can prove many things about computers without resorting to physical principles. Only by attending to physical principles, however, can one make more quantitative statements about how long a computer of given physical dimensions must take to accomplish a given process, based on the fact that information cannot move around in the computer faster than the speed of light and that it takes a certain amount of matter, energy and space to represent one bit, or binary digit, of information with a given reliability.

Computer science as it is practiced today is based almost entirely on mathematical reasoning. It is concerned with the logical operations that take place in computing devices. It touches only lightly on the necessity to distribute logic devices in space, a necessity that forces one to provide communication paths between them. Computer science as it is practiced today has little to say about how the physical limitations to such communications bound the complexity of the computing tasks a physically realizable computer can accomplish.

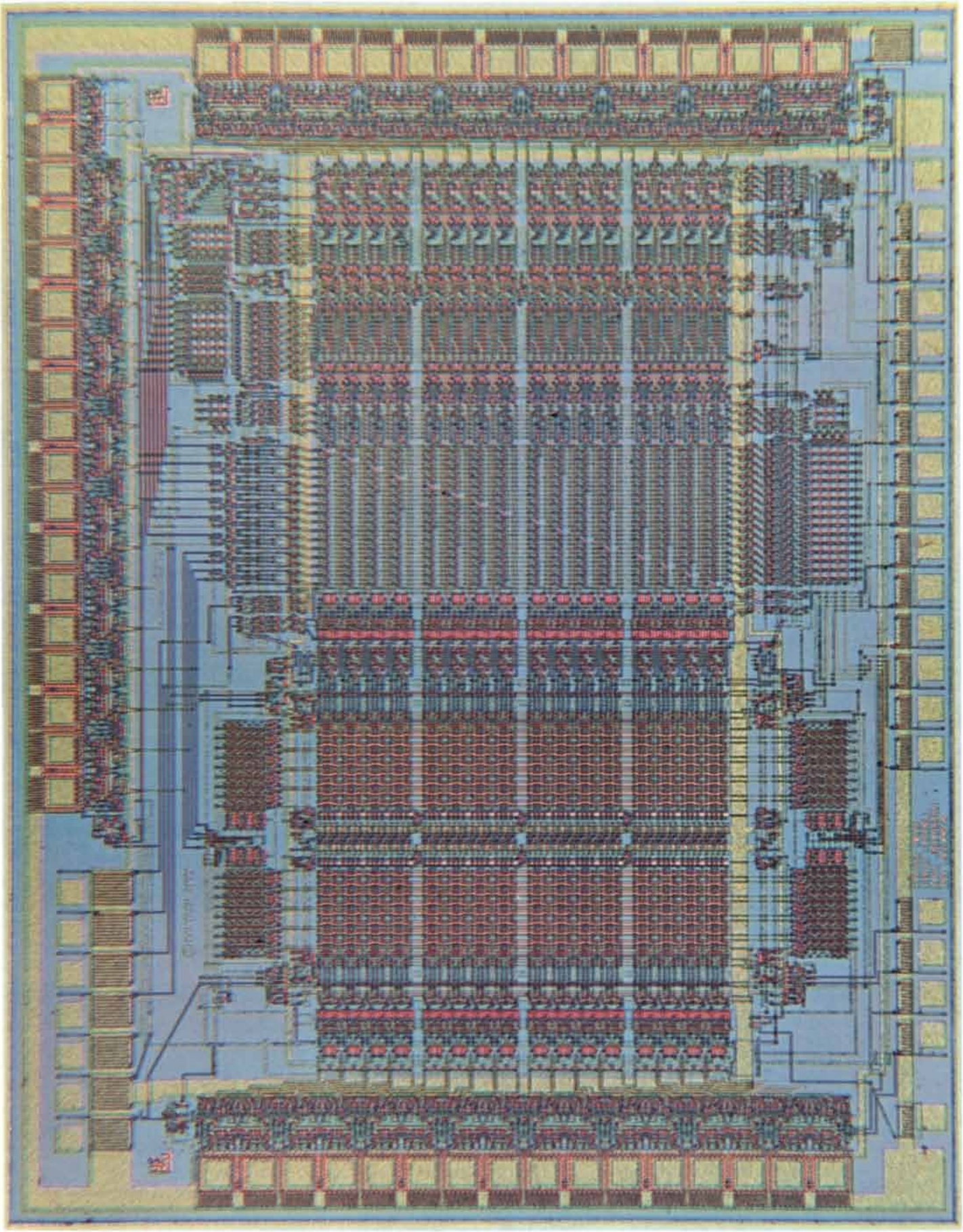
That is so in part because anyone who thinks of a computer as a logical machine that performs logical, numerical or algebraic operations on data will naturally think of the machine in terms of the mathematical notation relevant to those fields. In such notations the symbol x written in one place on the page is identical in meaning with the symbol x written in another place on the page. The idea that communication in space is required if such values are to be identical as represented in a computer storage device has no place in the notation. The notation itself focuses attention on the logical operations, reflecting the fact that human beings think most effectively about only one thing at a time. A mathematical proof is a sequence of steps we absorb over a period of time, and it is easiest to think of computing devices that also do only one thing at a time. The sequential approach to mathematics is not required inside a computer, but the mathematical approach we normally take to problems does not encourage us to think of approaches other than sequential ones for the solution of problems. Nearly all computers in operation today perform individual steps on individual items of data one after another in time sequence.

It was appropriate to ignore the costs of communication when logic elements were slow and expensive and wires were relatively fast and cheap. Sequential machines are appropriate to such technologies because they can be built with a minimum number of switching elements. We have been led—by natural inclination, by our accustomed notations for mathematics and by technology—to develop a style of computing machines and a body of computing theory both of which are rendered obsolete by integrated-circuit technology. We have been able to ignore the limitations placed by physical principles on communications inside computers because those communications did not slow down our operations appreciably and were only a small part of the cost of the machines we built. By making logic elements essentially free and leaving communication cost the dominant factor, integrated-circuit technology forces us into a revolution not only in the kinds of machines we build but also in their theoretical basis.

Developing a new theoretical basis

"OM" CIRCUIT, an experimental microprocessor designed by the authors at the California Institute of Technology, is notable for its high degree of regularity, which makes it possible to pack more logic and memory functions on the chip. The main body of the chip (omitting the communication interfaces at top and bottom) is made up of 16 nearly identical columns in four groups of four; each column represents one bit of a 16-bit computer. About 40 percent of the chip (*lower portion*) is memory; middle 20 percent is the "shifter" section and top 20 percent is the arithmetic section.

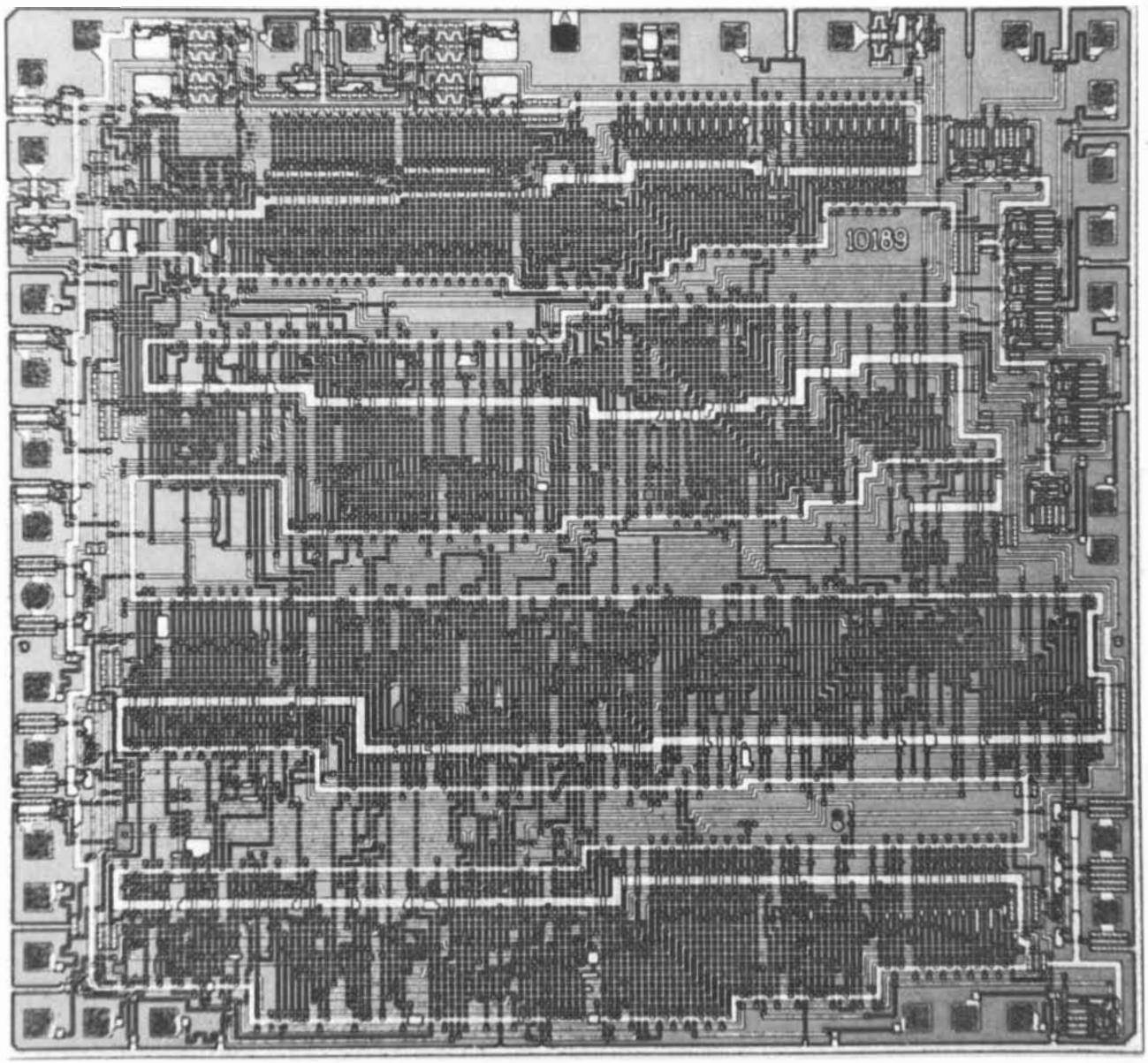
© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC



© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

for computer science will not be easy; indeed, the task has been put off in part because it is very difficult to combine notions of logic with notions of topology, time, space and distance, as a new theory will require. In this article we shall outline some of the elements such a theory must include, first by examining the inadequacies of a simple existing theory applicable to small logic networks. Then we shall see how the changes in the relative costs of wiring and logic must change the nature of the computers built in the future. Finally we hope to outline some elements we feel belong in a theory of computation appropriate to the new structures. Such a theory will be quite unlike the present basis of computer science, and so we feel justified in describing as revolutionary the effect of integrated-circuit technology both on the design of computing machines and on the intellectual framework within which such machines are exploited.

Most computer-science curriculums include a course in switching theory, even though it is largely irrelevant to the present-day practice of computer design. Switching theory, which was developed to help design the relay-operated switching networks of automatic telephone systems, provided guides that enabled a designer to formulate a network with the minimum number of relays for accomplishing some given logical operation. It has been extended to the design of networks of newer kinds of logic elements, for example a logic network with



INTERCONNECTIONS among the logic elements of an integrated circuit have become more expensive than the elements themselves. Moreover, as the complexity of a randomly wired array of elements increases, the interconnections become longer and more numerous. Even at modest levels of complexity "wiring" occupies most of the available space on an integrated-circuit chip. This is a comparatively simple integrated circuit dating from about 1971. Note that the linear connectors running between active elements occupy most of the space.

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

IF YOU'RE NOT SUBSCRIBING TO CREATIVE COMPUTING, YOU'RE NOT GETTING THE MOST OUT OF YOUR COMPUTER.

No computer magazine gives you more applications than we do! Games. Puzzles. Sports simulations. CAI. Computer art. Artificial intelligence. Needlepoint. Music and speech synthesis. Investment analysis. You name it. We've got it. And that's just the beginning!

Whatever your access to computer power—home computer kit, mini, time-sharing terminal—*Creative Computing* is on your wavelength. Whatever your computer application—recreation, education, business, household management, even building control—*Creative Computing* speaks your language.

Read through pages of thoroughly documented programs with complete listings and sample runs. All made easy for you to use. Learn about everything from new software to microprocessors to new uses for home computers. And all in simple, understandable terms. And there's still more. *Creative Computing* discusses creative programming techniques like sort algorithms, shuffling and string manipulation to make your own programming easier and more efficient.

We can even save you time and money. Our extensive resource section is filled with all kinds of facts plus evaluations of hundreds of items. Including microcomputers, terminals, peripherals, software packages, periodicals, booklets and dealers. We also give you no-nonsense equipment profiles to help you decide which computer is best for you—before you spend money on one that isn't.

We've got fiction too. From the best authors in the field, like Asimov, Pohl and Clarke. Plus timely reviews of computer books, vendor manuals and government pamphlets. And so much more!

Isn't it about time you subscribed to *Creative Computing*? It's the smart way to get the most out of your computer.

Complete this coupon and mail it today. Or for fast response, call our toll-free hot line. (800) 631-8112. (In New Jersey call (201) 540-0485).

I want to get the most out of my computer.
Please enter my subscription to:

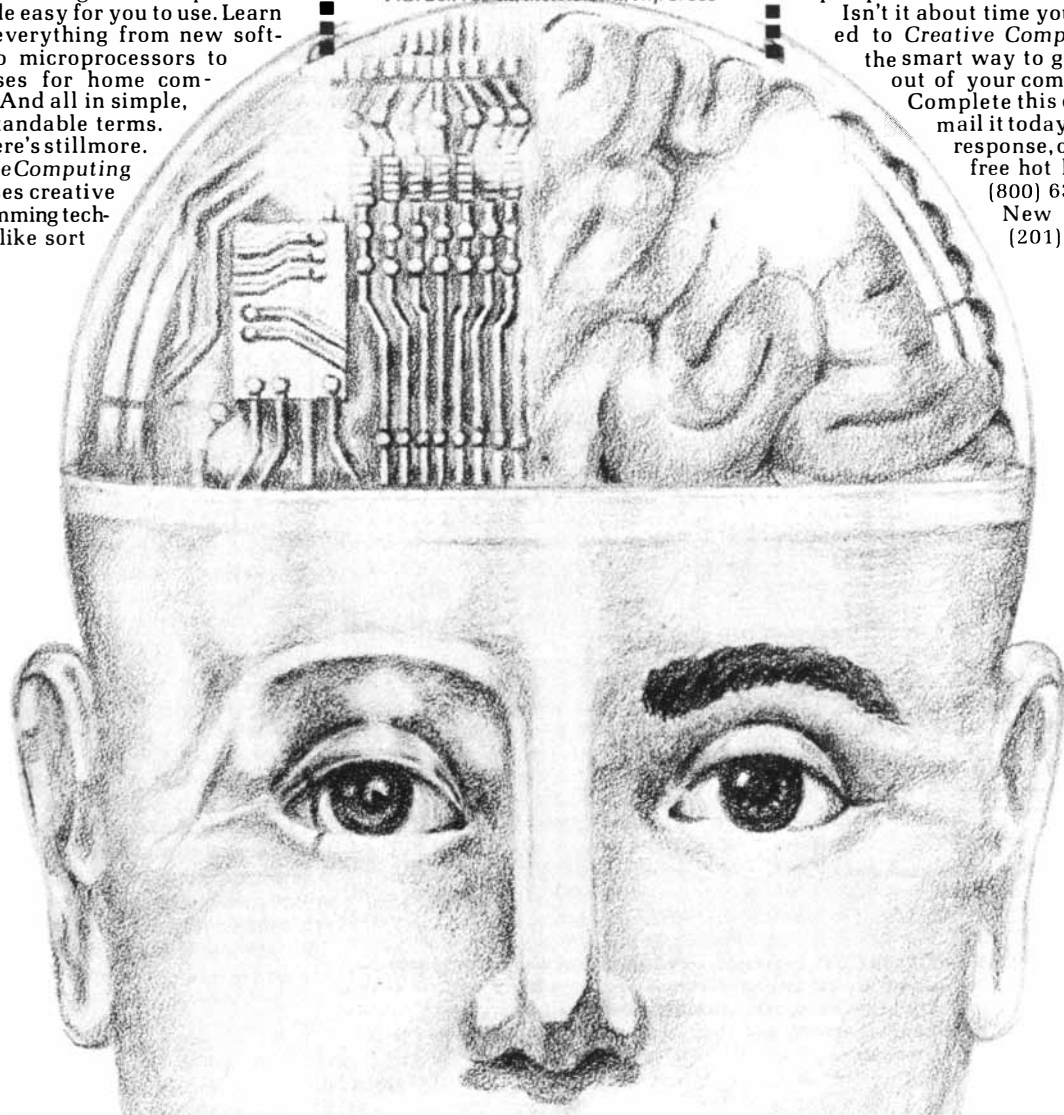
creative computing

Term	USA	Foreign Surface	Foreign Air
☐ 1-year	☐ $ 8	☐ $ 12	☐ $ 20
☐ 2-year	☐ $ 15	☐ $ 23	☐ $ 39
☐ 3-year	☐ $ 21	☐ $ 33	☐ $ 57
☐ Lifetime	☐ $300	☐ $400	☐ $600
☐ Vol. 1 Bound	☐ $ 10	☐ $ 12	☐ $ 15
☐ Vol. 2 Bound	☐ $ 10	☐ $ 12	☐ $ 15

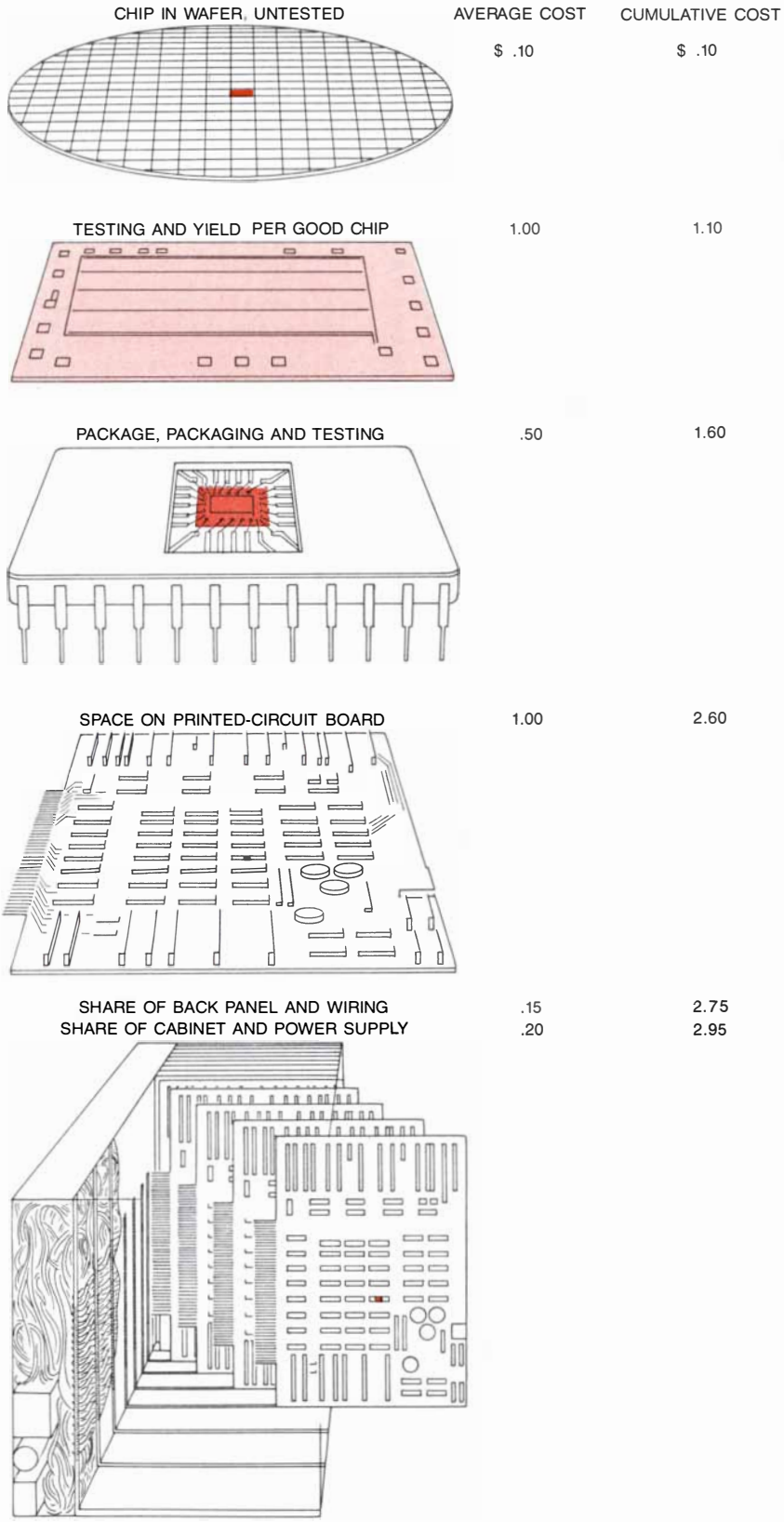
☐ New ☐ Renewal ☐ Gift
☐ Visa/Bank Americard ☐ Master Charge
Card No. _____
☐ Please bill me ($1.00 billing fee will be added; foreign orders must be prepaid)

Name _____
Address _____
City _____ State _____ Zip _____

Send to: Creative Computing, Atten: Shary
P.O. Box 789-M, Morristown, N.J. 07960



© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC



COST OF AN INTEGRATED CIRCUIT is a small part of the cost of a complete system. As is shown here, the cost of a single typical integrated-circuit die in a wafer is only 10 cents. Given about a 20 percent yield of good chips, after packaging and testing each good chip costs $1.60. Assuming that 100 chips are assembled on each of 20 printed-circuit boards, the cost per chip is almost doubled by each chip's share of board, back panel, cabinet and power supply.

the minimum number of conventional logic gates.

There is no guarantee, however, that such a minimum-number network will occupy the minimum space in an integrated circuit or perform its task in the minimum time. Integrated-circuit designers find they can often add transistors to a design and thereby save space or time, because adding to the minimum number may simplify the pattern of conductors in the design and may speed up its operation. Switching theory does minimize the number of switching components, but it ignores the cost and delay of the communication paths. In today's technology the area of a circuit devoted to communication between elements usually far exceeds the area devoted to switching elements, and communication delays are much longer than logic delays. What is needed, therefore, is a theory that minimizes the cost of computational tasks, considering not only the cost in area and time of the switching elements but also the much larger area and time costs of transporting data from one place to another. Because switching theory as it is known today is based on an obsolete cost function it is largely useless for the design of integrated circuits.

Switching theory is even less useful at the level of design where one is combining integrated circuits into a larger system. In most cases it costs much more to test, package and interconnect integrated circuits than to manufacture the circuits themselves. These costs are largely independent of the particular function of the circuit involved. Even if the cost of the circuits is ignored, communication from one integrated-circuit chip to another is much slower than communication on a single chip. Given a catalogue of standard circuits, there is great motivation to introduce more complex integrated circuits because fewer of them are required, so that the large cost of mounting and interconnecting them is reduced. In fact, designers often specify integrated circuits containing superfluous elements because there is no cost advantage to eliminating the unneeded switching elements. Switching theory has nothing to say about these important issues of cost and speed.

Although the cost of communication has so far found no real place in the theoretical results of computer science, it does play a role in the thinking of practical designers. Seymour Cray, the designer of many of the most powerful computers, cites the "thickness of the mat" and "getting rid of the heat" as the two major problems of machine design. It is obvious that controlling the geometry of the interconnections is essential. If connections can be made to follow regular patterns, they can be produced by less expensive methods and can also be

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

MORE gears—with 5-speed transmission standard or optional automatic.*

MORE rubber—with wider 185 steel belted radials.

MORE stability—with a front end spoiler.

MORE interior selections—with tartan plaid or brushed solid nylon broadcloth.

MORE control—with a lower suspension.

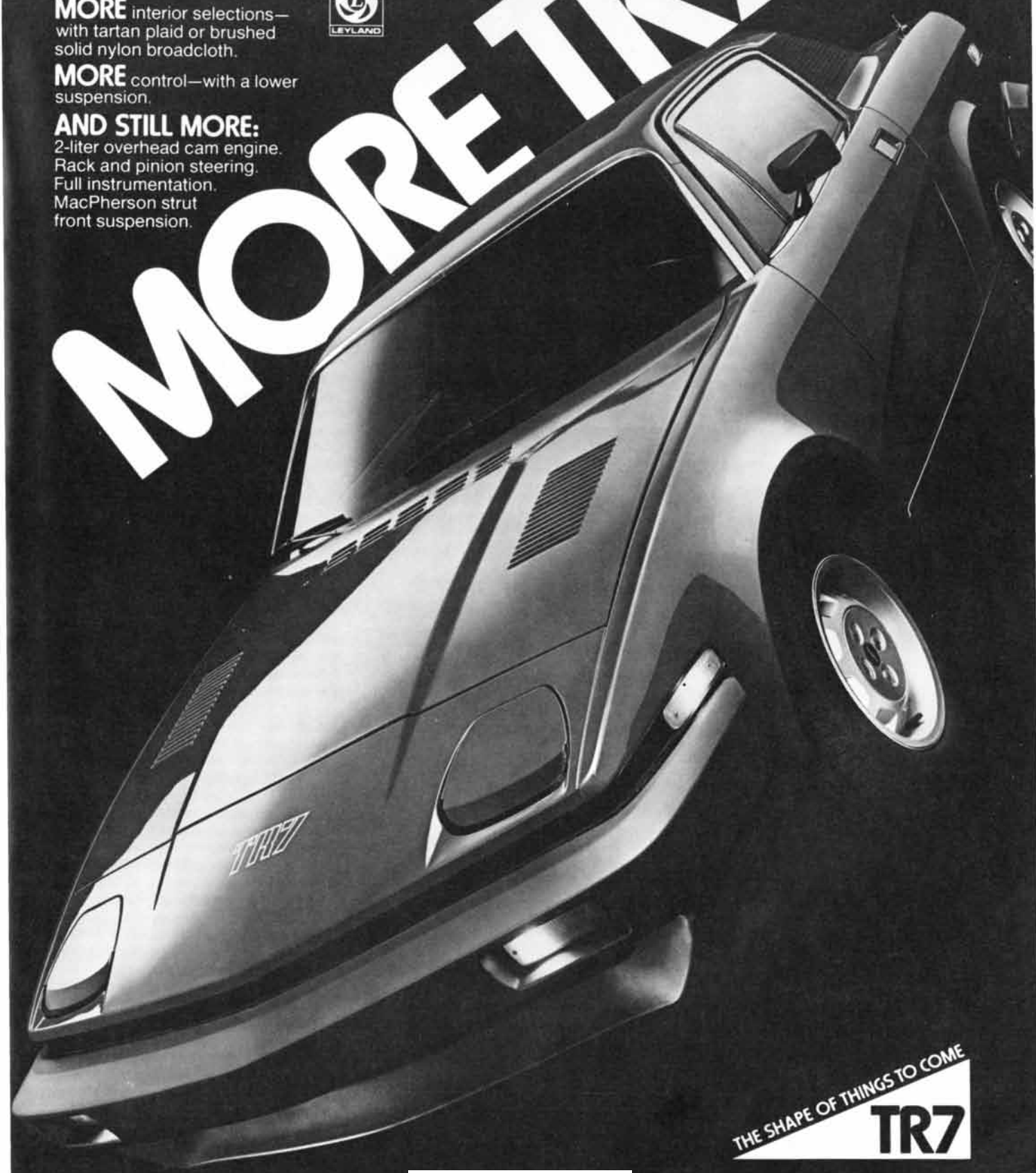
AND STILL MORE:
2-liter overhead cam engine.
Rack and pinion steering.
Full instrumentation.
MacPherson strut front suspension.

Power-assisted front disc brakes.
A cockpit wider than a Corvette or a Z-Car's.
Triumph TR7. The shape of things to come.
Now with more.

BRITISH LEYLAND **TRIUMPH**

MORE TR7

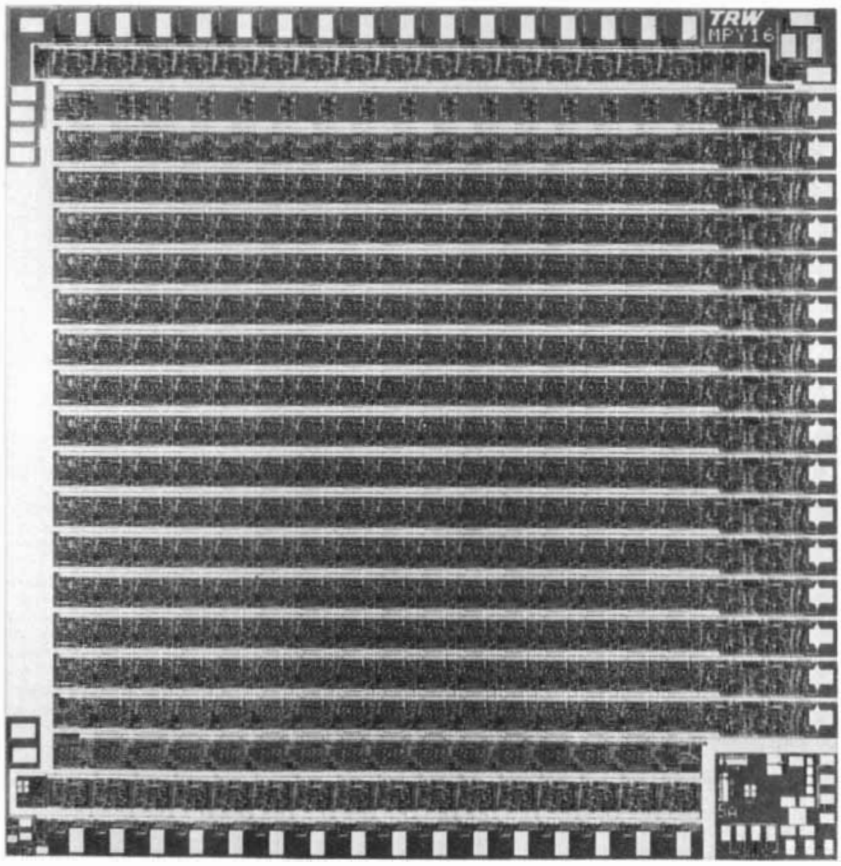
For the name of your nearest Triumph dealer call: 800-447-4700. In Illinois call: 800-322-4400.
British Leyland Motors Inc., Leonia, N.J. 07605.
*Automatic transmission not available in California.



THE SHAPE OF THINGS TO COME
TR7

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

THICK MAT OF WIRES covers the back panel of a large general-purpose computer, in this case the Cray Research, Inc., CRAY-1. Moving data over the wires takes time and costs money, and the thickness of the mat makes repairs difficult. Arranging elements of a computer so that wires are all parallel would greatly reduce the complexity and thickness of the mat.



REGULARITY is a characteristic of memory circuits and of certain arithmetic circuits, such as this 16-bit multiplier array made by TRW Inc. The chip, about .28 inch square, contains more than 18,000 transistors and resistors. Regularity makes for high logic-element density.

made to occupy less space and so be faster.

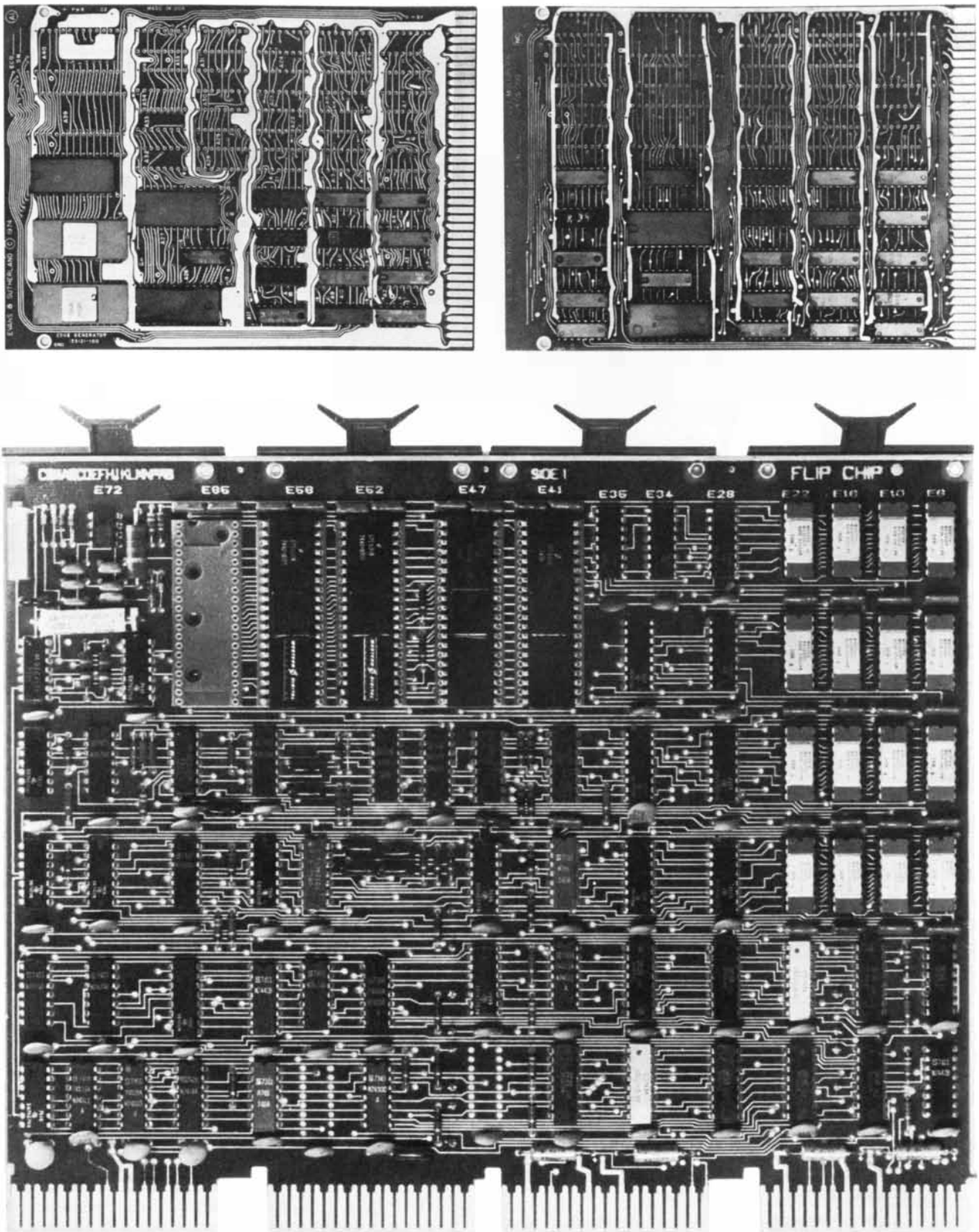
If the geometry of interconnection paths is not carefully controlled, the space required for them grows more than linearly as the number of logic elements to be connected is increased. This nonlinear growth comes about because bigger systems require more wires, which are on the average also longer. Because the interconnection paths grow both in number and in length the total area or volume devoted to communication becomes disproportionately larger: to interconnect twice as many randomly placed devices requires four times as much communication space. To accommodate greater wiring space larger printed circuit boards must have wider spacing between components than small boards have; Los Angeles suffers more from freeway congestion than Plains, Ga., does.

Not only do longer communication paths occupy a disproportionate amount of space but also they function more slowly than short ones. That is because signals traveling even at the speed of light take some time to travel down a path and also because longer paths store more energy. (Inside integrated circuits the speed limit set by the speed of light is not yet an important issue because the distances are short compared with the switching times of the logic elements; the energy-storage delays, however, are important.) Before a signal path can be switched from one electrical state to another, the energy stored in the path must be removed and converted into heat. One must either design a larger driving circuit to provide for the larger power required to switch long wires quickly or suffer the delays of passing the larger amounts of energy through a less powerful driver. More powerful drivers must themselves be driven, and they are therefore not only larger in area but also inherently slower than small drivers.

Moreover, the heat generated by the more powerful drivers must be dissipated in some structure, which itself occupies space. It is quite possible that the signaling energies required in a given technology and the size of the structures provided to dissipate heat may set an upper limit to the complexity of the systems that can be built in that technology. Above such a limit the increase in wire length required to provide the space to house what is required to drive longer wires may exceed the original increase in length of wires that was made possible by the larger drivers! There is so far no theory addressing the limits to speed and complexity that may be imposed by this possibility.

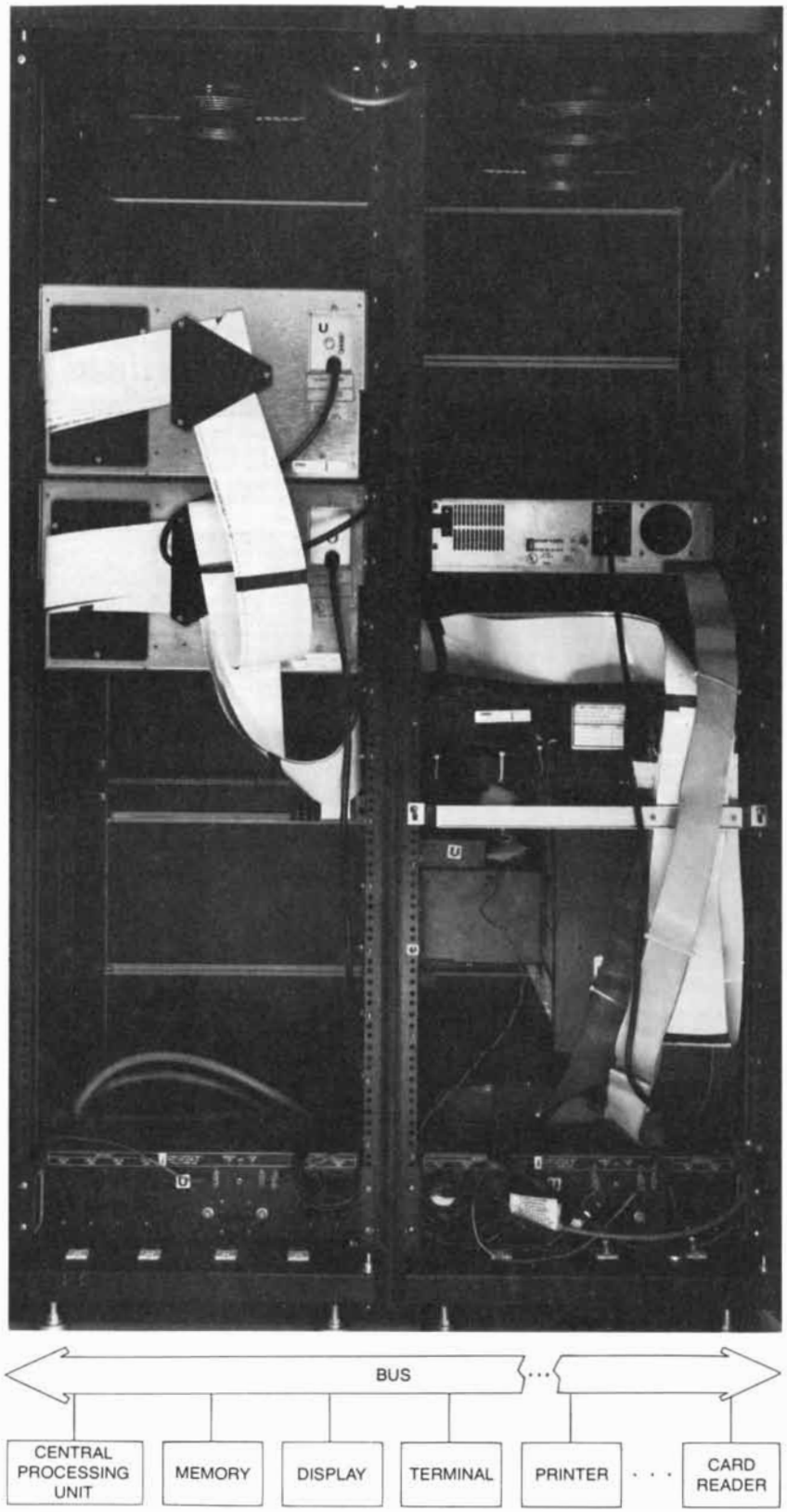
The disproportionate growth of interconnections can be avoided by building

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC



PRINTED-CIRCUIT BOARDS can also be designed to minimize the preponderance of communication paths. Regularity decreases the amount of wiring (*top*). A five-by-seven-inch board of irregular logic made by the Evans & Sutherland Computer Corporation (*top left*) is compared with a more regular memory board of the same size (*top right*). The larger the board, the greater the preponderance of wiring. An 8½-by-10-inch board, the Digital Equipment Corporation's LSI-11 microcomputer, shows how much area is occupied on a conventional large board by communication paths (*bottom*). If the close packing characteristic of the regularly wired memory circuits that can be seen in the top right portion of board could have been attained throughout the board, the board would have been only half as big.

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC



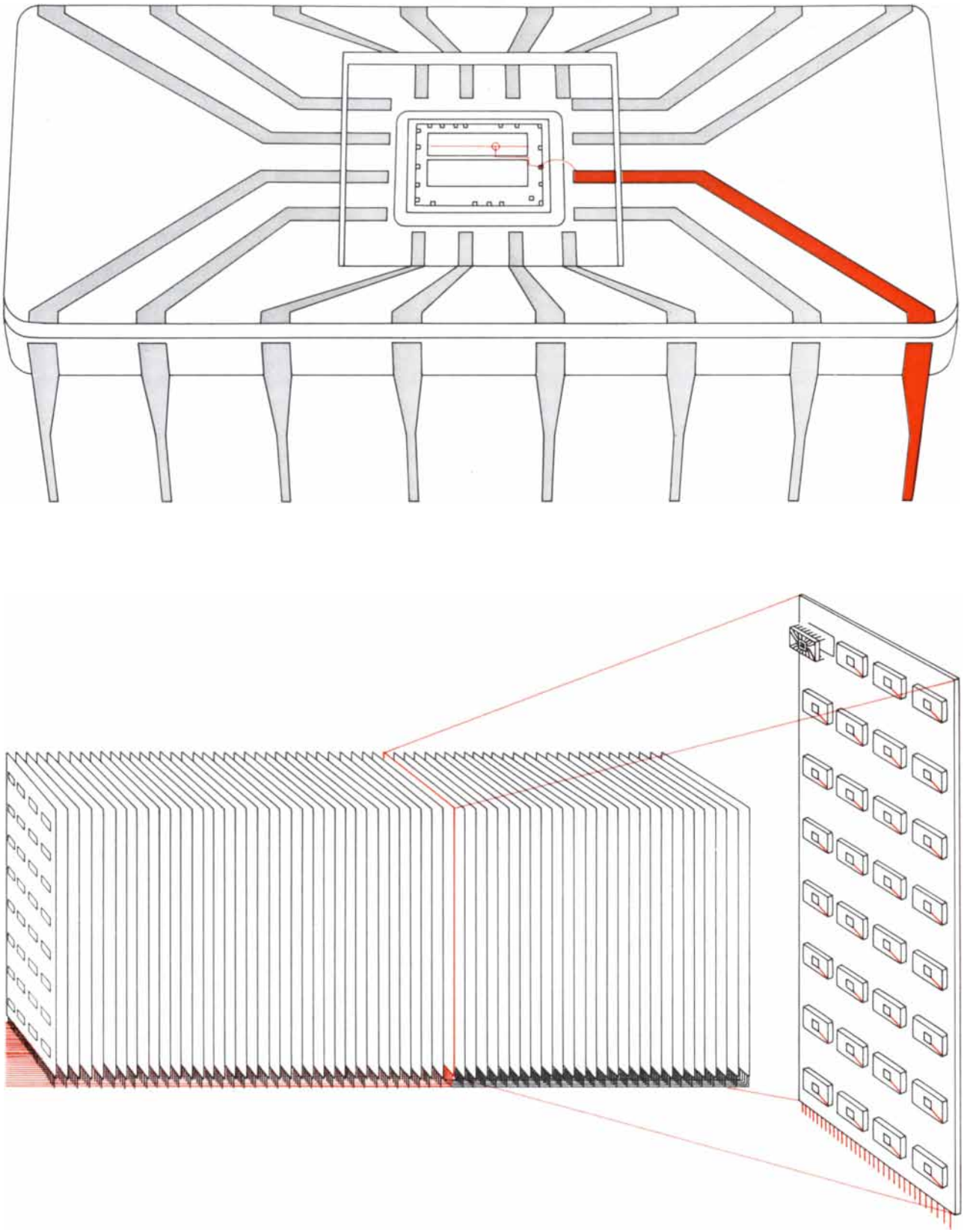
COMMUNICATION "BUS" connects a computer's central processing unit to memory modules and other peripheral units (*top*). It is typically a flat cable of between 20 and 100 long wires that are tapped as they pass through each of the connected units. Photograph shows Digital Equipment Corporation's UNIBUS (*wide, light-colored flat cable*) connecting two disk memory units (*upper left*) with central processing unit (*lower right*) of DEC's PDP-11/40 computer.

very regular patterns of interconnection. There is already a trend toward very regular wiring patterns for integrated circuits and the interconnections among circuits. Read-only memories, for example, implement complex and irregular logic functions with a simple and very regular integrated circuit pattern. This regularity is desirable not only because it makes the specification of such functions simple but also because it may be the most efficient layout from an interconnection point of view. We believe regular patterns of wiring will play an increasing role in future designs. In part, computer science will become the study of the regularity of these structures.

The architecture of a typical computer includes a single logical processing element that communicates with a random-access memory through 20 to 100 long wires combined into a "bus," which, like its namesake, provides public transportation for data but is actually more like a telephone party line. The communication bus is often a flexible cable 50 to 100 feet long. A signaling protocol is specified for the bus so that all the units to which it is connected communicate in a common way and avoid interfering with one another. The great advantage of a bus structure in a computer is that any unit connected to the bus can communicate directly with all other units. Moreover, the protocol and the bus structure may survive several generations of hardware development, so that a line of computing equipment can adopt new storage devices, new input-output units and even new processing elements. In addition, the number of switching elements devoted to communication in each unit on the bus is minimized because each unit needs to communicate with only the one bus to send messages anywhere.

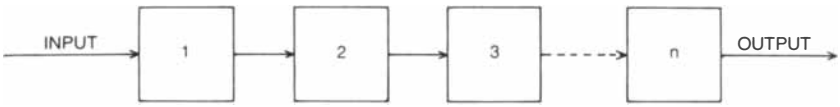
The drawback of the bus structure is that it provides a communication bottleneck. Consider a typical computer with, say, one million words (32 million bits) of integrated-circuit storage built out of 2,048 circuits that store some 16,000 bits each. Any one reference to memory can potentially sense the values of 128 bits on each of the 2,048 integrated circuits constituting the memory. Of these quarter-million bits to which access is obtained on the integrated circuits only 2,048 (one from each integrated circuit) are delivered outside the integrated-circuit package, and of these 2,048 only 32 are delivered over the communication bus to the logical processing unit of the computer. It is assumed that the communication bus connects the memory and the logical processing unit; we assert that in fact it separates them. Each memory access in a large computer wastes access to many thousands of bits

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

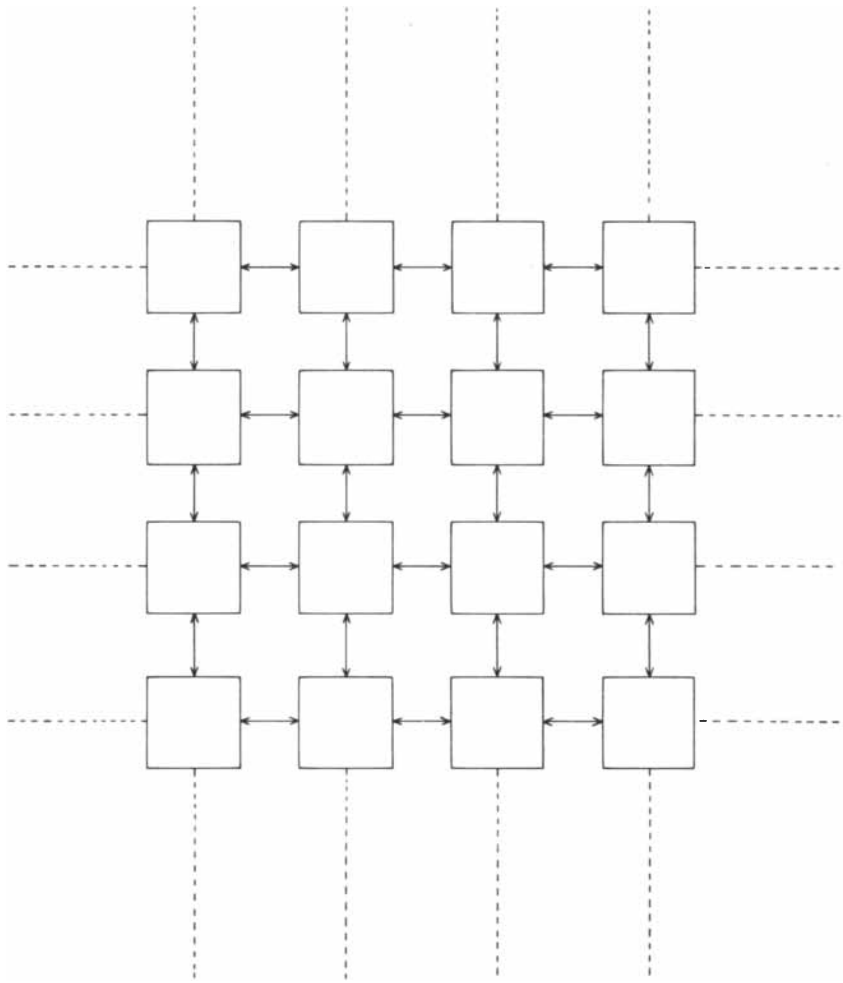


TYPICAL MEMORY CHIP has 16,384 bits arranged in a 128 × 128 array (*top*). An entire row of 128 bits can be accessed at one time, but a selector enables only a single bit to pass to an output pin (*dark color*). A typical memory system is made up of 2,048 such chips, say 64 groups of 32 (*bottom*). Only 32 chips can place their outputs on the 32 wires that join the bus to the central processor. Of the 262,144 (128 × 2,048) bits that moved less than a millimeter on each chip, only 2,048 moved three millimeters to get off their chip and only 32 moved a meter to the processor. In other words, the bus utilizes only about an eight-thousandth of the memory chips' available "bandwidth."

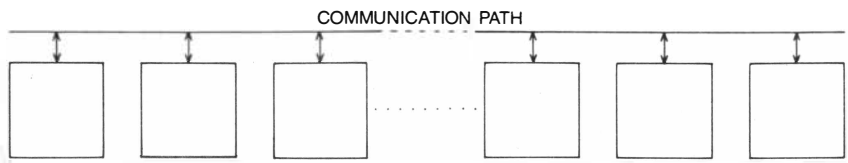
© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC



"PIPELINE" PROCESSOR is one of three kinds of parallel processor, illustrated on this page, that have been effective. In a pipeline processor data are passed along from one specialized processing element to the next, with each element performing a successive operation on the data. The pipeline is analogous to an assembly line: all operations are conducted simultaneously but not on the same material. The pipeline configuration is optimum as long as the same basic type of operation is to be performed; it is less effective when the operations are variable.



ARRAY PROCESSOR is effective when much identical processing is to be done on many items of data. All the processors receive the same instructions, like a company of soldiers drilling "by the numbers." The limitation here is that individual computations must depend only on the data in a particular element and its immediate neighbors. This can be effective, however, in operations such as weather simulation, where local atmospheric interactions are significant.



INDEPENDENT PROCESSORS connected by a communication path constitute the most flexible arrangement for parallel execution of different operations. Tasks are given to each processor as is required, as they are to the individual workers in a cottage industry. The system works best when each element can do much processing and need not communicate much with other elements; bottlenecks develop when tasks require elements to wait for the party line.

by selecting only a few bits to send over the memory bus to the central processing unit. This waste is tolerated for two reasons. First, it simplifies our conception of the machine and matches it to our natural inclination to do one thing at a time. Second, it provides a single, simple interface between various parts of the machine.

We pay a high price for this convenience. In an age when memories and logical processing elements were made by different technologies, we had little choice. Now, however, with the silicon integrated circuit dominating both the memory and the logical processing tasks in computers, there is little justification for continuing to accept such waste. Now it is possible to distribute the memory bus over many thousands of integrated circuits, in effect giving each logic element the memory it needs by moving information less than a millimeter from memory to processing facilities located together in the same integrated circuits on each of many thousands of chips. We are just beginning to explore systems with this unconventional architecture. To employ them effectively we must learn how to match the complexities of given problems to the simple fixed patterns of communication provided in the systems we can build.

Machines in which large numbers of logic elements operate simultaneously are called parallel processors. (To some extent, to be sure, every computing machine is a parallel processor. The separate bits that together represent a number are moved simultaneously on parallel communication paths; binary addition is performed by an adder circuit that operates on all the bits of the number at once; multiplication is performed either by sequential addition or, in faster models, by including a number of separate adder circuits and operating them in parallel. Levels of parallelism above basic arithmetic, however, are rare in today's computers.) The simplest form of real parallel processing now available has a few independent processors operating on a common memory; a typical large computing system has from two to a few dozen processors at work. Typically, however, these processors serve quite independent functions and their very existence may be hidden from the user. For example, a separate processor may be involved in communication with the user's keyboard, in operating magnetic-tape or magnetic-disk input-output units or in scheduling the resources of the central processor. Such "multiprocessing" systems have little impact on the user's algorithms.

Three kinds of systems that can truly be classed as parallel processors have been built. In one of them, the "pipeline" processor, several processing elements,

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

With your permission

We will send you a Helpful Monthly Guide to Human Behavior...

You will receive numerous surveys, studies, and other fascinating reports on such topics as—

- Family and marital planning
- Sexual fantasies
- Infant development
- Racial characteristics
- Drug addiction
- Love and courtship
- IQ analyses
- Criminal psychology
- Games students play
- Sociological trends
- Physiology of erotica

It is an understatement to say you will find this monthly guide valuable. Indeed, it will become an extension of your formal education—literally a graduate course in living—and you may enroll in it for an annual fee of only $6.97 or just under 60¢ a month.

It would be understandable if you were suspicious of this offer. After all, for 60¢ you might not expect much—perhaps a 4-page pamphlet printed in the cheapest way. But that is NOT the way it is, by any means.

Actually, each issue averages about 120 pages, and is handsomely produced with many full-color illustrations on heavy white paper.

Probably you have already seen this unique monthly guide—and know it by its name, PSYCHOLOGY TODAY.

You are cordially invited to accept an introductory subscription to PSYCHOLOGY TODAY now at a special rate for new subscribers of one year (12 issues) for only $6.97—a $5.03 discount from the regular price.

Use the attached $5.03 voucher to order. If it has already been torn out, you may use the coupon at right.

SPECIAL OFFER!

Use attached $5.03 voucher like cash - save a big 41% on trial order to PSYCHOLOGY TODAY!

Do you wonder why we give you this voucher? Needless to say, we aren't exactly altruistic. There is method in our madness, and it is based on the fact that you read *this* magazine. This tells us something about you. It tells us you are probably better educated than average, inquisitive, and would no doubt enjoy PSYCHOLOGY TODAY . . . but may not be willing to try it.

We're Out To Get You

So many people have the wrong idea about PSYCHOLOGY TODAY, we decided to give you a special incentive—a $5.03 credit—in hope of providing you with an irresistible temptation to find out for yourself what PSYCHOLOGY TODAY is really like. And what IS it like? Well, one way to describe it is to tell you what it is *not*:

It is not a scientific journal—though most of its contributors are scientists. It is not a self-improvement magazine—though your business life, your family life, and your sex life may all be better for reading it. It is not an egghead magazine—though one in four readers has at least two college degrees. It isn't pap nor pop—though a college education isn't necessary to understand it.

Wait till you see! PSYCHOLOGY TODAY will open your eyes to new ways of looking at people, and will help you understand your friends, family, colleagues, and (most important) yourself.

You Get Best Price Available

PSYCHOLOGY TODAY's regular subscription rate is $12.00 a year, but this special trial offer for new subscribers slashes the price to only $6.97—just under 60¢ a copy.

Pay now or later, whichever you prefer, but be sure to order promptly, because we don't know how long we can hold down the price. Paper and printing costs keep rising, and you know what is happening to postage. So take advantage of this offer now, while it is still in effect.

psychology today

P.O. Box 2990, Boulder, Colorado 80322

Gentlemen: My $5.03 credit voucher was torn out of this magazine before I got it, but please enter my PSYCHOLOGY TODAY order anyway—

☐ 1 year (12 issues) $6.97 . . . $5.03 off regular subscription price

☐ 2 years (24 issues) $13.87 . . . save even more

☐ Payment enclosed

☐ Bill me

Name (please print full name)

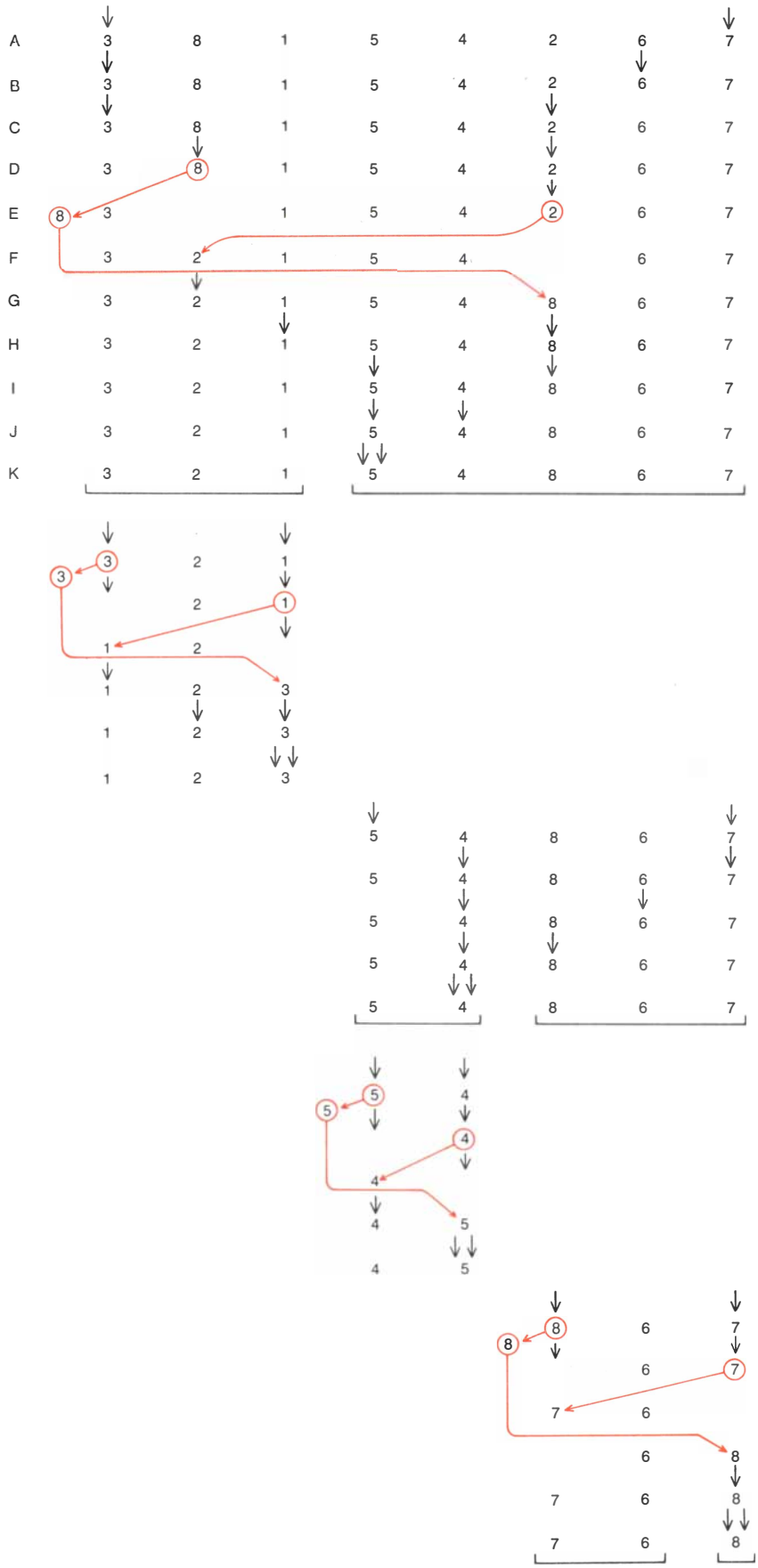
Address Apt

City State Zip

PROMPT DELIVERY: Your first issue will be shipped 30-60 days from receipt of order. CANADIAN RESIDENTS: Add $3.00 for postage per year. OUTSIDE U.S. & CANADA: Add $5.00 for postage per year—cash orders only, (payable in U.S. currency.)

☐ 8E00 Send me 1 year of POPULAR ELECTRONICS for $6.99. 8E42

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC



each of which is specialized for some particular task, are connected in sequence. The work to be processed flows through these processors much as workpieces move along an assembly line. Communication is simple because information flows along a fixed pathway and has only a short distance to move between processing steps. A pipeline processor gains efficiency for the same reasons an assembly line does: functions are specialized and communications are minimized. Pipelining enables the arithmetic sections of very fast computers to process sequences of numbers with a high overall speed. Pipeline processors are less effective where the tasks to be performed are highly variable.

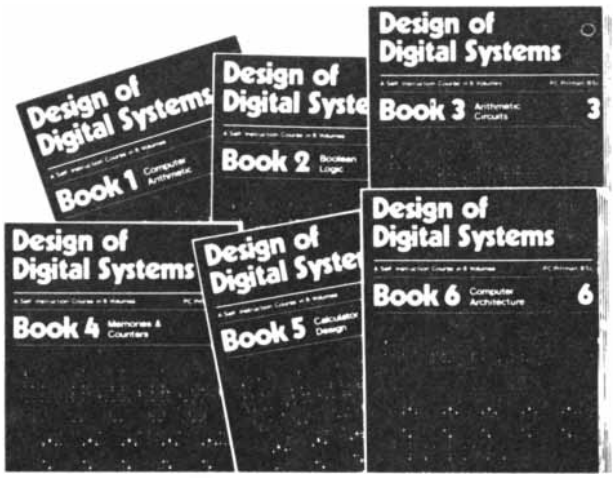
In a second form of parallel processor many identical processing elements are brought to bear on separate parts of a problem under the control of a single instruction sequence. Several such machines have been built, of which the largest and best known is ILLIAC IV. A modern parallel processor of this type was proposed at a recent Rand Corporation workshop on hydrodynamic simulations. In this hypothetical machine there would be 10,000 processors, each with arithmetic capability and memory, each built on a single integrated circuit and all under the command of a common instruction device. All the processors would execute commands in rigid lock-step. The processors would be arranged in a square array, 100×100, and each would communicate data only with adjacent processors to its north, south, east and west in the array, with relatively slow bit-serial communication on a single wire in each direction. We estimate that such a machine would take about five microseconds to communicate a single 64-bit number from one processor to its neighbor, which is very slow by today's standards. Of course, it could communicate 10,000

"QUICKSORT" is a typical sequential algorithm for arranging numbers in ascending order. Numbers pointed to by arrows are compared with the number farthest to the left. If the pointer farthest to the right indicates a number greater than the reference value (*row A*), it is advanced to the left until it rests on a number less than the reference value (*C*). Then the left pointer is advanced to the right until it rests on a number greater than the reference value (*D*). At that stage the numbers pointed to are interchanged (*E–G*). The process is continued until the pointers rest on the same number (*K*); at that stage all numbers to right of pointers are greater than the reference value, and all numbers to left are less than or equal to it. The same algorithm is then applied to each subset; to complete the sorting illustrated here requires five more steps than are shown. To sort n numbers requires $n(\log_2 n)$ comparisons of numbers that may be stored in distant locations. The communication cost is the dominant cost of executing the algorithm.

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

Understanding Digital Electronics

New teach-yourself courses



Design of Digital Systems is written for the engineer seeking to learn more about digital electronics. Its six volumes — each 11-1/2" x 8-1/4" are packed with information, diagrams and questions designed to lead you step-by-step through number systems and Boolean algebra to memories, counters and simple arithmetic circuits, and finally to a complete understanding of the design and operation of calculators and computers.

The contents of Design of Digital Systems include:

Book 1 Octal, hexadecimal and binary number systems; conversion between number systems; representation of negative numbers; complementary systems; binary multiplication and division.
Book 2 OR and AND functions; logic gates; NOT, exclusive-OR, NAND, NOR and exclusive-NOR functions; multiple input gates; truth tables; De Morgans Laws; canonical forms; logic conventions; Karnaugh mapping; three-state and wired logic.
Book 3 Half adders and full adders; subtractors; serial and parallel adders; processors and arithmetic logic units (ALUs); multiplication and division systems.
Book 4 Flip flops; shift registers; asynchronous and synchronous counters; ring, Johnson and exclusive-OR feedback counters; random access memories (RAMs) and read only memories (ROMs).
Book 5 Structure of calculators; keyboard encoding; decoding display data; register systems; control unit; program ROM; address decoding; instruction sets; instruction decoding; control program structure.
Book 6 Central processing unit (CPU); memory organization; character representation; program storage; address modes; input/output systems; program interrupts; interrupt priorities; programming; assemblers; computers; executive programs; operating systems and time sharing.

Digital Computer Logic and Electronics is designed for the beginner. No mathematical knowledge other than simple arithmetic is assumed, though the student should have an aptitude for logical thought. It consists of four volumes — each 11-1/2" x 8-1/4" — and serves as an introduction to the subject of digital electronics. Everyone can learn from it — designer, executive, scientist, student, engineer.

Contents include: Binary, octal and decimal number systems; conversion between number systems; AND, OR, NOR and NAND gates and inverters; Boolean algebra and truth tables; De Morgans Laws; design of logic circuits using NOR gates; R-S and J-K flip flops; binary counters, shift registers and half adders.

In the years ahead the products of digital electronics technology will play an important part in your life. Calculators and digital watches are already commonplace. Tomorrow a digital display could show your automobile speed and gas consumption; you could be calling people by entering their name into a telephone which would automatically look up their number and dial it for you.

These courses were written by experts in electronics and learning systems so that you could teach yourself the theory and application of digital logic. Learning by self-instruction has the advantages of being faster and more thorough than classroom learning. You work at your own pace and must respond by answering questions on each new piece of information before proceeding.

After completing these courses you will have broadened your career prospects and increased your fundamental understanding of the rapidly changing technological world around you.

The six volumes of Design of Digital Systems cost only: **$19.88**

And the four volumes of Digital Computer Logic and Electronics cost only: **$14.88**

But if you buy both courses, the total cost is only: **$29.90**

a saving of over: **$5.00**

SEVEN-DAY MONEY-BACK GUARANTEE: If you are not satisfied with your Cambridge course, return it within 7 days for a full refund.

To order your books, complete the order form below and send it together with your check or money order to GFN Industries, Inc., 6 Commercial Street, Hicksville, N.Y. 11801.

To: GFN INDUSTRIES, INC.
6 COMMERCIAL STREET, HICKSVILLE, NY 11801

Please send me:
___ Sets of Design of Digital Systems $19.88_____
___ Sets of Digital Computer Logic & Electronics $14.88_____
___ Sets of both courses $29.90_____
Sales tax (N.Y. residents) _____
Shipping and handling $2.50 per set _____
Enclosed is check/mo (payable to GFN Industries, Inc.)

Total $_____

Name _____

Address _____

City/State/Zip _____

Prices include overseas surface mail postage. SA 9B

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

33 Lumber Samples in 1 Lumber Sample Pack.

We've put together a selection of cabinet lumber that we think will satisfy anyone who enjoys working with wood. And to help introduce our service to you, we've put a sample of each of our fine cabinet woods into one sample pack.

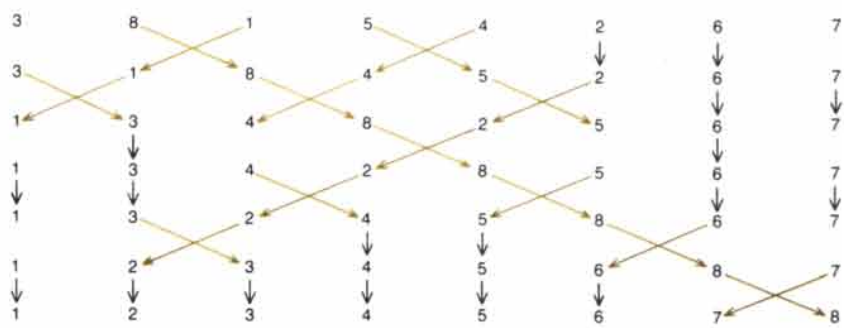
Now, you can compare Ash with Benge, Birch, Brazilian Tulip, Bubinga, Cherry, Wormy Chestnut, Coco Bola, Ebony, Ekki, Green Heart, Holly, East Indian Laurel, Hondouras Mahogany, Hard Maple, Soft Maple, Philippine Narra, English Brown Oak, White Oak (plain sliced), White Oak (rift cut), Padouk, Poplar, Purple Heart, Brazilian Rosewood, East Indian Rosewood, Hondouras Rosewood, Sugar Pine, Teak, American Walnut, French Walnut, Nicaraguan Walnut, Wenge and Zebra Wood.

These are not veneers but lumber samples ¼ by 2 by 6 inches.

☐ Send $18.00 for the Sample Pack and our new catalog.
☐ Send $1.00 for our catalog and a $2.00 credit on your first order.

Mail to

John Harra
WOOD & SUPPLY Co.
39 West 19 Street,
New York, N.Y. 10011



PARALLEL EXECUTION speeds the sorting task. In this algorithm adjacent members of number pairs are compared and are interchanged if the left-hand member is larger than the right-hand one. (In the first row a "pair" is defined as two numbers the left one of which is in an even column; in the second row the left member of each pair is in an odd column, and so on alternatingly.) Sorting the entire set requires $n^2/2$ comparisons, always of nearby numbers. Interchange sorting has been considered slow, but if comparison and interchange elements are attached to each memory element in integrated circuits, comparisons required for one sweep can be accomplished in one memory cycle and the sorting can be completed in n cycles at most.

such numbers in any one five-microsecond period. It would also take about five microseconds to perform a multiplication, but again it could perform 10,000 multiplications in that time, for an average rate of two billion multiplications per second. Machines such as this one are called array processors or single-instruction-stream, multiple-data-stream machines. They are most suitable for highly regular tasks such as hydrodynamic computations, numerical simulation of the weather and the inversion of large matrixes.

A third type of parallel processor is one where separate, independent processors under separate, self-contained control structures perform independent parts of the task, communicating data and instructions as is required. The advent of the microprocessor has, of course, suggested to many people the possibility of making systems consisting of thousands of separate microprocessors and having them work in concert on large tasks. Few such multiple-instruction-stream, multiple-data-stream machines have been built, and their properties are poorly understood.

The challenge in designing or using a parallel processor of any of these three types lies in discovering ways in which simple patterns of communication within the processor can be made to match the communication tasks inherent in the problem being solved. As integrated-circuit technology progresses there will be individual circuits of increasing speed and complexity. No relief is in sight, however, for the costs and delays inherent in communicating information from one circuit to another. To provide better communication will require more connections to the integrated circuit, a bigger housing for it, more or larger communication-driving circuits and consequently more heat dissipation. To obtain maximum performance from large computing systems programmers will have to face up to the limitations on communication that are imposed by physical reality. High-performance communication cannot be provided from every element to every other element; the programmer will have to match his formulation of the problem to the available communication paths. Although this is a difficult task, success in accomplishing it will provide unprecedented processing power.

We believe that just as an important part of today's computer science concerns itself with sequences of instructions distributed in time, so an important aspect of computer science in the future will be the study of sets of communications distributed in space. If processors can communicate only with their nearest neighbors, what kinds of arrangements are possible? Obviously one can wire processors in a linear string. Such processors can operate in the pipeline fashion described above, with each one passing data along to the next, or by performing common operations under command from a central instruction device. Such near-neighbor connections are highly effective for tasks such as sorting, in which the local communication of data suffices. Alternatively, one can connect processors in an array, with each processor having more than two neighbors. Such arrays have a basic structure much like the structure of a crystal, and various forms of local communication are possible. In our laboratory at the California Institute of Technology we are considering the properties of the different communi-

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

ENTER THE WORLD OF HOME AND SMALL BUSINESS COMPUTING

EXPLORE
INTERFACE AGE
MAGAZINE

★ MONTH AFTER MONTH LOOK TO **INTERFACE AGE MAGAZINE** FOR THE LATEST INFORMATION ON THE DYNAMIC WORLD OF PERSONAL COMPUTING.

- Use your personal computer for auto repair, work bench controller, teaching machine, central information bank and design test center.
- Control your small business with your own real-time accounting and inventory control system.
- Set your computer to turn sprinklers on and off, manage a household security system, feed your dog.
- Establish a recipe bank to plan daily meals and generate its own shopping list.
- Evaluate the stock market, set up gambling and probability programs. Evaluate odds on sporting events and horse racing.

★ ARTICLES RANGE FROM THE FUNDAMENTALS OF COMPUTERS TO LANGUAGES AND SYSTEM DESIGN. APPLICATIONS INCLUDE BOTH PROFESSIONAL AND NON-TECHNICAL.

★ READ **INTERFACE AGE** FOR THE LATEST ON NEW PRODUCT INFORMATION AND TECHNICAL BREAKTHROUGHS.

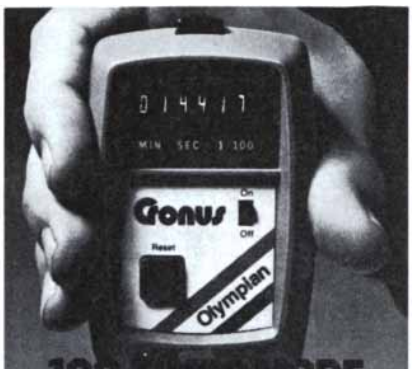
- May's issue included inside the FLOPPY ROM™ — a vinyl record which is played on a conventional phonograph to enter this month's program in your computer.

★ **ORDER YOUR SUBSCRIPTION NOW!**
12 Monthly Issues: $14 U.S., $16 Canada/Mexico, $24 International

Name _____
Address _____
City _____ State _____ Zip _____
☐ Check or M.O. (U.S. Funds drawn on U.S. Bank) ☐ Visa Card ☐ Master Charge
Acct No. _____ Exp. Date _____

Signature _____
Make checks payable to: **INTERFACE AGE MAGAZINE**, P.O. Box 1234, Cerritos, CA 90701

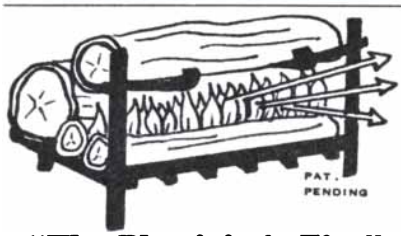
© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC



100 TIMES MORE ACCURATE THAN A MECHANICAL STOPWATCH.

The new Cronus Olympian electronic stopwatch gives precision timing to 1/100th second. Bright, six-digit LED display reads day or night. Unlike conventional stopwatches, the space age Cronus isn't affected by temperature, altitude, humidity or shock. Weighs only 4 oz. Complete with batteries, lanyard, year warranty, and 2-week return privilege. Send check for $29.95 plus $1.50 delivery (add $1.80 tax in CA). Credit card holders may order by phone toll-free for fastest delivery. Give yourself the world's finest stopwatch with no obligation. Today.

THE SHARPER IMAGE
260 California Street, San Francisco, CA 94111
CALL TOLL-FREE .800 648-5311
In Nevada call 800 992-5710



"The Physicist's Fire"

That is what Time Magazine called the fire made with the Texas Fireframe® grate. "A hot, even, slow-burning fire . . . easy to light . . . a hot fire in fifteen minutes." The key to this new discovery is the Texas Fireframe's two adjustable arms. They open up a red-hot, flaming log-furnace, so that radiant "heat streams into the room." (Time, Science Section, Dec. 22, 1975)

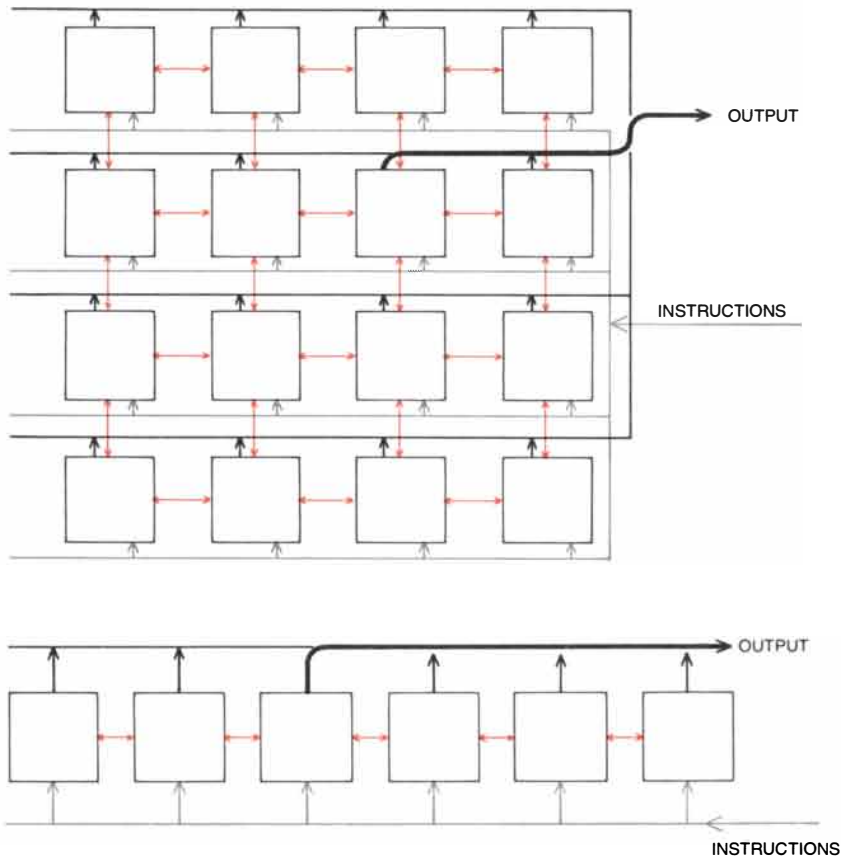
A letter in Money Magazine called the Texas Fireframe "a real heating plant, with none of the gimcrackery of tubes and blowers . . . central heating on only an hour and a half on the coldest days." (Olympia, Wash., March, 1977)

A gift that brings warmth, cheer, delight.
Welded, heavy, steel bars. Model U-25H: 25" front width, 21" back, 15" deep, 15" high. Model U-17H: 17" x 14" x 13 " x 13"

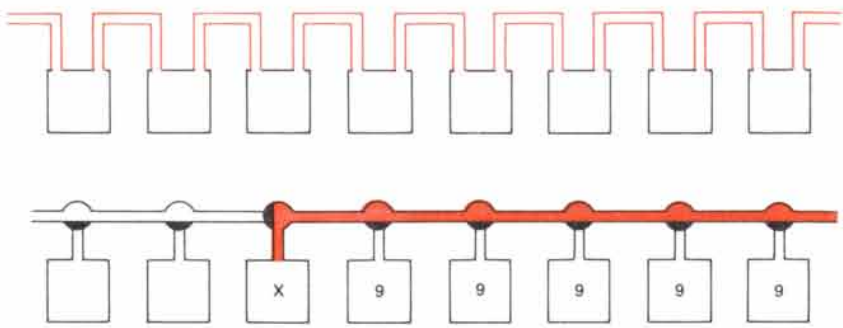
Please send____U-25H units @ $39.95 (30 lbs.)
____U-17H units @ $34.50 (21 lbs.)
Check for $_____enclosed (prices include tax and shipping in U.S.)
Name_____
Address_____
City_____State_____Zip_____
TEXAS FIREFRAME CO.
P.O. Box 3435 Austin, Texas 78764

cation paths that might be included in such structures.

Some years ago R. S. Gaines and C. Y. Lee, who were then working at Bell Laboratories, described three types of interconnection path. One kind of interconnection has connections that are common to all processors; it is effective for sending commands to the processors and for "broadcasting" to all processors certain values that may be important in the course of a computation. A second kind of communication path enables each processor to "talk" simultaneously



WIRES THAT INTERCONNECT MODULES of an array processor can be exploited in three distinct ways. One type of connection "broadcasts" information from a control center to all modules (*gray*). A second type (*black*) moves information from a selected module to a control destination, one module at a time (*heavy black line*). A third type passes data from each module to its nearest neighbor (*color*); in this case all the modules can "talk" at the same time.



TWO SUBTYPES of the third type of wiring are in common use. In one subtype (*top*) information passes into a module during one step, is processed and then passed on to the next module during the next step. The other subtype (*bottom*) is designed merely to "discover" something about a module (or a number of modules collectively) and to do so quickly: information is moved past a module unchanged during a single processing step, provided that the module is in a specified state. Such wiring might discover, for example, where the 9's are in a parallel adder.

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

LCD Watch Breakthrough...

MICRO-ALARM

Beep!

Beep!

a 6-digit 6 function LCD Alarm Watch for only $69.95!

At last, a constant readout (no buttons to push) precision quartz electronic watch with a built-in 24 hour alarm system.

A quiet revolution has been taking place in the electronic watch industry during the last few years. Push-button LED's are being replaced with continuous-display LCD watches; 4-digit displays are being replaced by 6-digit readouts. This year there will be many such LCD watches available.

However, Winthrop-Rogers prides itself on offering not only the most technologically-perfect products available, but also on introducing the most technologically-advanced products on the electronic market before they are readily available. Therefore, we are pleased to announce the most remarkable achievement in electronic watch technology to-date.

By combining the quartz-accuracy precision of the LCD watch with miniaturized alarm technology, we proudly introduce the first CONTINUOUS DISPLAY ALARM WATCH. A watch that may not be available from other sources for years can now be yours at a price hundreds of dollars less than you would imagine.

And now consider the incredible convenience of a portable alarm clock handsomely adorning your wrist at all times ! ! !

- *Never again missing an appointment because you lost track of time.*
- *Never again missing a plane or a train because you didn't relize how late it had become.*
- *Never again forgetting to make that all-important phone call.*
- *Never having to worry about forgetting to take important medication on time.*
- *Never worrying about waking up from that catnap, or at a hotel if your wake-up call isn't on time.*
- *Always being aware of when you should be coming or going or doing all that your hectic schedule demands – without devoting your valuable time to trying to remember it all.*

SET TO RING AT 7:55 A.M.

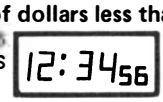
THE ALARM

The MICRO-ALARM has a 24 hour Alarm System, allowing you to set your watch to signal at any minute of the day or night (1,440 settings per day are possible). Once set, you need not be concerned about your next appointment or train, plane or phone call. The MICRO-ALARM will remember for you and remind you when you need to be reminded.

SNOOZE/REMIND CONTROL

For your convenience the MICRO-ALARM will give one short beep prior to its full alarm cycle, allowing you to turn it off without disturbing others. If not deactivated after the first short beep, the alarm will then beep for 15 continuous seconds. Push the deactivate button twice and the alarm is off. However, should you want a further reminder, then push the deactivate button only once and the alarm will go through its cycle again in exactly 5 minutes, allowing you to continue your current activity whether it be a snooze or phone call without fear of forgetting your next commitment.

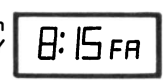
12:34 AND SECONDS



6-DIGIT LCD DISPLAY

The MICRO-ALARM has a 6-digit readout showing hours, minutes and seconds at a glance. Since the readout is by Liquid Crystal Display (LCD) and not by Light Emitting Diode (LED), no button has to be pushed; the time is continuously displayed! A built in night-light functions at the push of a button for reading in darkness.

AUGUST 15th FRIDAY



CALENDAR DISPLAY

Just one push of the control button converts the display into a 3-function calendar; displaying the month, date of the month, and day of the week. The remarkable memory built into the module knows each month and the number of days in that month and resets automatically on the first day of the new month.

QUARTZ ACCURACY

The MICRO-ALARM is extraordinarily accurate. Its module is manufactured by Hughes Aircraft Company, one of the world's foremost manufacturers of microelectronics, and is guaranteed accurate to within 3 minutes a year (averaging less than 15 seconds per month). You can depend on the accuracy year after year. There are no moving parts, so there is nothing to wear out or even require servicing. The result of this accuracy is that you can set your watch to the second.

THINK ABOUT IT!

Even if you have no consistant need for a watch with a built-in electronic alarm, the MICRO-ALARM is a valuable investment for its watch features alone:

1. It is the most up-to-date fully-functioning electronic watch available today.

2. It is accurate to +/- 15 seconds per month, and never has to be wound – put it on, and the time and date are correct even if it has been in a drawer for a month!

3. Its elegant styling will compliment any attire – and elicit compliments from your associates and friends.

4. At this price you can not find a better buy.

5. One day you will have a critical need to be reminded of a vital appointment – and then, having used the alarm function once, you will never again return to any other reminder system.

6. Why buy an ordinary watch when you can own a MICRO-ALARM?

ELEGANT MESH BRACELET

Each MICRO-ALARM comes with a 1 year limited warranty. You may order in your choice of goldtone or silvertone case. Each for only $69.95 plus $1.99 for shipping and handling. Each MICRO-ALARM comes with a matching, elegant, thin mesh bracelet, more handsome and much more practical than those "pull over-snap" type bracelets. This band adjusts comfortably and easily, eliminating cumbersome link adjustments.

15 DAY TRIAL

Wear the MICRO-ALARM for 15 days to assure yourself that this is no ordinary watch. If at the end of that time you are dissatisfied for any reason you may return it for a prompt refund, no questions asked.

To order by credit card please phone our 24-hour toll-free number:

800-325-6400 ask for Oper. 36

In Missouri: 800-342-6600 ask for Operator **36**

or mail the attached coupon with your payment and the MICRO-ALARM will be on its way to you.

Allow 3-4 Weeks For Delivery

Winthrop-Rogers Ltd. V5609

Box A69, 1135 Greenridge Rd., Buffalo Grove, Il 60090

Please send___ MICRO-ALARMS @ $69.95 each plus $1.99 for shipping and handling.

____ Silvertone MICRO-ALARM

____ Goldtone MICRO-ALARM

If I am not completely satisfied I may return it for a full refund. Total amount enclosed $____, check or money order. (Illinois residents please add 5% sales tax.) No C.O.D.s please.

Charge: ☐ Amer. Exp. ☐ Bank Amer./Visa ☐ Carte Blanche ☐ Master Chrg. MCBK #____

Card # _____ Exp. ____

Signature _____

Name _____

Address _____ Apt. ____

City _____ State ____ Zip _____

To expediate shipping by UPS, please provide street address rather than P.O. Box number.

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

IF YOU HAVE AN IDEA FOR SOMETHING BETTER... anything from small toys and household products, to auto aids and energy savers—here's your chance to change your life.

Change Your Life!

Get started with a **Free "Idea Kit".** It has lots of information about protecting, publicizing and selling your idea, plus a special Record Form to document it.

You might be awarded a Government Patent, appear in the news, receive cash or royalties, or even start your own business. So, take credit for your idea now ... before somebody else does.

Phone or write now. No cost or obligation. **Fees are charged only for contracted services.** So, send for your **FREE** "Idea Kit No. A-214".

MAIL NOW!

RAYMOND LEE ORGANIZATION, INC.
230 Park Avenue North
New York, NY 10017
Phone (212) 661-2600

the idea people®

Yes, I'd like to take credit for my idea.
Please send me your **FREE** "Idea Kit" No. **A-214.**

Name _____
Address _____
City _____ State _____ Zip _____
Phone No. _____ Area Code _____

Copyright © 1976 by R.L.O., Inc.

Save on Calculators

Hewlett-Packard

Model	Your Cost	Model	Your Cost
HP 67 224 programmable steps	$357.95	HP 97 224 prog. steps/Printing	$596.95
HP 19C comb. 25C/27 printer	274.95	HP 92 Finan. Bonds Banking ptr	496.95
HP 29C comb. 25C/27 features	154.95	HP 25C Scient./Retains memory	127.95
HP 25 Scient. prog.	99.50	HP 27 Comb. Bus./Scient.	138.95
HP 22 Real Estate-Bus.	99.50	HP 80 Powerful R.E./Bus./Banking	234.95
HP 55 49 step prog. Scient. Was $335	139.95	HP 91 print-HP45 specs-Scient.	259.95
HP 21 Slide rule/Scient.	63.90	HP 10 Handheld-AC-DC printer, mem.	138.95

We are an HP franchised dealer. We carry all accessories at a discount. We will beat any price. Each unit comes complete including charger, case and manuals. One year warranty by HP

Texas Instruments

Model	Your Cost	Model	Your Cost
TI 59 960 prog steps-100 mems.	$225.95	TI 58 480 prog steps-60 mems	$ 97.95
PC100A print. compatible 59-58-52-56	146.95	TI 57 150 program steps-Scient.	63.95
SR 40 Scient. slide rule	24.95	SR 52-2 SP super scient.-conv.	48.95
SR 56 100 step prog	79.95	TI 30 Scient. slide rule	17.95
TI 1750 thin wallettype/2M Hrs/LCD	19.95	Business Analyst R/E Finance	28.95
Money Manager R/E-Finance	18.95	Data Clip 1000 Hrs/pencil thin/LCD	28.95
SR 52 Recycled/Guaranteed by TI	159.50	TI 2550-3 Bus. with mem.	25.95
TI 5050M Ac-DC printer/Mem	83.96	TI 5040 Desk printer/disp. mem.	98.95
TI 5015 Printer desk type	64.95	M B A Super Bus. Analyst	67.95
TI 1680 Instant Replay calcs	25.95	Little Prof. for kids up/educ.	12.95
TI 5100 desk top digital, mem	43.95	Data Man (Big Prof.) educ., great	21.95
Libraries for TI 59-58	29.00		

We carry all TI accessories at discount prices

Specials

Model	Your Cost	Model	Your Cost
Norelco new model NT-1	$177.00	Olympus T 500 Transc. compat. with	$319.95
Norelco #95 Dictating unit	149.00	Sony M 101-Lnaier MC60-Panasonic, etc.	
Norelco #185 Dictating unt	107.00	Texas Inst. LED watchesfive funct.	9.95 up
Norelco #88 Dictating unit	255.00	Hughes Aircraft Calc.Watch mem. 8 dig.	125.00
Norelco 97 Transc. or Dict. unit	309.00	Chronograph15 func./10th/100th sec LED	49.95
Norelco 186 Transcriber	265.00	Chronograph 15 func. LCD/10th/100th	59.95
Norelco #98 Transc. or Dict. unit	419.00	Elect. Black Jack/calc. progr game	39.95
Norelco Cassettes-30 minutes	2.95	Elect. Progr. Chess Game, play alone	199.95
Craig Elect Notebook Dict	149.00	Elect. Progr. Backgammon Game, play alone	199.95
Craig 2706 Dict./Transc	189.50		
Sony M-101C thin dict. unit	154.95	PhoneMate-CodeAPhone-RecordACall	call us
Pearlcorderdict unit byOlympus	179.00 up	3M Dry Photocopier, great unit fnew)	79.95
Smith Corona elec. 2200	239.50	APF printer/disp. 27 step prog	119.95

Try Coffee Plus and you will buy it again. Case of 24 one pound cans at $1.79 per can or six pack at $1.99 per can.
Freight prepaid within continental USA on Coffee Plus

We carry Royal, Olivetti, Litton, Amana, Lloyds, Commodore, Unitrex, Sharp, Canon, Panasonic, Sony, RCA, Zenith TV's, JVC, Sanyo, Bally, Hy Gain etc

Prices are f.o.b LA Goods subject to availability Ask for our famous catalog
We will beat any price if the competition has the goods on hand.

Add $3.00 for shipping hand held calculators. CA residents add 6% sales tax.

OLYMPIC SALES COMPANY, INC.
216 South Oxford Ave. · P.O. Box 74545
Los Angeles, CA 90004 · (213) 381-3911 · Telex 67-3477

to its neighbors. Such a path can handle the communications required in pipelining or, if each processor has its own storage function, open up a space anywhere in the store by moving information simultaneously away from the location of the desired gap. A third kind of communication path enables the processing elements to say something collectively about their results. Such a path can indicate whether no processor, one processor or more than one contains a given condition, which of the processors contains the smallest value or which are between the beginning and end of a particular string.

In our laboratory we have taken on the task of building and using some simple parallel processors involving one-, two- and three-dimensional interconnection patterns. We hope to learn more about the relation of communication paths to the performance of such processors. We have become convinced that the performance of parallel processors can depend critically on the design of communication paths that enable processing elements to make collective statements about their actions. Without such paths how does one find the smallest value stored in the array? How can one identify the set of processors that lie between two processors with designated properties? How does one obtain answers from a number of processors in sequence when more than one of them has something to report? Such paths are electrically complex. Either they involve each local processor as the driving element in a "global" communication task or they require intermediate circuitry specialized for collecting such information, and such intermediate circuitry inevitably introduces time delays and cost. The best structures for this kind of communication appear to be similar to those in the carry circuits of fast parallel adders, but the communication costs of such circuits have not yet been adequately analyzed.

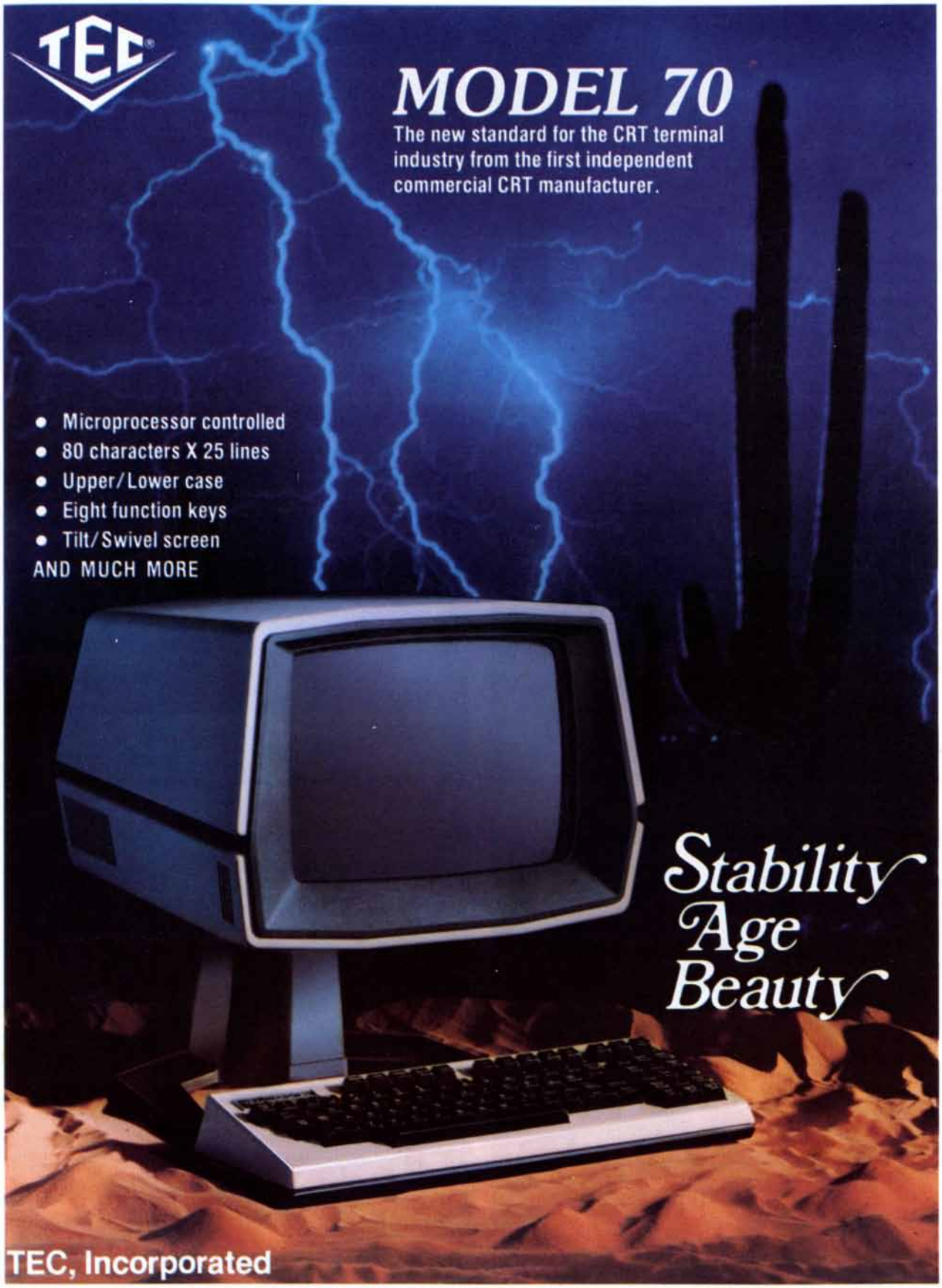
A cornerstone of computer science today is the theoretical analysis of sequential algorithms. There is a large and growing body of theory for selecting efficient algorithms for sequential machines. This body of theory, as one might expect, focuses on algorithms that minimize the number of logical operations required to accomplish some task. For example, it has been shown that for putting numbers into sequence, "quicksort" algorithms are the best to use because they require only $n(\log_2 n)$ comparisons. This body of theory assumes that all data elements in storage are equally accessible and that the movement of data is free.

Data elements in storage are never really equally accessible, although they can arbitrarily be made equally inaccessible in a random-access device by making the access time for all elements as slow as the time required for the most inaccessible element. Because information in a random-access storage device must be moved over long distances the data rate in a random-access storage device of a given technology is inevitably lower than what can be achieved with a more orderly sequential-access mechanism. Moreover, transporting data from a memory cell to a comparison circuit is never really free; in most machines the transportation time far exceeds the comparison time. And so, for example, an analysis of algorithms seeking to show that a particular sorting algorithm is best is based on giving what may be a less than optimum machine the task of performing that algorithm; given a different structure, sorting might be done much faster.

Work on the theory of algorithms has not yet focused on the true relation of computing costs to communication costs. Given that one starts with a blank piece of silicon and is free to place wires, logic gates and so on anywhere one chooses, what choices should one make to accomplish a given computation task in the least time or on the smallest possible area of silicon? We have no basis at all for making sensible choices as to the computing structures we should build. We do have a large body of experience with a particular structure: sequential machines with random-access storage. It may be that such machines are effective because overall they best match a wide variety of computing tasks. There is mounting evidence, however, that a parallel structure can outperform the standard computer by many orders of magnitude on tasks that are suitable for parallel execution. As such unconventional structures have appeared, a wider range of tasks is being discovered for which they are suitable. Certainly one would expect to obtain better performance by paying attention to the real costs of systems, which is to say to communication, than by simply considering the cost—now an almost vanishing cost—of logical processing.

We believe adequate theories that account properly for the costs of communication will be an important guide for designing the machines that have been made possible by the integrated-circuit revolution. We believe such theories will have their basis in the study of regularity, so that computer science will come to include a body of theory akin to that of topology or crystallography. Although such a development is revolutionary in some ways, it is essentially a continuation of the search for regularity in all programming tasks. Computer scientists will simply add geometric regularity to the logical regularity they have already come to know and value.

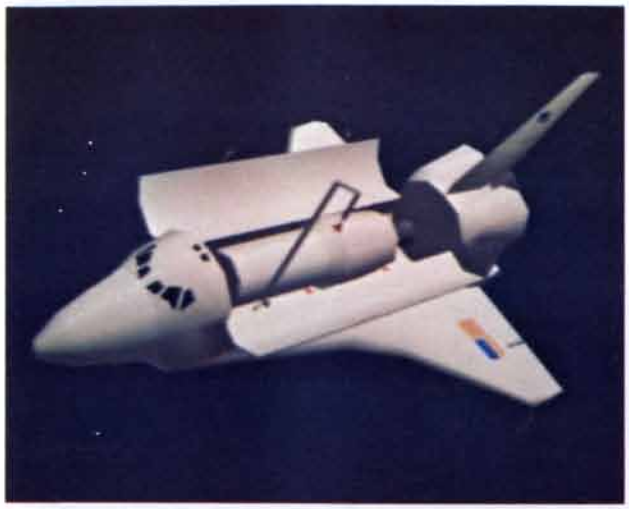
© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

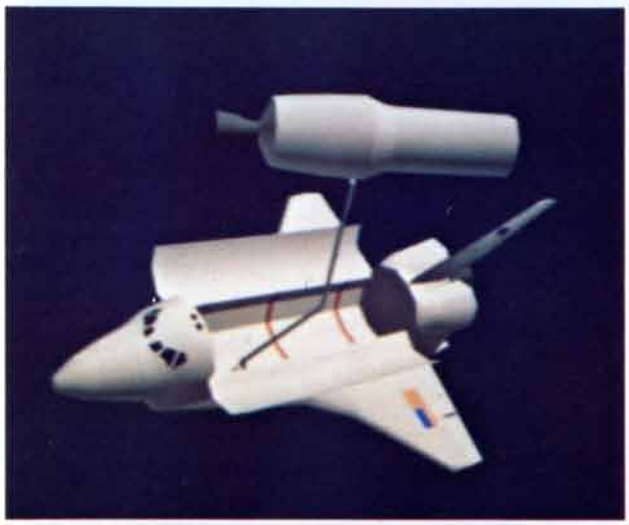
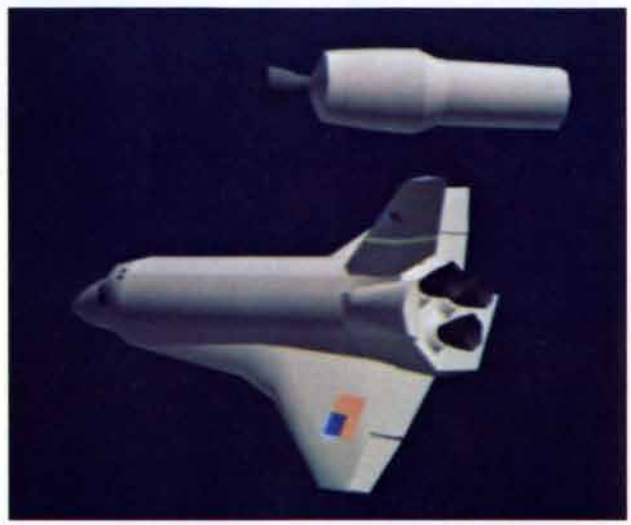


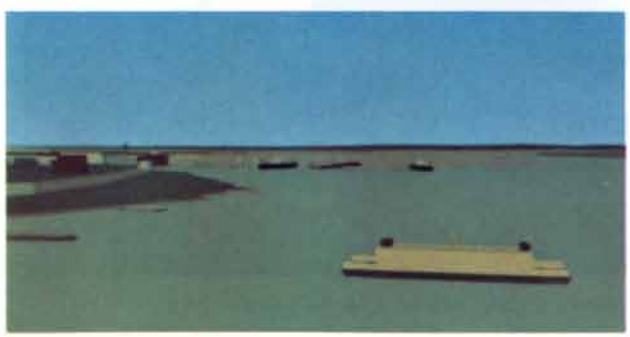
2727 N. FAIRVIEW AVENUE • TUCSON, ARIZONA USA 85705 • (602) 792-2230 • TWX 910-952-1377

AN EQUAL OPPORTUNITY EMPLOYER M/F, COMMITTED TO AFFIRMATIVE ACTION — A TEC INCORPORATED CORPORATE POLICY

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC





© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

Microelectronics and the Personal Computer

Rates of progress in microelectronics suggest that in about a decade many people will possess a notebook-size computer with the capacity of a large computer of today. What might such a system do for them?

by Alan C. Kay

The future increase in capacity and decrease in cost of microelectronic devices will not only give rise to compact and powerful hardware but also bring qualitative changes in the way human beings and computers interact. In the 1980's both adults and children will be able to have as a personal possession a computer about the size of a large notebook with the power to handle virtually all their information-related needs. Computing and storage capacity will be many times that of current microcomputers: tens of millions of basic operations per second will manipulate the equivalent of several thousand printed pages of information.

The personal computer can be regarded as the newest example of human mediums of communication. Various means of storing, retrieving and manipulating information have been in existence since human beings began to talk. External mediums serve to capture internal thoughts for communication and, through feedback processes, to form the paths that thinking follows. Although digital computers were originally designed to do arithmetic operations, their ability to simulate the details of any descriptive model means that the computer, viewed as a medium, can simulate any other medium if the methods of simulation are sufficiently well described. Moreover, unlike conventional mediums, which are passive in the sense that marks on paper, paint on canvas and television images do not change in response to the viewer's wishes, the computer medium is active: it can respond to queries and experiments and can even engage the user in a two-way conversation.

The evolution of the personal computer has followed a path similar to that of the printed book, but in 40 years rather than 600. Like the handmade books of the Middle Ages, the massive computers built in the two decades before 1960 were scarce, expensive and available to only a few. Just as the invention of printing led to the community use of books chained in a library, the introduction of computer time-sharing in the 1960's partitioned the capacity of expensive computers in order to lower their access cost and allow community use. And just as the Industrial Revolution made possible the personal book by providing inexpensive paper and mechanized printing and binding, the microelectronic revolution of the 1970's will bring about the personal computer of the 1980's, with sufficient storage and speed to support high-level computer languages and interactive graphic displays.

Ideally the personal computer will be designed in such a way that people of all ages and walks of life can mold and channel its power to their own needs. Architects should be able to simulate three-dimensional space in order to reflect on and modify their current designs. Physicians should be able to store and organize a large quantity of information about their patients, enabling them to perceive significant relations that would otherwise be imperceptible. Composers should be able to hear a composition as they are composing it, notably if it is too complex for them to play. Businessmen should have an active briefcase that contains a working simulation of their company. Educators should be able to implement their own version of a Socratic dialogue with dynamic simulation and graphic animation. Homemakers should be able to store and manipulate records, accounts, budgets, recipes and reminders. Children should have an active learning tool that gives them ready access to large stores of knowledge in ways that are not possible with mediums such as books.

How can communication with computers be enriched to meet the diverse needs of individuals? If the computer is to be truly "personal," adult and child users must be able to get it to perform useful activities without resorting to the services of an expert. Simple tasks must be simple, and complex ones must be possible. Although a personal computer will be supplied with already created simulations, such as a general text editor, the wide range of backgrounds and ages of its potential users will make any direct anticipation of their needs very difficult. Thus the central problem of personal computing is that nonexperts will almost certainly have to do some programming if their personal computer is to be of more than transitory help.

To gain some understanding of the problems and potential benefits of personal computing my colleagues and I at the Xerox Palo Alto Research Center have designed an experimental personal computing system. We have had a number of these systems built and have studied how both adults and children make use of them. The hardware is faithful in capacity to the envisioned notebook-

COMPUTER SIMULATIONS generated on a high-resolution television display at the Evans & Sutherland Computer Corporation show the quality of the images it should eventually be possible to present on a compact personal computer. The pictures are frames from two dynamic-simulation programs that revise an image 30 times per second to represent the continuous motion of objects in projected three-dimensional space. The sequence at the top, made for the National Aeronautics and Space Administration, shows a space laboratory being lifted out of the interior of the space shuttle. The sequence at the bottom, made for the U.S. Maritime Administration, shows the movement of tankers in New York harbor. Ability of the personal computer to simulate real or imagined phenomena will make it a new medium of communication.

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

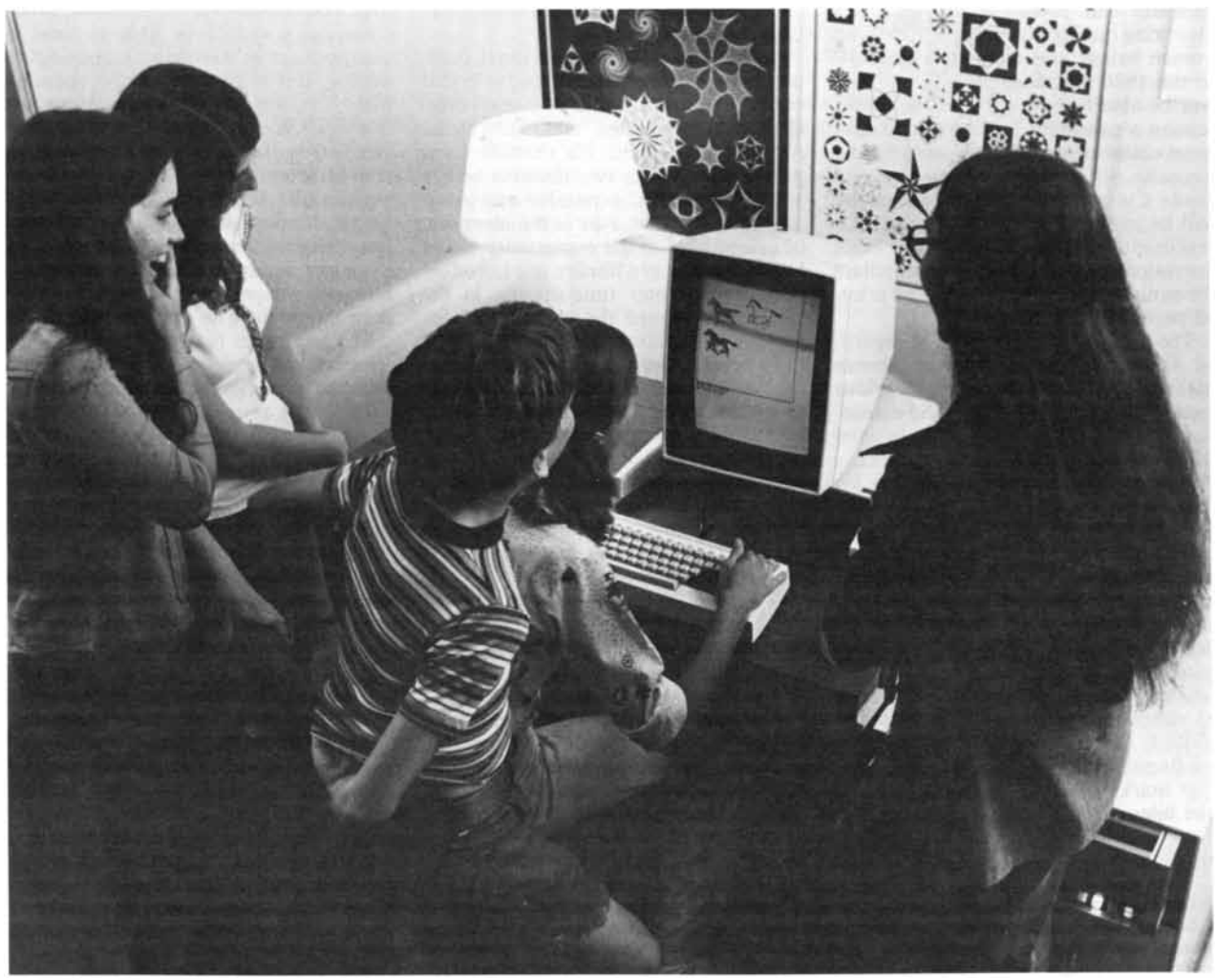
size computer of the 1980's, although it is necessarily larger. The software is a new interactive computer-language system called SMALLTALK.

In the design of our personal computing system we were influenced by research done in the late 1960's. At that time Edward Cheadle and I, working at the University of Utah, designed FLEX, the first personal computer to directly support a graphics- and simulation-oriented language. Although the FLEX design was encouraging, it was not comprehensive enough to be useful to a wide variety of nonexpert users. We then became interested in the efforts of Seymour A. Papert, Wallace Feurzeig and others working at the Massachusetts Institute of Technology and at Bolt, Beranek and Newman, Inc., to develop a computer-based learning environment in which children would find learning both fun and rewarding. Working with a large time-shared computer, Papert and Feurzeig devised a simple but powerful computer language called LOGO. With this language children (ranging in age from eight to 12) could write programs to control a simple music generator, a robot turtle that could crawl around the floor and draw lines, and a television image of the turtle that could do the same things.

After observing this project we came to realize that many of the problems involved in the design of the personal computer, particularly those having to do with expressive communication, were brought strongly into focus when children down to the age of six were seriously considered as users. We also realized that children require more computer power than an adult is willing to settle for in a time-sharing system. The best outputs that time-sharing can provide are crude green-tinted line drawings and square-wave musical tones. Children, however, are used to finger paints, color television and stereophonic records, and they usually find the things that can be accomplished with a low-capacity time-sharing system insufficiently stimulating to maintain their interest.

Since LOGO was not designed with all the people and uses we had in mind, we decided not to copy it but to devise a new kind of programming system that would attempt to combine simplicity and ease of access with a qualitative improvement in expert-level adult programming. In this effort we were guided, as we had been with the FLEX system, by the central ideas of the programming language SIMULA, which was developed in the mid-1960's by Ole-Johan Dahl and Kristen Nygaard at the Norwegian Computing Center in Oslo.

Our experimental personal computer



EXPERIMENTAL PERSONAL COMPUTER was built at the Xerox Palo Alto Research Center in part to develop a high-level programming language that would enable nonexperts to write sophisticated programs. The author and his colleagues were also interested in using the experimental computer to study the effects of personal computing on learning. The machine is completely self-contained, consisting of a keyboard, a pointing device, a high-resolution picture display and a sound system, all connected to a small processing unit and a removable disk-file memory. Display can present thousands of characters approaching the quality of those in printed material.

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

We help process one-fourth of all the oil and gas the world uses every day.

And that's being accomplished by just one member of Combustion Engineering: C-E Natco.

C-E Natco helps de-salt, de-foam, de-water and do other processing needed to prepare oil and gas for the pipeline.

And, besides processing it, we also help drill for it, extract it, pump it, clean it, deliver it and refine it.

Gray Tool Company, a new member of the C-E family, pioneered the first wellhead assembly able to operate at pressures of 30,000 pounds per square inch—extending the search for oil and gas into earth layers too difficult to control before.

C-E Crest has designed systems that produce 10-million barrels of oil a day.

C-E Lummus engineered over 30% of Europe's refining capacity. And is responsible for the design and construction of deck facilities for off-shore platforms in the North Sea that can withstand 130-mph winds and 100-foot-high waves.

We do more than help process oil and gas.

For over 60 years, we've been supplying equipment, technology and research to help produce energy, conserve it, squeeze more use out of it, even convert it to new forms.

For more information about our activities around the world, write Combustion Engineering, Inc., Dept. 7008-33, 902 Long Ridge Road, Stamford, Connecticut 06902.

COMBUSTION ENGINEERING

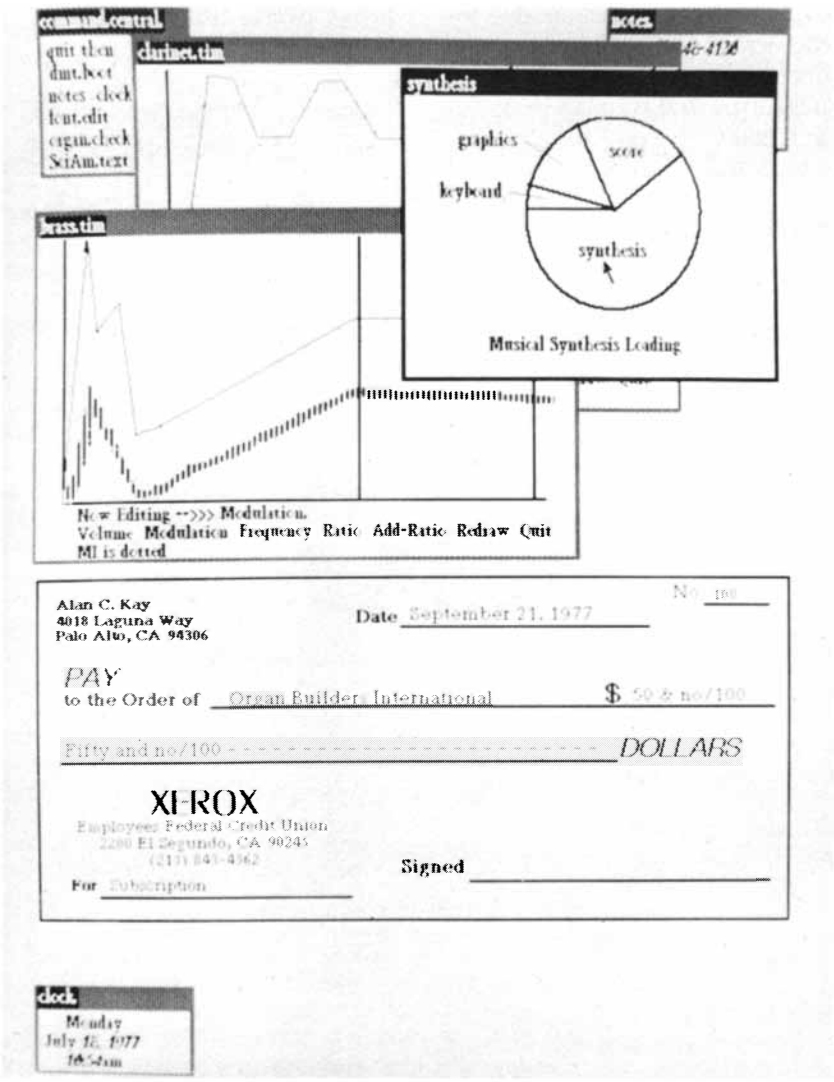
The Energy Systems Company

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

is self-contained and fits comfortably into a desk. Long-term storage is provided by removable disk memories that can hold the equivalent of 1,500 printed pages of information (about three million characters). Although image displays in the 1980's will probably be flat-screened mosaics that reflect light as liquid-crystal watch displays do, visual output is best supplied today by a high-resolution black-and-white or color television picture tube. High-fidelity sound output is produced by a built-in conversion from discrete digital signals to continuous waveforms, which are then sent to a conventional audio amplifier and speakers. The user makes his primary input through a typewriterlike keyboard and a pointing device called a mouse, which controls the position of an arrow on the screen as it is pushed about on the table beside the display. Other input systems include an organlike keyboard for playing music, a pencillike pointer, a joystick, a microphone and a television camera.

The commonest activity on our personal computer is the manipulation of simulations already supplied by the SMALLTALK system or created by the user. The dynamic state of a simulation is shown on the display, and its general course is modified as the user changes the displayed images by typing commands on the keyboard or pointing with the mouse. For example, formatted textual documents with multiple typefaces are simulated so that an image of the finished document is shown on the screen. The document is edited by pointing at characters and paragraphs with the mouse and then deleting, adding and restructuring the document's parts. Each change is instantly reflected in the document's image.

In many instances the display screen is too small to hold all the information a user may wish to consult at one time, and so we have developed "windows," or simulated display frames within the larger physical display. Windows organize simulations for editing and display, allowing a document composed of text, pictures, musical notation, dynamic animations and so on to be created and viewed at several levels of refinement. Once the windows have been created they overlap on the screen like sheets of paper; when the mouse is pointed at a partially covered window, the window is redisplayed to overlap the other windows. Those windows containing useful but not immediately needed information are collapsed to small rectangles that are labeled with a name showing what information they contain. A "touch" of the mouse causes them to instantly open up and display their contents.



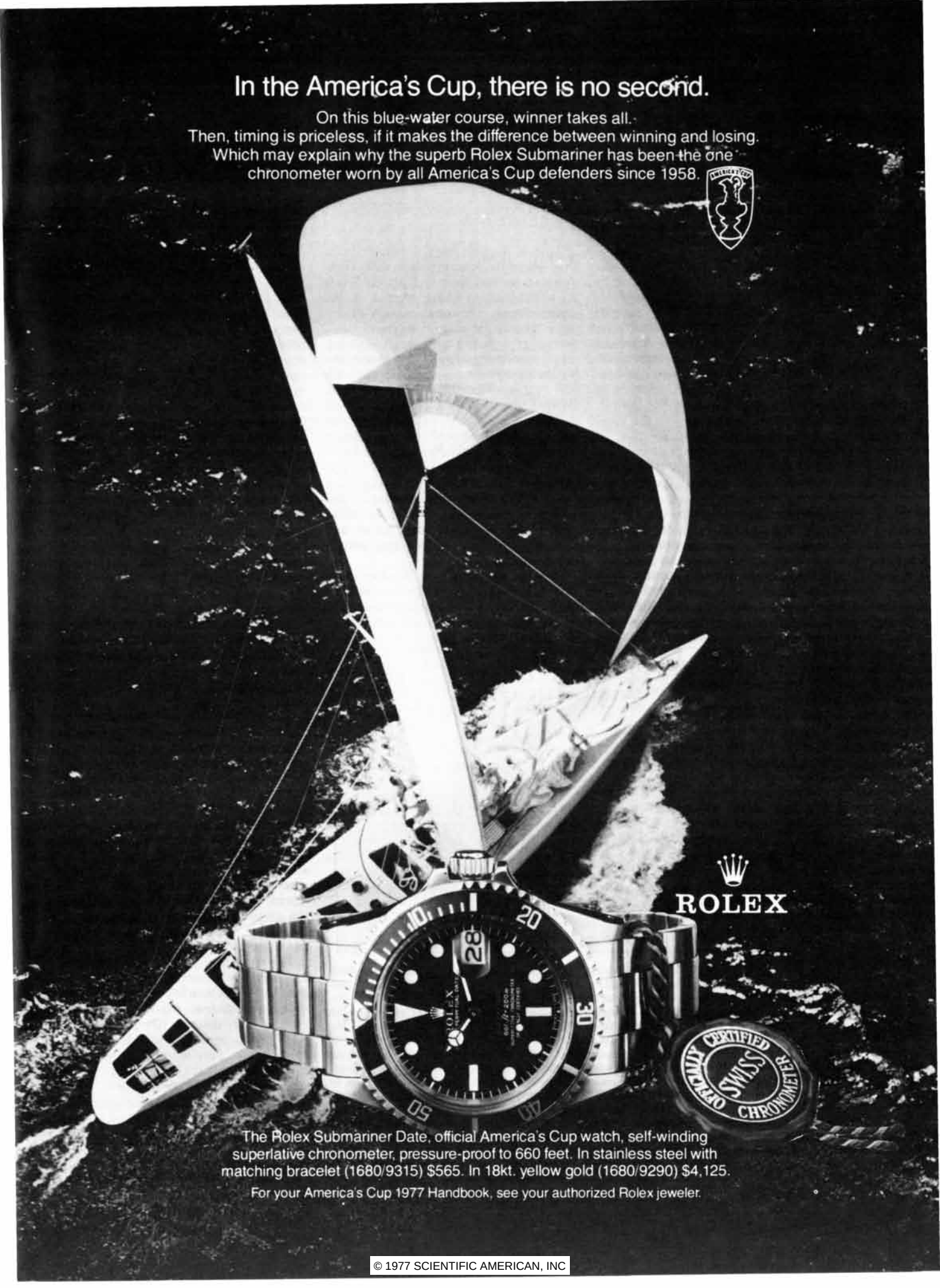
"WINDOWS," display frames within the larger display screen, enable the user to organize and edit information at several levels of refinement. Once the windows are created they overlap on the screen like sheets of paper. When a partially covered window is selected with the pointing device, the window is redisplayed to overlap the other windows. Images with various degrees of symbolic content can be displayed simultaneously. Such images include detailed halftone drawings, analogical images such as graphs and symbolic images such as numbers or words.

In the present state of the art software development is much more difficult and time-consuming than hardware development. The personal computer will eventually be put together from more or less standard microelectronic components, but the software that will give life to the user's ideas must go through a long and arduous process of refinement if it is to aid and not hinder the goals of a personal dynamic medium.

For this reason we have over the past four years invited some 250 children (aged six to 15) and 50 adults to try versions of SMALLTALK and to suggest ways of improving it. Their creations, as imaginative and diverse as they themselves, include programs for home accounts, information storage and retrieval, teaching, drawing, painting, music synthesis, writing and games. Subsequent designs of SMALLTALK have been greatly influenced and improved by our visitors' projects.

When children or adults first encounter a personal computer, most of them are already involved in pursuits of their own choosing. Their initial impulse is to exploit the system to do things they are already doing: a home or office manager will automate paperwork and accounts, a teacher will portray dynamic and pictorial aspects of a curriculum, a child will work on ways to create pictures and games. The fact is that people naturally start to conceive and build personal tools. Although man has been characterized as the toolmaking species, toolmaking itself has historically been the

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC



© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

province of technological specialists. One reason is that technologies frequently require special techniques, materials, tools and physical conditions. An important property of computers, however, is that very general tools for using them can be built by anyone. These tools are made from the same materials and with the same effort as more specific creations.

Initially the children interact with our computer by "painting" pictures and drawing straight lines on the display screen with the pencillike pointer. The children then discover that programs can create structures more complex than any they can create by hand. They learn that a picture has several representations, of which only the most obvious—the image—appears on the screen. The most important representation is the editable symbolic model of the picture stored in the memory of the computer. For example, in the computer an image of a truck can be built up from models of wheels, a cab and a bed, each a different color. As the parts of the symbolic model are edited its image on the screen will change accordingly.

Adults also learn to exploit the properties of the computer medium. A professional artist who visited us spent several months building various tools that resembled those he had worked with to create images on paper. Eventually he discovered that the mosaic screen—the indelible but instantly erasable storage of the medium—and his new ability to program could be combined to create rich textures of a kind that could not be created with ink or paint. From the use of the computer for the impoverished simulation of an already existing medium he had progressed to the discovery of the computer's unique properties for human expression.

One of the best ways to teach nonexperts to communicate with computers is to have them explore the levels of abstraction at which images can be manipulated. The manipulation of images follows the general stages of intellectual growth. For a young child an image is something to make: a free mixture of forms and colors unconnected with the real world. Older children create images that directly represent concepts such as people, pets and houses. Later analogical images appear whose form is closely related to their meaning and purpose, such as geometric figures and graphs. In the end symbolic images are used that stand for concepts that are too abstract to analogize, such as numbers, algebraic and logical terms and the characters and words that constitute language.

The types of image in this hierarchy are increasingly difficult to represent on the computer. Free-form and literal images can be easily drawn or painted with lines and halftones in the dot matrix of the display screen with the aid of the mouse or in conjunction with programs that draw curves, fill in areas with tone or show perspectives of three-dimensional models. Analogical images can also be generated, such as a model of a simulated musical intrument: a time-sequenced graph representing the dynamic evolution of amplitude, pitch variation and tonal range.

Symbolic representations are particularly useful because they provide a means of handling concepts that are difficult to portray directly, such as generalizations and abstract relations. Moreover, as an image gets increasingly complex its most important property, the property of making local relations instantly clear, becomes less useful. Communication with computers based on symbols as they routinely occur in natural language, however, has proved to be far more difficult than many had supposed. The reason lies in our lack of understanding of how human beings exploit the context of their experience to make sense of the ambiguities of common discourse. Since it is not yet understood how human beings do what they do, getting computers to engage in similar activities is still many years in the future. It is quite possible, however, to invent artificial computer languages that can represent concepts and activities we do understand and that are simple enough in basic structure for them to be easily learned and utilized by nonexperts.

The particular structure of a symbolic language is important because it provides a context in which some concepts are easier to think about and express than others. For example, mathematical notation first arose to abbreviate concepts that could be expressed only as ungainly circumlocutions in natural language. Gradually it was realized that the form of an expression could be of great help in the conception and manipulation of the meaning for which the expression stood. A more important advance came when new notation was created to represent concepts that did not fit into the culture's linguistic heritage at all, such as functional mappings, continuous rates and limits.

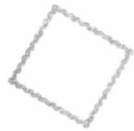
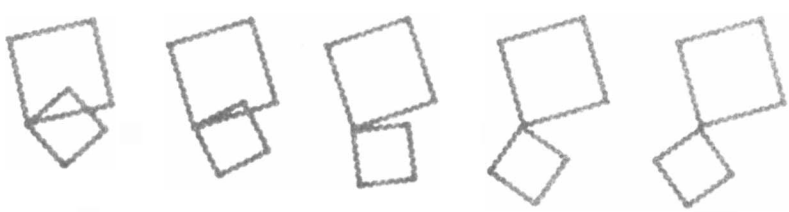
The computer created new needs for language by inverting the traditional process of scientific investigation. It made new universes available that could be shaped by theories to produce simulated phenomena. Accordingly symbolic structures were needed to communicate concepts such as imperative descriptions and control structures.

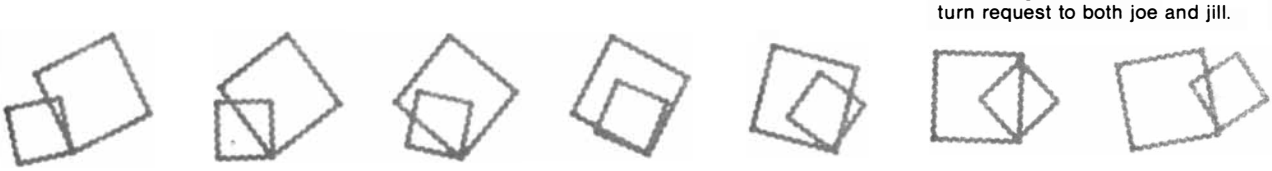
Most of the programming languages in service today were developed as symbolic ways to deal with the hardware-level concepts of the 1950's. This approach led to two kinds of passive building blocks: data structures, or inert con-

trait name	description
name	box: picture activity
location	□
angle	□
size	□
new	location ← center. angle ← 0. size ← 100.
show	🖋 paint black. shape
erase	🖋 paint background. shape
shape	🖋 up: go to location: turn angle: down. 1 to 4 do { 🖋 go size: turn 90.
grow	erase. size ← size + □. show

SMALLTALK is a new programming language developed at the Xerox Palo Alto Research Center for use on the experimental personal computer. It is made up of "activities," computer-like entities that can perform a specific set of tasks and can also communicate with other activities in the system. New activities are created by enriching existing families of activities with additional "traits," or abilities, which are defined in terms of a method to be carried out. The description of the family "box" shown here is a dictionary of its traits. To create a new member of the family box, a message is sent to the trait "new" stating the characteristics of the new box in terms of specific values for the general traits "location," "angle" and "size." In this example "new" has been filled in to specify a box located in the center of the screen with an angle of zero degrees and a side 100 screen dots long. To "show" the new box, a member of the curve-drawing family "brush" is given directions by the open trait "shape." First the brush travels to the specified location, turns in the proper direction and appears on the screen. Then it draws a square by traveling the distance given by "size," turning 90 degrees and repeating these actions three more times. The last trait on the list is open, indicating that a numerical value is to be supplied by the user when the trait is invoked by a message. A box is "grown" by first erasing it, increasing (or decreasing) its size by the value supplied in the message and redisplaying it.

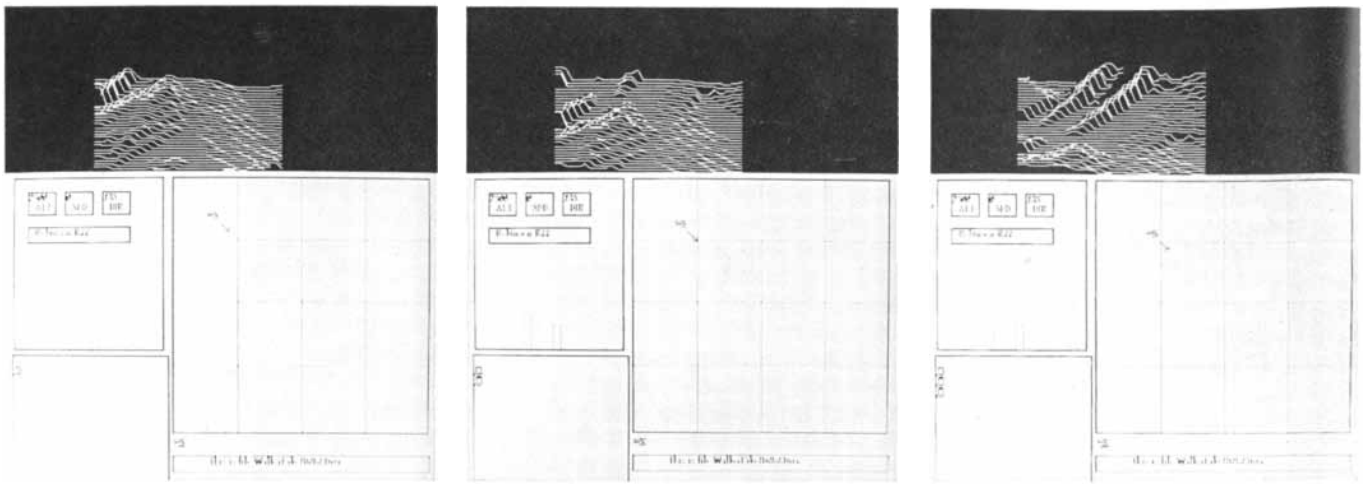
© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

Message Interaction	Pictorial Effect	Commentary
box new named "joe"! box:joe		An offspring of the family "box" is created and is named "joe."
joe turn 30! ok		The box joe receives the message and turns 30 degrees.
joe grow –15! ok		Joe becomes smaller by 15 units.
joe erase! ok		Joe disappears from the screen.
joe show! ok		Joe reappears.
box new named "jill"! box:jill		A new box appears.
jill turn –10! ok		Only jill turns. Joe and jill are independent activities.
1 to 10! interval:1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10		An interval stands for a sequence of numbers.
forever! interval:1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11...		Forever is the infinite interval. It must be terminated by hitting an escape key.
1 to 10 do (joe turn 20)! ok		Joe spins.
forever do (joe turn 11. jill turn –13)! ok		A simple parallel movie of joe and jill spinning in opposite directions is created by combining forever with a turn request to both joe and jill.



SMALLTALK LEARNING SEQUENCE teaches students the basic concepts of the language by having them interact with an already defined family of activities. First, offspring of the family box are created, named and manipulated, and a second family of activities called "interval" is introduced. Offspring of the interval and box families are then combined to generate an animation of two spinning boxes.

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC



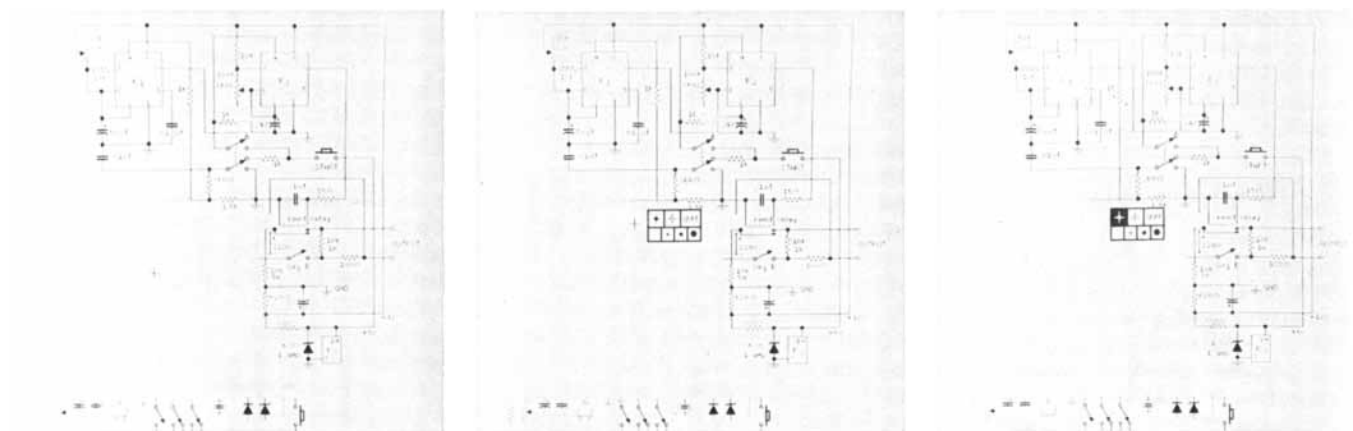
HELICOPTER SIMULATION was developed by a 15-year-old student. The user directs the helicopter where to go with the pointing device, which controls the position of the black arrow on the screen. The window at the top shows the changing topography of the terrain

struction materials, and procedures, or step-by-step recipes for manipulating data. The languages based on these concepts (such as BASIC, FORTRAN, ALGOL and APL) follow their descriptions in a strictly sequential manner. Because a piece of data may be changed by any procedure that can find it the programmer must be very careful to choose only those procedures that are appropriate. As ever more complex systems are attempted, requiring elaborate combinations of procedures, the difficulty of getting the entire system to work increases geometrically. Although most programmers are still taught data-procedure languages, there is now a widespread recognition of their inadequacy.

A more promising approach is to devise building blocks of greater generality. Both data and procedures can be replaced by the single idea of "activities," computerlike entities that exhibit behavior when they are sent an appropriate message. There are no nouns and verbs in such a language, only dynamically communicating activities. Every transaction, description and control process is thought of as sending messages to and receiving messages from activities in the system. Moreover, each activity belongs to a family of similar activities, all of which have the ability to recognize and reply to messages directed to them and to perform specific acts such as drawing pictures, making sounds or adding numbers. New families are created by combining and enriching "traits," or properties inherited from existing families.

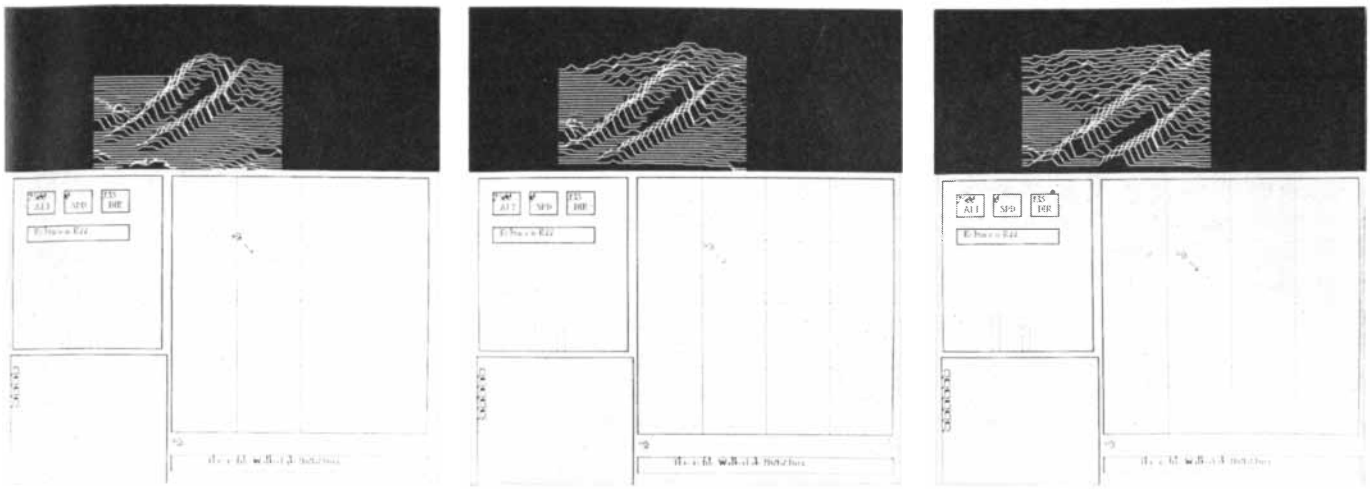
A message-activity system is inherently parallel: every activity is constantly ready to send and receive messages, so that the host computer is in effect divided into thousands of computers, each with the capabilities of the whole. The message-activity approach therefore enables one to dynamically represent a system at many levels of organization from the atomic to the macroscopic, but with a "skin" of protection at each qualitative level of detail through which negotiative messages must be sent and checked. This level of complexity can be safely handled because the language severely limits the kinds of interactions between activities, allowing only those that are appropriate, much as a hormone is allowed to interact with only a few specifically responsive target cells. SMALLTALK, the programming system of our personal computer, was the first computer language to be based entirely on the structural concepts of messages and activities.

The third and newest framework for high-level communication is the observer language. Although message-activity languages are an advance over the data-procedure framework, the relations among the various activities are somewhat independent and analytic. Many



CIRCUIT-DRAWING PROGRAM that was developed by a 15-year-old boy enables a user to construct a complex circuit diagram by selecting components from a "menu" displayed at the bottom of the screen. The components are then positioned and connected with the

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC



below as the helicopter flies over it. (Actual terrains were obtained from *Landsat* maps.) A third window keeps track of the helicopter's altitude, direction and speed. The variety of events that can be simulated at the same time demonstrates the power of parallel processing.

concepts, however, are so richly interwoven that analysis causes them virtually to disappear. For example, 20th-century physics assigns equal importance to a phenomenon and its context, since observers with different vantage points perceive the world differently. In an observer language, activities are replaced by "viewpoints" that become attached to one another to form correspondences between concepts. For example, a dog can be viewed abstractly (as an animal), analytically (as being composed of organs, cells and molecules), pragmatically (as a vehicle by a child), allegorically (as a human being in a fairy tale) and contextually (as a bone's way to fertilize a lawn). Observer languages are just now being formulated. They and their successors will be the communication vehicles of the 1980's.

Our experience, and that of others who teach programming, is that a first computer language's particular style and its main concepts not only have a strong influence on what a new programmer can accomplish but also leave an impression about programming and computers that can last for years. The process of learning to program a computer can impose such a particular point of view that alternative ways of perceiving and solving problems can become extremely frustrating for new programmers to learn.

At the beginning of our study we first timidly considered simulating features of data-procedure languages that children had been able to learn, such as BASIC and LOGO. Then, worried that the imprinting process would prevent stronger ideas from being absorbed, we decided to find a way to present the message-activity ideas of SMALLTALK in concrete terms without dilution. We did so by starting with simple situations that embodied a concept and then gradually increasing the complexity of the examples to flesh out the concept to its full generality. Although the communicationlike model of SMALLTALK is a rather abstract way to represent descriptions, to our surprise the first group and succeeding groups of children who tried it appeared to find the ideas as easy to learn as those of more concrete languages.

For example, most programming languages can deal with only one thing at a time, so that it is difficult to represent with them even such simple situations as children in a school, spacecraft in the sky or bouncing balls in free space. In SMALLTALK parallel models are dealt with from the start, and the children seem to have little difficulty in handling them. Actually parallel processing is remarkably similar to the way people think. When you are walking along a street, one part of your brain may be thinking about the route you are taking, another part may be thinking about the dinner you are going to eat, a third

pointing device. An additional menu can be generated on the screen by pushing a button on the pointing device; this menu supplies solid and open dots and lines of various widths. In the sequence shown here two components are selected and added to a circuit diagram.

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

HORSE-RACE ANIMATION shows the capabilities of the experimental personal computer for creating dynamic halftone images. The possible range of such simulations is limited only by the versatility of the programming language and the imagination of the child or adult user. In this sequence, images of horses, riders and background are called up independently from the storage files and arranged for the racing simulation with the pointing device. A single typed command then causes the two horses and riders to race each other across screen.

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

part may be admiring the sunset, and so forth.

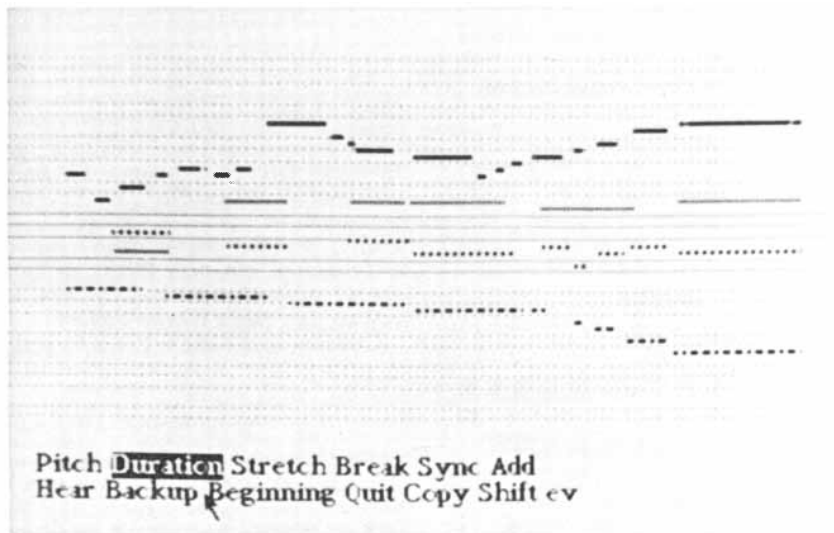
Another important characteristic of SMALLTALK is the classification of objects into families that are generalizations of their properties. Children readily see themselves as members of the family "kids," since they have common traits such as language, interests and physical appearance. Each individual is both a member of the family kids and has his or her own meaning for the shared traits. For example, all kids have the trait eye color, but Sam's eyes are blue and Bertha's are brown. SMALLTALK is built out of such families. Number symbols, such as 2 or 17, are instances of the family "number." The members of this family differ only in their numerical value (which is their sole property) and share a common definition of the different messages they can receive and send. The symbol of a "brush" in SMALLTALK is also a family. All the brush symbols have the ability to draw lines, but each symbol has its own knowledge of its orientation and where it is located in the drawing area.

The description of a programming language is generally given in terms of its grammar: the meaning each grammatical construction is supposed to convey and the method used to obtain the meaning. For example, various programming languages employ grammatical constructions such as (PLUS 3 4) or 3 ENTER 4 + to specify the intent to add the number 3 to the number 4. The meaning of these phrases is the same. In the computer each should give rise to the number 7, although the actual methods followed in obtaining the answer can differ considerably from one type of computer to the next.

The grammar of SMALLTALK is simple and fixed. Each phrase is a message to an activity. A description of the desired activity is followed by a message that selects a trait of the activity to be performed. The designated activity will decide whether it wants to accept the message (it usually does) and at some later time will act on the message. There may be many concurrent messages pending for an activity, even for the same trait. The sender of the message may decide to wait for a reply or not to wait. Usually it waits, but it may decide to go about other business if the message has invoked a method that requires considerable computation.

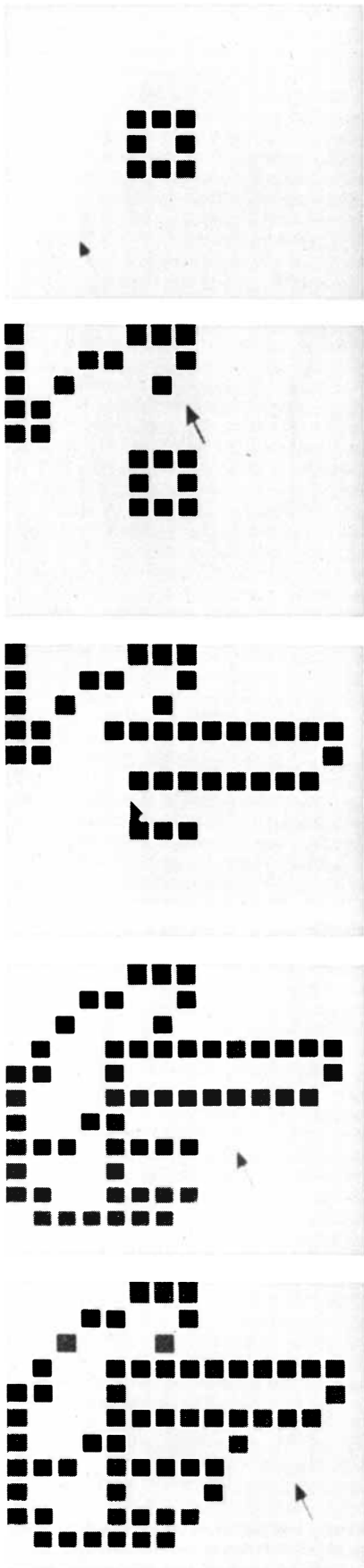
The integration of programming-language concepts with concepts of editing, graphics and information retrieval makes available a wide range of useful activities that the user can invoke with little or no knowledge of programming. Learners are introduced to SMALLTALK by getting them to send messages to already existing families of activities, such

MUSIC CAN BE REPRESENTED on the personal computer in the form of analogical images. Notes played on the keyboard are "captured" as a time-sequenced score on the display.



MUSICAL SCORE shown here was generated as music was played on the keyboard. The simplified notation represents pitch by vertical placement and duration by horizontal length. Notes can be shortened, lengthened or changed and the modified piece then played back as music.

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC



DISPLAY FONTS can be designed on personal computer by constructing them from a matrix of black-and-white squares. When the fonts are reduced, they approach the quality of those in printed material. The image of a pointing hand shown here is a symbol in SMALLTALK representing the concept of a literal word, such as the name associated with an activity.

as the family "box," whose members show themselves on the screen as squares. A box can individually change its size, location, rotation and shape. After some experience with sending messages to cause effects on the display screen the learner may take a look at the definition of the box family. Each family in SMALLTALK is described with a dictionary of traits, which are defined in terms of a method to be carried out. For example, the message phrase "joe grow 50" says: Find the activity named "joe," find its general trait called "grow ___" and fill in its open part with the specific value 50. A new trait analogous to those already present in the family definition (such as "grow" or "turn") can easily be added by the learner. The next phase of learning involves elaboration of this basic theme by creating games such as space war and tools for drawing and painting.

There are two basic approaches to personal computing. The first one, which is analogous to musical improvisation, is exploratory: effects are caused in order to see what they are like and errors are tracked down, understood and fixed. The second, which resembles musical composition, calls for a great deal more planning, generality and structure. The same language is used for both methods but the framework is quite different.

From our study we have learned the importance of a balance between free exploration and a developed curriculum. The personal computing experience is similar to the introduction of a piano into a third-grade classroom. The children will make noise and even music by experimentation, but eventually they will need help in dealing with the instrument in nonobvious ways. We have also found that for children the various levels of abstraction supplied by SMALLTALK are not equally accessible. The central idea of symbolization is to give a simple name to a complex collection of ideas, and then later to be able to invoke the ideas through the name. We have observed a number of children between the ages of six and seven who have been able to take this step in their computer programs, but their ability to look ahead, to visualize the consequences of actions they might take, is limited.

Children aged eight to 10 have a gradually developing ability to visualize and plan and are able to use the concept of families and a subtler form of naming: the use of traits such as size, which can stand for different numerical values at different times. For most children, however, the real implications of further symbolic generality are not at all obvious. By age 11 or 12 we see a considerable improvement in a child's ability to plan general structures and to devise comprehensive computer tools. Adults advance through the stages more quickly than children, and usually they create tools after a few weeks of practice. It is not known whether the stages of intellectual development observed in children are absolutely or only relatively correlated with age, but it is possible that exposure to a realm in which symbolic creation is rewarded by wonderful effects could shorten the time required for children to mature from one stage to the next.

The most important limitation on personal computing for nonexperts appears when they conceive of a project that, although it is easy to do in the language, calls for design concepts they have not yet absorbed. For example, it is easy to build a span with bricks if one knows the concept of the arch, but otherwise it is difficult or impossible. Clearly as complexity increases "architecture" dominates "material." The need for ways to characterize and communicate architectural concepts in developing programs has been a long-standing problem in the design of computing systems. A programming language provides a context for developing strategies, and it must supply both the ability to make tools and a style suggesting useful approaches that will bring concepts to life.

We are sure from our experience that personal computers will become an integral part of peoples' lives in the 1980's. The editing, saving and sifting of all manner of information will be of value to virtually everyone. More sophisticated forms of computing may be like music in that most people will come to know of them and enjoy them but only a few will actually become directly involved.

How will personal computers affect society? The interaction of society and a new medium of communication and self-expression can be disturbing even when most of the society's members learn to use the medium routinely. The social and personal effects of the new medium are subtle and not easy for the society and the individual to perceive. To use writing as a metaphor, there are three reactions to the introduction of a new medium: illiteracy, literacy and artistic creation. After reading material became available the illiterate were those who were left behind by the

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

SCIENCE/SCOPE

A concerted effort toward "smaller and smaller, more and more on a chip" is ushering in Very Large Scale Integration (VLSI) as the dominant microelectronic technology of the next decade, surpassing old barriers of component density and circuit speed. Since microelectronics is a batch process technology, putting more functions on a chip results in more product per dollar. Upshot: an accelerating entrance of the microelectronic phenomena into product fields formerly cost-prohibitive. Hughes -- a pioneer in ion implantation, CMOS/SOS, radiation hardening, advanced lithography and high density LSI interconnections -- has embarked on a broad development program involving new processes, materials and device structures that are setting the pace. Already achieved: integration of 30,000 CMOS/SOS transistors on a 0.15-inch chip. Consider: today's LSI chip carrying 10,000 transistors matches the size of a single transistor 20 years ago. The payoff: a 1000-times increase in circuit speed and a 100-times improvement in power efficiency.

The drive for greater component density is stimulating research into submicron techniques to avoid the optical diffraction limits imposed by today's contact photolithography method of circuit patterning. One of these, direct writing E-beam, uses a computer-controlled scanned electron beam with a wavelength shorter than that of light. Other areas of development include projection and x-ray lithography, dry processing, automated wafer production and computer-aided circuit modeling. As an outgrowth, circuit densities of up to a half-million transistors on a single chip are foreseen. Already, thousands of IR detectors have been amassed on a single chip -- the result of integrating CCD signal processing with the detector elements in a Monolithic Focal Plane Array.

The new super-speed circuitry: Hughes has tested new D-ECL circuits (Dielectrically-isolated Emitter Coupled Logic) with delays of 170 picoseconds. Experimental short channel CMOS devices fabricated on SOS have also shown gate propagation delays of less than 200 picoseconds at extremely low power levels (picojoule). This technology is now being applied to very high speed and low power LSI for spaceborne applications. Others in full development include CMOS/SOS and I^2L. With I^2L, linear and digital functions can be married on the same chip, as can logic and memory functions. On-going work in gallium arsenide will see future devices with gigahertz switching speeds and reduced power factors.

A monumental advance in non-volatile semiconductor memory capability -- allowing retention of stored data with power off -- is now market-ready. Developed at Hughes, NOVRAM (Non-Volatile Random Access Memory) offers the advantages of both read-only and random access memories. Data can be written and recalled countless times, overwriting a previously stored latent image. Power can be removed entirely without loss of data. Applications are seen in microprocessor based systems, digital TV tuners, radar signal processors and missile guidance.

Engineers and Scientists: If you have the advanced degrees and experience to contribute to this new wave of microelectronics, we invite you to call collect to Ray Wolfe at (714) 759-2411, Ext. 2550, who will put you in direct contact with a key line manager in your field of expertise. Or write him at: Hughes Aircraft Company, Microelectronic Products Division, Building 700, M/S A1229, 500 Superior Avenue, Newport Beach, CA 92663. Opportunities exist in microelectronic circuit design, processing, application engineering and key management positions, including transition of advanced research concepts into new products.

Creating a new world with electronics

HUGHES

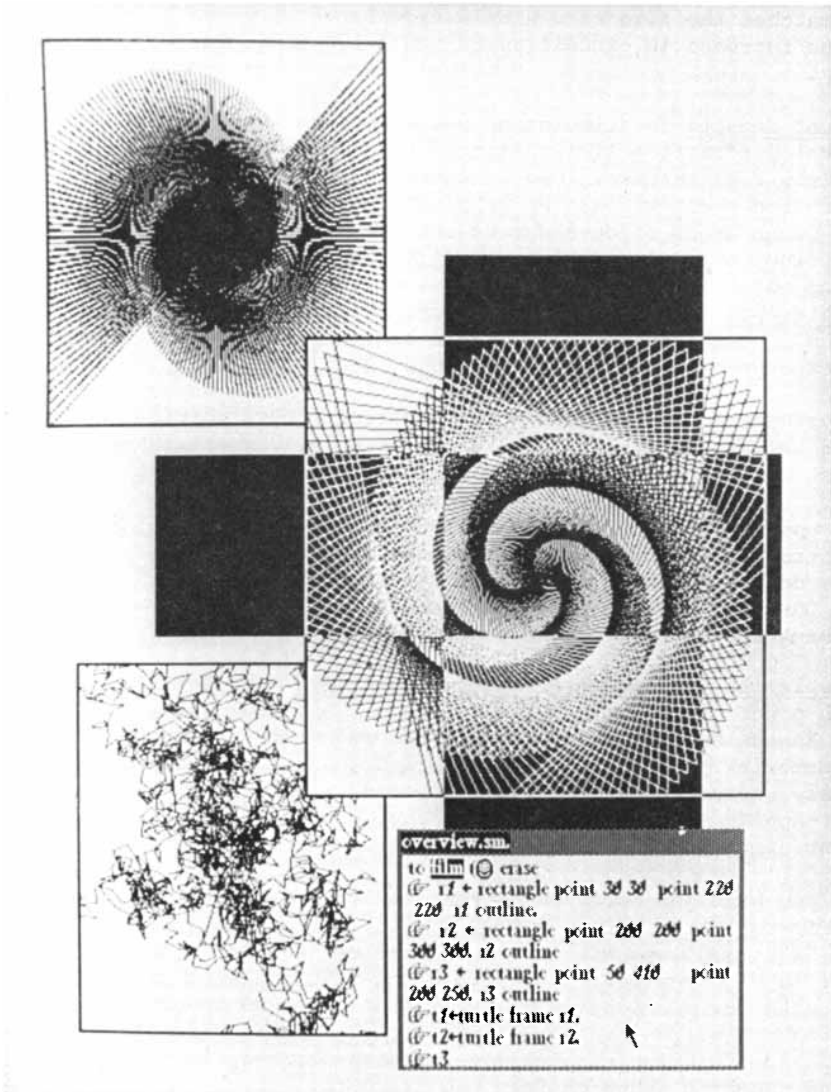
HUGHES AIRCRAFT COMPANY

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

new medium. It was inevitable that a few creative individuals would use the written word to express inner thoughts and ideas. The most profound changes were brought about in the literate. They did not necessarily become better people or better members of society, but they came to view the world in a way quite different from the way they had viewed it before, with consequences that were difficult to predict or control.

We may expect that the changes resulting from computer literacy will be as far-reaching as those that came from literacy in reading and writing, but for most people the changes will be subtle and not necessarily in the direction of their idealized expectations. For example, we should not predict or expect that the personal computer will foster a new revolution in education just because it could. Every new communication medium of this century—the telephone, the motion picture, radio and television—has elicited similar predictions that did not come to pass. Millions of uneducated people in the world have ready access to the accumulated culture of the centuries in public libraries, but they do not avail themselves of it. Once an individual or a society decides that education is essential, however, the book, and now the personal computer, can be among the society's main vehicles for the transmission of knowledge.

The social impact of simulation—the central property of computing—must also be considered. First, as with language, the computer user has a strong motivation to emphasize the similarity between simulation and experience and to ignore the great distances that symbols interpose between models and the real world. Feelings of power and a narcissistic fascination with the image of oneself reflected back from the machine are common. Additional tendencies are to employ the computer trivially (simulating what paper, paints and file cabinets can do), as a crutch (using the computer to remember things that we can perfectly well remember ourselves) or as an excuse (blaming the computer for human failings). More serious is the human propensity to place faith in and assign higher powers to an agency that is not completely understood. The fact that many organizations actually base their decisions on—worse, take their decisions from—computer models is profoundly disturbing given the current state of the computer art. Similar feelings about the written word persist to this day: if something is "in black and white," it must somehow be true.



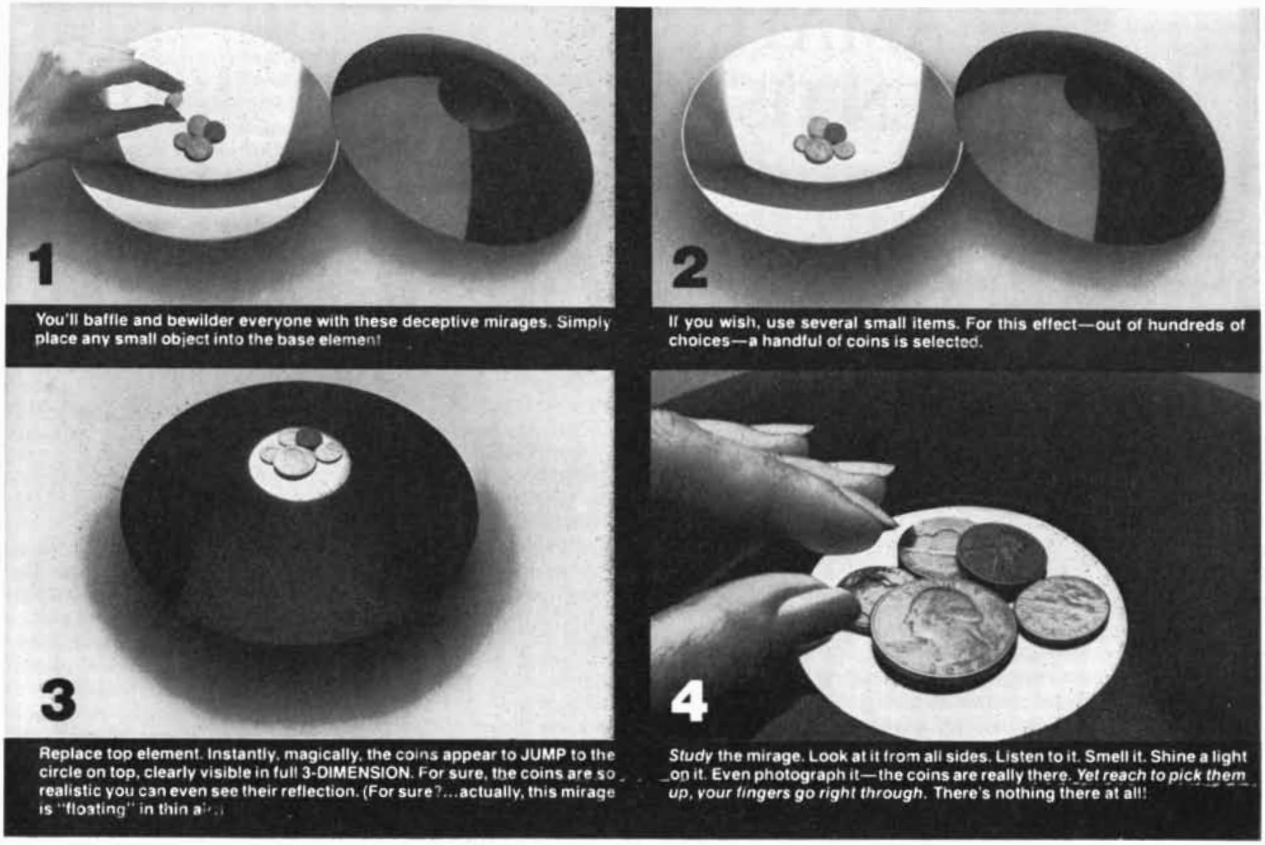
INTRICATE PATTERNS can be generated on the personal computer with very compact descriptions in SMALLTALK. They are made by repeating, rotating, scaling, superposing and combining drawings of simple geometric shapes. Students who are learning to program first create interesting free-form or literal images by drawing them directly in the dot matrix of the display screen. Eventually they learn to employ the symbolic images in the programming language to direct the computer to generate more complex imagery than they could easily create by hand.

Children who have not yet lost much of their sense of wonder and fun have helped us to find an ethic about computing: Do not automate the work you are engaged in, only the materials. If you like to draw, do not automate drawing; rather, program your personal computer to give you a new set of paints. If you like to play music, do not build a "player piano"; instead program yourself a new kind of instrument.

A popular misconception about computers is that they are logical. Forthright is a better term. Since computers can contain arbitrary descriptions, any conceivable collection of rules, consistent or not, can be carried out. Moreover, computers' use of symbols, like the use of symbols in language and mathematics, is sufficiently disconnected from the real world to enable them to create splendid nonsense. Although the hardware of the computer is subject to natural laws (electrons can move through the circuits only in certain physically defined ways), the range of simulations the computer can perform is bounded only by the limits of human imagination. In a computer, spacecraft can be made to travel faster than the speed of light, time to travel in reverse.

It may seem almost sinful to discuss the simulation of nonsense, but only if we want to believe that what we know is correct and complete. History has not been kind to those who subscribe to this view. It is just this realm of apparent nonsense that must be kept open for the developing minds of the future. Although the personal computer can be guided in any direction we choose, the real sin would be to make it act like a machine!

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC



INCREDIBLE DESK-TOP 3-D ILLUSIONS

A scientific phenomenon lets you create mirages —on your desk or right in your hands!

The photo captions are true. What you see in the mirrored circle isn't really there at all.

It's a *MIRAGE.* So true to life, so alive with depth, most people *refuse to believe it* when they can't touch what they see before them!

Spring one on curious, unsuspecting eyes. Even your closest friends will be unprepared for the elusiveness of these mysterious 3-D illusions...people will practically *grab* the device away from you for a closer look.

Scientists call the mirages "three dimensional real images." Literally contradicting a lifetime of experiences, they defy—and yet *demand*—explanation. *Never has the line between sensory perception and reality been exposed with such startling clarity.*

The effect is not holographic. Indeed, each fun-to-make vision surpasses holography in resolution. Make one appear anywhere, in any light...even candle light. There are no moving parts, no batteries, cords, dials, knobs or switches. It's simple enough to fool anyone.

Experiment! You'll find the amazed, amused reactions growing with each 3-D mirage you devise.

Order without risk, of course. If MIRAGE fails to please you for any reason, return it within 14 days for a full, prompt refund. Not sold in stores, it's available only from our labs, at an attractive direct-to-you price.

For yourself—for your gift list—look into MIRAGE. Designed to enhance any decor, *it should become one of the most intriguing, attention-getting conversation pieces you'll ever own.*

Use your credit card to order toll-free right now. Or mail the handy coupon.

A patented, precision instrument
NATIONAL INTRODUCTORY PRICE $19.95

MIRAGE

MIRAGE IS A TRADEMARK OF OPTI-GONE ASSOCIATES INC., 22102 CLARENDON ST., WOODLAND HILLS, CA. 91364 © 1977

TOLL-FREE HOTLINE
Call anytime—24 hours a day and charge to your credit card
DIAL 800-648-5311
(In Nevada dial 1-800-992-5710)

2 BONUSES FOR YOU!
INCLUDED WITH EACH ORDER

24 PAGE MIRAGE GUIDE
Entertaining book contains full instructions, tips, photos, unusual uses and suggestions, plus background information explaining this recently discovered phenomenon of science.

LINT-FREE POLISHING CLOTHS
For peak optical resolution, the 9-inch inner surfaces are mirror coated the same way engineers coated the country's largest reflecting telescope: at California's Mt. Palomar, the mirrored finish is 200 inches in diameter, but just *5/1,000,000th of an inch* thick!

This critical tolerance is followed in the making of each MIRAGE, to faithfully reconstruct every *molecule* of the objects you display. To maintain the surfaces, you'll receive a generous supply of disposable polishing cloths.

OPTI-GONE ASSOCIATES INC.
22102 CLARENDON STREET
WOODLAND HILLS, CALIF. 91364

YES! Send me _____ MIRAGE(S) at $19.95 plus $1.40 each for postage, handling and insurance. (California residents add 6% sales tax.)

NAME

ADDRESS

CITY STATE ZIP

Charge to my ☐ Visa/BankAmericard ☐ Master Charge ☐ American Express
☐ My check is enclosed.

CARD NUMBER

EXPIRATION DATE INTERBANK NO. (M.C. ONLY)

SIGNATURE

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

THE AMATEUR SCIENTIST

Hot water freezes faster than cold water. Why does it do so?

by Jearl Walker

It is sometimes said that hot water will freeze faster than cold water. The notion is quite old, and many people in cold places such as Canada wash their car or fill their birdbath with cold water believing that doing so will delay freezing. Is there anything to it? The answer is yes, although this counterintuitive result had little support until Erasto Mpemba, a high school student in Tanzania, rediscovered the effect while making ice cream as a project in physics.

The technique was supposed to be to heat milk, mix in sugar, let the mixture cool to room temperature and then put it in an electric freezer. One day Mpemba and a classmate placed their mixtures in the freezer at the same time, but because they were both in a hurry Mpemba did not bother to cool his mixture and his classmate did not even bother to heat his. Mpemba was surprised to find that his hot mixture froze long before the cool one.

The ice-cream effect gained credibility and fame when Mpemba and D. G. Osborne of University College Dar es Salaam published an account of it in *Physics Education*. The resulting correspondence in that journal and others was fairly hot and heavy for a while. The scientists who wrote maintained either that the effect was well known or that the observation was in error. The effect is definitely real and can be duplicated in your own kitchen, but the explanation is still the subject of controversy.

One of the first explanations was that the hotter container melted the ice under it and so made better thermal contact with the freezer shelf. The effect is the same, however, when the container is thermally insulated from the freezer shelf, as Mpemba and Osborne's was. Moreover, the explanation would not serve for the examples of washing cars and filling birdbaths or for frost-free freezers where no ice forms on the freezer shelf.

Several factors appear to be involved in the effect. First, in the hotter container the liquid may circulate better, so that the hot water in the central region moves rapidly to the walls of the container or to the top surface of the water. Second, more of the gas dissolved in the water may be released if the water is warmer. Dissolved gas delays cooling, and its elimination before cooling allows the water to reach the freezing point sooner. The hot-water pipes in your home are more likely to freeze than the cold-water pipes because the dissolved gas was eliminated when the water was heated. Third, the warmer water may lose more of its mass and heat to evaporation than the cooler water does. Thus there would be less mass to cool, and the water would reach the freezing point sooner. If there is a significant loss of mass, then (once the freezing point is reached) the initially hot water will certainly freeze faster because there is less mass from which heat must be removed to achieve the transition from liquid water to ice.

Here I shall describe my experiments on freezing water and suggest others that you can do at home, but I have not been able to resolve the controversy. I want to leave that to you. As Ian Firth of the University of St. Andrews put it in one of the most thorough discussions of the subject: "There is a wealth of experimental variation in the problem so that any laboratory undertaking such investigations is guaranteed results different from all others." Your primary difficulty in your own freezing experiments will be to tackle only one variable at a time.

In order to standardize the type of container I did the experiments in ordinary Pyrex beakers with graduated measurements on the side. Pyrex is good for this purpose because it can withstand the rapid temperature change from the stove to the freezer without cracking. A thermocouple probe of the kind described in this department last month was placed below the water level in a beaker and taped in position. The other end of the thermocouple was put in an ice-water bath for a reference temperature, since such a bath is at zero degrees Celsius. Probably most kitchen containers would serve to hold the reference bath, but the most convenient container is a Thermos jug. With it the ice-water bath lasted for several hours. If you do not want to go to the trouble of setting up the thermocouple, a common thermometer that reads from zero to 100 degrees C. is adequate. Be sure that the mercury reservoir of the thermometer is fully submerged in the water.

To thermally insulate the beaker from the frost on the floor of the freezer I used a cork mat of the kind put under hot dishes. Polystyrene or any thick cloth or pad will work just as well. Without the insulation you might find that the hotter water cools faster partly because it melts itself into the frost better. In a frost-free refrigerator no such insulation is needed. The air temperature in my freezer was between -8 and -15 degrees C. To maintain a consistent air temperature be sure to keep the freezer door shut as much as possible.

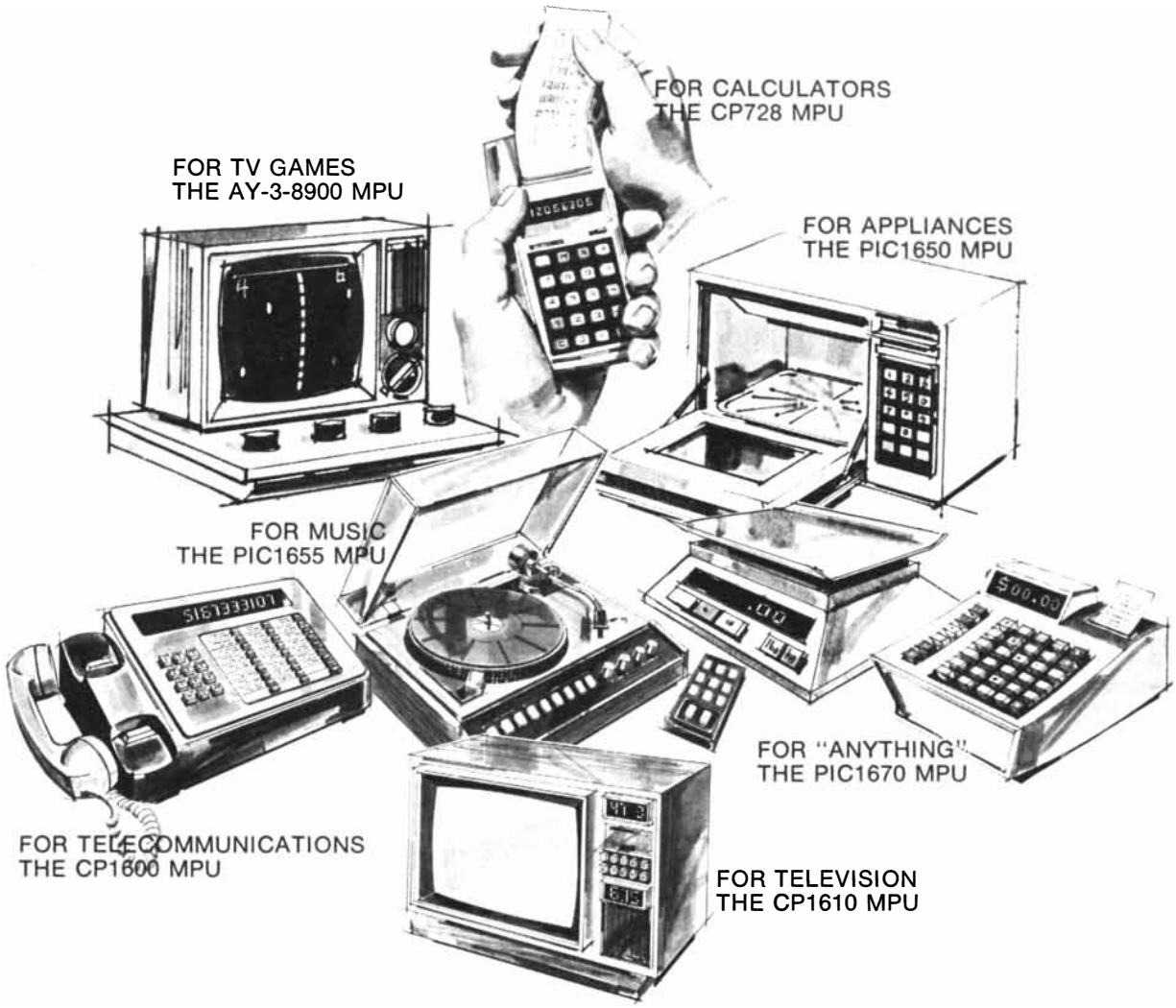
The beaker should be heated slowly on an electric or gas burner. To guarantee uniform heating of all the water put a flat metal plate over the burner; otherwise the thermocouple may be over a particularly hot or cool portion of the burner and may give a misleading temperature reading. The beaker should be covered so that the water evaporated during the heating is returned to it. You would do well to work at first with a small amount of water, say 50 to 100 milliliters, to hold down the time needed to take the data for several different initial temperatures. The time factor is also a reason why you should have several practice runs before actually taking the data carefully. I began my work with 200 milliliters of water, took data for three days and then found I had not been careful enough in my procedure. I had to discard all the data.

When the water reaches the desired initial temperature on the stove, it and the attached thermocouple probe must be quickly moved into the freezer because of the rapid cooling of the water in the first several minutes after the beaker is removed from the heat source. You cannot obtain accurate readings by first heating some water in a teakettle, pouring the water into a beaker already in the freezer and then taking a temperature reading. The water has cooled too much by then.

I worked with ordinary tap water that had been boiled to eliminate dissolved gas. After each run I allowed the water to return to room temperature before I added water to restore the original volume. By measuring the amount of water needed to restore the original volume in the beaker you measure the amount of water lost through evaporation during cooling. I found that the most accurate and convenient way to replace the water was to squirt it from a hypodermic syringe marked in cubic centimeters.

The thermocouple probe was placed at various depths in the water to monitor the cooling rate at different depths. You

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC



GI MICROPROCESSORS...

"DEDICATED" TO HELP OUR CUSTOMERS COMPETE.

General Instrument standard microprocessors are *optimized* for the application they serve . . . a unique approach that *minimizes* interface circuit requirements and *eliminates* unnecessary costs. For example, the standard microprocessor designed as a numbers cruncher isn't the optimum vehicle for appliance control. It requires too many external circuits to interface it with the appliance and it carries along overhead hardware you simply don't need. In contrast, the GI "dedicated" approach provides the optimum interface LSI to best tailor the standard microprocessor to its application. And GI's "dedicated" solutions are drawn from our broad experience in the consumer and telecommunications markets.

Standard microprocessors . . . dedicated to help our customers compete.

GENERAL INSTRUMENT CORPORATION
MICROELECTRONICS
600 WEST JOHN STREET, HICKSVILLE, NEW YORK 11802

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

should avoid letting the probe become exposed to the air during a run as evaporation lowers the water level, because then it samples only the air temperature. With a blower turning on and off in a frost-free refrigerator, you then get a perplexing oscillation in temperature readings. If you do use a frost-free refrigerator, try to keep the blower either on or off for the entire run. The air current set up by the blower is a significant factor in cooling the beaker.

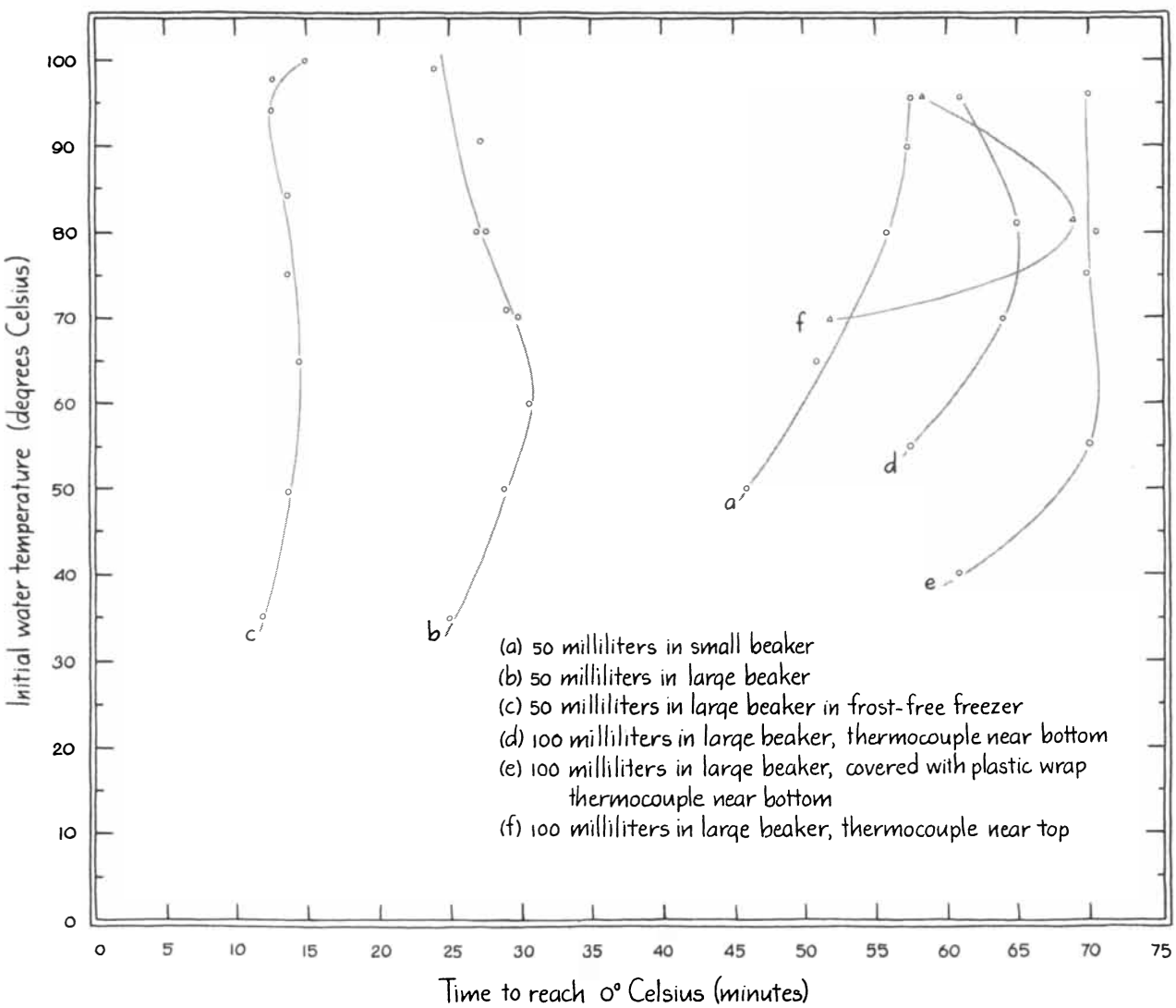
Instead of measuring the time needed to freeze all the water I stopped each run when the thermocouple reached zero degrees C. By then a thin layer of ice had usually formed on the outer edge of the surface of the water. One might be able to measure the time of complete freezing by placing the thermocouple in the middle of the sample and waiting until the temperature began to drop below zero degrees C. Not until the water is completely frozen can the temperature be below zero degrees.

The best test for any procedure you devise is repeatability. As repeatable as most of my measurements were, however, I still obtained strange large deviations on some of the runs. I do not know the reason, but I suspect that impurities in the water altered the time needed to cool it.

My first run was with 50 milliliters of water in a small beaker, graduated to 150 milliliters, which had an inside diameter of 5.3 centimeters and a height of 8.1 centimeters. The water in it had a height of about 1.8 centimeters. I used a refrigerator with a freezer that was not frost-free. A plot of the time needed to cool the water to zero degrees C. against the initial temperature of the water showed a steady rise until about 80 degrees for the initial temperature. Thereafter the cooling curve rose less rapidly. Disappointingly, the curve did not bend over in such a way as to show that less time would be needed for a high initial temperature than for a cooler one.

The same amount of water in a larger beaker (graduated to 600 milliliters, diameter 8.2 centimeters, height 12.4 centimeters, water height .9 centimeter) and in the same freezer did give a curve that bent over at an initial temperature of between 60 and 65 degrees C. This result means that water beginning at, say, 99 degrees would reach the freezing point about seven minutes before water beginning at 60 degrees. Presumably if I were to time the process until the water had frozen completely, the bending over of the curve would be even more pronounced if the evaporation of the water was a significant factor. With more evaporation at the higher temperatures, more mass would be lost and less heat would have to be removed from water at zero degrees C. in order to transform it into ice.

The results suggest that evaporation is important. In going from the small beaker to the large one the area of the water surface more than doubled, and the rate of evaporation therefore increased. I do not know, however, how the shortening of the water column af-



Experiments in freezing water from different starting temperatures

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

Get updated . . . keep updated with

BYTE

the leading magazine in the personal computer field

The personal computer age is here.

Join Byte's 100,000 subscribers and catch up on the latest developments in the fast-growing field of microprocessors. Read BYTE, The Small Systems Journal that tells you everything you want to know about personal computers, including how to construct and program your own computer (30,000 BYTE readers have already built, or bought, their own systems and half of these have 8K bytes or more).
You'll find our tutorials on hardware and software invaluable reading, also our reports on home applications and evaluative reviews based on experiences with home computer products.

Home computers . . . practical, affordable.

Large scale integration has slashed prices of central processors and other computer components. This has encouraged the development of new, low-cost peripherals resulting in more hardware and software — more applications than you could imagine, more opportunities for you. BYTE brings it all to you. Every issue is packed with stimulating and timely articles by professionals, computer scientists and serious amateurs.
BYTE editorials explore the fun of using and applying computers toward personally interesting problems such as electronic music, video games and control of systems for alarms to private information systems.

Subscribe now to BYTE . . . The Small Systems Journal

Read your first copy of BYTE, if it's everything you expected, honor our invoice. If it isn't, just write "CANCEL" across the invoice and mail it back. You won't be billed and the first issue is yours.

Allow 4 to 6 weeks for processing.

BYTE Subscriptions Dept. P.O. Box 361 Arlington, Mass. 02174 U.S.A.

30C

Please enter my subscription for:

☐ One year U.S. - $12 ☐ Two years U.S. - $22 ☐ Three years U.S. - $32
☐ Canada or Mexico - $17.50 ☐ Europe (Air Delivered) - $25
☐ Surface delivery to all other countries except Europe, Canada or Mexico - $25 (Air delivery available on request)

☐ Check enclosed (Bonus: one extra issue)
Please remit in U.S. funds — ☐ Bill me.
☐ Bill BankAmericard ☐ Bill Master Charge

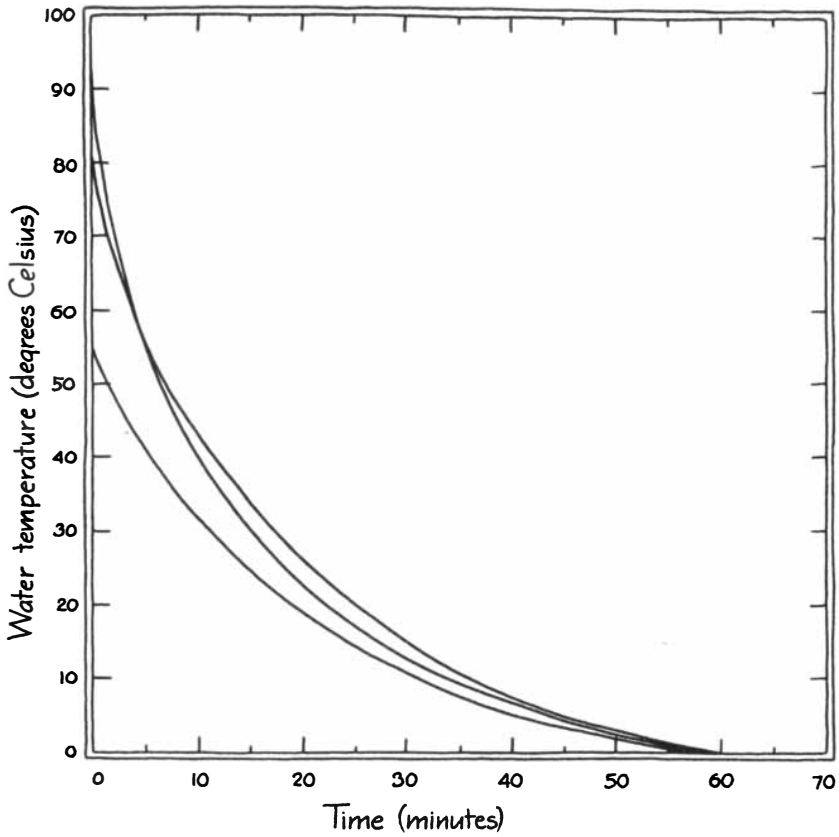
Card number _____ Expiration date _____

Signature _____ Name (please print) _____

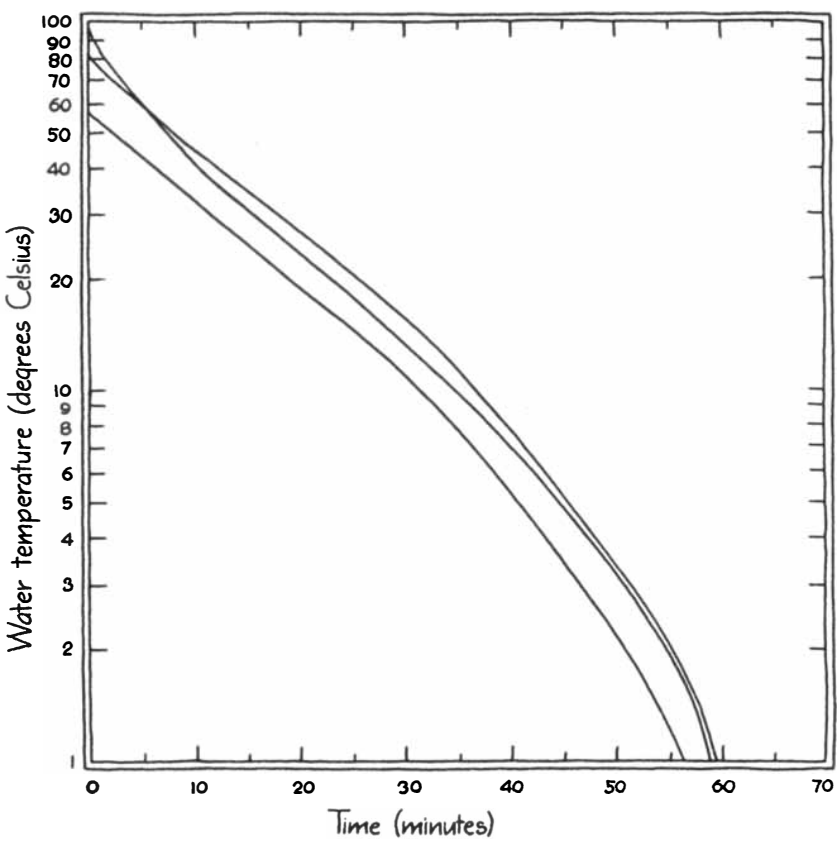
Address _____

City _____ State/Country _____ Code _____

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC



Readings from near the bottom of 100 milliliters of water



The same data on a semilog scale

fected the convection-current cells in the water. A more important quantity in describing the change between beakers might be the ratio of the surface area to the area of the sides. From the surface the heat loss is primarily by evaporation, whereas through the sides the loss is by convection and radiation. The change in beakers increased this ratio of areas by three times. Evaporation therefore gained an advantage over the heat loss through the sides of the beaker, and that may be why the time curve then bent over.

With the same amount of water in the same beaker but in a frost-free freezer the water cooled in about half the time because of the constant blowing of the air around the beaker. The bend in the curve is still visible and appears at approximately the same temperature. At initial temperatures near the boiling point the curve appears to rise again. Perhaps there the increase in temperature begins to outweigh the loss of mass due to evaporation or the increase in water circulation. You might want to search for such a second rise in your own data; no one has yet reported it.

Increasing the water volume to 100 milliliters in the 600-milliliter beaker and returning to my original refrigerator, I took data with the thermocouple probe near the bottom of the water and then again near the top. The bottom displayed a curve that bent over nicely but with the peak cooling time shifted to a higher initial temperature of about 80 degrees C. Water initially at 95 degrees reached the freezing point about three minutes before water initially at 80 degrees.

To see when initially hot water and initially cooler water reached the same temperature in their race to the freezing point I took temperature measurements about every five minutes during the runs where the thermocouple was near the bottom. Particularly interesting was the minute-by-minute comparison between the water initially at the temperature (81 degrees C.) requiring the most time to reach freezing and the water initially even hotter (95.5 degrees). The initially hotter water reached the same temperature as the water initially at 81 degrees seven or eight minutes after the cooling began. The temperature of the initially hot water then stayed below that of the initially cooler water until the last 15 or 20 minutes before freezing. Just before the initially hot water froze its temperature dropped rapidly to the freezing point, whereas the initially cooler water stayed near one degree C. for several more minutes.

If the cooling rate is exponential, that is, if the temperature of the water depends on an exponential function of the elapsed time, then the data will yield a straight line when they are plotted on semilog paper. Plotting my data in that

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

LEONARDO DA VINCI INVENTED COMPUTERS!

Perhaps not.

The point, we're making, is that trying to find a starting point of any invention (like a computer) is never easy. In fact, it may be like deciding where clouds begin—easy from a distance, impossible up close. However, Leonardo da Vinci is a reasonable first approximation—since he dreamt many things, and sketched many projects. Alas, a number of his ideas never saw the light of day due to the restrictions of the 15th Century technology.

In tracing the history of computers (or Automatic Computing Engines, as they used to be called), it's the same thing over and over again. You can go back to counting with neolithic pebbles, or on fingers, or through the Chinese and Russian Abaci, or through Blaise Pascal's desk calculator, and so on.

These devices, in spite of their ingenuity, merely hastened individual arithmetical steps. The first real genius in the field of computing was probably Charles Babbage (1791-1871), who in the middle 1830's constructured his *Difference Engine*. This was the first device which attempted to solve the problem: "Could you plan and guide the sequence of calculation", rather than just speed up the calculation. Babbage's "pièce de résistance" (his *Analytical Engine*) never fully worked, but the ideas therein were the precursor of all subsequent "stored program" computers.

We could, also, write about the contributions made by Boole, Turing, von Neuman, et al. But it's clear that by the late "30's", the mathematicians had proven conclusively that such a device was, in fact, a certainty; all that was lacking was the technology.

It's common knowledge, technology has always forged ahead at a rapid rate by confrontation. Of course, confrontation in the late "30's" and early "40's" was no exception. As a result, the first true working, stored-program computers came into being at that time (performing Logistics, Ballistics and Cryptographic Data Processing—what else?). The trouble is that the basic concept of what a computer is (scientifically accurate, great number crunching) has altered very little since. It seems we have assumed that the first way the computer was built is *the only way*, rather than—*one* of the ways.

Some people even appear to believe they can design a computer that is *all* things to *all* people. Since it doesn't work this way with anything else, we fail to see why computers are the exception.

We, at Logical Machine Corporation, don't believe that the progress made, since 1946, in ultra high speed computation has anything to do with the needs of the modern business person. What they need are mundane things like: add, subtract, divide, and to make sure the invoices are right.

Accordingly, the price of computing has fallen dramatically. Today, a major miracle, the micro-computer is here. But to us, it's strange the industry has spent billions on smaller, cheaper, quicker hardware, and yet has not re-examined the "basic" concept. It's even stranger that the concept of the software has changed even less (we've ended up with more and more complicated compliers, assemblers, operating systems, etc., etc., involving far *more* software, on far *less* hardware). Perhaps the time has come to view the problem afresh—particularly from the business point of view.

We believe, we at LOMAC have made a small contribution to that area. We have unconventional hardware, and even more unconventional software. We make a business computer that does *not* require the previous knowledge of a structured computer language (the method of programming is in English). Indeed, the word "programming" may be a misnomer, because as well as telling it *what* to do, you have to tell it *what it is* you are telling it. That is, the words you're using are defined at the time you use them. If that sounds complicated, it isn't. It's extremely straightforward. The only trouble—so far, it defies description. Regardless, instead of the word "Programming" we call it "Teaching." The net result: virtually anyone with reasonable knowledge of what they want to do, combined with a logical approach, can make our business computer do what *they* want to do, *when* they want to do it, *their* own way. All this, *without* the expense of a professional programmer.

We think the effect of the micro-processor on the world will be profound. More so, when we can remove the "software" *bottleneck* which is currently strangling everyone.

If you concur, and if you are one who likes to control your *own* destiny, and have a problem which falls in the area of Business Data Processing, hopefully you'll write to us. You may not, yet, have heard of us? So, when you write, we will not only tell you about our products, but about us, too.

LOMAC

LOGICAL MACHINE CORPORATION • 1294 HAMMERWOOD AVE., SUNNYVALE, CA 94086 • (408) 744-1290

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

Tina has never had a Teddy Bear.

A mother's love. A doll to cuddle. Tina knows nothing of these things. But she does know fear, rejection, and hunger.

For just $15 a month, you can help save a child like Tina.

Through our "adoption" program you can help provide a child with a better diet, clothes, medical attention, school. And even a toy or two.

But don't wait. There are so many. And somewhere, right now, a child is dying from starvation and neglect.

Write to: Mrs. Jeanne Clarke Wood, Children, Incorporated, P.O. Box 5381, Dept. SA93, Richmond, Va. 23220 USA

☐ I wish to "adopt" a boy ☐, girl ☐, in ☐Asia, ☐Latin America, ☐Middle East, ☐Africa, ☐USA, ☐Greatest Need.
☐ I will pay $15 a month ($180 a year). Enclosed is my gift for a full year ☐, the first month ☐. Please send me the child's name, story, address and picture.
☐ I can't "adopt," but will help $ _____
☐ Please send me further information.
☐ If for a group, please specify.

Church, Class, Club, School, Business, etc.

NAME

ADDRESS

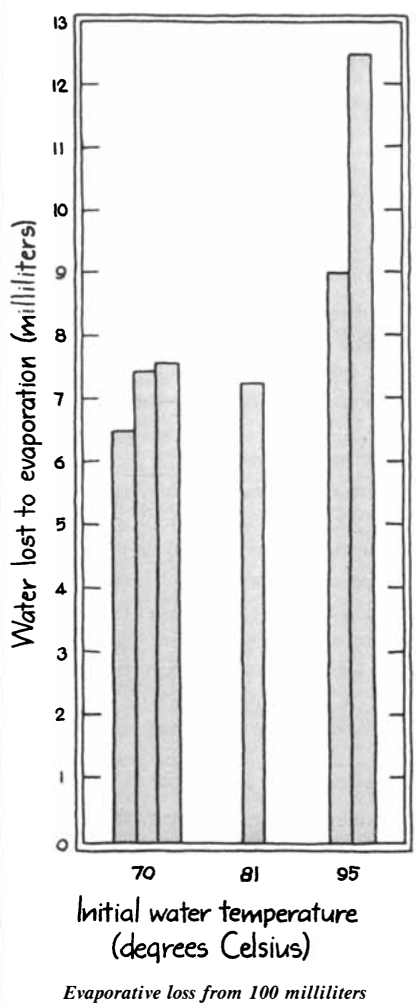
CITY STATE ZIP

U.S. gifts are fully tax deductible.
Annual financial statements are available on request.

CHILDREN, INC.

way, I found that the cooling is rather steep in the first and last few minutes of each run but that straight lines can be fitted through the data points for most of the run. The samples of water starting at 81 degrees C. and at 55 degrees appear to have two regions in their cooling, because for each one I had to use two straight lines with different slopes to fit the data points. Except for the first and last few minutes the curves for the two samples were parallel, suggesting similar cooling mechanisms for each. The water beginning at 95.5 degrees C. had a much steeper slope in the first half of the run, suggesting an additional mechanism of heat loss that the water at the lower initial temperatures did not have. In other words, above a starting temperature of 81 degrees C. either evaporation loss or circulation suddenly becomes significant and the cooling rate is increased.

The measurements taken near the surface of the water showed a more pronounced bending over of the curve of time needed to reach freezing than the measurements taken near the bottom. The initial temperature requiring the most time to reach freezing appeared to be the same. I reran the surface measurements with the same initial temperature of 70 degrees C. as in a bottom measurement in order to see how the surface and the bottom differed in temperature during a run. Within a few minutes after the beginning of a run the surface was cooler by a few degrees, the difference increasing to three degrees by the middle of the run and then narrowing again until within a few minutes before the surface began to freeze. More measurements such as these would be interesting because the convection-current cells in the water are driven by the difference in temperature between the surface of the water and the bottom. You might want to do more work on this temperature difference in order to determine the possible influence of the convection cells on the freezing effect. I suggest, however, that instead of repeating runs as I have done you lower two thermocouples into the water to take the measurements at the different depths simultaneously.



Evaporative loss from 100 milliliters

To decrease the effect of evaporation, at least by eliminating the loss of mass due to evaporation, I repeated the run for 100 milliliters of water in a 600-milliliter beaker with the thermocouple near the bottom, but this time I fastened a plastic food wrapping over the top of the beaker with a rubber band. Evaporation still removed heat from the water, but the evaporated mass condensed on the plastic wrapping and dripped back into the beaker. For all the initial temperatures the time needed to reach freezing increased. This result suggests that the loss of mass during evaporation is important.

Measuring the loss of mass in normal runs by finding how much water is needed to refill the beaker to its previous level is not very accurate. Nevertheless, the general result is that more water is lost when the initial temperature is higher. In a theoretical study of the cooling rate in water George S. Kell of the National Research Council of Canada found that water cooling from 100 to zero degrees C. loses about 16 percent of its mass if the primary heat loss is by evaporation. My results appear to be in line with Kell's calculations, again suggesting that the loss of heat and mass by evaporation is important in the paradoxical freezing effect.

The circulation of the cooling water can be examined by squirting a small amount of dye into the beaker of water with a hypodermic syringe. The large-scale motion is a rising in the center and a sinking on the outside edge. The transport of heat by this circulation cell is probably determined in part by the depth of the water, the cross-sectional area of the beaker and the temperature difference between the top and the bottom of the water column. I do not know of any easy calculation to show how

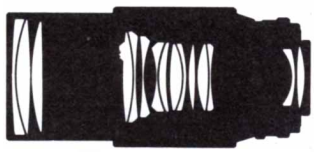
© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

Vivitar Series 1™ 70-210mm f3.5 automatic zoom lens with macro focusing.

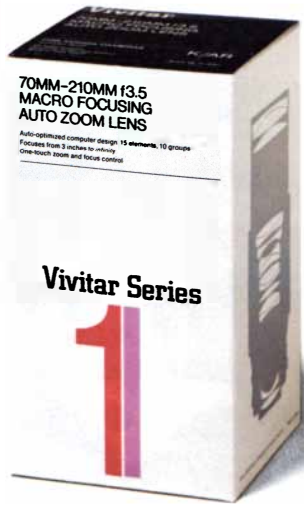
This is the original automatic zoom lens for 35mm SLR cameras that also provides macro focusing capability. A unique mechanical design permits both zooming and focusing with the same control. Although this lens has a large maximum aperture, it is surprisingly short and light. These seemingly contradictory features were reconciled by the extremely sophisticated computer programs with which the designers worked. Most significant of all in practical picture taking situations is the high performance, accomplished by a novel approach to zoom optical design. This was another computer suggested departure from conventional zoom lens configuration. The quality of performance thus produced was previously unavailable in zoom lenses and compares favorably to the finest original equipment telephoto lenses. The versatility of macro focusing combined with a three-to-one telephoto zoom make this a remarkable all-purpose lens, particularly for the photographer who does not care to compromise on performance. A specially anodized finish on the lens mount and deeply checkered vinyl non-slip grips provide for absolutely positive focusing.

Specifications:

Focal length:	70-210mm
Aperture range:	f3.5-22 (Konica to f16)
Construction:	15 elements, 10 groups
Angle of acceptance:	34-11°
Weight:	940 gms. (33 oz.)
Length:	158mm (6.2 in.)
Diameter:	78mm (3.1 in.)
Accessory size:	67mm
Lens coating:	VMC Vivitar multicoating
Closest focusing distance from film plane:	Telephoto: 1.9m (6.3 ft.) Macro Focusing: 29.2cm (11.5 in.)
Maximum reproduction ratio:	1:2.2



Available in mounts to fit Nikon, Nikkormat, Canon, Minolta, Konica, Olympus OM, Pentax S, Vivitar and other universal thread mount cameras.



Vivitar Series 1 Program

In recent years, remarkable progress has been made in solving some of the classic problems of optical design. Intensive work in the field was spurred on by the demands of space exploration and military applications and vastly aided by the growing sophistication of computer technology.

Vivitar optical designers, working with programs devised for highly specialized optical tasks, have used computer generated designs to develop for Vivitar a new series of lenses capable of performance unreachable until now.

Each Vivitar Series 1 lens so far introduced has represented a breakthrough in optical design.

The Series 1 135mm f2.3 and the 200mm f3 lenses are both closer focusing and faster than almost all other lenses in their respective focal lengths.

The 35-85mm f2.8 auto variable focusing lens is a wide angle to moderate telephoto lens that focuses as close as 10.9cm from its front element.

The Series 1 90mm f2.5 macro lens and its 3 element macro corrector-lens adapter yield true flat-field reproduction from infinity to 1:1. It may be the sharpest lens in 35mm photography.

The 28mm f1.9 gives the photographer a remarkable combination of speed and close focusing capability extremely rare in a wide angle lens.

And the 600mm f8 solid catadioptric telephoto lens represents a revolutionary advance in long telephoto design.

Eventually there will be a complete optical system of more than twenty Vivitar Series 1 lenses, each demonstrably superior to other lenses currently available.

Vivitar®

Vivitar Corporation, 1630 Stewart Street, Santa Monica, CA 90406.
In Canada: Vivitar Canada Ltd. / Ltée
© Vivitar Corporation, 1977

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

Who's got the brass to make things smaller for America?

"We do. You'll find Olin Brass in much of the wizard small circuitry of today. From desk-top computers, which used to fill a room. To pocket calculators, which used to fit on a desk.

Why Olin Brass? The reason is quality. At Olin Brass we can roll copper to 1/16th the thickness of a page in this magazine. In fact, we can roll metals so uniformly thin that we've helped create an amazing new technology—flexible circuitry. With flexible circuitry, individual connections are eliminated and 50% less space is used. The result is a smaller, more reliable product with fewer warranty and repair costs.

Olin Brass also meets the big needs of America. For heavy industry we make alloys for motors, generators, transformers, and switchgear. Fineweld® copper-nickel condenser tube is in big demand by power companies where corrosion resistance means less shutdown time for maintenance.

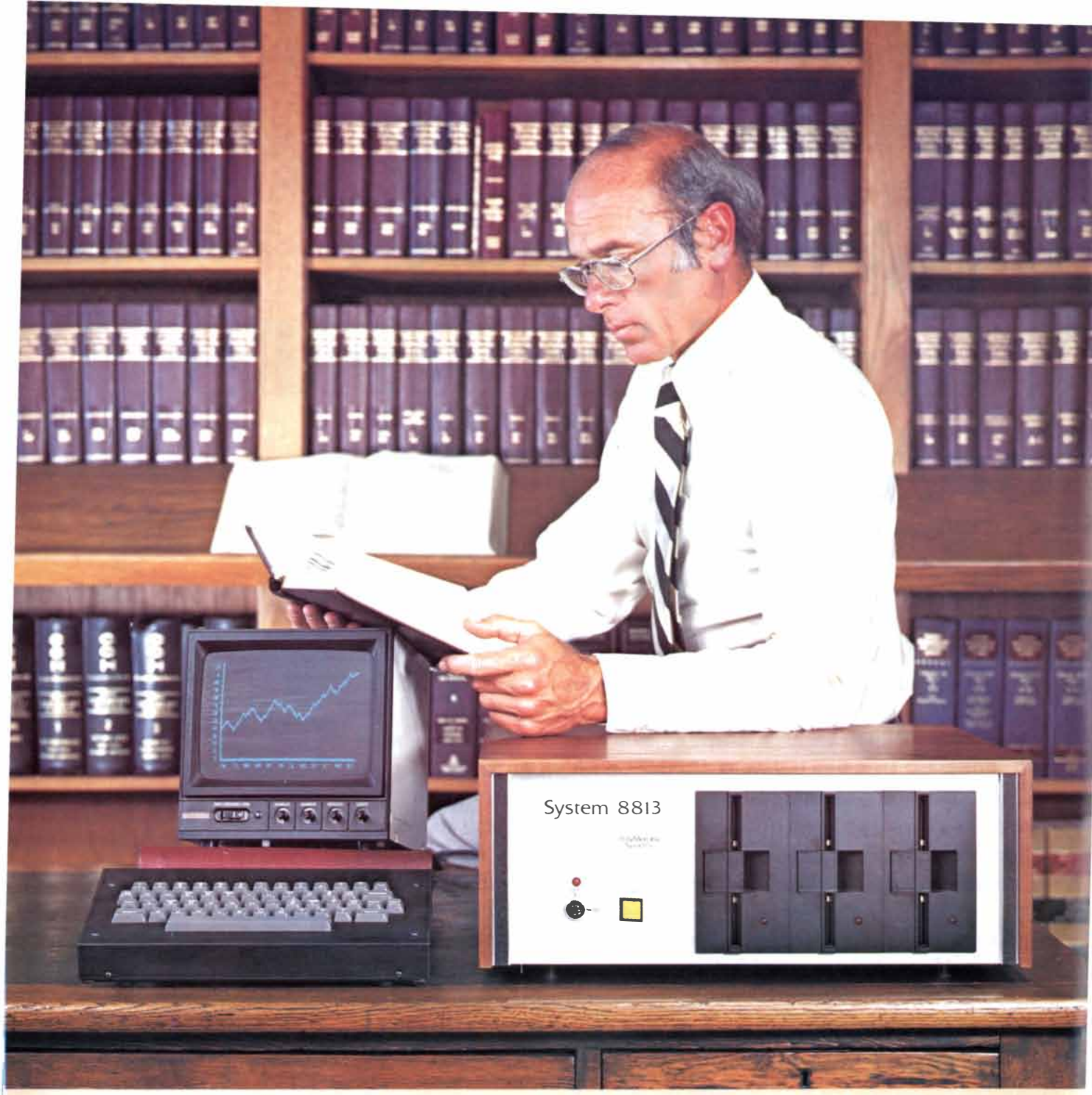
Olin also helps open doors. When you see a doorknob, you probably don't realize it came out of an Olin seven-ton coil, over a mile long, delivered without scratches, dings, dents, or other defects.

The leading manufacturers in communications, electronics, appliances, photography, transportation, all rely on Olin Brass, tailor-made to fit their needs. Whether the need be big, small, or somewhere in between, quality seeks out quality."

says Olin

Olin Corporation, Stamford, Conn. 06904

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC



The Computer for the Professional

Whether you are a manager, scientist, educator, lawyer, accountant or medical professional, the System 8813 will make you more productive in your profession. It can keep track of your receivables, project future sales, evaluate investment opportunities, or collect data in the laboratory.

Use the System 8813 to develop reports, analyze and store lists and schedules, or to teach others about computers. It is easily used by novices and experts alike.

Reliable hardware and sophisticated software make this system a useful tool. Several software packages are included with the machine: an advanced disk operating system supporting a powerful BASIC language interpreter, easy to use text editor, assembler and other system utilities. Prices for complete systems start at $3250.

See it at your local computer store or contact us at 460 Ward Dr., Santa Barbara, CA 93111, (805) 967-0468.

PolyMorphic Systems

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

these factors influence the heat transport, and so I do not know how much of the freezing effect is due to the circulation of the water.

Much work remains to be done on this effect. How does the surface area influence the time required for freezing? Is there a particularly advantageous ratio of surface area to side area that will enhance the bending of the curves? If you have access to a walk-in freezer, you could measure the loss of mass from the beakers during the cooling by running the experiment on a balance. The relation of mass loss to the temperature of the water as a function of time could be checked against theoretical predictions such as those Kell has made.

An interesting conjecture offered by Kell is that one reason this freezing effect has been largely forgotten in modern times is that the replacement of wood pails by metal ones diminished or eliminated the effect. Faster conduction of heat through the walls and the bottom of the container may diminish the importance of evaporation to the cooling. Firth argues against this conclusion. You can check it by using containers of the same size but made of different materials, such as metal and plastic. You can also work with two Pyrex beakers, putting a layer of thermal insulation around the sides and under one of them.

My results on the mass loss can be improved by cutting off the beakers just above the waterline. When a beaker is thus shortened, none of the evaporated water can collect on it to fall back into the water.

In addition to eliminating the loss of mass by putting a cover on the beaker you might try spreading a thin layer of oil on the surface. If the freezing effect is due to evaporation, the effect should then be lessened. Such thin layers of fluid have been spread on bodies of water in arid regions to decrease evaporation.

One of the major factors in the cooling rate of tap water was eliminated in my experiments, namely the gas dissolved in cold water from the faucet. Although controlling the amount of gas dissolved in the water would be very difficult, you can at least run the experiment under identical conditions except with fresh tap water and with previously boiled water. Does the dissolved gas actually retard the cooling?

You might also investigate how the cooling rate is affected if salt is added to the water to lower the freezing point. The effect might be more pronounced if instead of water you use a fluid (such as alcohol) that evaporates more readily. You will not freeze the alcohol unless you have access to extreme means of cooling, such as with liquid nitrogen, but the time needed to reach zero degrees C. may show the bent curve that is found with water.

Start your own revolution

with a personal computer

Dramatic developments in computer technology have made it possible for you to completely reorganize and improve the ways you manage your personal and business life.

Today, for as little as $600, you can buy a complete computer system about the size of a typewriter. These new computers are called personal computers. They are every bit as powerful as yesterday's room-sized computers that cost millions of dollars.

A personal computer can be your equalizer in dealing with our complicated society. You'll have the same organizing, calculating, and information storage POWER that was previously only in the hands of large institutions. You can have a computer to deal with their computers.

As a reader of PERSONAL COMPUTING magazine, you'll be in the heart of the computer revolution. We'll show you how to use your own computer for business and home management -- for education, income tax preparation, research, text editing, environmental control, art, games, recipe files, budgeting, inventory control and hundreds of other applications.

PERSONAL COMPUTING is a consumer magazine that makes computers more understandable and useable. Our readers include businessmen, teachers, accountants, doctors, lawyers, engineers, programmers, and scientists.

Each issue of PERSONAL COMPUTING brings you page-upon-page of useful information and colorful, people oriented articles. Subscribe now so you can be a part of this new revolution.

Please start my subscription to Personal Computing

Name _____

Address _____

City _____ State _____ Zip _____

☐ **6 issues $ 8**
☐ **12 issues $14**

Charge my: ☐ Master Charge ☐ Bank Americard
Account # _____
Card expiration date _____

☐ **Bill me**
☐ **Check enclosed**

Additional Postage:
Canada & Mexico $ 2.00 surface;
$ 4.00 air.
Other foreign $ 4.00 surface;
$18.00 air.
(Double rates for 12 issue subscription)

Now published every other month, PERSONAL COMPUTING will be published monthly starting January, 1978. Subscription rates listed above cover 6 or 12 consecutive issues. **If you enclose your check,** we'll extend your subscription by one extra issue for a 6 issue subscription and 2 extra issues for a 12 issue subscription. Of course, you have the right to cancel at any time and receive full credit for the unused portion of your subscription. **Mail To:**

PERSONAL COMPUTING 167 COREY ROAD, BROOKLINE, MASS. 02146

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

The Gentleman's Jean by the Chesapeake Bay Trading Co.

What is a Jean? The cowboys invented it and the kids discovered it. This does not mean that you have to be on horseback or in your teens to enjoy the pleasure of a soft, friendly pair of good fitting jeans. Nor do your jeans have to be skin tight or completely faded and worn through to be in style. Chesapeake Bay Trading Company has designed a Gentlemen's Jean for the adult physique and unless you are a jockey or the Jolly Green Giant himself, you will find these jeans to be the most comfortable pair of slacks you have ever worn. They have a full 11½" rise and a trim but roomy seat and thigh. We promise...No...we GUARANTEE (money back, that is) your complete satisfaction. Easily laundered. **$19.95 ppd.**

Special Offer: Buy more than one and save. Simply deduct $1.00 for each additional item ordered.

Chesapeake Bay Trading Co.
P.O. Box 5879, Pikesville, Md. 21208
Denim blue #11011, Gray #11010 Green #11013, Faded blue #11015, White #11012, Brown #11018, Camel, #11017
Sizes: 30, 31, 32, 33, 34, 36, 38, 40, 42
Inseam: S (30") M (32") L (35")
Color _____ Size _____ Length _____ Qty. _____
Name _____
Address _____
City _____ State _____ Zip _____
Check ☐ or Charge: BankAmericard ☐ Mastercharge☐
Card# _____ Exp. Date _____
Signature _____ 77119

WELSH STEELWORKER'S VEST

The Welsh Steelworker's Vest makes a casual top for work or leisure that is both comfortable and serviceable. It is made of the best 12 oz. Welsh flannel, 100% wool. Pullover style, 2-button neck closure, loose sleeves and long back tail. Under the armpit is a most remarkable feature, a large open gusset to provide ventilation and reduce stress during heavy exertion. Color is the traditional blue gray.

Sizes S(36/38) M(38/40) L(40/42) XL(42/44)

Welsh Steelworker's Vest $29.50 ppd.
State Size
Satisfaction Guaranteed
Send for our unique catalog

Visit our Seattle store at 1523 N.W. Ballard Way.

AUSTRAL ENTERPRISES
Box 70190, Seattle, Washington 98107

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Readers interested in further explanation of the subjects covered by the articles in this issue may find the following lists of publications helpful.

MATHEMATICAL GAMES

CONIC SECTIONS. Henry Martin Taylor in *Encyclopaedia Britannica: Vol. 6, Ninth Edition*. Encyclopaedia Britannica, Inc., 1890.

GEOMETRY AND THE IMAGINATION. David Hilbert and S. Cohn-Vossen, translated by P. Nemenyi. Chelsea Publishing Company, 1952.

A BOOK OF CURVES. E. H. Lockwood. Cambridge University Press, 1961.

MICROELECTRONICS

MICROCOMPUTERS/MICROPROCESSORS: HARDWARE, SOFTWARE, AND APPLICATIONS. John L. Hilburn and Paul M. Julich. Prentice-Hall, Inc., 1976.

SPECIAL ISSUE ON MICROPROCESSOR TECHNOLOGY AND APPLICATIONS. *Proceedings of the IEEE,* Vol. 64, No. 6; June, 1976.

MICROELECTRONIC CIRCUIT ELEMENTS

SEMICONDUCTOR ELECTRONICS. James F. Gibbons. McGraw-Hill Book Company, 1966.

PHYSICS AND TECHNOLOGY OF SEMICONDUCTOR DEVICES. A. S. Grove. John Wiley & Sons, Inc., 1967.

THE THEORY AND PRACTICE OF MICROELECTRONICS. Sorab K. Ghandhi. John Wiley & Sons, Inc., 1968.

MICROPOWER CIRCUITS. James D. Meindl. John Wiley & Sons, Inc., 1969.

BASIC INTEGRATED CIRCUIT ENGINEERING. Douglas Hamilton and William Howard. McGraw-Hill Book Company, 1975.

THE LARGE-SCALE INTEGRATION OF MICROELECTRONIC CIRCUITS

INTEGRATED CIRCUITS: A BASIC COURSE. Robert G. Hibberd. McGraw-Hill Book Company, 1969.

METAL-OXIDE-SEMICONDUCTOR TECHNOLOGY. William C. Hittinger in *Scientific American,* Vol. 229, No. 2, pages 48–57; August, 1973.

DESIGN OF DIGITAL COMPUTERS. Hans W. Gshwind and Edward J. McCluskey. Springer-Verlag, 1975.

MICROCOMPUTERS. André G. Vacroux in *Scientific American,* Vol. 232, No. 5. pages 32–40; May, 1975.

PHYSICS OF COMPUTER MEMORY DEVICES. S. Middelhoek and P. Dekker. Academic Press, Inc., 1976.

THE SMALL ELECTRONIC CALCULATOR. Eugene W. McWhorter in *Scientific American,* Vol. 234, No. 3, pages 88–98; March, 1976.

THE FABRICATION OF MICROELECTRONIC CIRCUITS

INTEGRATED CIRCUIT FABRICATION PROCESSES. Alan B. Grebene in *Analog Integrated Circuit Design.* Van Nostrand Reinhold Company, 1972.

MOS INTEGRATED CIRCUITS: THEORY, FABRICATION, DESIGN AND SYSTEMS APPLICATIONS OF MOS LSI. Engineering staff of American Micro-systems, Inc., edited by William M. Penny and Lillian Lau. Van Nostrand Reinhold Company, 1972.

MOS/LSI DESIGN AND APPLICATION. William N. Carr and Jack P. Mize, edited by Robert E. Sawyer and John R. Miller. McGraw-Hill Book Company, 1972.

METAL-OXIDE-SEMICONDUCTOR TECHNOLOGY. William C. Hittinger in *Scientific American,* Vol. 229, No. 2, pages 48–57; August, 1973.

MICROELECTRONIC MEMORIES

SEMICONDUCTOR MEMORIES. Edited by David A. Hodges. IEEE Press, 1972.

MASS MEMORIES. Rein Turn in *Computers in the 1980s.* Columbia University Press, 1974.

RANDOM-ACCESS MEMORIES. Rein Turn in *Computers in the 1980s.* Columbia University Press, 1974.

DIGITAL MEMORIES. Carlo H. Séquin and Michael F. Tompsett in *Charge Transfer Devices.* Academic Press, Inc., 1975.

MAGNETIC BUBBLE TECHNOLOGY: INTEGRATED-CIRCUIT MAGNETICS FOR DIGITAL STORAGE AND PROCESSING. Edited by Hsu Chang. IEEE Press, 1975.

SPECIAL ISSUE ON LARGE CAPACITY DIGITAL STORAGE SYSTEMS. *Proceedings of the IEEE,* Vol. 63, No. 8; August, 1975.

NEW MEMORY TECHNOLOGIES. Jan A. Rajchman in *Science,* Vol. 195, No. 4283, pages 1223–1229; March 18, 1977.

MICROPROCESSORS

SPECIAL ISSUE ON MICROPROCESSOR TECHNOLOGY AND APPLICATIONS. *Proceedings of the IEEE,* Vol. 64, No. 6; June, 1976.

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

Jennie can't talk. Her vocal cords are paralyzed. Yet she communicates verbally with a voice she holds in her hand.

MICROPROCESSOR TECHNOLOGY MAKES IT POSSIBLE.

Jennie's hand-held voice is called Handi-Voice™. It's a product of Votrax®, a leading manufacturer of voice synthesizers for communications systems in business, banking and industry.

A breakthrough in microelectronics technology has made the Votrax voice synthesizer completely portable and lightweight so it can be incorporated into new prosthetic devices for speech impaired people.

Handi-Voice is such a device. It's not much larger than a calculator. All Jennie has to do is enter numeric and symbolic codes for words and a microprocessor translates the codes into audible speech. The cost is under $2,000.

Handi-Voice can be operated by various switches which respond to body or eye movements, and even breath. Obviously, Votrax can be the voice for many different kinds of rehabilitation equipment, as well as the audio-response communications system for many different applications in banking, industry and business. Call or write for complete information.

HANDIVOICE

A product of Votrax®
Division of Federal Screw Works
500 Stephenson Highway
Troy, Michigan 48084
Phone: (313) 588-2050

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

QUARTZ MICROs

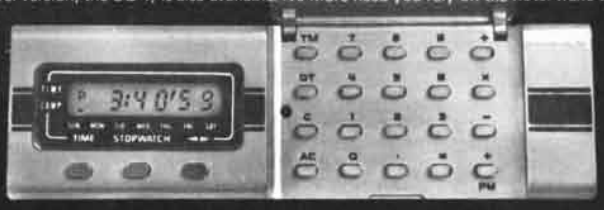
THE CQ-2 EXECUTIVE DESK SECRETARY

$59.95

CALCULATOR, APPOINTMENT SECRETARY, STOPWATCH, and DIGITAL CLOCK

Now you can be electronically reminded of up to 4 important appointments per day, perform time and date calculations, performs events' timing and routine calculations. Ideal for time pressed executives, engineers and students. The STOPWATCH times up to 10 hours in 0.1 sec increments in 3 modes: elapsed time with/without pauses and cumulative lap times. Display may be unlatched after recording. The CQ-2's special base 60 logic allows TIME and DATE difference calculations, time conversions and a perpetual calendar. You can calculate the number of days left until a contract date or what date and day of the week a payment is due. As a CALCULATOR, the CQ-2 performs the standard 4 functions in a full 8 digits and constant calculations. A large green digitron display shows all the CQ-2 time, date and calculator outputs. The timer circuitry is powered by 2 digital watch batteries (1 yr. life). The display is run by a standard 1.5v penlight battery (3 hr. life). When the optional AC adapter is connected, a microswitch is tripped, displaying the time constantly. Batteries and carrying case are included. 1-3/8" H x 5-5/8" W x 3" D. . . .6 oz.

A smaller travel version, the CQ-1, is also available. No more need you rely on the hotel wake-up service.



THE MQ-1 MICROQUARTZ

Another world's first from Casio. Combination **clock, stopwatch, 200-yr calendar and calculator** and all in an elegant but rugged pencil-thin case, with flip-top calculator cover and see-through case. At a touch of a button, you can read time, date, day of the week and count up or down for 24 hours in 1/10 sec increments with time-outs. Switch to time of day and back again. The amazing 200 yr calendar allows several types of date calculations. The 4-function, 8-digit calculator is handy for doing those simple calculations while traveling. The MQ-1's bright, constant liquid crystal display (LCD) is readable even in the brightest of light, powered by two silver-oxide batteries that will last for at least 18 months. Size: 4-3/8" W x 1-1/4" D x 3/8" H Weight: 1.4oz.

$59.95

$49.95

Runner wins 20-km marathon in 1 hour, 35 min, 8.7 sec. . . . . .

Calculator Cover Removed and attached

Casio's amazing ST-1, the world's most powerful stopwatch gives you the flexibilty to time every sport up to 100 hours with .005% accuracy . . . . . .

Standard: Times single events. Successive presses of Start/Stop(S/S) key record times for successive trials. Total key displays cumulative time for all trials. Comp mode can then be used to calculate average time. **Net or Time-Out:** Ideal for ballgames with timeouts. Press S/S to commence timeout. First counter freezes cumulative game time. Press Total key to show second counter with elapsed time since timeout started. Press S/S again to restart game and unfreeze the gametime counter. **Lap-1:** Split/Cumulative mode times athlete at each lap. S/S freezes display for recording total elapsed time. Press S/S again to unlatch display. **Lap-2:** Taylor/Interval mode records athlete's time for each lap; S/S key freezes display with latest laptime while resetting clock for next lap. Press again to unlatch display and watch current lap. Total key displays cumulative time to last lap. For auto races, S/S gives time between successive cars while Total key gives the time behind the leader. The **ST-1**'s smart little calculator has full memory, square root, percentages and discount calculations. TM key allows conversion of stopwatch data in hr-min-sec to fractional hours or minutes and back again. Calculate directly with time data to add employee time logs. Ideal for time and motion studies.

Texas Instruments

TI-57	$ 64.88	1680 Instant Replay	$26.88
TI-58	99.88	1750 (LCD - 2000 hrs)	17.88
TI-59	249.88	1700 Datachip	29.88
59/58 Libraries	29.88	2550-III	25.88
PC100A Printer	149.88	Little Prof - math quiz	12.88
BC-59 40 Blanks	14.88	Dataman (Big Prof)	22.88
SR-52 Libraries (while avail)		TI-30 SP	17.88
EE, Fin., Stat., Games	22.88	SR-40	24.88
Navigation, Aviation	14.88	SR-51 II	49.88
BC-52 40 Blanks	13.88	Business Analyst	29.88
		Money Manager	17.88
		5050M hand-held printr	88.88
		5040 Printr/display	99.88

HEWLETT PACKARD

HP29C	$164.88	HP10 hand - held ptr.	$14.88
HP67	$369.88	HP19C 29C w/ ptr.	$309.88
HP80	$248.88	HP21	$68.88
HP91	$279.88	HP22	$101.88
HP92	$539.88	HP25	$101.88
HP97	$624.88	HP25C	$134.88
		HP27	$148.88

CASIO

*FX-21 (Digitron Sci)	$19.95	* ST-1 (stopwatch/calc)	$59.95
*AL-85 (Fractions)	$17.95	CQ-1 (inc. A/C + case)	$49.95
*FX-2000 (LCD Sci.)	$39.95	* CQ-2	$59.95
*Biolator Game	$29.95	MQ-1	$59.95

* 110V A/C Adaptor (Specify Calculator) .....$ 4.95

National Semiconductor

6010 (Metric Conv.)	$19.88	835/842 (4 Fnc. Mem./)	$ 7.88
4520 Scientist	$28.88	Quiz Kid I (Winkey Owl)	$10.88
852 (5 digit mantissa)	$14.88	Quiz Kid II (Math Trainer)	$14.88
PROGRAMMABLES		Quiz Kid III (Racer Set)	$34.88
(Incl. NiCd, Charger, Case)		ADVERSARY Videogame	$48.88
6035 Statistician	$34.88	WF1 Scientific Calculator Watch	
6025 Fin. 4515 Math	$34.88	(Specify goldtone, S.S.)	$300
4525 Scientist	$39.88	4640, 4650 4660 Scient.	$34.88

ATARI

Video Computer Syst. $188.
Combat Cart (27 game) FREE
Additional Carts (Sept.)
Air Sea; Space Miss. $19.88
Video Olympics (4) $39.88
Indy 500 (w Contr.) $39.88
VIDEO PINBALL $88.88

FAIRCHILD

(Back to the Grind Special; good thru 10/31)
VES Game Console . $148.
Videocarts . . . $17.88

APPLE II COMPUTER

(With Color Graphics)
4K Assembled.....$1298.
4K Kit/Main board 598.

All products are warranteed by the manufacturer for at least one year and shipped with all factory packaged accessories. Lectro-Media will replace or repair any defective unit for a period of 30 days from receipt (90 days for T.I.)

CREDIT CARD ORDERS, Only: Call Toll-Free

800-523-2906

PA (215) 925-9090

Showrooms: NewMarket: America's Oldest Market, 2nd & Pine

LECTRO-MEDIA LTD.
P.O. BOX 1770 SA
PHILA., PA. 19105
Philadelphia's Computer Store

Shipping: $3 for 1st unit, $1 ea. additional. Games $5 incl carts. AIR: CA, OR, HI, WA, AK, Houston/Dallas: add $2. Canada add $3., Games $10. No COD's, Street Addresses Only. CASH DISCOUNTS: 2% paid by Cashiers Check, Money Order

Lectro-Media Ltd. will match any advertised price...simply clip full ad and attach to your order!

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

SPECIAL ISSUE ON SMALL SCALE COMPUTING. *Computer,* Vol. 10, No. 3; March. 1977.

TRENDS IN COMPUTERS AND COMPUTING: THE INFORMATION UTILITY. Stuart E. Madnick in *Science,* Vol. 195, No. 4283, pages 1191–1199; March 18, 1977.

THE ROLE OF MICROELECTRONICS IN DATA PROCESSING

DIGITAL COMPUTER FUNDAMENTALS. Thomas C. Bartee. McGraw-Hill Book Company, 1972.

MINICOMPUTER SYSTEMS: STRUCTURE, IMPLEMENTATION AND APPLICATION. Cay Weitzman. Prentice-Hall, Inc., 1974.

DATA PROCESSING IN 1980–1985: A STUDY OF POTENTIAL LIMITATIONS TO PROGRESS. T. A. Dolotta, M. I. Bernstein, R. S. Dickson, Jr., N. A. France, B. A. Rosenblatt, D. M. Smith and T. B. Steel, Jr. John Wiley & Sons, Inc., 1976.

TRENDS IN COMPUTER HARDWARE TECHNOLOGY. David A. Hodges in *Computer Design,* Vol. 15, No. 2, pages 77–85; February, 1976.

THE ROLE OF MICROELECTRONICS IN INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL

SERVO-MOTOR RESPONSE. Bernard M. Oliver in *Proceedings of the IEEE,* Vol. 53, No. 2, pages 201–202; February, 1965.

ELECTRONIC MEASUREMENTS AND INSTRUMENTATION. Edited by Bernard M. Oliver and John M. Cage. McGraw-Hill Book Company, 1971.

MICROPROCESSORS: DESIGN AND APPLICATIONS IN DIGITAL INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL. Walter Banks and Jayanti C. Majithia in *IEEE Transactions on Instrumentation and Measurement,* Vol. IM-25, No. 3, pages 245–249; September, 1976.

DIGITAL SYSTEMS SPAWN NEW TASKS IN MEASUREMENT. A. Santoni in *Electronics,* Vol. 49, No. 22, pages 100–106; October 28, 1976.

LSI CHIPS TAKING OVER MORE HOUSEHOLD CHORES. G. M. Walker in *Electronics,* Vol. 49, No. 22, pages 128–134; October 28, 1976.

THE ROLE OF MICROELECTRONICS IN COMMUNICATION

PRINCIPLES OF PULSE CODE MODULATION. K. W. Cattermole. American Elsevier Publishing Company, Inc., 1969.

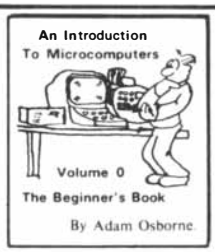
DIGITAL CODING OF SPEECH WAVEFORMS: PCM, DPCM, AND DM QUANTIZERS. Nuggehally S. Jayant in *Pro-*

OSBORNE & ASSOCIATES, INC.

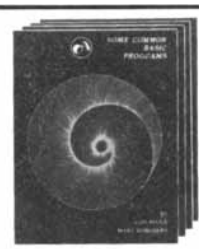
The World Leaders In Microprocessor Books

Many books on microprocessors and their use are now on the market, and most of them have names that sound alike. But Osborne & Associates' books have dominated this market since 1975, when our first book appeared. With rave reviews from all over the world — with more than five hundred university text adoptions, our books are all best sellers. In fact, "An Introduction To Microcomputers: Volume I — Basic Concepts" now holds the world's record in sales volume for any textbook sold for a profit.

If you want information on microprocessors, begin with the Osborne books.



"An Introduction To Microcomputer: Volume 0 — The Beginner's Book" By Adam Osborne.
This is the book for the absolute beginner. Assuming that you know nothing about computers, math or science of any kind, this book explains what computers are all about — and it takes you to the point where you can read Volume I. 300 pages.
Book No: 6001 $7.50
Available October 31, 1977.



For the microcomputer user, a series of books provide complete programs, written in BASIC. All these books are by Lon Poole and Mary Borchers.

"Some Common Basic Programs" 200 pages.
Book No: 21002 $7.50

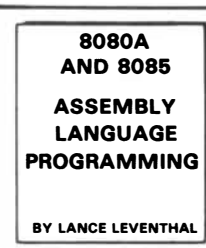
"Payroll With Cost Accounting — In Basic". 400 pages Book No.: 22002 $12.50

"Accounts Payable and Accounts Receivable"
Book No.: 23002 $12.50 Available November 30, 1977

"General Ledger System"
Book No.: 24002 $12.50 Available December 31, 1977

"An Introduction To Microcomputers: Volume I — Basic Concepts" By Adam Osborne.

The world's best selling textbook. This book explains, clearly, concepts common to all microcomputers, yet specific to none. 350 pages.
Book No.: 2001 $7.50



"8080A and 8085 Assembly Language Programming" By Lance Leventhal.

This book is for the assembly language programmer or student; it explains assembly language programming for the 8080A and 8085 microcomputers. The book contains numerous examples. 400 pages.
Book No.: 31003 $7.50 Available October 31, 1977

"An Introduction To Microcomputers: Volume II — Some Real Products" (Revised June 1977) By Adam Osborne, Susanna Jacobson and Jerry Kane.
This book describes every common microprocessor and all of their support devices. Information is new and clearly written. Only data sheets are copied from manufacturers. 1200 pages.
Book No.: 3001 $15.00

The "Programming For Logic Design" series of books show how to use microprocessors in a digital logic environment.

"8080 Programming For Logic Design" By Adam Osborne. 300 pages.
Book No.: 4001 $7.50

"6800 Programming For Logic Design" By Adam Osborne. 300 pages.
Book No.: 5001 $7.50

"Z80 Programming For Logic Design" By Adam Osborne and Susanna Jacobson.
Book No: 7001 $7.50 (Available November 30, 1977)

OSBORNE & ASSOCIATES, INC. • P.O. BOX 2036 • BERKELEY, CA 94702

TITLE	UNIT PRICE	QUANTITY
Volume I — Basic Concepts (#2001)	$7.50 ea.	
Volume II — Some Real Products (#3001) revised 1977	$15.00 ea.	
8080 Programming For Logic Design (#4001)	$7.50 ea.	
6800 Programming For Logic Design (#5001)	$7.50 ea.	
Some Common BASIC Programs (#21002)	$7.50 ea.	
Payroll With Cost Accounting (#22002)	$12.50 ea.	

We will only invoice for purchase orders of over 10 books.
Shipping charges for bulk orders to be arranged.

⬡ Check or Money Order enclosed (Calif. residents include sales tax)

Where did you hear about our books? _____

I will be using these books for _____

NAME/COMPANY _____

ADDRESS _____

CITY, STATE AND ZIP _____

TELEPHONE _____

Please check one space below:

⬡ 4th Class Mail Delivery (3-4 weeks within the U.S.A.)
⬡ I have included $.50 per book for U.P.S. (allow 10 days)
⬡ I have included $1.50 per book for special rush shipment by air.
⬡ I have included $.50 per book foreign surface mail.
⬡ I have included $3.00 per book for foreign airmail.
⬡ I require information on consignments, discounts and distributors outside the U.S.A.

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

DR DOBB'S JOURNAL
of Computer Calisthenics & Orthodontia

Running Light Without Overbyte

This highly respected reference journal for users of home computers contains:

***Complete Systems & Applications Software**
User documentation, internal specifications, annotated source code. *DDJ* carries a large variety of interpreters, editors, debuggers, monitors, graphics games software, floating point routines and software design articles.

***Independent Product Reviews and Consumer Advocacy**
DDJ publishes independent evaluations of products being marketed to hobbyists with their findings – good or bad. *Dr. Dobb's* carries no paid advertising and regularly offers joyful praise and raging complaints about vendors' products and services.

***Unique Systems Projects**
"Realizable Fantasies" – details of projects that have not yet been done, but are within the limits of current technology, hobbyists' expertise, and budget.

***Hot News and Raging Rumor**
Unusually fast turn-around [often just two weeks] on publishing "hot stuff".

REVIEWS:

"*THE* software source for microcomputers. Highly recommended."
–Philadelphia Area Computer Society's The Data Bus, *7/76.*

"It looks as if it's going to be *THE* forum of public domain hobbyist software development. Rating – ★ ★ ★ ★ ."
–Toronto Region Assoc. of Computer Enthusiasts (TRACE), Newsletter, 7/76.

"The best source for Tiny BASIC and other good things. Should be on your shelf."
–The Computer Hobbyist, North Texas (Dallas) Newsletter, 5/76.

Please start my one year subscription to *Dr. Dobb's Journal* (10 issues a year) and bill me for $12.

Name _____

Address _____

City _____

State _____ Zip _____

Mail to: **Dr. Dobb's Journal**, Dept. 52, 1263 El Camino, Menlo Park CA 94025

WHAT WE DO BEST

Environmental Communications designs and manufactures Custom and Standard Thin Film Hybrids under MIL-STD-9858A to MIL-STD-883A and MIL-STD-38510C

If you don't require the highest reliability and quality were probably to expensive.

environmental communications incorporated

Electronics Components Group

Custom Microelectronics Division
RF/Microwave Division
Analog/Digital Division
Passive Components Division

3150 pullman st, costa mesa, ca 92626
ph: 714-557-7800 twx: 910-595-1781

□ □ □ □ □ □ □ □

Sales Representation and Employment Inquiries Welcome

1 **THE COMPLEAT ALPHAMETICS BOOK**
By Steven Kahan

HAVE SOME SUMS TO SOLVE

Decoding problems of letter/number substitution that is frustrating, confounding and grievous to the unwary. Calculator and computer helpful, but not necessary.

- brainteasers, number puzzles, logic puzzles, minute mysteries
- interspersed with fascinating facts about numbers.

PRE PUBLICATION PRICE ..... **$4.95** prepaid
After Jan. 1 ...$6.00

Two exciting publications for curious excursions into puzzledom.
H.L. Nelson, Editor

2 **THE JOURNAL OF RECREATIONAL MATHEMATICS**

4 issues per volume. Praised by Martin Gardner in April's Scientific American, pages 129-137, 'Mathematical Games.' 'Crammed with new and exciting material.'

Priced to individuals only **$10** volume prepaid
To libraries and others **$21** volume prepaid
Both the Book and the Journal, individuals **$12.95** prepaid

Order now from:
Baywood Publishing Company, Inc.
120 Marine Street, Farmingdale, N.Y. 11735

Please enclose personal check or money order.

ceedings of the IEEE, Vol. 62, No. 5, pages 611–632; May, 1974.

OPTICAL TRANSMISSION OF VOICE AND DATA. Ira Jacobs and Stewart E. Miller in *IEEE Spectrum,* Vol. 14, No. 2, pages 32–41; February, 1977.

SPECIAL ISSUE: THE *1A* PROCESSOR. *The Bell System Technical Journal,* Vol. 56, No. 2; February, 1977.

SINGLE-SLICE SUPERHET. William Peil and Robert J. McFadyen in *IEEE Spectrum,* Vol. 14, No. 3, pages 54–57; March, 1977.

MICROELECTRONICS AND COMPUTER SCIENCE

THE SHORTEST PATH THROUGH A MAZE. Edward F. Moore in *The Annals of the Computation Laboratory of Harvard University: Vol. XXX, Proceedings of an International Symposium on the Theory of Switching, Part II.* Harvard University Press, 1959.

FUNDAMENTAL LIMITATIONS IN MICROELECTRONICS, I: MOS TECHNOLOGY. B. Hoeneisen and Carver A. Mead in *Solid-State Electronics,* Vol. 15, No. 7, pages 819–829; July, 1972.

LIMITATIONS IN MICROELECTRONICS, II: BIPOLAR TECHNOLOGY. B. Hoeneisen and Carver A. Mead in *Solid-State Electronics,* Vol. 15, No. 8, pages 891–897; August, 1972.

HOW BIG SHOULD A PRINTED CIRCUIT BOARD BE? Ivan E. Sutherland and Donald Oestreicher in *IEEE Transactions on Computers,* Vol. C-22, No. 5, pages 537–542; May, 1973.

MICROELECTRONICS AND THE PERSONAL COMPUTER

TOWARDS A THEORY OF INSTRUCTION. Jerome S. Bruner. Belknap Press of Harvard University Press, 1966.

ARTIFICIAL INTELLIGENCE. Seymour A. Papert and Marvin Minsky. Condon Lectures, Oregon State System of Higher Education, 1974.

PERSONAL DYNAMIC MEDIA. Alan C. Kay and Adele Goldberg in *Computer,* Vol. 10, No. 3, pages 31–41; March, 1977.

THE AMATEUR SCIENTIST

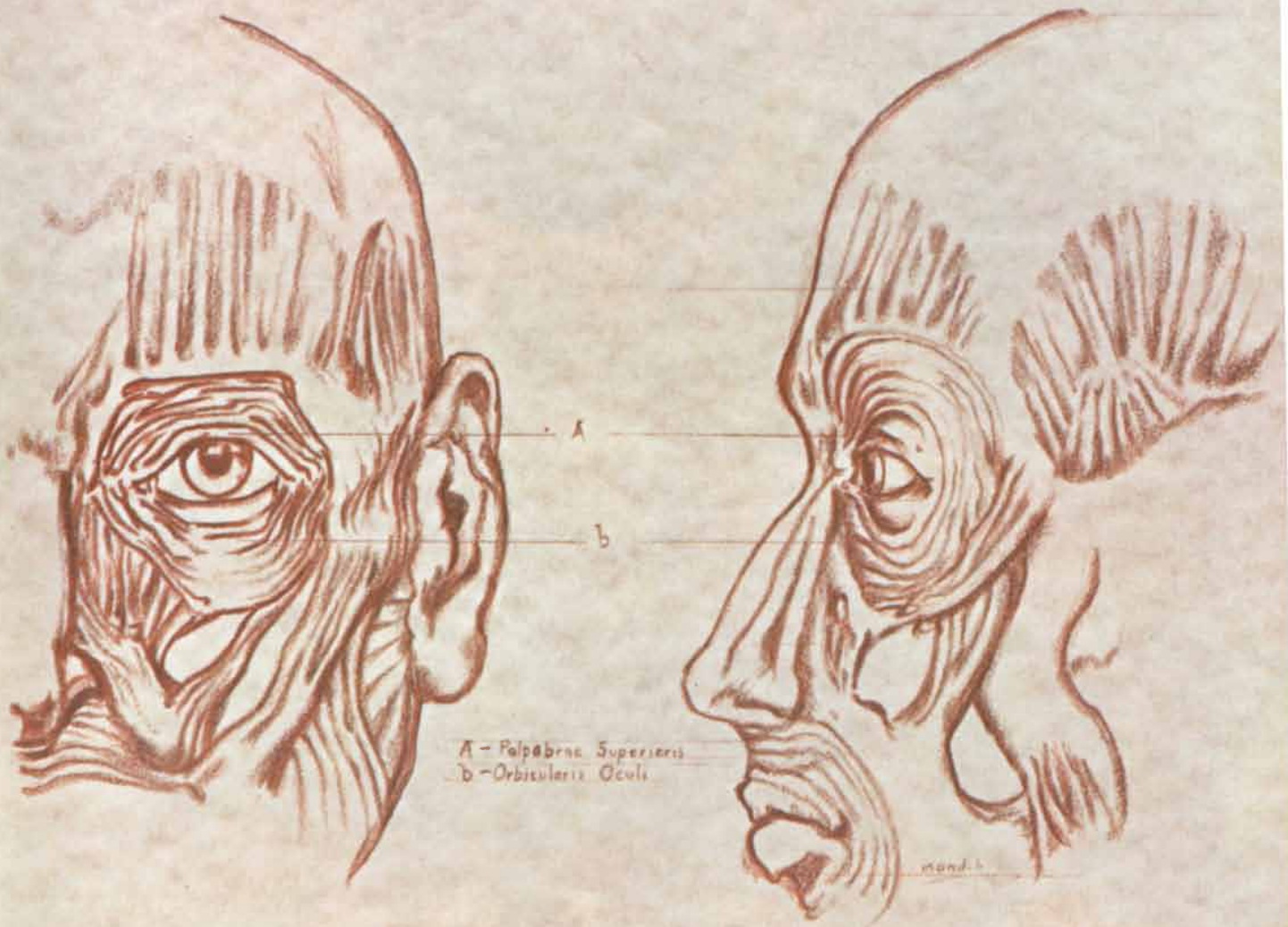
COOL? E. B. Mpemba and D. G. Osborne in *Physics Education,* Vol. 4, No. 3, pages 172–175; May, 1969.

THE FREEZING OF HOT AND COLD WATER. G. S. Kell in *American Journal of Physics,* Vol. 37, No. 5, pages 564–565; May, 1969.

COOLER? Ian Firth in *Physics Education,* Vol. 6, No. 1, pages 32–41; January, 1971.

COOLER—LOWER DOWN. Eric Deeson in *Physics Education,* Vol. 6, No. 1, pages 42–44; January, 1971.

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC



The blink of an eye...

On the average it takes one-tenth of a second. The nerve impulse causing the blink reflex travels at approximately 10 meters per second or 30 miles per hour. In that same amount of time, the Altair™ 8800b microcomputer has executed up to 18,000 processor instructions in a program that is working for you, personally.

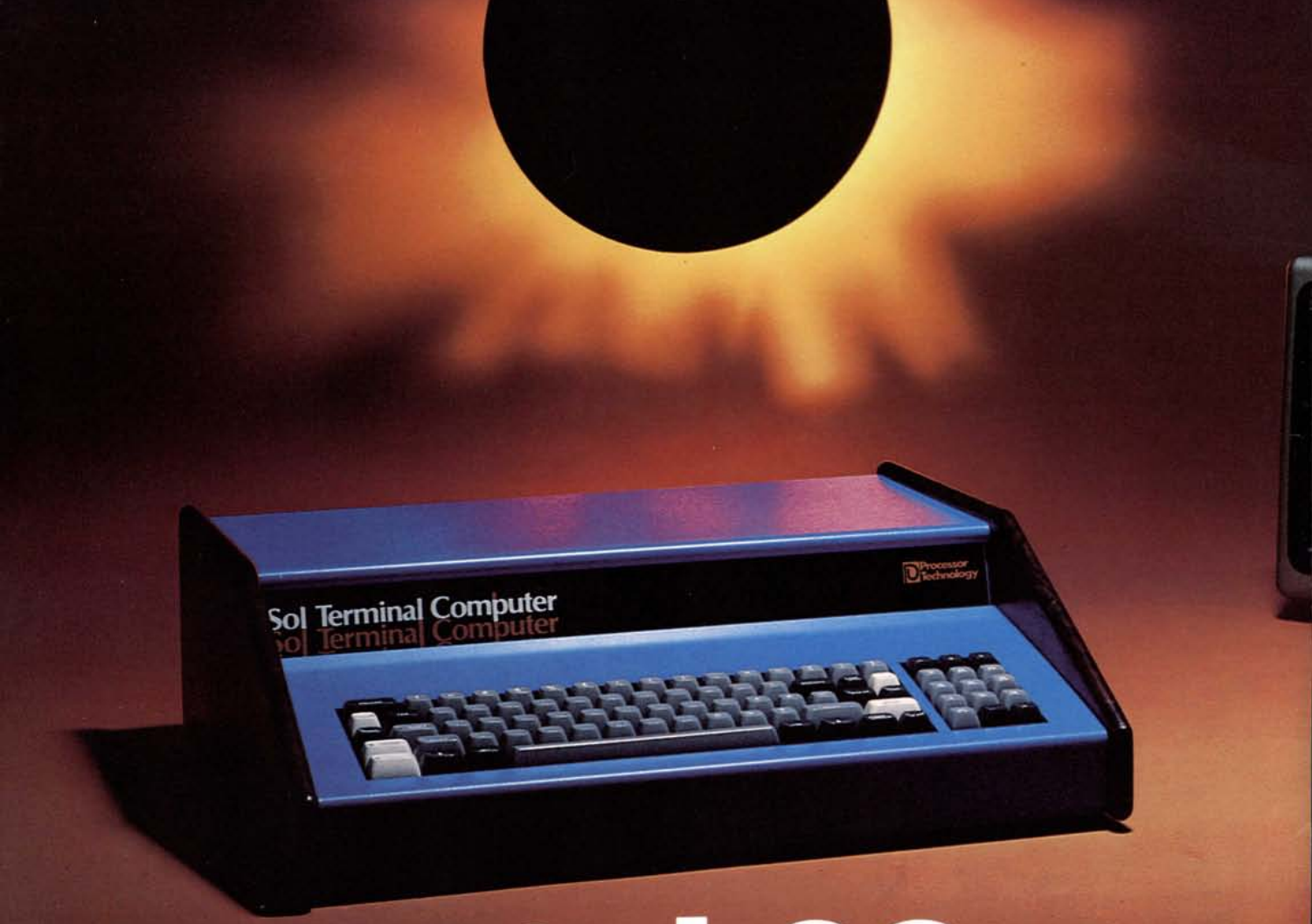
Maybe you already know, or have heard about the boom in personal computing. Owning a personal computer presents endless possibilities for your business or home. The Altair 8800b will take inventory, conduct scientific experiments, balance your checkbook, monitor household routines —with plenty of time left over for fun and games.

Discover what is going on behind the blinking lights of our computers (at prices you can't afford to ignore).

MITS, Inc.
a subsidiary of **Pertec Computer Corporation**
2450 Alamo S.E. Albuquerque, New Mexico
(505) 243-7821

Altair is a trademark of **Pertec Computer Corporation**

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC



One Sol-20 equals three computers.

To do real work with any computer, big or small, it takes a complete system. That's one of the nice things about the Sol-20. It was built from the ground-up as the heart of three fixed price computer systems with all the peripheral gear and software included to get you up and on the air.

Sol System I costs just $1649 in kit form or $2129 fully burned in and tested. Here's what you get: a Sol-20 with the SOLOS personality module for stand alone computer power, an 8192 word memory, a 12" TV/video monitor, a cassette recorder with BASIC software tape and all necessary cables.

Sol System II has the same equipment plus a larger

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

capacity 16,384 word memory. It sells for $1883 in kit form: $2283 fully assembled.

For even more demanding tasks, Sol System III features Sol-20/SOLOS, a 32,768 word memory, the video monitor, Helios II Disk Memory System and DISK BASIC Diskette. Price, $4750 in kit form, $5450 fully assembled and tested.

And remember, though we call these small or personal computer systems, they have more power per dollar than anything ever offered. They provide performance comparable with mini-computer systems priced thousands of dollars more.

The functional beauty of Sol Computer Systems is more than skin deep. A look inside reveals a simple elegance of design and sturdy construction.

The Small Computer Catalog for the rest of the real computer system story.

Visit your local computer store for a copy of our fully illustrated 22 page catalog. Or you may write or call us if more convenient. Please address Processor Technology, Box N, 6200 Hollis Street, Emeryville, CA 94608. (415) 652-8080.

Processor Technology Corporation

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC

How to get a three-motor, direct-drive, isolated-loop deck. And save $5,500.

"Ingenuity of design can be fascinating for its own sake, but when it results in a product of demonstrable excellence, as with this tape recorder, one can only applaud..."

The review is from *Modern Recording*. The tape deck is Technics RS-1500US. And the ingenuity of design that *Modern Recording* and *Audio* have praised in recent issues is Technics' advanced "Isolated Loop" tape transport with a quartz-locked, phase-control, direct-drive capstan.

By isolating the tape from external influences, Technics has minimized tape tension to an unprecedented 80gms. Eliminating virtually all signal dropout. While reducing modulation and wow and flutter to a point where conventional laboratory measurement is seriously challenged. A considerable achievement when you realize Technics RS-1500US is priced substantially below its professional counterpart. $5,500 below.

Electronically, too, Technics has provided the ultimate in professional control and performance. A separate microphone amplifier. Record amplifier. Mixing amplifier. And three-way bias/equalization. While IC full-logic function controls permit absolute freedom in switching modes.

Compare specifications and prices. Then you'll realize there's no comparison. TRACK SYSTEM: 2-track, 2-channel recording, playback and erase. 4-track, 2-channel playback. FREQ. RESPONSE: 30-30,000Hz, ± 3dB (–10dB rec. level) at 15ips. WOW & FLUTTER: 0.018% WRMS at 15ips. S/N RATIO: 60dB (NAB weighted) at 15ips. SEPARATION: Greater than 50dB. RISE TIME: 0.7 secs. SPEED DEVIATION: ± 0.1% with 1.0 or 1.5mil tape at 15ips. SPEED FLUCTUATION: 0.05% with 1.0 or 1.5mil tape at 15ips. PITCH CONTROL: ± 6%. SUGGESTED RETAIL PRICE: $1,500.*

Technics RS-1500US. A rare combination of audio technology. A new standard of audio excellence.

* Technics recommended price, but actual retail price will be set by dealers.

Technics *Professional Series*
by Panasonic

© 1977 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC